



GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

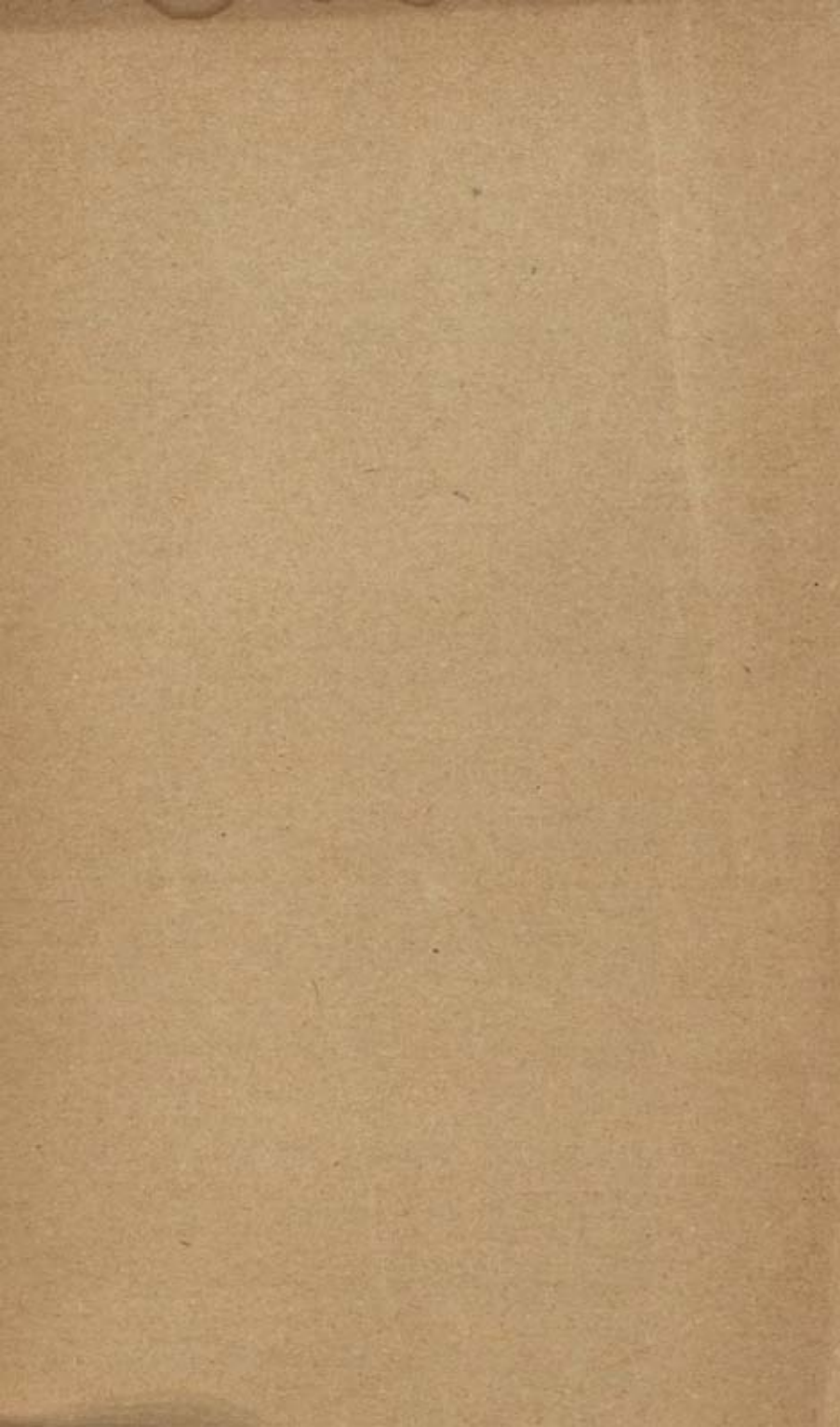
ACCESSION NO. 35453

CALL No. 891.551/Fiz/W.W.

D.G.A. 79

PROBSTHAIN & Co.  
Oriental Booksellers,  
41 Gt. Russell Street,  
British Museum,  
LONDON, W.C.





A N.  
90/6





TRÜBNER'S  
ORIENTAL SERIES



Complete Work now Ready. Post 8vo. cloth, price 10s. 6d. each.

## THE SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ.

Done into English by

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

The year A.D. 1010 saw the completion of the Sháhnáma, the great Persian epic. Its author, the poet Firdausí, spent over thirty laborious years in its composition, only to experience, when the task had been achieved, a heart-breaking disappointment well worthy of inclusion in any record of the calamities of authors. His work has survived the test of time, and by general consent is accounted to be one of the few great epics of the world. Geographically, and in some other respects, it may be said to stand half-way between the epics of Europe and those of India. In its own land it has no peer, while in construction and subject-matter it is unique. Other epics centre round some heroic character or incident to which all else is subservient. In the Sháhnáma there is no lack either of heroes or of incidents, but its real hero is the ancient Persian people, and its theme their whole surviving legendary history from the days of the First Man to the death of the last Sásanian Sháh in the middle of the seventh century of our era. It is the glory of the Persian race that they alone among all nations possess such a record, based as it is on their own traditions and set forth in the words of their greatest poet. In another sense, too, the Sháhnáma is unique. The authors of the other great epics tell us little or nothing of their own personalities or of their sources of information. Their works are fairy palaces suspended in mid air; we see the result, but know not how it was achieved. The author of the Sháhnáma takes us into his confidence from the first, so that in reading it we are let into the secret of epic-making, and can apply the knowledge thus gained to solve the problem of the construction of its great congeners. To the student of comparative mythology and folk-lore, to the lover of historic romance or romantic history, and to all that are fond of tales of high achievements and the deeds of heroes, the Sháhnáma is a storehouse of rich and abundant material. To set forth a complete presentment of it with the needful notes and elucidations is the object of the present translation, made from two of the best printed texts of the original—that of Vullers and Landauer, and that of Turner Macan.

THE  
SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY  
ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND  
EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

35453

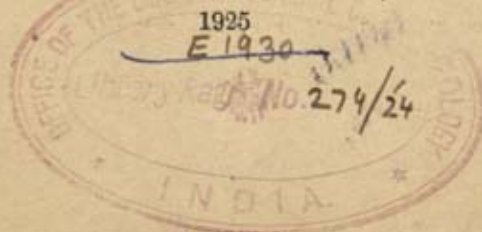
*"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day  
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,  
But storm and rain shall never mar what I  
Have built—the palace of my poetry."*  
FIRDAUSÍ.

891.551  
Fir/W.W.

VOL. IX  
~~E 1930~~



LONDON:  
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD  
BROADWAY HOUSE: CARTER LANE, E.C.



CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No.....35453.....

Date.....8.1.1962.....

Call No.....891.551..... (val. 9)

*Fir/h.W.*

*The rights of translation and of reproduction are reserved.*

122.112

### PREFATORY NOTE

The General Index at the end of this volume should be consulted in preference to the Indexes to the separate volumes of this work.—E.W.





# CONTENTS

PREFATORY NOTE . . . . .	PAGE v
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	xi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	xii

## THE SÁSĀNĪAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

### KURĀD (COMMONLY CALLED SHĪRWĪ)—

SECT.

1. How Shīrwī ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses . . . . . 8
2. How Khusrau Parwīz answered Shīrwī . . . . . 15
3. How Shīrwī grieved for Khusrau Parwīz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat . . . . . 27
4. How Bārbād lamented Khusrau Parwīz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music . . . . . 29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shīrwī the Death of Khusrau Parwīz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd . . . . . 32
6. How Shīrwī asked Shīrīn in Marriage, how Shīrīn killed herself, and how Shīrwī was slain . . . . . 36

### ARDSHĪR, SON OF SHĪRWĪ—

1. How Ardshīr, Son of Shīrwī, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs . . . . . 44
2. How Gurāz was displeased at Ardshīr being Shāh and how he caused Ardshīr to be slain by Pīrūz Son of Khusrau . . . . . 45

### GURĀZ (ALSO CALLED FARĀYĪN)—

1. How Gurāz (also called Farāyīn) received News of the Slaying of Ardshīr, hastened to Irān, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrāngurāz . . . . . 51

### PŪRĀNDUKHT—

1. How Pūrāndukht ascended the Throne and slew Pīrūz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended . . . . . 56

## ÁZARMDUKHT—

## SECT.

## PAGE

1. How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died . . . . . 59

## FARRUKHZÁD—

1. How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave . . . . . 61

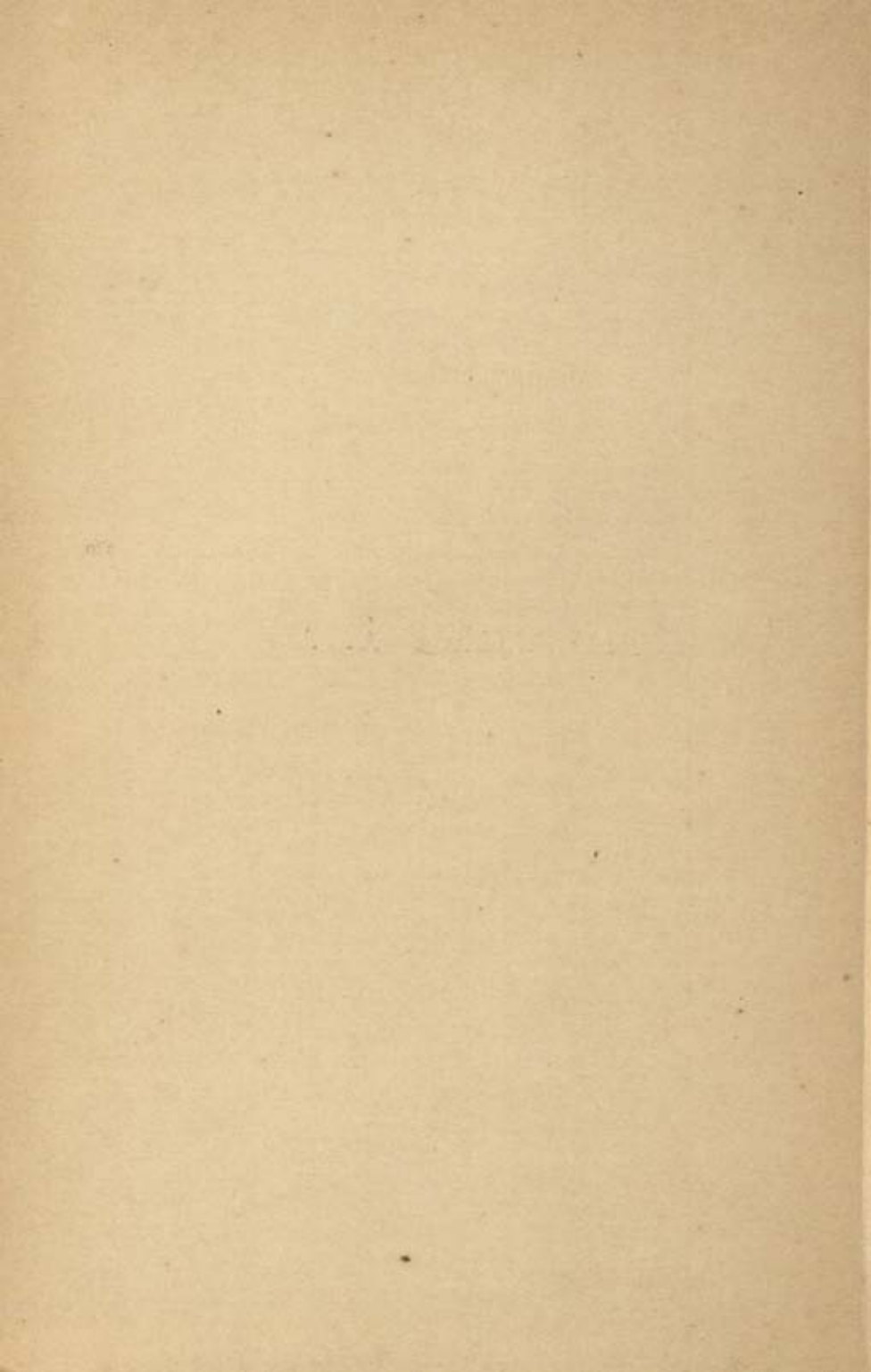
## YAZDAGIRD—

1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs . . . . . 70
2. How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother . . . . . 72
3. How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied . . . . . 78
4. How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain . . . . . 83
5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went to Khurásán . . . . . 85
6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr . . . . . 89
7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús . . . . . 90
8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him . . . . . 95
9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bizhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill . . . . . 96
10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archmages counselled Máhwí to forbear . . . . . 101
11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller . . . . . 107
12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne . . . . . 112
13. How Bizhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird, and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him . . . . . 115
14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bizhan . . . . . 118
15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma . . . . . 121

INDEX . . . . .	123
GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	135
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS . . . . .	139
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS . . . . .	177
GENERAL INDEX . . . . .	191

THE SHÁHNÁMA

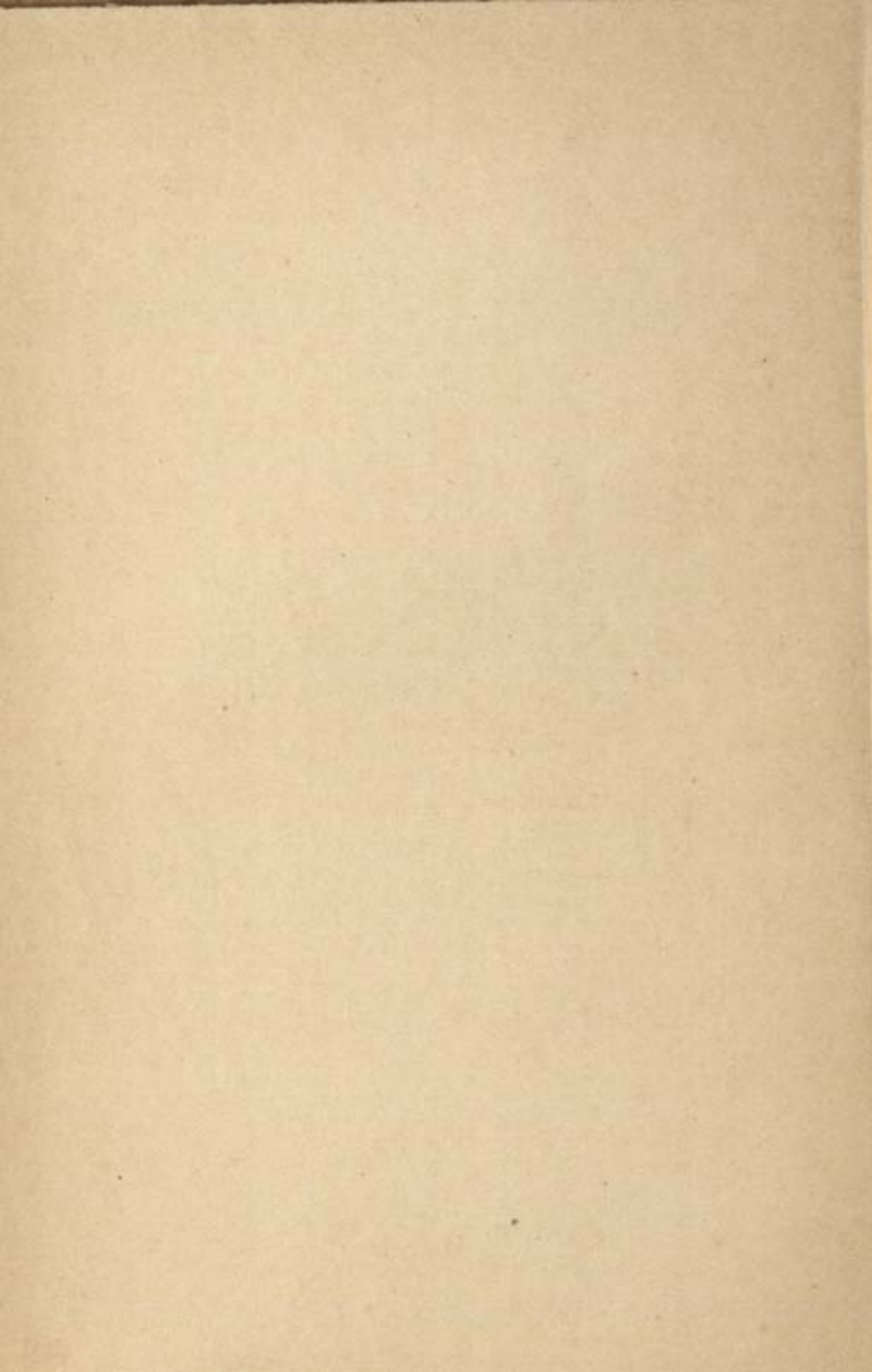
VOL. IX.



## ABBREVIATIONS

C.—Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma	
L.—Lumsden's	do.
P.—Mohl's	do.
T.—Tihrán	do.
V.—Vullers'	do.

BCM.	The Chahár Maqála (" Four Discourses ") of Nidhámí-i-'Arúdi-i-Samarqandí. Translated into English by Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
CTC.	Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioanni Classeni.
LEC.	The Lands of the Eastern Califate. By G. Le Strange.
NIN.	Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.
NT.	Geschichte der Perser und Araber sur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von. Th. Nöldeke.
RM.	The Rauzat-us-safa; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By Mirkhond. . . . Translated . . . by E. Rehatsek.
RSM.	The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
ZT.	Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid-Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg.



## NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

*d* as in "water."

*f* as in "pique."

*û* as in "rude."

*a* as in "servant."

*i* as in "sin."

*u* as in "foot."

*ai* as in "time."

*au* as in *ou* in "cloud."

*g* is always hard as in "give."

*kh* as *ch* in the German "buch."

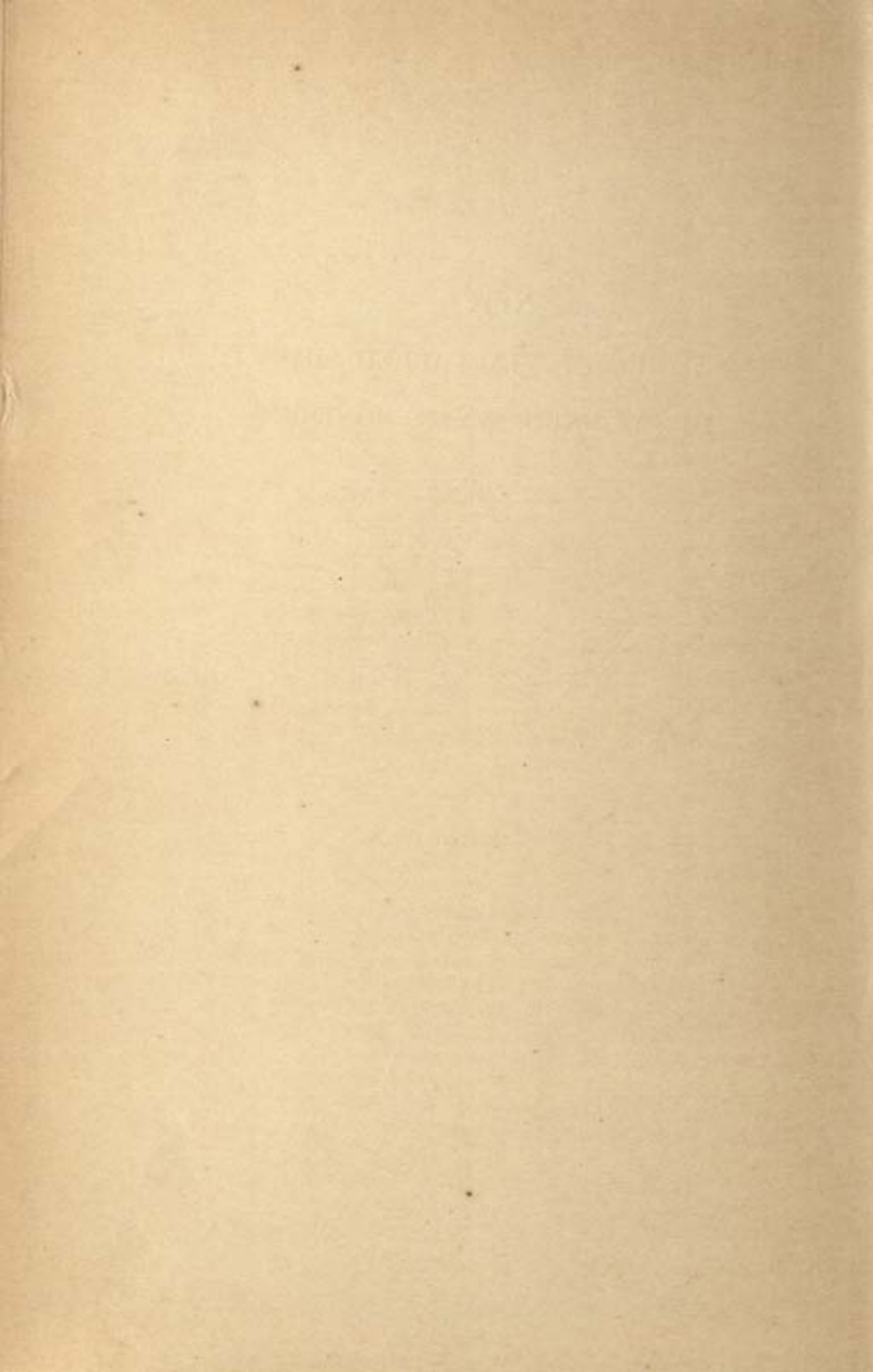
*zh* as *z* in "azure."



IV

THE SĀSĀNĪAN DYNASTY

*(Concluded)*



## XLIV

### KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)

#### HE REIGNED SEVEN MONTHS

#### ARGUMENT

Kubád on his accession sends two chiefs to accuse of misgovernment the fallen and imprisoned Sháh, Khusrau Parwíz, who justifies himself at great length. His fall is made the subject of a lament by Bárbad, the minstrel, who afterwards mutilates himself. The chiefs, noticing symptoms of remorse in Kubád, insist upon the death of Khusrau Parwíz who is killed with all his other sons. Kubád falls in love with, and wishes to marry, Shírín, who poisons herself rather than consent, and Kubád himself is poisoned soon afterwards.

#### NOTE

The days of the reign of Kubád (Kobad II., Feb.-Sept., A.D. 628) were few and evil. Tradition already had prepared the ground for this in the unfavourable account given of his early years.<sup>1</sup> The murder of his father was followed by that of all his brothers, and by the tragic death of Shírín, while in addition to all these horrors a frightful pestilence broke out in his reign and the great mortality that ensued still further weakened the resources of an already almost exhausted country and helped to pave the way for the successful Arab invasion of a few years later on. Kubád is represented in the poem as a loutish, uneducated youth,<sup>2</sup> but even if his abilities had been great it is difficult to see how he could have extricated himself from the coil in which

---

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 390

<sup>2</sup> *Id.*

he found himself involved without mishap to himself or others. He owed his release from prison and perhaps his life to the very conspirators that subsequently demanded of him for their own security the death of his father. To have refused would have been fatal to himself, while in all probability his father and his brothers, with the exception of one who would have been made Sháh, would have perished all the same. It is inconceivable that the conspirators would have run the risk to themselves of restoring Khusrau Parwíz, with his black record of ingratitude as instanced by his treatment of Bandwí and Gustaham,<sup>1</sup> to his former position as ruler. With the exception of his infatuation for Shírin, which hardly can be regarded as historical, Kubád throughout his short reign was the victim of circumstances.

§§ 1 and 2. Kharrád, son of Barzín, was one of the most trusted ministers of Khusrau Parwíz and planned the assassination of Bahrán Chúbína.<sup>2</sup> According to Tabarí he fell at the battle of Dhú Kár.<sup>3</sup>

As the epoch of the Sásánian Dynasty draws to an end through scenes of deepening tragedy the legitimist leanings of the tradition seem to become more and more pronounced and we have an instance here. It is hardly to be supposed, historically speaking, that formal charges of misgovernment were drawn up against, and as formally answered by, Khusrau Parwíz, but rather that someone, desirous of vindicating that Sháh's memory and conversant with the circumstances of the time, soon after his death drew up the charges and the replies thereto. Versions of them are given in both the Arabic and Persian Tabarí and elsewhere. Four of the charges are found in both the Tabarís as well as in the Sháh-náma.<sup>4</sup> They are:—

1. The murder by Khusrau Parwíz of his father Hurmuzd.
2. The illegitimate accumulation of treasure as a result of the financial oppression of the people.
3. The harsh treatment of the royal princes.
4. The refusal to restore the True Cross.

To these the Arabic Tabarí adds:—

1. The general ill-treatment of all prisoners.
2. Enforced recruiting for the royal Haram even of women already married.

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 354 *seq.*    <sup>2</sup> *Id.* p. 331 *seq.*    <sup>3</sup> *Id.* p. 190.  
<sup>4</sup> NT, 363 *seq.*    ZT, ii., 334 *seq.*

3. The keeping of the troops for a long period absent from home.

The Persian Tabarí adds :—

1. The imprisonment of the troops defeated by the Arabs at Dhú Kár and by Heraclius.
2. The exactions of arrears of tribute for the previous twenty or thirty years.
3. The attempt to slay the youthful Yazdagird (afterwards the last Sásánian Sháh).
4. The deposition of Nu'mán, prince of Híra.<sup>1</sup>
5. The mutilation and subsequent execution of Mardánsháh.<sup>2</sup>

In the Arabic Tabarí eight charges are made against Khusrau Parwíz two of which—those relating to the royal Haram and the refusal to restore the “True Cross”—are left unanswered.

In the Persian Tabarí eleven charges are formulated to each of which in the same order an answer is made. Some of the charges, however, must be regarded as later additions while that relating to Nu'mán is not likely to have suggested itself to a Persian and must come from an Arab source. In the Sháhnáma there are eight charges, all of which are more or less answered, but not in the same order as they are preferred, but in the following :—1, 6, 7, 8, 2, 5, 3, 4. Thus Khusrau Parwíz replies to the most serious accusations—those of offences against persons—first. The Sháhnáma agrees most closely with the Arabic Tabarí, supplies the missing answer with regard to the “True Cross,” but does not deal with the *gravamen* of the royal Haram question, as that particular charge is not one of those mentioned in the poem.

Galínúsh subsequently served in the war against the Arabs, fought at the Battle of the Bridge, and was perhaps slain at Kádisiya.<sup>3</sup>

§ 5. Indignant legitimate tradition is naturally very wroth with Mihr Hurmuzd, the murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, whom it describes as the lowest of the low and vilest of the vile. According to Tabarí, however, Mihr Hurmuzd was the son of Mardánsháh, the governor of Nímruz and one of the most obedient and faithful of Khusrau Parwíz' officials. In the Persian Tabarí's version of the Romance of Bahrá

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 190.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 6.

<sup>3</sup> NT, p. 365 note. RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., pp. 95, 116.

Chúbína that hero's brother, Yalán-sína in the Sháhnáma, is called Mardánsháh. Yalán-sína is always represented as being one of Bahrám Chúbína's most loyal adherents just as the other brother, Gurdwí, was a firm supporter of Khusrau Parwíz, while their sister Gurdya held an intermediate position, faithful to Bahrám Chúbína, but opposing his kingly ambition in every way in her power. Later on when married to Gustaham, the maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, she agreed, on condition that she should become the Sháh's wife and that a full amnesty should be given to all her adherents, to murder her husband and did so. There would be nothing strange therefore in Mardánsháh, if identical with Yalán-sína, becoming reconciled to, and receiving high office from, Khusrau Parwíz. He would serve one master as faithfully as he served the other. In the circumstances the strange thing would have been for the treacherous Sháh not to have taken the first convenient occasion against him. According to the story the Sháh, two years before his deposition, consulted the astrologers who informed him that his death would come from Nímruz. He therefore began to suspect and summoned Mardánsháh, but finding no pretext for putting him to death, as he was perfectly loyal and withal an aged man, determined merely to cut off his right hand and make him a large present of money as compensation. The sentence was carried out. Mardánsháh regarded such a mutilation as worse than death and, when shortly afterwards the Sháh was good enough to send and express his regret for what had occurred, asked the Sháh to grant him a boon. The Sháh swore to do so, on which Mardánsháh requested that his head should be struck off in order to wipe out the disgrace put upon him. The Sháh, bound by his oath, felt himself obliged to consent and the execution took place accordingly. The Shah wished to make Mardánsháh's son governor of Nímruz, but he refused and withdrew from the army.<sup>1</sup> He joined the conspiracy against Khusrau Parwíz<sup>2</sup> and by avenging his father on the Sháh justified the prediction of the astrologers.

The account given by Theophanes of the last days of the Sháh is different. As a general rule it is not prudent to put faith in stories of what occurred in Oriental palaces or prisons, but owing to the special circumstances of the case his information may be good in this instance, as it appears to be

<sup>1</sup> NT, p. 379.      ZT, ii., 330.      <sup>2</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 196.

based on letters written by Heraclius. After the capture of Khusrau Parwíz by the conspirators, he was bound and confined in the "House of Darkness," which he had himself built as a stronghold for his treasures. Here he was sparingly fed on bread and water for, said Shírwí: "Let him eat the gold that he has vainly amassed, and for whose sake he has starved many, and made the world itself a desert." Shírwí also sent satraps to revile and spit upon him, had his son Mardásas, whom he had wished to crown, slain before his eyes, and all his other sons as well, sent his enemies to beat and spit upon him, and, after five days of such treatment, had him put to death with arrows. Shírwí then wrote to Heraclius to announce the death of the detested Khusrau Parwíz, arranged terms of peace, released all the captives, and restored the "True Cross."<sup>1</sup> With regard to these latter statements of Theophanes it should be observed that peace was not concluded, and the "True Cross" restored, till after the death of Shírwí.<sup>2</sup>

According to Tabarí Kubád had Mihr Hurmuzd put to death.<sup>3</sup>

§ 6. The association of Khusrau Parwíz and Shírin began, it would seem,<sup>4</sup> before his accession to the throne, and he reigned for thirty-eight years. If Shírwí really wished to marry Shírin it must have been for political motives and because she had been so much in his father's confidence and might furnish useful information. For a son to marry his father's wives was, according to Persian ideas, quite the correct procedure in the circumstances.

Kubád is said to have been bitterly reproached by his two sisters, Púrándukht and Ázarmdukht, for his share in the deaths of his father and brothers, and to have suffered much from sickness and remorse. He died at Dastagird, but from what cause is uncertain.<sup>5</sup> The plague was very virulent at the time. Poison was often made to account for what was really due to disease.

<sup>1</sup> CTC, i., 502.      <sup>2</sup> NT, p. 392 and note.      <sup>3</sup> *Id.* p. 382.  
<sup>4</sup> See vol. viii., p. 383.      <sup>5</sup> NT, p. 384 and notes.

## § 1

*How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will,  
and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and  
Excuses*

Now when Shírwí sat on the goodly throne,  
And donned the royal crown so much desired,  
The leaders of the Íránians each drew near  
To proffer him the homage due to kings,  
Exclaiming : " Worshipful and honoured Sháh !  
Know, God gave thee the crown, and now thou sittest  
Securely on the throne of ivory,  
And may thy sons and scions have the world."

Kubád replied : " Be ever conquering  
And happy. Never will we practise ill.  
How good is justice with benevolence !  
The world will we keep peaceful and cut off  
The works of Áhriman by every right,  
Ancestral precedent that greateneth  
The Glory of our Faith. I will dispatch  
A message to my sire and tell him all.  
He is in evil odour in the world  
Through his ill deeds : let him excuse his faults  
To God and turn to custom and the way.  
If he shall heed me he will not resent  
My conduct. Then will I devote myself  
To state-affairs and strive to compass justice  
Both publicly and privily, do good  
Where good is due, and break no poor man's heart.  
I need two honest men of goodly speech,  
Whose memories are charged with ancient lore."

He asked the assembly : " Whom shall I employ ?  
Who is most shrewd and honest in Írán ? "

The warriors all suggested by their looks  
Two men of lore if they should give consent.  
Kubád perceived whom the Íránians  
Agreed to choose : one of them was Ashtád,  
The other was Kharrád, son of Barzín,  
The old—two sages eloquent and heedful.  
Kubád addressed them thus : " O ye wise men,  
Ye chiefs experienced and veteran !  
Deem not the conduct of the world too toilsome,  
Because the Great by travail compass treasure.  
It is for you now to approach the Sháh ;  
Perchance through you he may conform himself.  
Appeal to him by instance new or old  
As there is need."

With tears unwillingly  
Those sages made them ready. When Kharrád,  
Son of Barzín, and when Ashtád, who had  
Gashasp for sire, had mounted on their steeds,  
As bidden, Kubád said : " Now with right good will  
'Tis yours to take the road to Taisafún,<sup>1</sup>  
To carry to my glorious sire a message,  
And bear it all in mind from first to last.  
Say : ' 'Twas no fault of ours nor did the Íránians  
Cause this, but having left the way of Faith  
Thou hast thyself incurred God's chastisement,  
For, first, no son legitimate will shed  
His sire's blood though impure or give assent  
Thereto and fill the hearts of upright folk  
With pain. Again, thy treasures fill the world,  
And thine exactions reach all provinces,  
While, thirdly, many horsemen brave and famed  
Within Írán who gladdened there have left  
Son, country, and their own pure kith and kin,

<sup>1</sup> Couplet omitted.

C. 2028

Have parted, this to Chín and that to Rúm,  
 And now are scattered o'er each march and land.  
 Again, when Cæsar, who had done and borne  
 So much for thee, had given thee a host  
 And daughter too with treasure and much else,  
 Desired of thee the Cross of Christ for Rúm,  
 So that his land might be revived thereby,  
 How did the Cross of Jesus profit so  
 Thy treasures when complaisance on thy part  
 Would have made Cæsar glad? But thou didst not  
 Restore it, hadst not wit enough for that,  
 Or one to guide thee to humanity.  
 Again, thy greed was such that wisdom's eye  
 Was all obscured in thee, and thou didst seize  
 The chattels of the poor whose curses brought  
 Ill on thy head. Thou slewest thy mother's brothers,<sup>1</sup>  
 Two loyal men who gave thy throne a lustre.  
 Moreover thou hadst sixteen sons whose days  
 And nights were passed in prison while no chief  
 Could sleep secure from thee but hid in fear.<sup>2</sup>  
 Know, that which hath befall'n thee is from God;  
 Reflect on thy foul deeds. As for myself,  
 I am but as the instrument in all  
 This wrong, am but the heading of the tale.  
 By God, 'twas not my fault, no aim of mine  
 To wreck the Sháh's throne! Now for all seek grace,  
 And say so to these chieftains of Írán;  
 Turn from ill deeds to God—the Guide to good—  
 Who may abate the woes that thou hast brought  
 Upon thyself.' ”

On hearing this the twain  
 Departed with their hearts all seared and sore  
 Till, sorrowful and weeping, they arrived  
 At Taisafún and in that city sought

<sup>1</sup> Bandwí and Gustaham.

<sup>2</sup> This sentence comes at the end of the speech in the text.

The palace of Márúsipand for there  
 The exalted king resided. Galínúsh  
 Sat at the palace-gate : thou wouldst have said :—  
 "Earth is convulsed before him ! " He was armed  
 In helm and breastplate, all the Arab steeds  
 Wore bards, and all his soldiers were drawn up,  
 Equipped, and sword in hand. He grasped a mace  
 Of steel, his heart all fire and storm. Now when  
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, and when Ashtád,  
 Son of Gashasp, those sages twain, dismounted,  
 He rose forthwith, rejoiced to look on them,  
 And gave them place befitting, hailing them  
 As famous chiefs. The eloquent Kharrád  
 First laved his tongue in valour and then said  
 To Galínúsh : "Kubád the glorious  
 Hath donned in peace the Kaian crown. Írán,  
 Túrán and Rúm have tidings that Shírwí<sup>1</sup>  
 Is seated on the throne of king of kings.  
 Why this cuirass and helm and massive mace ?  
 Who is thine enemy ? "

Said Galínúsh :—

"O veteran ! may all thy doings prosper.  
 Thou art concerned about my tender frame  
 Because I am in iron garniture.  
 I bless thee for thy kindness ; thou deservest  
 That I shall sprinkle jewels over thee.  
 Thy words are naught but good, and may the sun  
 Be thine associate in the world. Declare  
 Why thou hast come, then look for my reply."

He thus gave answer : "Glorious Kubád  
 Commissioned me to bear Khusráu Parwíz  
 A message and if now thou wilt ask audience<sup>2</sup>  
 I will deliver what the world-lord said—

<sup>1</sup> That being the name by which he had been generally known,  
 his real name (Kubád) having been kept secret. See Vol. viii.,  
 pp. 371, 416.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with P.

That monarch of the flock."

Said Galínúsh :—

"Who can remember words so well as thou,  
O worshipful ? Yet nathless Sháh Kubád  
Gave me full many a counsel touching this,  
And charged me, saying : ' Let none have by day  
Or night an audience of Khusrau Parwíz  
Unless thou hearest what the messenger  
Hath got to say in Persian new or old.' "

Ashtád said : " I hold not my message secret,  
O fortunate ! It is : ' The sword is fruiting,  
And nuzzling princes' heads.' In this regard  
Now ask for audience of Khusrau Parwíz  
That we may tell the message of the Sháh."

This hearing Galínúsh arose, made fast  
His mail, went to the Sháh with folded arms,  
As servants should, and said thus : " Live for ever,  
O Sháh ! May evil never vex thy heart.  
There cometh by Ashtád and by Kharrád,  
Son of Barzín, a message from the Sháh  
From court."

Khusrau Parwíz laughed out and said :—

" Speak wiser words for if he be the king  
Then what am I, and why am I within  
This narrow prison, and why need'st thou ask  
That I shall grant an audience unto any,  
Be their words false or true ? "

So Galínúsh

Returned to those two warriors, reported  
The answer of the paladin, and said :—  
" Now go with folded arms, declare your message,  
And hearken his reply."

Those sages twain  
Of honest speech inswathed their visages  
In sashes brought from Chín and, when they saw  
The Sháh, did reverence and waited long

What while he sat upon a lofty throne  
 Adorned with effigies of sheep and wolves,  
 Impleached with gold and gems, with under him  
 A couch of yellow broidery. He leaned  
 On cushions hued like lapis-lazuli,  
 Held a fine quince and drowsed there all amort.  
 When he beheld those chiefs supreme in wisdom  
 He roused himself and secretly invoked  
 God's help. He laid that fine quince on the cushions  
 That he might welcome those two wayfarers.<sup>1</sup>  
 The quince slipped from the cushions, rolled unbruised  
 Upon the couch and thence from throne to floor.  
 Ashtád ran, took it up, wiped off the dust,  
 And laid the quince upon his head. The world-lord  
 Turned from Ashtád that he might neither see  
 Nor scent the quince. They set it on the throne,  
 And stood themselves. The matter of the quince<sup>2</sup>  
 Perturbed Khusrau Parwíz who boded ill,  
 Looked up to heaven, and said: "O truthful Judge!  
 Who can establish one whom Thou o'erthrowest,  
 Who join what Thou hast broken? When bright  
 fortune

C. 2030

Departeth from a race it bringeth sorrow  
 Because the day of joy is passed away."

Then to Ashtád: "Now for thine ambassage  
 From mine unnatural child of ill repute,  
 And from that handful of conspirators,  
 My hateful and black-hearted enemies.  
 Malignant fools are they and in their folly  
 Most wretched. Fortune will desert our race;  
 None will rejoice again; the crown and throne  
 Will pass to those unfit; this royal Tree  
 Will be destroyed; the Base will be exalted;  
 The spirits of the Great grow sorrowful.

<sup>1</sup> 'ces deux esclaves.' Mohl.<sup>2</sup> Reading with P.

The majesty will bide not with our sons,  
 Or with our kindred or posterity ;  
 Their friends all be their chiefest enemies,  
 Revilers and destroyers of the race.  
 This quince hath made the secret evident ;  
 The throne of king of kings will bear no fruit.  
 Now tell to me the words that thou hast heard :  
 I count his less than water in the stream."

Then those two men released their tongues to speak,  
 And told all that Kubád, his son, had said,  
 Not keeping e'en a whisper back from him.  
 The king of kings, when he had heard the message,  
 Writhed with distress and heaved a deep, cold sigh.  
 Then said he to those chiefs : " Hear my response,  
 And bear it to the young prince, every word.  
 Say : ' Quit thine own misdeeds ere blaming others'.  
 What thou hast uttered are they words of thine ?  
 A murrain on the prompter !<sup>1</sup> Speak not so  
 As to rejoice thy foe with thy fool's talk,  
 And let him learn that thou hast not the wisdom  
 To furnish speech with knowledge from thy brains.  
 If thy trust is in words that profit not  
 Thou mak'st default in soul and wisdom too.  
 He that shall call thee wicked, then acknowledge  
 Thee to be world-lord, should not sit before thee,  
 And order matters whether great or small.  
 Think not in future of such messages  
 Or thou wilt cause thy foemen to rejoice.  
 My state hath been appointed me by God ;  
 My hopes are set upon the other world,  
 And thou by these thy charges which are lies  
 Wilt gain no glory in the nobles' eyes.' "

C. 2031

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P. and T,

## § 2

*How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí*

"Now will I make full answer that thou mayst  
 Repeat my words in public. They will serve  
 As my memorial when I am gone—  
 A truthful statement of my case—and thou  
 Wilt know, when I reveal my grief and travail,  
 That all my treasures were derived from toil.  
 Thou speakest in the first place of Hurmuzd,  
 His anger with me, and those bygone days :  
 My father's wrath against us was aroused  
 By slanderer's words and thus confusion came.  
 When I had learned what occupied his thoughts  
 I left Írán by night, avoiding roads.  
 He sought my death by poison ; I perceived  
 No antidote but flight and so I fled,  
 And was not taken in the net of bale.  
 I heard that ill had come upon the Sháh,  
 And quitted Barda' when the news arrived.  
 That knave Bahrám Chúbína with his troops  
 Opposed us on the battlefield. I fled  
 From him too on the day of fight that I  
 Might fall not in his clutches. Afterwards  
 I came a second time and bravely fought,  
 My troublous fortune passed away and all  
 The realm that I had lost returned to me.  
 My contest with him was no brief affair ;  
 The whole world were spectators of the strife.  
 By the command of God who multiplieth  
 His benefits on us, and is the Guide  
 In good and ill, Írán and Turkistán<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Túrán in the text.

C. 2032

Submitted and Bahrá'm Chúbína's plans  
Were foiled. Released from war with him I hasted,  
First, to take vengeance for my father's death.  
Bandwí and Gustaham, my mother's brothers,  
Men that had not a peer in any land,  
Had risked their lives for me and were all mine  
In love as well as kinship, but there were  
My father's death and mine own grief thereat ;  
I was not sluggish to avenge his blood.  
I lopped Bandwí both hand and foot for he  
Had made the Sháh's place dark, while Gustaham,  
Who disappeared and sought some distant nook,  
Was slain all unawares by my command :  
Those murderers' lives and aims all came to naught.  
Next, as to what thou said'st of thine own case,  
Of thine own strait confinement and affairs ;  
It was to keep my sons from evil deeds  
That would recoil upon themselves. Ye were  
Not straitly bound in prison, not misprized,  
And had no harm to fear. I did not then  
Treat you with scorn but held my treasury  
At your disposal, acting as the Sháhs  
Had done before, not idly or without  
A precedent. Chase, minstrelsy, and polo—  
All that befitteth chiefs—were yours at will,  
With hawks and cheetahs, jewels and dínárs.  
Your so called prison was a palace where  
Ye lived in joy. I dreaded thee moreover  
Through what the readers of the stars had said.  
That was the cause of thine imprisonment  
That thou mightst do us naught of injury—  
The very injury that thou art doing.  
I never parted with thy horoscope  
Till I had sealed and given it to Shírfn.  
When I had reigned for six and thirty years,  
And thou past doubt amidst such pleasant days

Gav'st all the matter to the wind, although  
 Much time had passed o'er us, there came to thee  
 A letter out of Hindústán but not  
 Without my cognizance. The chief of Rájás  
 Sent us a letter, jewels, divers stuffs,  
 An Indian scimitar, white elephant,  
 And all that I could hope for in the world,  
 And with the scimitar was gold brocade  
 With all varieties of gems uncut.  
 To thee the letter was on painted silk ;  
 So when I saw the Indian script I called  
 An Indian scribe, a fluent, heedful speaker,  
 Who when he read the Indian Rája's words  
 Wept for the letter ran : ' Live joyfully  
 For thou art worthy both of joy and realm,  
 And on the day of Dai in month Ázar  
 Thou wilt be king and ruler of the world.  
 Thy sire will reign for eight and thirty years,  
 For so the stars ordain. Good times will shine  
 Upon thee ; thou wilt don the crown of greatness.'  
 These words have been fulfilled to me to-day,  
 But we should wash not from our hearts affection.  
 I was aware that fortune had decreed  
 That when thy throne had gained its brilliancy  
 Mine only portion would be toil and pain,  
 And that my bright day would be turned to gloom ;  
 But as I gave, had Faith, made friends, and loved  
 I did not lour by reason of that letter.  
 I gave it, having read it, to Shírín,  
 And pondered much upon it. In her keeping  
 Are both the letter and the horoscope,  
 And no one great or small is ware thereof.  
 If thou wouldst see it make request of her ;  
 Thou haply mayst regard it more or less.  
 I wot that seeing it thou wilt repent,  
 And seek to heal the past. For what thou said'st

C. 2033

Of bonds and of imprisonments, and how  
We have done others hurt, 'tis this world's way,  
And that of former chiefs and kings of kings,  
And if thou know'st it not speak with an archmage ;  
He will enlighten thee thereon and tell thee :—  
' 'Tis ill to keep God's enemy alive.'  
Those that were in our prison were mere divs  
Complained of by the righteous. Neither bloodshed  
Nor utter harshness ever was our trade.  
I shut up criminals and did not hold  
Of small account wrongs done by them to others ;  
But now I hear that thou hast freed these men—  
Men worse than dragons—and for this thou art  
A sinner guilty both in word and deed  
In God's sight. Now that thou art lord be prudent,  
And if thou know'st not how consult the wise.  
Forgive not those that vex thee though thou hopest  
For wealth through them, and what can better bonds  
For one in whom thou seest naught but harm ?  
In talking of my wealth thou hast not shown  
Good sense and wisdom. We have never asked  
For more than toll and tax. When these were paid  
If any were still rich, though men might say  
That they were foes and miscreants of the seed  
Of Áhriman, we thought of God and passed  
Such matters lightly by. From Him I had  
The crown and throne, and they have cost me dear.  
The Maker of the world, the righteous Judge,  
Hath willed this change of fortune. In the world  
His will is paramount, so when He would  
Our minishment we seek not for addition.  
We sought to please our Judge, but by our toils  
Have not evaded His apportionment,  
And when He asketh me I will tell all.  
That Questioner is wiser than thou art,  
And one more potent in all good and ill.

The miscreants that stand before thee now  
 Are not thy friends or kin, and what they say  
 Of me that also will they say of thee  
 Before thy foes. They are but slaves of gold  
 And silver: thou wilt find in them no helper.  
 They have possessed thy heart and there instilled  
 Each fault of mine. Such words as these are not  
 In thy philosophy and will not profit  
 Those miscreants' minds, but I have uttered them  
 For my foes' sake that they who read this letter,  
 Writ in the ancient tongue, may know that lies  
 Lack lustre even from the mouths of Sháhs.  
 'Twill be too a memorial in the world,  
 A consolation to the man of wisdom,  
 And after our decease whoe'er shall read  
 These words of ours will learn our policy.  
 I gathered armies from Bartás and Chín,  
 And everywhere appointed generals,  
 Then made attacks upon mine enemies  
 Till none dared raise his head. When they were  
     scattered  
 Our treasures were all filled. The whole land toiled  
 For us, and from the sea so many gems  
 Were brought us that the shipmen grew weary.  
 Plain, sea, and mountain, all were mine. Now when  
 The treasury of drachms had been expended  
 The coffers were refilled with new dinárs,  
 With precious stones and royal jewelry,  
 As well as clothes and implements of war,  
 And when our crown was twenty-six years old  
 Our treasures were rich with many gems.  
 I struck a new die for my drachms and turned  
 To joy and merriment. That year when I  
 Had ta'en account I found the total sum  
 Ten million of dinárs. Paidáwasís,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. vii., p. 95 note.

C. 2035

In Persian reckoning, I spent and squandered.  
 Each purse contained twelve thousand in *dínárs*,  
 And those thus spent were royal, while besides  
 The tribute and *dínárs* from Hindústán,  
 The realm of Rúm and land of sorcerers ;  
 Besides from every province gifts and tribute  
 From all the sovereigns and potentates ;  
 Besides New Year and Autumn offerings,  
 The gifts of horses and of fair-faced slaves ;  
 Besides cuirasses, helmets, axes, swords,  
 Which every one sent to us liberally ;  
 Besides musk, camphor, sables, beaver-skins,  
 Red weasels' and white wolves', our subjects all  
 Set suchlike loads upon their beasts and sought  
 Our court in haste ; none was recalcitrant.  
 Abundant toil of all sorts have we spent  
 To amass a treasure—one additional  
 To those known as Khuzrá and as 'Arús,<sup>1</sup>  
 Reserved by me against an evil day.  
 We long discussed what name the hoard should have,  
 And in the end we called it Bád Áwar.<sup>2</sup>  
 Thus in my six and twentieth year of reign  
 Heaven till the eight and thirtieth favoured me ;  
 My chieftains were all safe, my foes all quaked,  
 And now I hear that thou art sovereign—  
 An evil juncture this for all the world,  
 Which reft of pleasure must perforce be mute.  
 Thou wilt make earth calamitous, fulfilled  
 With suffering and profitless. Moreover,  
 Those same injurious persons that surround thee,  
 And are the Light<sup>3</sup> of thy dark nights, will give  
 Thy throne up to the wind that thou mayst not  
 Enjoy the world. Were there with thee a sage,  
 So that thy darkened mind might be illumed,  
 Thou wouldst not do amiss in giving gifts

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 406.<sup>2</sup> *Id.*<sup>3</sup> Urmuzd in text.

So that thy wealth might reach the poor. My son,  
 Whose days are few, whose wisdom is but scant!  
 Solicitude will rob thy soul of joy.  
 This know, that these our treasures are thy stay;  
 The opportunity is in thy grasp.  
 They are the appanage of royalty;  
 A world that is all moneyless is lost.  
 A pauper Sháh will be unjust, and he  
 Whose hand is empty hath no strength or worth.  
 Without the means of largess he by all  
 Will be declared a fraud and not a Sháh.  
 Moreover, if thy riches reach thy foes,  
 And all the idols come to Brahmans' hands,  
 The worshippers will turn from God, thy name  
 And fame be spurned. If thou art treasureless  
 Thou wilt not have an army, and thy subjects  
 Will hail thee not as Sháh. The dog is good  
 At begging bread, but if thou fillest him  
 He threateneth thy life. Again, thou said'st  
 About my strategy that I have stationed  
 The troops along the roads, and blamest me  
 Through ignorance, not knowing gain from loss.  
 The answer is that by my toil I gathered  
 My splendid treasures, captured foreign cities,  
 And shattered all my foes that we might sit  
 Without vexation, toil, or injury  
 In peace upon the pleasant throne. I scattered  
 My horse about the frontier, and (to show  
 The difference 'twixt the worthless and the worthy)  
 When thou recall'st the troops from every side  
 The foe will see the road clear, for Írán  
 Is like a garden in the jocund Spring,  
 Whose happy blossoms never fail to flower,  
 A garden of pomegranate and narcissus,  
 Of apples and of quince; but when the orchard  
 Becometh void of men the enemy

Will root up all the marjoram and snap  
 All branches of pomegranate and of quince.  
 Írán's walls are its troops and gear of war,  
 Its thorns all arrows on its battlements,  
 And if in wantonness thou flingest down  
 The garden-wall the garden is as waste,  
 As sea or upland. Cast not down its wall  
 Or thou wilt break the Íránians' hearts and backs,  
 For then will raid and ravage, horsemen's shouts,  
 And all the incidents of war ensue.  
 Expose not thou our children, wives, and land  
 To trouble: let but one such year elapse,  
 And sages will describe thee as a fool.  
 Now I have heard that thou dost give high place  
 To men unworthy. Know that Núshírwán,  
 Son of Kubád,<sup>1</sup> recorded in his Letter  
 Of Counsel that whoe'er doth give his arms  
 To foes doth give himself to slaughtering,  
 Since, when he asketh back those arms for use,  
 The enemy will fight.<sup>2</sup> As for the message  
 Of Cæsar, which hath made thee call me heartless,  
 And self-willed, thou recallest not the facts;  
 Thy words were prompted by some counsellor.  
 As for my tyranny and his good faith,  
 Canst thou discern good faith from tyranny?  
 Receive mine answer, thou of little wit!  
 But let me say withal, as is but right,  
 Thou art the plaintiff and the witness too—  
 A thing no man of wisdom would allow.  
 When Cæsar washed off from his face the dust  
 Of bale he chose me as his son-in-law  
 For valour's sake. Whoever walketh not  
 The earth for ill, and hath some share of wisdom  
 Within him, knoweth that Bahráw Chúbína  
 Began the feud and that the Íránians

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P. and T.      <sup>2</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 27.

Took sides with him. The Rúmans did not triumph  
 O'er him; the drifting sand can not bind fast  
 The mountain! But in that fight God vouchsafed  
 To aid me, and the armies of the world  
 Were naught to me. The Íránians have heard  
 Of those events, and thou shouldst hear from them.  
 As for myself, I did whate'er I could,  
 Upon the day of fight, for Niyátús  
 With kindness and with magnanimity,  
 But have not reckoned that day's recompense,  
 And Farrukhzád will tell thee just the same:  
 Look not upon the world with boyish eyes.  
 Gashasp, who was our treasurer, can tell,  
 And that good archimage, our minister,  
 That I bestowed upon the Rúman troops  
 A hundred thousand purses from our treasures.  
 I gave to Niyátús a thousand nuggets,  
 With earrings and red gold. Each nugget's weight  
 Was as a thousand treasury-miskáls  
 I reckoned. I bestowed on him withal  
 Fine watered pearls that experts had found flawless,  
 And every one worth thirty thousand drachms  
 To jewellers, and five score noble steeds,  
 Selected from my stables—fifty saddled,  
 The others very choice, housed in brocade,  
 Mates for the wind upon the waste. I sent  
 All these to Cæsar with my thanks withal.  
 For what thou said'st about the Cross of Christ,  
 That bit of old wood flung among my treasures—  
 A matter of no loss or gain to me—  
 Thou hast been listening to some Christian's talk.  
 I mused that one like Cæsar, great and mighty,  
 Surrounded as he is by learned men—  
 Philosophers and potentates and priests—  
 Should call one that was executed God!  
 While as for this dry, rotten wood, if this

Mere useless Cross were God 'twould be Urmuzd,  
 Whose name we give to every month's first day,  
 And would have vanished from our treasury  
 As Christ himself departed from the world.  
 Again for what thou said'st : ' Make thine excuse,  
 Amend thy conduct and ensue God's path,'  
 I answer : ' May the two hands of Kubád,  
 His feet and lips and tongue rot ! It was God  
 Who placed the crown upon my head : I took,  
 And revelled in the gift. I have returned it  
 Since He demanded it. What next I wonder ?  
 To Him will I confess, not to a boy  
 Scarce able to distinguish good and ill.'  
 All that God doth is welcome unto me  
 Though I have seen much woe and bitterness.  
 For eight and thirty years have I been Sháh,  
 And none among the kings hath been my peer.  
 He that bestowed this world on me may give  
 Another but will have no thanks of mine !  
 I will pronounce a blessing on the realm :—  
 ' May earth be ever teeming with the wise.'  
 So long as God shall help and succour us  
 None will dare curse."

C. 2038

Then said he to Kharrád :—  
 " O Memory of the great ones of the world !  
 Say to that foolish and impetuous boy :—  
 ' The lustre of our countenance is dimmed :  
 Farewell to thee for ever. As for me,  
 May all our converse be henceforth with sages.'  
 As for yourselves, illustrious messengers,  
 Ye Persians eloquent and eminent !  
 To both of you I also bid farewell.  
 Say nothing but the words that ye have heard.  
 I give my blessing to the world at large,  
 Which we have looked on as a passing thing.  
 All mother-born must die—whome'er thou hast

In mind—Khusrau Parwíz back to Kubád.  
 So too Húshang, Jamshíd, and Tahmúras—  
 To all the world the founts of fear and hope—  
 Whom dív and beast acknowledged, passed and died  
 When their day ended. Farídún, the blest,  
 Who banned ill, close or open, from the world,  
 And stayed Zakhák the Arab's hand from evil,  
 Scaped not by bravery the clutch of fate.  
 So was it with Árish whose arrow's flight  
 Was one farsang;<sup>1</sup> victorious Káran,  
 The capturer of cities; Kai Kubád,  
 Who having come from Mount Alburz became  
 Through manhood world-lord over all the folk,  
 And built himself a world-famed house of crystal,<sup>2</sup>  
 Adorned with lustrous pearls and gates of gems.<sup>3</sup>  
 So was it with Káuś, that man of might,  
 Who took the world by skill and policy,  
 He that adventured toward the sky above,  
 Unwitting of the processes of time;  
 So too with Siyáwush, that lion famed,  
 Who slew two tigers in his youthful days,<sup>4</sup>  
 And built Gang-dizh<sup>5</sup> with toil but gat therefrom  
 No treasure. Where are now Afrásiyáb,  
 The Turkman king, whose semblance e'en in dream  
 None seeth; where Rustam, Zál, Asfandiyár,  
 Whose fame is their memorial with us;  
 Gúdarz and his choice sons, three score and ten,  
 Those cavaliers upon the riding-ground,  
 And lions of the fray; where Kai Khusrau,  
 The noble lion-man who in the fight  
 Made lions prisoners; and Sháh Gushtásp,  
 The convert to 'The Good Faith,' he by whom

<sup>1</sup> Much further according to the legend. See Vol. v., p. 12.

<sup>2</sup> This is attributed to Kai Káuś elsewhere. See Vol. ii., pp. 81, 101.

<sup>3</sup> This line occurs three couplets too low in C.

<sup>4</sup> This is not mentioned elsewhere in the poem.

<sup>5</sup> See Vol. ii., pp. 189, 279.

C. 2039

Grace was renewed ; where went renowned Sikandar,  
 Who overturned the world, and where Jámásp,  
 Who shone in astrologië lore more brightly  
 Than Sol or Venus ? Where is that famed Sháh,  
 Bahrán Gúr, matchless in his strength and courage ?  
 No Sháh was like him in munificence ;  
 The turning heaven dared not to touch his head.  
 Where is that Sháh, my grandsire, bright of soul  
 Who ruled the world as Kisrá Núshírwán ?  
 Where are the seven and forty world-lords ?<sup>1</sup> Gone  
 Is all their work, gone are the Great and Wise,  
 The warrior-horsemen and the men of lore,  
 These passing those in prowess and those these  
 In years ? They all have left this spacious world,  
 Left palace, hall, and riding-ground. Midst Sháhs,  
 Though some were older far, I had no peer.  
 I walked the world for good and ill, and held  
 The evil day aloof. 'Twas mine to traverse  
 Full many a ruggéd path and sweep away  
 Full many a foe. My treasures fill all lands ;  
 Where earth and water are my toil is seen.  
 When with me too the world shall cease, and all  
 The nobles' hopes grow dim, with my son also  
 The throne will not abide, for he will quit it,  
 And all his fortune end. What time the angel  
 That taketh souls approacheth I shall say :—  
 'Take my soul gently.' I will clear my heart  
 By penitence, and freedom from offence  
 Shall be my breastplate. Well have men of wisdom,  
 Good, veteran, learned, declared : 'If wakeful fortune  
 Decline one must expect fears manifold,  
 And he whose day of greatness hath gone by

<sup>1</sup> Khusrau Parwíz was only the forty-third Sháh. Perhaps some, who never became Sháhs, such as Siyáwush and Asfandiyár, are included, or it may be that the author of this defence (see p. 4) wrote from his own point of view, not that of the supposed speaker.

Is foolish if he asketh its return.  
 This is my message to the world, to mean  
 And mighty too : ere long the Sháh and all  
 His famous troops will fall to slaughtering  
 Each other and fling fire on field and fell ;  
 Then sires will fall by sons and sons by sires ;  
 Our enemies, the people that discoursed  
 Of evil deeds and chilling words, will pay  
 The smart when we are gone and not for long  
 Enjoy the world. Since rule and greatness end  
 With me what reck if Lion or another  
 Shall have the sway ? ”

Ashtád and brave Kharrád,  
 Son of Barzín, those sages, when they heard  
 The message of that leader, were heart-pierced,  
 And smote their heads. Both sorrowed for their  
 words ;

They buffeted their faces, rent their robes  
 In grief, and scattered dust upon their heads.  
 Those ancients fared forth from his presence, weeping,  
 In anguish, with their hearts all arrow-points.  
 With furrowed faces and in sore distress  
 They went before Shírwí and every whit  
 To that man brainless and incompetent  
 Detailed the message that the Sháh had sent.

C. 2040

## § 3

*How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the  
 Chiefs were displeased thereat*

Shírwí wept bitterly on hearing this ;  
 His heart quaked for the crown and throne, and when  
 The company dispersed that had dismayed him

With foul words clamouring for his father's blood,  
 And burning the youth's heart, he left the throne  
 Of kingship, clasped with honoured hands his head,  
 And wept blood on his breast. News of that weeping  
 And of the lamentation of the king,  
 Came to the host and all were in dismay.  
 They met, discussed Khusrau Parwíz, and cried :—  
 " If he shall sit upon the throne again  
 He will disgrace the captains of the host."

Whenas the sun rose o'er the darksome hills  
 The malcontents awoke and went to court.  
 The Sháh, on hearing of it, took his seat  
 Upon the throne, and those of high degree,  
 Akin or alien, approached the presence.  
 They took their seats with scowls but no one spoke.  
 The king said : " Gibbeting is the desert  
 Of him that mourneth not my father's woes.  
 I call such misbegotten and a knave.  
 Let none depend on such because that man  
 Is rottener than a rotten willow-tree."

He gat this answer from the men in fault :—  
 " Call whosoever saith : ' I serve two Sháhs '  
 A fool at heart and vile whate'er his rank."

Shírwí rejoined : " For Sháhs no wealth no troops !  
 For one month we will utter pleasant words,  
 And give no hint of duress to my sire ;  
 He may make statements that will gladden us  
 Because his treasures are in every coast."

C. 2041 On hearing this they rose to seek their homes.  
 Then Sháh Shírwí gave orders to the cooks :—  
 " Let nothing be denied Khusrau Parwíz :  
 Serve up his food upon a golden service,  
 And let the food itself be rich and grateful."

The servers brought it but he would not eat  
 The viands that were proffered, hot or cold.  
 Shírwí's hand brought to him all that he ate

Because she sorrowed with him in his grief.  
 She was his sole good friend and soothed his woes  
 Both day and night, shared all his hopes and fears,  
 And quaked for him like willow in the wind.  
 A month passed and meanwhile Khusrau Parwíz  
 Was full of pain and anguish night and day,  
 His faults and crimes recalled to memory,  
 And little relish of that life had he.

## § 4

*How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own  
 Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music*

Now list the lamentation of Bárbad,<sup>1</sup>  
 And grow forgetful of the world at large.  
 On hearing that the Sháh, not by advice  
 And 'gainst his will, no longer filled the throne,  
 That "men are seeking how to murder him ;  
 The soldiers are renouncing fealty,"  
 Bárbad came from Chahram to Taisafún  
 With tearful eyes and heart o'ercharged ; he came  
 To that abode and saw the Sháh whereat  
 His tulip-checks became like fenugreek.  
 He bode awhile in presence of the Sháh,  
 Then went with wailing to the audience-hall.  
 His love flamed in his heart, his heart and soul  
 Burned in his anguish for Khusrau Parwiz ;  
 His eyes rained like a cloud in Spring and made  
 His bosom as the margent of the sea.  
 He fashioned him a dirge upon the harp,  
 And to that dirge he sang a mournful plaint.

<sup>1</sup> For the story of Bárbad see Vol. viii., p. 396 seq.

With visage wan and heart fulfilled with grief  
He thus lamented in the olden tongue :—

“ O Sháh ! O noble chieftain ! O Khusrau !  
O great ! O strong ! O hero ne’er cast down !  
Where are thy mastery and greatness now,  
Where all thy Grace, thy fortune, and thy crown ?

“ Where that imperial circlet, towering height ?  
Where are thine armlets and thine ivory throne ?  
Where all thy manliness, thy Grace, and might,  
Who ’neath thy wings hadst this world for thine  
own ?

“ Oh ! whither are thy dames and minstrels gone,  
Gate, audience-hall, and leaders of thy day,  
C. 2042 The diadem and Káwa’s gonfalon,  
And all the blue-steel falchions, where are they ?

“ Where are the head, the crown that loved it well—  
Mate of the earrings and the throne of gold ?  
Where are Shabdíz, his stirrups and his sell—  
The steed that ’neath thee ever caracol’d ?

“ Where are thy helmet, head, and habergeon  
All golden and compacted gem to gem,  
Thy cavaliers in gold caparison,  
Whose swords made enemies the sheaths for them ?

“ Where all the camels for thy progresses,  
The golden litters and attendance rife,  
Led steeds, white elephants, and dromedaries ?  
Have one and all grown hopeless of thy life ?

“Where are thy fluent tongue and courteous,  
 Thy heart, thy purpose, and thine ardent soul ?  
 Why reft of all art thou abandoned thus ?  
 Hast read of such a day in any roll ?

“Oh ! trust not to this world whose remedy  
 Is weaker than its bane. ’Twas thy desire  
 To have a son to aid and succour thee :  
 Now through the son the gyves are on the sire !

“It is by sons that kings obtain their might,  
 And are unblemished by time’s travailings ;  
 Yet ever as his sons increased in height  
 Both Grace and vigour failed the king of kings.

“None that shall lend an ear while men recall  
 The story of Khusrau Parwíz must dare  
 To trust the world. Account as ruined all  
 Írán and as the pards’ and lions’ lair.

“Of the Sásánian race the Sháh was head—  
 One peerless in the sight of crown and state :  
 The foeman’s wishes are accomplishéd,  
 And, like Írán, the race is desolate.

“No man possessed a larger host than he,  
 Yet who had cause for justice to beseech ?  
 The great protector brought the misery,  
 And now the wolves are making for the breach !

“‘O Sháh devoid of shame !’ thus tell Shírwí,  
 ‘Such conduct is not worthy of this court.  
 Count not upon thy troops’ fidelity  
 When war is rife on all sides.’ God support

“Thy soul, my master! and it is my prayer  
 That He thy foemen’s heads may headlong fling.  
 By God and by thy life, my king! I swear  
 By New Year’s Day, by sun, and jocund Spring,

“If e’er this hand of mine again shall turn  
 To harping may no blessing light on me;  
 Mine instruments of music will I burn  
 That I may ne’er behold thine enemy.”

He cut four fingers off and grasped the stumps  
 Within his other palm. Returning home  
 He kindled fire and burned his instruments,  
 While those about Kubád both day and night  
 At all that might befall them quaked with fright.

## § 5

*How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of  
 Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr  
 Hurmuzd*

- C. 2043 Shírwí, a timid, inexperienced youth,  
 Found that the throne beneath him was a snare,  
 While readers of mankind saw that ’twas time  
 For men of might. Those that had done the ill,  
 And had produced that coil, went from the hall  
 Of audience to the presence of Kubád  
 To mind him of their infamous designs:—  
 “We said before and now we say again  
 Thy thoughts are not on government alone.  
 There are two Sháhs now seated in one room,  
 One on the throne and one on its degree,

And when relations grow 'twixt sire and son  
They will behead the servants one and all.  
It may not be, so speak of it no more."

Shírwí was frightened and he played poltroon  
Because in their hands he was as a slave.  
He answered : " None will bring him to the toils  
Except a man whose name is infamous.  
Ye must go homeward and advise thereon.  
Inquire : ' What man is there that will abate  
Our troubles secretly ? ' "

The Sháh's<sup>1</sup> ill-wishers

Sought for a murderer to murder him  
By stealth, but none possessed the pluck or courage  
To shed the blood of such a king and hang  
A mountain round his own neck. Everywhere  
The Sháh's foes sought until they met with one  
Blue-eyed, pale-cheeked, his body parched and hairy,  
With lips of lapis-lazuli, with feet  
All dust, and belly ravenous ; the head  
Of that ill-doer was bare. None knew his name  
Midst high and low. This villain (may he never  
See jocund Paradise !) sought Farrukhzád,  
And undertook the deed. " This strife is mine,"  
He said. " If ye will make it worth my while  
This is my quarry."

" Go and do it then

" If thou art able," Farrukhzád replied.  
" Moreover open not thy lips herein.  
I have a purse full of dínárs for thee,  
And I will look upon thee as my son."

He gave the man a dagger keen and bright,  
And then the murderer set forth in haste.  
The miscreant, when he approached the Sháh,  
Saw him upon the throne, a slave attending.  
Khusrau Parwíz quaked when he saw that man,

<sup>1</sup> Khusrau Parwíz.

And shed tears from his eyelids on his cheeks  
 Because his heart bare witness that the day  
 Of heaviness was near. He cried : " O wretch !  
 What is thy name ? Thy mother needs must wail  
 thee."

The man replied : " They call me Mihr Hurmuzd,  
 A stranger here with neither friend nor mate."

Thus said Khusrau Parwíz : " My time hath come,  
 And by the hand of an unworthy foe,  
 Whose face is not a man's, whose love none seeketh."

He bade a boy attending him : " Go fetch,  
 My little guide ! an ewer, water, musk,  
 And ambergris, with cleaner, fairer robes."

The boy-slave heard, unwitting what was meant,  
 And so the little servant went away,  
 And brought a golden ewer to the Sháh  
 As well as garments and a bowl of water,  
 Whereon Khusrau Parwíz made haste to go,  
 Gazed on the sacred twigs and muttered prayers :  
 It was no time for words or private talk.  
 The Sháh put on the garments brought, he made  
 Beneath his breath confession of his faults,  
 And wrapped a new simarre about his head  
 In order not to see his murderer's face.  
 Then Mihr Hurmuzd, the dagger in his hand,  
 Made fast the door and coming quickly raised  
 The great king's robe and pierced his liverstead.

Such is the process of this whirling world,  
 From thee its secret keeping closely furl'd !  
 The blameless speaker and the boastful see  
 That all its doings are but vanity,  
 For be thou wealthy or in evil case  
 This Wayside Inn is no abiding-place ;  
 Yet be offenceless and ensue right ways  
 If thou desirest to receive just praise.

When tidings reached the highways and bázárs ;—

“ Khusrau Parwīz was slaughtered thus,” his foes  
 Went to the palace-prison of the sad,  
 Where fifteen of his noble sons were bound,  
 And slew them there, though innocent, what time  
 The fortune of the Sháh was overthrown.  
 Shīrwī, the world-lord, dared say naught and hid  
 His grief though he wept sorely at the news,  
 And afterwards sent twenty of his guards  
 To keep his brothers’ wives and children safe  
 Now that the Shah had been thus done to death.

C. 2045

So passed that reign and mighty host away,  
 Its majesty, its manhood, and its sway  
 Such as no kings of kings possessed before,  
 Or heard of from the men renowned of yore.  
 It booteth nothing what the wise man saith  
 When once his head is in the dragon’s breath.  
 Call this world “ crocodile ” for it doth gnaw  
 The prey that it hath taken with its claw.  
 The work of Sháh Khusrau Parwīz is done ;  
 His famous hoards and throne and host are gone.  
 To put one’s trust in this world is to be  
 In quest of dates upon a willow-tree.  
 Why err in such a fashion from the way  
 Alike by darksome night and shining day ?  
 Whate’er thy gains let them suffice thee still  
 As thou art fain to save thy soul from ill,  
 And in thy day of strength hold thyself weak ;  
 For kindly impulses and justice seek,  
 And be intent on good. For what is thine  
 To give or spend do as thou dost incline ;  
 All else is pain and toil. How goodlier  
 Than we are friends whose faithfulness is clear !  
 Such faithfulness of friends is greatly dear.

## § 6

*How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín  
killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain*

Since I have ended with Khusrau Parwíz  
I speak next of Shírwí and of Shírín.

As soon as three and fifty days had passed  
Since that whereon that glorious Sháh was slain  
Shírwí dispatched Shírín a messenger  
To say : "Thou wicked, potent sorceress,  
Learned but in necromancy and black arts !  
In all Írán thou art the guiltiest.  
By necromancy didst thou gain the Sháh,  
And by thy craft thou bringest down the moon.  
Quake, guilty one ! and come to me. Abide not  
Thus in thy palace, joyful and secure."

Shírín raged at his message and abuse  
So foul and senseless. Thus she said : "God grant  
That parricides possess not Grace or presence.  
I will not see the wretch e'en from afar  
At funeral or feast."

That mournful dame

Sent for a scribe and had a document  
Drawn in the olden tongue, instructing him  
Regarding her last wishes and estate.  
She kept a little poison in a pyx ;  
She could not well procure it in the city.  
She kept it on her, sewed a winding-sheet  
To wrap her form—that cypress of the garden—  
And then returned this answer to Shírwí :—  
"Exalted Sháh, the wearer of the crown !  
Now perish all thy words and perish too  
The villain's heart and spirit that hath heard

Of witchcraft save by name and joyed therein.  
 Had Sháh Khusrau Parwiz been one to cheer  
 His soul with sorcery there would have been  
 A sorceress within his bower, and she  
 Had seen his face.<sup>1</sup> He kept me for his pleasure,  
 And when the dawn was peeping he was wont  
 To call me from the golden bower and joy  
 At sight of me. Shame on thee for such words !  
 Such knavish talk becometh not a king.  
 Remember God, the Giver of all good,  
 And utter not such words in others' hearing."

They brought the answer to the Sháh. Shírwí  
 Raged 'gainst the guiltless dame<sup>2</sup> and said : "Thou  
 needs

Must come. None is blood-thirstier than thou.  
 Come and behold my crown's top. If it be  
 Magnificent then do it reverence."

Shírín, on hearing this, was full of pain ;  
 She writhed ; her cheeks grew wan. She thus  
 replied :—

"I will not come to thee save in the presence  
 Of those wise men that are about thy court,  
 Men of experience and clerkly skill."

Shírwí dispatched and summoned fifty men  
 Both wise and old, then sent one to Shírín,  
 To say : "Arise and come. Enough of talk."

Thereat she robed herself in blue and black,  
 And drew anear the Sháh, approached apace  
 The Rosary of Revellers<sup>3</sup>—the spot  
 Wherein those fluent Persians were—and sat  
 Behind the great king's curtain as became

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

<sup>2</sup> So far as the charge of witchcraft was concerned. Shírín (Vol. viii., p. 389) had murdered Maryam, Kubád's mother.

<sup>3</sup> "elle alla droit à la salle de fête de Schadegân." Mohl or, more strictly, Barbier de Meynard, who completed the translation from §4 to the end of the poem.

The virtuous. He sent to her to say :—

“Two months<sup>1</sup> of mourning for Khusrau Parwíz  
Are o'er. Now be my wife that thou mayst take  
Thy pleasure and avoid a mean estate.  
I will maintain thee as my father did,  
And e'en with more respect and tenderness.”

Shírín replied : “Let me be righted first,  
And then my life shall be at thy dispose.  
I will not hesitate in answering  
The hest and purpose of thy glorious heart.”

C. 2047 Shírwí agreed to that fair dame's request,  
Whereat the noble lady raised her voice  
Behind the royal curtains, saying : “O Sháh !  
Be happy and victorious. Thou said'st  
That I was a bad woman and a witch,  
Remote from purity and rectitude.”

Shírwí replied : “'Twas so, but generous folk  
Do not take dudgeon at mere hastiness.”

Shírín addressed the other Persians present  
Within the Rosary of Revellers,  
And asked : “What have ye seen in me of ill,  
Guile, folly, and dark ways ? For many a year  
I was the mistress of Írán and helped  
The Brave in everything. I ne'er ensued  
Aught but the right ; fraud and deceit I banned.  
Through my word many were made governors,  
And took their portions of the world full oft.  
Who hath beheld my shadow in Írán  
Away from home ? If any one hath marked  
My shadow, crown, and state let such declare  
What he hath seen or heard and by his answer  
Reveal the truth.”

The magnates in attendance  
All spake her fair. “In all the world,” they said,  
“She hath no peer in public and in private.”

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

Shírín proceeded thus : " Ye lords and chiefs  
 Both veteran and redoubted ! three things make  
 The worth of women that bedeck the throne  
 Of greatness : one is modesty and wealth  
 Wherewith her husband may adorn his house ;  
 The next is bearing blessed sons, that she  
 May e'en exceed her spouse in happiness ;  
 The third is having beauty and fine form,  
 Joined with the love of a sequestered life.  
 When I was mated to Khusrau Parwíz,  
 And entered on seclusion, he had come  
 Weak and dispirited from Rúm to live  
 Within our land, but after reached such power  
 As none had heard of or had looked upon.  
 Moreover I have had four sons by him  
 To his great joy—Nastúr, Shahryár, Farúd,  
 And Mardánsháh, blue heaven's coronal.  
 Jamshíd and Farídún had not such sons ;  
 May my tongue perish if I lie herein !  
 Their bodies all are now beneath the dust,  
 Their spirits roaming in pure Paradise."

Unveiling then her lovely countenance,  
 And musky hair, " There is my face," she added,  
 " Such as it is. If there be falsehood show it.  
 My hair was all my hidden excellence,  
 For none on earth e'er used to look thereon.  
 What I display is all my sorcery,  
 Not necromancy, fraud, and evil bent."

None had beheld her hair before, no chief  
 Had heard thereof. The elders were astound,  
 And their mouths watered. When Shírwí beheld  
 The visage of Shírín his spirit flew  
 Unmarked away from him. Her face so dazed him  
 That love of her filled all his heart. He cried :—  
 " I want none but thyself. If I have thee  
 For wife Írán can give me nothing more.

I will not go from thy commands, but limn  
My loyalty to thee upon mine eyes."

The lady of the lovely face replied :—

" I still need somewhat of the Íránian king.  
I have two wants if thou wilt bid me speak,  
And may thy king of kingship last for ever."

Shírwí replied : " My soul is thine, thy wish,  
Whate'er it be, is granted."

Said Shírín :—

" All treasures laid up by me in this land  
Thou shalt assign me as mine own before  
This noble company and write thyself  
Upon this roll that thou renouncest all,  
Both small and great."

Shírwí made haste to do  
Her bidding. Having gained her wish she quitted  
The Rosary of Revellers, the chiefs  
And noble Persians, went home, freed her slaves,  
And made them happy with that wealth of hers  
Whereof she gave a part to mendicants,  
And to her family a larger share.  
She gave too somewhat to the Fanes of Fire,  
The feasts of New Year's Day and Mihr and Sada,  
To ruined homes and caravansarais  
Then turned to lions' lairs. All this she gave  
As offerings from Khusrau Parwíz, the world-lord,  
And joyed his soul thereby. She sought the garden  
And taking off her veil sat unadorned  
Upon the ground and summoning her folk  
Assigned with courtesy a place to each,  
Then cried thus loudly : " Hear, ye unaggrieved !  
For none will ever see my face again.  
Fear ye the Judge of those that seek for justice,  
The Lighter of the sun and moon and stars,  
And speak but truth ; deceit is not for sages.  
Since first I came before Khusrau Parwíz,

First made mine entry to his golden bower,  
 And was chief wife and Glory of the Sháh,  
 Hath any fault at all appeared in me ?  
 There is no need to speak to save my face :  
 What booteth that to woman in her need ? ”

All rose to make reply : “ Famed dame of dames, C. 2049  
 So eloquent and wise and bright of soul !  
 By God ! none ever saw thee, ever heard  
 Thy voice behind the curtains. Verily  
 Thy like hath sat not on the goodly throne  
 Since Sháh Húshang.”

Then all the servitors,  
 Slaves emulous and vigilant of heart,  
 Exclaimed : “ Exalted lady praised in Chín,  
 In Rúm and in Taráz ! who would presume  
 To speak aught ill of thee ? Could evil-doing  
 Befit that face of thine ? ”

Thus said Shírfn :—  
 “ This reprobate, whom heaven above will curse,  
 Slew his own sire to compass crown and throne,  
 And may he never more see fortune’s face !  
 Hath he himself shut death out by a wall  
 Who lightly recked thus of a father’s blood ?  
 He sent a message to me that bedimmed  
 Mine own shrewd soul. I answered : ‘ While I live  
 My heart shall serve my Maker.’ I declared  
 My purpose fully, fearful of my foe :  
 He may defame me publicly when dead.  
 Ye are free agents and my slaves no longer.”

They wept much at her words and furthermore  
 Consumed with anguish for Khusrau Parwíz.  
 Informants went before the Sháh and told  
 What they had heard about that guiltless dame.  
 He asked : “ Hath that good lady further wishes ? ”

She sent to say : “ I have one wish, no more :  
 I fain would ope the late Sháh’s charnel-house ;

I have a great desire to look on him."

Shírwí replied: "So do, 'tis natural."

The keeper oped the door. That pious lady

Began her wailing, went and laid her face

Upon the visage of Khusrau Parwíz,

Spake of the pást and took the mortal bane :<sup>1</sup>

She sent the dust up from her own sweet life.

She sat beside the Sháh with visage veiled,

Clad in a single camphor-scented robe ;

She set her back against the wall and died ;

She died and won the plaudits of the world.

Shírwí fell sick when he had heard the news,

For such a spectacle affrighted him.

He bade construct another sepulchre,

And make her diadem of musk and camphor.

C. 2050 He shut the old Sháh's charnel. Soon they gave

Shírwí the bane ; the world had had its fill

Of Sháhs ! Thus luckless both in birth and death

He left the throne of kingship to his son.

One reigneth seven months and in the eighth

Doth don the camphor crown ! Of earth's good things

To have possession of the throne is best,

Of evils life cut short is evilest.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 36.

## XLV

### ARDSHĪR, SON OF SHĪRWĪ

#### HE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

#### ARGUMENT

Ardshīr's accession is well received by the people. He makes Pírúz, son of Khusrau, the captain of the host. Guráz, on the pretext of avenging Khusrau Parwíz, but really with the intention of seizing the kingship for himself, schemes to bring about the death of the Sháh who is murdered at a banquet by Pírúz.

#### NOTE

Ardshīr (Artaxerxes III., September, A.D. 628—April, A.D. 630) was, according to Tabarí, only seven years old at his accession. By some accounts he was only one year old at the time.<sup>1</sup> He was of course a mere puppet in the hands of the nobles. The "True Cross," if the date of its elevation at Jerusalem—Sept. 14th, A.D. 629—be correct, must have been restored during his reign.<sup>2</sup>

§ 1. The Arabic Tabarí says that the realm was administered by Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp (Mihir 'Hasis in the Persian version), the High Steward, who had charge of the Sháh's person. This may account for his being made out to be a regicide in the Sháhnáma. He really seems to have been a well-intentioned man who did his best in very difficult circumstances. At all events, according to the Persian Tabarí, Shahrbaráz, after taking possession of Ctesiphon, slew him and other nobles on the pretext of avenging the death of Khusrau Parwíz.

---

<sup>1</sup> NT, p. 386. ZT, ii., 347.

<sup>2</sup> NT, p. 392 note.

§ 2. It appears that Shahrbaráz (Guráz) was not consulted when Ardshir was raised to the throne, and he made this an excuse for taking violent measures. The occasion was a favourable one for an ambitious general in command of an army. Moreover, he had an understanding, confirmed by matrimonial alliances, with Heraclius, who no doubt promised to recognise him if he became Sháh. He accordingly marched upon Ctesiphon with 6,000 or, according to another account, 60,000 troops. The High Steward made an attempt at resistance, but Shahrbaráz with the connivance of the captain of the guard and other chiefs was successful and the usual scenes of outrage and massacre ensued.<sup>1</sup>

### § 1

#### *How Ardshír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs*

Now as the next confronting me I voice  
The reign of Sháh Ardshír, I have no choice.

When Sháh Ardshír sat on the throne both young  
And old flocked to him from Írán, for many  
Were chiefs grown old, to hear what he would say.<sup>2</sup>  
The young Ardshír then loosed his tongue and thus  
He spake: "Ye well-tried warriors! may one,  
Whoe'er he be, that sitteth on the seat  
Of sovereignty possess an open mind,  
And worship God. We will ensue the course  
Of former Sháhs, ensue too Grace and Faith.  
May we remember God who giveth good,  
May all our acts be just! I will advance  
The pious and make tyrants bleed. I trust  
The army to Pírúz, son of Khusrau,  
Who loveth equity and loyal lieges.

<sup>1</sup> For the above see *Id.*, p. 386 and notes. ZT, ii., 347. RSM, p. 541

<sup>2</sup> Couplet omitted.

They for their part with such a paladin  
Still will be happy and serene of soul."

Full many were contented with his speech ;  
A peaceful ruler was the wish of each.

## § 2

*How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and  
how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Pírúz, Son of  
Khusrau*

Then tidings reached Guráz, who had involved  
Khusrau Parwíz in sorrow and distress,  
And he dispatched from Rúm a man to say :—  
" The crown of vile Shírwí is in the dust.  
Hell take his soul and be his charnel-house  
O'erturned ! Who ever knew a lofty cypress  
Wrecked in the garden by the grass, and one  
Like to Khusrau Parwíz, whose peer as king  
Time's eye and heart perceive not, who bestowed  
My greatness on me, and I have not turned  
From his behest ? Now fate dethroneth him,  
And fortune's face is utterly averse ;  
The circling heaven is his foe and maketh  
His portion to be hidden in the earth ;  
The sun and moon amerce him of his sway,  
And take the crown and throne from such a king,  
Bestow the sovereignty upon Shírwí,  
And give up all Írán to wretchedness !  
When he passed and Ardshír assumed the crown  
Both young and old rejoiced in him, but I,  
If I have any portion in Írán,  
Will suffer not our country's air to breathe

C. 2051

Upon him. Have I not received the news  
 Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz wrecked by the words  
 Of one of evil mark ? I will not have  
 A king like this one though the age be Sháhless,  
 For there is much contention in his head,  
 And he adviseth with another host.  
 Now will I come in force with chosen chiefs  
 Of Rúm and of Írán, and we shall see  
 What sort of Head that is to whom such schemes  
 Appeal. I will uproot him so that never  
 Shall he name kingship more."

He sent a runner  
 To seek the ancients of the Íránian host,  
 And strove in other fashion to advance  
 His ill designs by writing to Pírúz,  
 Son of Khusrau, thus : " The Sásánians' fortune  
 Is louring and we need a world-aspirant  
 To gird himself for action. Haply thou  
 Art ware of what to do and how to take  
 The needful steps, wilt seek for many helpers,  
 Both young and old, wilt clear away Ardshír,  
 And afterwards attain thy whole desire,  
 Be safe and well contented ; but if thou  
 Reveal this plot, and feed the sword of war  
 With blood, I will lead forth such hosts from Rúm  
 That I shall make the world dark in thine eyes.  
 Heed well my words, and mayst thou think no scorn  
 Of mine intent ; thou must not fall through folly.  
 Oh ! pass not from the throne of majesty  
 To underneath the dust. Repentance then  
 Will not avail thee when in wreak my sword  
 Is reaping heads."

Pírúz, son of Khusrau,  
 When he had read that letter and perceived  
 The whole intendment of that self-willed man,  
 Much pondered on the matter and consulted

The ancient magnates, saying : " This affair  
Hath come upon me unawares and like  
A revelation ! "

This was their reply :—

" Famed and redoubted chieftain ! if our Sháh  
Shall perish we shall rightly perish too  
For such a crime. Let not Guráz' words move thee  
To perpetrate such ill, but take occasion  
For doing good. Write him a fitting answer,  
And wake him from his dream. Say : ' Thwart not  
thou

God's purposes ; give not the Dív a way  
To thine own heart. Reflect upon the case  
Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz and all the wrong  
That led to his undoing, for what time  
Thou didst depose him the Sásánian fortune  
Went at one blow, and when Shīrwí ascended  
The royal throne and girt his kingly loins  
Folk hoped such days as when Khusrau Parwíz  
Was Sháh whose wits were keen in all regards,  
And if the world became what it became,  
And gat no profit from the state of things,  
It was because the world dealt foolishly,  
And by one stroke lost its advantages.  
Now that Ardshír, succeeding to Kubád,  
Is seated as the Sháh upon the throne,  
The world rejoicing in his majesty,  
And earth and time exulting in his Grace,  
Why should the world, now tranquil, be convulsed  
By pain and war ? Knock not at evils' door ;  
Those that slay blameless kings will prosper not.  
In this strife circling heaven must not raise  
Írán in dust. I fear that God will end  
The Íránians' term for ills more heinous still.' "

Pírúz, on this wise counselled, wrote Guráz—  
That villain of vile race (may none like him

Be ever chief!) —a profitable letter,  
 And thou hadst said that one had got his heart  
 Between the shears when he had read those words.  
 In fierce wrath with Pírúz, son of Khusrau,  
 He gathered all his baggage and commanded  
 The host to march forth plainwards. At the news  
 Pírúz dispatched a cameleer to go  
 In all haste to Tukhár to summon him,  
 Informing him at large of the affair,  
 Of what Guráz was doing and the strife  
 About the imperial throne. Then from Tukhár  
 This answer reached Pírúz, son of Khusrau :—  
 “ Risk not the blood of the Íránian chiefs,  
 O noble man ! but hear what saith Guráz.  
 Since thou hast written on such wise perchance  
 He may not come to fight with thee.”

C. 2053

Now when  
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, had seen that letter  
 His heart had no repose from evil thoughts,  
 But gloomed with thinking how to harm the Sháh,  
 Whose wont it was to summon him, for he  
 Was an observant man and eloquent,  
 And served as minister and treasurer.  
 He came one dark night for an audience,  
 And found the wine bright and the welcome warm.  
 Ardshír was seated in his palace-hall  
 In company with many young and old,  
 And when Pírúz, son of Khusrau, came raised,  
 Thou wouldst have said, his head to heaven, called  
 For harp, and all the hall was filled with music.  
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, when midnight came,  
 Had drunk one man<sup>1</sup> of wine while the companions  
 Of Sháh Ardshír were all bemused ; no minstrel  
 Was left that kept his wits. The miscreant  
 Dismissed the company : he and the Sháh

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. i., p. 290 note.

Alone remained. That man of outrage rose,  
Laid hand upon the Sháh's lips unawares,  
And held it there until Ardshír was dead.  
The palace filled with scimitars and arrows.  
All there—ambitious youths and warriors—  
Were fautors of Pírúz, son of Khusrau.  
Upon this manner ceased Ardshír to be  
When he had had six months of sovereignty.

## XLVI

### GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)

#### HE REIGNED FIFTY DAYS

#### ARGUMENT

Guráz, hearing of Ardashír's death, marches on Taisafún and urged on by his younger, though dissuaded by his elder son, usurps the throne. His rule described. A plot is formed against him and he is slain while returning from the chase. The throne remains vacant for a while.

#### NOTE

*Cf.* note to previous reign. Guráz (Shahr-Barz, April 27th—June 9th, A.D. 630) reigned for forty days.<sup>1</sup> He was one of the three chief generals employed by Khusrau Parwíz in his long war against the Eastern Roman Empire. His real name, according to Tabarí, was Farruhán. This in Pahlavi would be Farrukhán, which by a misreading has become Faráyín in the Sháhnáma. Shahrbaráz (Shahrguráz, or Shahrwaráz) is, says Tabarí, a title. Firdausí uses the shortened form Guráz, which means "boar," because it is more convenient metrically. The title may have been appropriate enough. In the Sháhnáma the general is split up into two personalities—Guráz or Faráyín, the usurper, and Shahránguráz, the avenger of the breach made by the upstart in the sacred line of Sásánian succession.<sup>2</sup> In Tabarí the leader of the revolt is a native of Istakhr named Pusfarukh.<sup>3</sup> Shahránguráz in the Sháhnáma is also of the same city.

---

<sup>1</sup> NT, p. 390 and *note*. <sup>2</sup> *Id.* pp. 292 and *note*, 388 and *note*. <sup>3</sup> *Id.*

## § 1

*How Guráz (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrán-guráz*

Pírúz, son of Khusrau, dispatched a post,  
And letter too, in secret to Guráz,  
Whose sombre soul, what time the messenger  
Arrived, grew like the sun, and from those parts  
He led forth such an army that the way  
Was barred to fly and emmet. Like the wind  
He sped to Taisafún, his soldiers' hands  
All had been bathed in blood. When he arrived  
The chiefs went out to welcome him, but none  
Among the troops dared breathe for they were few.  
Guráz, on entering the city, stayed not  
For minister and counsellor but chose  
A void place, and the magnates privily  
Conferred with him. Pírúz, son of Khusrau,  
Set loose his tongue and said: "Famed paladin!  
Whom hast thou chosen to be king of kings,  
And illustrate the crown of majesty?"

C. 2054

The warrior Guráz made answer thus:—

"I have not any secrets from Írán.  
To-morrow look ye out for some new Sháh  
To sit like some new moon upon the throne."

Since knowledge is the glory of a man  
Walk not, if thou canst help it, foolishly.  
He that hath wisdom speaketh goodly words,  
And as it groweth he deserteth ill.

35453

It is the best of man's accomplishments,  
 The world's endeavour and the way of God.  
 Of things that grace one not there is no need  
 To speak at large for he will foolishly  
 Disgrace himself howe'er he may exalt  
 The case in point. When wisdom hath deserted  
 The head, and shame the eye, fame and disgrace,  
 And cold and hot, are one—no terror this  
 To any coward whether quick or dead.  
 Make, if thou canst, all good thy business  
 Because the world abideth not with any.  
 Let all thy usance be humanity,  
 Munificence and uprightness thy Faith.

When Faráyin assumed the royal crown  
 He uttered what was in his mind and said :—  
 “ Let me assume the kingship for a while,  
 And sit upon the throne of gold in joy.  
 Far better scatter wealth and be exalted  
 Than purchase sixty years of servitude.  
 Thus will I sit a while in sovereignty,  
 Arrayed in satin<sup>1</sup> and in painted silk,  
 And after me my son shall take my throne,  
 Assume this royal crown, be king as was  
 His sire, and be exalted and renowned.  
 Whoe'er shall minister to our delight  
 Shall be a happy man among mankind.  
 In feast-time we will drink with joyful hearts,  
 In war-time we will hunt our enemies.”

His elder son said privily to him :—  
 “ Who of us, father ! ever wore the crown ?  
 Feel not secure, take means to compass wealth ;  
 Thou wast the world's protector ; keep to that.  
 If any member of the royal race  
 Shalt come thou wilt not long be here ; thy heart  
 Will keep of kingship only grief and pain ;

<sup>1</sup> Or “ beaver-skins.”

Thou wilt be wretched, destitute, and wan."

Then said the younger son: "Thou hast become  
Crowned in the world and hast both troops and  
treasures

Befitting royalty, but treasureless  
Wilt have to labour still. What ancestor  
Of Farídún, who had Abtín to sire,  
E'er wore the crown? Hold fast the world by courage  
And treasure. Nobody is born a king."<sup>1</sup>

The younger's words pleased Faráyín the best,  
Who bade his elder son: "Be not so raw."

He laid out in the royal offices  
The muster-roll and called all troops to court.  
He gave drachms night and day and many robes  
Of honour ill-deserved. Within two weeks  
Of all the treasury of Sháh Ardshír  
Remained not what would buy an arrow's plume!  
Whene'er Guráz would go forth to the pleasance  
The lights were torches made of ambergris,  
Four score before and four score after him:  
Behind them came his friends and partisans.  
Of gold and silver were the goblets all,  
The golden gem-encrusted.<sup>2</sup> 'Twas his use  
To feast all night. The nobles' hearts were full  
Of vengeance on him. 'Twas his wont to roam  
A-nights the gardens and the riding-ground.  
Save but to sleep and wake, to eat and plunder,  
That slight, weak-witted one knew naught. He went  
Drunk ever to repose and with a sash  
From Chín about his head. The troops were all  
Vexed to the heart at him while all the province  
Was full of turmoil and distress. He lost  
All trace of generosity and grew  
Unjust, unfortunate, and good for naught.  
The world was wrecked by his iniquity,

<sup>1</sup> But *cf.* Vol. vi., p. 320.      <sup>2</sup> The above couplets transposed.

And at his handling people smote their heads.  
 He shed the blood of innocents until  
 The troops grew wroth with him. He used to shut  
 His eyes for gold and would have sold the world  
 To win *dínárs*. Folk cursed him. All desired  
 His death and meeting privily discussed  
 His deeds. *Hurmuzd Shahránguráz*, a horseman  
 Redoubted of the city of *Istakhr*—  
 The glory of the chieftains—thus addressed  
 One night the *Íránians* secretly : “ Ye chiefs !  
 The time of *Faráyín* is proving grievous ;  
 He holdeth all the chiefs in light esteem.  
 Why have your brains and hearts become thus  
 straitened ?

Through him all eyes are tearful, livers charged  
 With blood. Is no physician to be found ?  
 He is not royal or *Sásánian* ;  
 Why gird the loins before him ? Of a truth  
 Your hearts have flown out of your breasts or else  
 Your pluck hath disappeared ! ”

The folk replied :—

“ Since there was no one left fit for the throne  
 None is inspired by jealousy to take  
 This base-born’s heart away ; but we adopt  
 Thy counsel. Tell us from thy stores of lore  
 How to release *Írán* from this insane  
 And hot-brained *Sháh* ill both in word and deed.  
 May he be never blessed ! ”

*Shahránguráz*

Replied : “ The *Íránians* have suffered long.  
 If ye will harm me not but play the Persian  
 E’en now by holy God’s aid will I bring him  
 Down from his throne to dust.”

He gat this answer :—

“ May no harm come to thee ! All we the host  
 To-day are thy supporters and thy stronghold

If ill herefrom befall thee."

Hearing this

That royal warrior sought how to set  
Hands on the worthless Sháh. Now he one day  
Took order and departed from the city  
To hunt, and of the Íránians a troop  
Of lords and lieges fared, escorting him.  
He urged his courser on and rode about  
As 'twere Ázargashasp, the cavaliers  
Encircling him and beating up the game.  
Now at what time they turned back city-wards  
Shahránguráz looked at the hapless Sháh  
With boldness, chose an arrow from his quiver,  
One that was straight and had a point of steel,  
And urged his black steed while the host looked on.  
He stretched the bow and drew it out, at whiles  
To chest or head, then notched, as if in sport,  
An arrow on the string and drew the bow  
Till it concealed the point, and loosed his thumb.  
Forthwith the shaft struck on the monarch's back,  
Who dropped his whip. The arrow was all blood  
Up to the feathers and the iron head  
Protruded from his navel. All the troops  
Unsheathed and all that night while dust-clouds rose  
They plied their swords and knew not whom they  
fought,

But took and gave back blows and cursed or blessed  
That deed. Now when the yellow Veil appeared,  
So that the world seemed like a leopard's back,  
There was a multitude of slain and maimed,  
And cavaliers and leaders were astound.  
That great host was dispersed like timid sheep  
When they perceive a wolf. Long they remained  
Without a king: none cared to claim the crown.  
For long they sought and sought in vain to trace  
Some royal scion of the noble race.

## XLVII

### PŪRĀNDUKHT

#### SHE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

#### NOTE

Pŭrāndukht (Puranducht, summer A.D. 630—autumn A.D. 631), reigned, according to Tabarī, for one year and four months. Her name, it appears, should be spelt with a B, not with a P. She is said to have restored the "True Cross," but it seems more probable that this was done in the reign of Ardshīr. She made the leader of the successful conspiracy against Shahrbarāz her prime minister.<sup>1</sup> She was the first historical female Shāh and it was in allusion to her reign and that of her sister Āzarmdukht that the distich is quoted in Mīr Khānd :—

"No dignity remains in a household  
In which the hens are crowing like cocks."<sup>2</sup>

#### § 1

*How Pŭrāndukht ascended the Throne and slew Pīrŭz,  
Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended*

'Tis but crude policy when women rule,  
But yet there was a lady—Pŭrāndukht—  
Surviving of the lineage of Sāsān,

<sup>1</sup> For the above see NT, p. 390 *seq.* and *notes*, ZT, ii., 349.  
<sup>2</sup> RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., p. 101.

And well read in the royal volume : her  
 They seated on the throne of sovereignty,  
 The Great strewed jewels over her, and then  
 She spake upon this wise : " I will not have  
 The people scattered,<sup>1</sup> and I will enrich  
 The poor with treasure that they may not bide  
 In their distress. God grant that in the world  
 There may be none aggrieved because his pain  
 Is my calamity. I will expel  
 Foes from the realm and walk in royal ways."

She made search for Pírúz, son of Khusrau,  
 Who was delated by an alien,  
 Whereat she chose some warriors from the host  
 Who brought Pírúz before her. She exclaimed :—  
 " Foul-purposed miscreant !<sup>2</sup> thou shalt receive,  
 As infamous, the guerdon for thy deeds."

She bade bring from the stalls a colt unbroken,  
 And bound, firm as a rock, Pírúz thereto  
 Without a saddle and with yoke on neck.  
 The vengeful lady had that untamed steed  
 Brought to the riding-ground and thither sent,  
 With lassos coiled up in their saddle-straps,  
 A band of warriors to urge the colt  
 To utmost speed, to strive from time to time  
 To throw Pírúz and ever roll itself  
 Upon the ground. That colt won much applause  
 Until with skin in shreds and dripping blood  
 Pírúz gave up the ghost right wretchedly.  
 Why having done wrong seekest thou for justice ?  
 Nay, ill for ill ; that is the course of right.

C. 2058

Púrándukht ruled the world with gentleness ;  
 No wind from heaven blew upon the dust,  
 But when six months had passed beneath her sway  
 The circle of her life bent suddenly ;  
 For one week she was ailing, then expired,

<sup>1</sup> Through misgovernment.<sup>2</sup> One couplet omitted

And took away with her a fair renown.

Such is the process of the turning sky,  
So potent while so impotent are we !

If thine be opulence or poverty,  
If life affordeth gain or loss to thee,

If thou shalt win what thou desirest so,  
Or disappointed be in wretchedness,

And whether thou be one of wealth or woe,  
Both woe and wealth will pass away no less.

Reign as a Sháh a thousand years, five score,

For sixty years or thirty, ten or four,

It cometh to one thing, when all is done,

If thou hadst many years or barely one.

Oh ! may thine actions thine own comrades be,

For they in every place will succour thee.

Let go thy clutch upon this Wayside Inn

Because a goodlier place is thine to win.

If thine endeavour be to learning given

Thou wilt by knowledge roam revolving heaven.

## XLVIII

### ÁZARMDUKHT

#### SHE REIGNED FOUR MONTHS

##### NOTE

Before Ázarmdukht (Azermidocht, end of A.D. 631—beginning of A.D. 632) came to the throne there seems to have been a short interval during which a distant scion of the royal House, who took the name of Pírúz, ruled for less than a month. The chief noble of the time, who was governor of Khurásán, wished to make Ázarmdukht his wife on which she had him privately executed. This noble's son was the Rustam that fought and fell at Kádisiya some years later. On hearing of his father's fate Rustam, who was in temporary authority in Khurásán, marched with a great army against Ázarmdukht, overthrew her and put her to death after she had reigned six months. Her name probably means "modest girl."<sup>1</sup>

##### § 1

#### *How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died*

There was another dame hight Ázarmdukht,  
Who had fruition of the crown of greatness.  
She came, sat down upon the royal throne,  
And made herself the mistress of the world.  
Her first words were : " O sages, veterans,  
And masters of affairs ! be just in all,

<sup>1</sup> For the above see NT, p. 393 and notes, ZT, ii, 350 seq.

And follow precedent, for ye hereafter  
Must make the bricks your pillow. I will foster  
The loyal liege, assist him with dinárs,  
And if he erreth be longsuffering ;  
But him that is disloyal and deserteth  
The way of wisdom and of precedent  
Will I suspend in shame upon the gibbet,  
Be he an Arab, Rúman cavalier,  
Or Persian thane."

She filled the throne four months,  
But with the fifth disaster came thereto,  
C. 2059 For she too died, the throne had not a Sháh,  
But was the plaything of the ill-disposed.  
With the revolving sky 'tis everything  
To be all vengeful with its fosterling.

## XLIX

### FARRUKHZÁD

#### HE REIGNED ONE MONTH

#### NOTE

Between, and even earlier than, the death of Ázarmdukht and the accession of Yazdagird III., the order of the dynastic succession becomes very confused. The names of the Sháhs vary in the different lists. The reason is that it was a period of great internal unrest and various aspirants to the throne held contemporaneously some short-lived authority in different provinces of the empire. One of these princes, Farrukhzád (Farrukhzád-Khusrau) has received the honour of being included in the list of the Sháhs as recorded in the Sháhnáma. Two accounts of the length of his reign are given in Tabarí. According to one, it lasted for six months, according to the other, for a year. Both agree that he did not die a natural death, and one of them states that his death was instigated by the adherents of Yazdagird.<sup>1</sup>

#### § 1

*How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was  
slain by a Slave*

Then from Jahram they summoned Farrukhzád,  
And seated him upon the throne of kingship.  
There with a pious soul he praised the Maker,

<sup>1</sup> NT, p. 397 and note. Cf. RSM, p. 544.

And said : " Son of the kings of kings am I,  
 And would have naught but quiet in the world.  
 The mischief-maker shall not be exalted  
 While I am Sháh, but him that from his heart  
 Ensueeth right, and is not mischievous,  
 Will I hold dear as my pure soul, and seek not  
 To harm the harmless. Him that beareth toil  
 On our behalf we will reward with treasure.  
 We will hold dear all friends and raise the fame  
 Of chieftains everywhere, but all my subjects,  
 Both friends and enemies, are safe with me."

The troops all blessed him : " Ne'er may earth and  
 time

Lack thee." Yet when his throne was one month old  
 The head of all his fortune came to dust.  
 He had a slave, a cypress-tree in stature,  
 Fair, lusty, and well-liking. That knave's name  
 Was Siyah Chashm.<sup>1</sup> May heaven ne'er bring his  
 like !

The Sháh too had a handmaid whom he loved.  
 She chanced on Siyah Chashm all unawares  
 One day, who sent to say : " If thou wilt meet me  
 At such a place thou shalt have endless gifts,  
 And I will deck thy crown with jewelry."

The handmaid heard, made no reply, but went  
 And told the thing to Farrukhzád who raged,  
 And could not eat or sleep in his concern.  
 He put the feet of Siyah Chashm in fetters,  
 And cast him into prison. When the knave  
 Had been confined awhile the Sháh released him,  
 For many pled for him. The slave returned  
 To serve the Sháh and cut his lifetime short,  
 For just as such a bad malignant slave  
 Would do he sought revenge upon the Sháh,  
 And seizing on a time when Farrukhzád

<sup>1</sup> Black-eyed.

Reposed himself put poison in the wine.  
The Sháh drank, lived one week, and all that heard  
About his fate lamented him. The kingship  
Was in extremities and foes appeared  
On every side. The throne of king of kings,  
Through these ill doings of the Íránians,  
Was overturned.

Of such a fashion are  
Time's revolutions ! Let it be thy care  
To gather for thyself therefrom thy share.  
Eat what thou hast and trust the morrow not,  
For it may hold for thee a different lot :  
To give to others it may take from thee.  
Thou callest this a world and verily  
It doth whirl ! So enjoy thine own, let go  
The surplusage that thou hast toiled for so  
To other folk but never to thy foe,  
Else whensoever thy day is overpast  
Thy hoards will be as is the desert-blast,  
Thy treasures all become thine enemy's ;  
So give away to set thy mind at ease.

## L

### YAZDAGIRD

#### HE REIGNED TWENTY YEARS

#### ARGUMENT

Yazdagird becomes Sháh. The country is invaded by the Arabs. He sends Rustam, the captain of the host, to oppose them. Rustam takes a despondent view of the situation, and after some attempt at negotiations is defeated by the Arabs at Kádisiya and slain. The war continues, and Yazdagird withdraws to Khurásán to get help from Máhwí of Súr, the governor. Máhwí plots with Bízhan, a Turkish prince, against Yazdagird, who is betrayed in battle and takes refuge in a mill, where he is slain by the miller at the bidding of Máhwí. Máhwí assumes the crown, makes war on Bízhan, is taken prisoner, and put to death. The poem ends with a brief passage, in which Firdausí gives some account of the completion of his undertaking, of help afforded him and of discouragements undergone, and concludes with a well founded assurance of his own future fame.

#### NOTE

Yazdagird (Isdegird III., A.D. 632-652 or 653) has given his name to a chronological era which still obtains among the Parsís. It dates from June 16th, A.D. 632. He was the son of Sháhryár, son of Khusrau Parwíz, and was an infant at the time when that Sháh and his sons were put to death after the accession of Shírwí (Kubád;<sup>1</sup>) On that occasion he was taken for safety to Istakhr. Tabarí says that he was

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 34, 35.

murdered at the age of twenty-eight after a reign of twenty years. He was therefore only eight years old when a party among the nobles set him up as a puppet king at Istakhr (Persepolis), the old seat of empire, Ctesiphon at that time being in the hands of a rival claimant of the throne. In the contention that followed Yazdagird was successful, and in the course of A.D. 633 he became recognised as sole Sháh, the administration remaining in the hands of the chiefs.<sup>1</sup> He had succeeded to a heritage of woe. His empire was ill-prepared for the troubles that were in store for it. Exhausted by long wars, torn by domestic dissensions, and lately devastated by plague, it had to confront a new and vigorous organization inspired by religious enthusiasm and impelled thereby to extend its borders on every side. Had Yazdagird been a born leader of men and come to the throne in the prime of life, he might for the time at least have been successful, but in the circumstances, and taking into consideration what we can gather as to his own character, we can now see how hopeless from the outset his prospects were. Students of Persian, however, have probably reason to feel grateful to his reign, for even though we put aside as unsatisfactory what tradition tells us on the subject, a reasonable presumption remains that with the return of settled government to a distracted country there was a revival of interest in the story of the Íránian race and its heroes, and that compilations were then made from which we still though indirectly benefit.<sup>2</sup>

§§ 2-11. The following is intended to supplement Firdausi's inadequate account of the Arab conquest of the Sásánian empire. He appears to assign it to the last years of Yazdagird's then nominal sovereignty. From time immemorial the Íránians and Semites had been at enmity.<sup>3</sup> In Íránian legend this feeling had found expression in the story of the wicked Sháh Zahhák, who, though originally an Aryan myth,<sup>4</sup> came to be regarded in succeeding ages as an earthly king with his seat at Babylon. When, later still, the Íránians again felt the weight of Semitic oppression, he was turned into an Arab.<sup>5</sup> Although during Sásánian times the semi-independent kingdom of Híra served to some extent as a buffer-state between the Persian empire and the wilder Arab

<sup>1</sup> NT, p. 397 *seq.* and *notes.*<sup>2</sup> *Id.* p. 7.<sup>3</sup> *Cf.* Vol. i., p. 67.<sup>4</sup> *Id.* pp. 54, 135, 141.<sup>5</sup> *Id.* p. 10.

tribes there was always the liability of raids and the danger was much increased when Khusrau Parwíz was so unwise as to put an end to the long-standing dynasty of the princes of Híra and appointed a governor of his own in their stead.<sup>1</sup> In his reign too had occurred the disastrous battle of Dhú Kár, in which the smallness of the forces engaged were out of all proportion to the importance of the result. The Arabs celebrated their victory with songs of triumph.<sup>2</sup> With that inspiring memory and revelation of Persian weakness, with the prospect of rich spoil to be won, and a nation of infidels to be converted, it is not surprising that hostilities should break out between the young and vigorous and the old and enfeebled empire. Muhammad himself, tradition tells us, addressed a threatening letter to Khusrau Parwíz, who tore it up, and the Prophet, on hearing of this, said: "He has rent his own realm."<sup>3</sup> Muhammad died in June, A.D. 632—the month of the child Yazdagird's accession. Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa, being apprised by an Arab chieftain, who had embraced Islam, of the state of the Persian empire, sent his great general, Khálid, to begin hostilities. Khálid was very successful in numerous engagements, and temporarily the whole tract bordering the western bank of the Euphrates from the Roman frontier almost to the Persian Gulf came into the hands of the Arabs. Khálid made Híra his headquarters, and was preparing to attack Ctesiphon and invade Írán when he was recalled by Abú Bakr to take command of the forces destined for the Syrian campaign. "This is 'Umar's doing," said Khálid. "He does not want to see me conquer 'Irák."<sup>4</sup> The departure of Khálid was the Persians' opportunity. Encouraged by Rustam, who under Yazdagird had become commander-in-chief, the inhabitants of the conquered region rose against the Arabs but unsuccessfully. At this juncture Abú Bakr died and was succeeded by 'Umar, who began his reign by giving Abú 'Ubaida the chief command in Syria in the place of Khálid. Then, it is said, he appealed publicly to the Faithful to volunteer for the invasion of Persia and for two days in vain, the super-session of Khálid having caused great indignation. It may, however, have been thought that the acquisition of so much fertile territory and the consequent proximity to the Persian

<sup>1</sup> Vol. viii., p. 190.<sup>2</sup> NT, p. 342.<sup>3</sup> ZT, ii., 325.<sup>4</sup> Id. iii., 348.

capital, were a sufficient achievement for the time being. Nevertheless, on the third day, when 'Umar made his appeal, Abú 'Ubaida (not Khálid's successor) offered himself and Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, followed suit. A thousand others imitated their example. 'Umar gave Abú 'Ubaida the chief command as he had been the first to volunteer. The Persians in the meantime had withdrawn to Ctesiphon, whence Rustam dispatched a force, which had with it the flag of Káwa,<sup>1</sup> to watch the enemy. Abú 'Ubaida, who was very inferior in numbers, threw a bridge across the Euphrates, attacked the Persians, was defeated and slain. This battle is known as "The Battle of the Bridge," and took place in November, A.D. 634. An attack, however, by the Persians on Híra failed, and the Arabs raided the Persian settlement of Baghdád (not of course the well-known city of that name<sup>2</sup>) where twice a year a fair was held. 'Umar appointed Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, to succeed Abú 'Ubaida, and both sides made efforts to reinforce their respective armies. The Persian adherents west of the Euphrates again rose. Rustam crossed the river with a great host, and advanced to Kádisiya where the Arabs had concentrated. The battle that ensued is said to have lasted four days with varying fortune till a dust-storm turned the scale in favour of the Arabs. The slaughter was very great and so was the spoil. 'Umar forbade the Arabs to make any further advance for the present, but as the situation of their camp proved to be very unhealthy he directed Sa'ad to choose a more suitable site, whereupon Sa'ad founded Kúfa. Thenceforth the whole of the region west of the Euphrates was lost to the Persians. To secure the lower course of the Euphrates and Tigris 'Umar also founded Basra, west of the Shatt-al-Arab. The battle of Kádisiya seems to have been fought A.D. 636-7, but the chronology of the period is somewhat uncertain. Then came a considerable pause in the Arab advance. The Arabs seem to have spent the interval well in securing what they had gained while the Persians on the other hand appear to have been paralysed by their misfortunes. At all events, when the invasion was resumed and Sa'ad, crossing the Euphrates, marched on Ctesiphon, no resistance was offered and Yazdagird, who had lingered there too late to secure the removal of most of his treasures, fled with his court to Hulwán.<sup>3</sup> His example of flight seems

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i., p. 154 *seq.*    <sup>2</sup> See Vol. vi., p. 254.    <sup>3</sup> See Vol. vii., p. 187.

to have been followed by a majority of the inhabitants. The Arabs came in for an immense booty according to Oriental accounts. If, however, we take into consideration the domestic troubles of the years preceding Yazdagird's accession, and what must have been the financial needs of the short-lived Sháhs of that period, we are justified in suspecting that the amount of precious metals and of the more portable forms of wealth generally was not so great as has been affirmed. Sa'ad, when he had established himself in the Persian capital, asked permission of 'Umar to pursue Yazdagird who had gathered a considerable army under the command of a Mihrán<sup>1</sup> at Jalúla in the neighbourhood of Hulwán. 'Umar refused to allow Sa'ad to go in person and instructed him to send instead Háshim who was either his brother or his nephew. Háshim was much inferior in point of numbers, and it was six months before he brought the Persians to a decisive engagement. He then won a complete victory, and followed up his success at Jalúla by the capture of Hulwán. Yazdagird fled to Rai and 'Umar, content for the moment with what had been achieved, forbade any further advance. The next stage of the Arab conquest was made outside the sphere of Sa'ad's authority, who sent, however, by 'Umar's command troops to assist. In the north Mesopotamia, and in the south Khúzistán, were invaded and annexed. A raid was made also across the Persian Gulf from Bahrain into Párs, but without lasting results, as the Arab forces got into difficulties and had to be rescued by an expedition sent for the purpose from Basra. About A.D. 640 in consequence, it is said, of complaints made by the people of Kúfa, 'Umar recalled Sa'ad and Yazdagird seized the opportunity to make a supreme effort to recover his lost possessions. A large army, summoned from the yet unconquered provinces of the empire, was concentrated at Nahávand, some fifty miles south of Hamadán, and placed under a Persian general named Píruzán. On this 'Umar ordered Nu'mán, who was in command in Khúzistán, to gather all available forces from the regions already annexed and march against the enemy. Nu'mán, who was greatly inferior in point of numbers, found the Persians strongly encamped at Nahávand and tried in vain to bring on a general engagement. In the end he managed to effect his purpose by means of a stratagem. He broke up

---

<sup>1</sup> See *id.* p. 185.

his camp and made a hasty retreat. Píruzán went in pursuit, on which Nu'mán turned upon him and won what the Arabs call "The Victory of Victories" (A.D. 641-2). Píruzán was taken prisoner and slain, and Nu'mán himself fell in the fight. This was the last effort of the Persians at a national resistance. Henceforth their opposition was merely provincial or local, and wholly ineffective. One after another the remaining provinces of the Sásánian empire were overrun by the Arabs and permanently annexed, while Yazdagird, who had fled from Rai after the disaster of Nahávand, remained a fugitive till his death some ten years later.

§ 2. In Tabarí Rustam's father is called Farrukh-Hurmuzd, the governor of Khurásán, who was slain, it is said, by Ázarm-dukht and avenged by his son.<sup>1</sup> Khurásán probably formed part of the satrapy of Nímruz, one of the four into which Núshírwán divided his empire.<sup>2</sup> Tradition makes the governors of that satrapy, and their sons play a very important part during the last few years of the Sásánian dynasty.<sup>3</sup> The position of commander-in-chief held by Rustam at the battle of Kádísíya, probably indicates that he had been instrumental in bringing about the elevation of Yazdagird to the throne.<sup>4</sup>

Rustam's brother was named Farrukhzád.

§ 3. Mughíra, son of Shu'ba, was one of the companions of Muhammad, and played a prominent role in the affairs of the time. He went on a similar embassy to the Persians before the battle of Nahávand.<sup>5</sup> He was governor for a time at Basra,<sup>6</sup> Mecca,<sup>7</sup> and Kúfa, where he died in A.D. 670.<sup>8</sup>

§ 4. Sa'ad took no personal part in the battle of Kádísíya. He was suffering from sores at the time and had to content himself with merely directing operations.<sup>9</sup> Consequently he did not slay Rustam in single combat as Firdausí states. When the dust-storm came on the fourth day of the battle, Rustam was seated under an awning erected on the bank of the canal of Kádísíya and surrounded by the camels that carried his treasure. The awning was blown into the water, and Rustam took shelter among them. In the confusion caused by the storm, the Arabs broke the Persian centre. One of them, named Hilál, striking in the darkness at random among the camels, happened to hit the one under which

<sup>1</sup> p. 59.      <sup>2</sup> See Vol. vii., p. 214.

<sup>3</sup> NT, p. 397 note. NIN, p. 13.

<sup>4</sup> *Id.* iv., 2.

<sup>5</sup> *Id.* 16.

<sup>6</sup> pp. 5, 6, 59, 87, 95 seq.

<sup>7</sup> ZT, iii., 474.

<sup>8</sup> *Id.* iii., 398.

<sup>9</sup> *Id.* 404.

Rustam was seated, and cut the cord that secured its load of treasure which fell on Rustam's head. Though injured, he made an attempt to swim across the canal, but was caught by Hilál and slain.<sup>1</sup>

§§ 9-11. There is a general agreement in Persian tradition that Yazdigird did not die a natural death. The scene of it is mostly laid at Marv, and the most popular version associates it with a mill. Firdausí's story evidently has been worked up as the appeals addressed to Máhwí show. The villain's guilt too is more emphasized, and he is made more directly responsible for the tragedy. Elsewhere the miller murders the Sháh for mere greed. Marv appears to be a likely place for Yazdigird to have chosen to reside in, as he could easily escape thence across the Oxus in case of need. In some accounts he does cross and negotiates to little purpose with the Turks, but is brought back across the river for the final scene. What the truth of the matter was seems to be quite uncertain.

§ 14. According to the account in the Persian Tabarí, Máhwí, after the death of Yazdigird, remained at Marv till he was compelled to leave owing to the approach of the Arabs, when he fled across the Oxus and took refuge with the Turks.<sup>2</sup> Their Khán is the Bízhan of the Sháhname.

### § 1

*How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs*

When Farrukhzád departed Yazdagird  
 Became the Sháh upon the day of Ard  
 In month Sapandármad. What said the man  
 Brave, eloquent but weary of life's span ?  
 " Would that my mother had not brought me forth,  
     High heaven not turned o'er me !  
 The days of greatness and the days of want

<sup>1</sup> *Id.* 396.

<sup>2</sup> *ZT*, iii., 505.

For all soon cease to be.  
 Time, as thou lookest, passeth ; none can take  
 Arms to contend with it,  
 So furnish forth the board and drain the cup,  
 And sad talk intermit.  
 What though thou ride high heaven yet bricks will  
 prove

Thy pillow at the last ;  
 If thou be king what of the end ? First throne,  
 But what when life hath past ?  
 Let not thy heart be troubled, trust not much  
 High heaven as thy support ;  
 It acteth as it willeth ; elephant  
 And lion are its sport.  
 'Twill outlast thee, its tale is long ; be not  
 With pride of life o'erflown ;  
 Thou canst not better Faridún or be  
 Parwíz<sup>1</sup> with crown and throne.<sup>2</sup>

C. 2061

From those exalt seven planets do thou well  
 Consider what to Yazdagird befell."  
 When he sat happy on the throne of kingship,  
 And placed upon his head the crown of might,  
 He said : " By process of the turning sky  
 I am the true-born son of Núshírwán.  
 Mine is the sway from sire to sire and mine  
 Are Virgo, Sol, and Pisces. I will seek  
 For greatness, wisdom, hardihood, contention,  
 And manliness, for life and fortune stay  
 With none, nor treasure, kingship, crown, and throne.  
 Fame will abide for aye but not desire ;  
 Put off desire then and exalt thy fame.  
 It is by fame that man shall live for ever  
 While his dead body lieth in the dust.  
 How good are Faith and justice in a Sháh !  
 The times are full of blessings on his fame.

<sup>1</sup> Khusrau Parwíz.<sup>2</sup> Couplet omitted.

I purpose while I live to pluck up ill,  
Both root and branch."

The chiefs applauded him,  
And hailed him as the monarch of the earth,  
And thus it was, till sixteen years had sped,  
That sun and moon revolved above his head.

## § 2

*How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother*

It was so that 'Umar, the famous Arab,  
Commander of the Faithful,<sup>1</sup> he whose sword  
Turned day to night, the man approved by God,  
Who hath no equal, sent the chosen Sa'ad,  
Son of Wakkás, with troops against the Sháh.  
When Arab fortune worsted Persian,  
And the Sásánians' fortune had grown dark,  
The world had had full measure of its Sháhs;  
Gold was not seen, the mite was manifest,  
Good turned to evil, evil turned to good,  
The path lay Hellward, not to Paradise,  
The wheel of circling heaven was changed and cut  
All kindness for the Persians clean away.  
The slave must do the almighty Maker's will,  
And bear what He inflicteth. Save with Him  
There is no life or joy.

When Yazdagird  
Learned what had chanced he gathered troops on all  
sides,

C. 2062 And bade Hurmuzd's son lead them forth. His name

<sup>1</sup> He assumed this title.

Was Rustam. He was wary, wise, a warrior  
And potentate, a reader of the stars,  
Exceeding shrewd and all attent to hear  
The archimages' words. He marched away  
With all the noble, those that were alert  
And brave, and after thirty months they sought  
To fight at Kádisiya. Being learned  
In heaven's lore as an astrologer,  
And one both just and good, he said: "No time  
Is this to fight, the river of the Sháhs  
Will flow not in this bed," and so he took  
His astrolabe, observed the stars and smote  
His head because it was a day of bale,  
Then wrote in grief and told his brother all,  
First offering praise to God who had ordained  
His good and evil fortune, and proceeded:—  
"Well may the revolutions of the sky  
Fill the observer with disquietude!  
I am the guiltiest person of the time,  
And therefore have been caught by Áhriman,  
Because the kingship passeth from this House;  
No season this of conquest and the Grace!  
From the fourth heaven Sol is looking down  
To hasten to the fight of mighty men.  
Both Mars and Venus bode mishap to us,  
And none can 'scape high heaven. Mercury  
And Saturn are opposed, the former too  
Hath entered Gemini. Such is the case,  
A great event is toward, and my heart  
Is weary of its life. I can discern  
All that will be but fain would hold my peace.  
When I agnized this secret of the sky—  
That it assigneth us but grievous travail—  
I wept right sorely for the Íránians,  
And burned for the Sásánians. Woe is me  
For head and crown, for state and throne, and woe

For majesty, for fortune, and for Grace  
 Because hereafter will defeat betide them  
 From the Arabians, the stars not turn  
 Save to our hurt, and for four hundred years  
 None of our royal race will rule the world !  
 An envoy from our foemen came to me,  
 And divers parleyings followed. ' We,' they said,  
 ' Will give up to the Sháh the tract between  
 The river-bank and Kádisiya ; ye  
 Shall grant us access to some trading centre  
 That we may sell and buy ; we will not ask  
 For more hereafter ; we will pay large dues,  
 And will not seek the chieftains' diadems,  
 But will obey withal the king of kings,  
 And render hostages at his demand.'  
 Such is the talk. No action hath ensued,  
 But still the stars are adverse. Long will be  
 The strife. Fierce Lions will be slain by hundreds.  
 The chieftains that are with me in the war—  
 Galbwí of Tabaristán and Armaní,  
 Who do the deeds of Áhriman in fight,  
 Mahwí, he of Súrán, and other chiefs,  
 Who wield the heavy mace and battle-ax—  
 Heed not our foes proposals but observe :—  
 ' Who are these haughty folk and what do they  
 Both in Írán and in Mázandarán ?  
 For road and territory, weal and woe,  
 We must employ the mace and scimitar ;  
 We will exert ourselves, quit us like men,  
 And make the world both dark and strait to them.'  
 None of them knoweth circling heaven's design,  
 And how its aspect hath been changed to us.  
 On reading this take measures with the chiefs,  
 Make preparations and lead forth the host,  
 Collect the treasures, handmaids, and state-robés,  
 Then hasten Ázar Ábádagán—

The dwelling of the Mighty and the Free.  
Whatever herds of horses thou mayst have  
Send to the treasurer of Ázargashasp.  
If soldiers seek thee from Zábulistán,  
Or from Írán, imploring thy protection,  
Receive and treat with kindness their excuses  
In view of what the turning sky is doing—  
The cause of joy and terror to us all,  
At whiles exalting and at whiles abasing.  
Let mother know my words for of a truth  
She will not look upon my face again.  
Greet her from us and counsel her at large  
Not to be troubled here below. If any  
Shall bring bad news of me be not too downcast,  
For know that in this Wayside Hostelry  
He that amaseth treasure by his toil  
Will find his toil more than such worldly treasure,  
And that another will enjoy the fruit.  
What need was there for so much toil and greed?  
Desire is lessened not by having more.  
At all times worship God and purge thy heart  
Of all affection for this Wayside Inn  
Because our fortune is in straits, the king  
Will see me not again. Do thou and all  
Our House, both old and young, unceasingly  
Praise God and pray the Maker, for with this  
My host I am in stress, in travail, grief,  
And bitter fortune, and shall not escape  
At last. May this sweet country of Írán  
Be in prosperity! Whenas the world  
Is straitened to the king hold treasure, life,  
And person of small worth, for of that race  
So famed and honoured there is no one left  
Save that exalted one. Watch over him  
By day and night till I have fought the Arabs.  
Be not remiss in toil for he is now

All that we have to look to in this world,  
 And the Sásánians' memorial,  
 For no one will behold that House again.  
 Woe for the head and crown, for seal and right  
 Since royal throne will go adown the blast !  
 Fare well, be not concerned, and ever be  
 Before the world-lord, and if ill betide him  
 First give thine own head to the scimitar  
 Ungrudgingly. When pulpit fronteth throne,  
 And when Abú Bakr and 'Umar shall be  
 As household words, our long toils will be lost,  
 And long will be the fall before the rise.  
 Thou wilt not see throne, diadem, or state :  
 The stars award the Arabs everything.<sup>1</sup>  
 There will not be throne, crown, or golden boot,  
 Or gem, or coronet or flaunting flag.  
 One man will toil, another will enjoy ;  
 None will give heed to justice or to bounty.<sup>2</sup>  
 Then warriors will be men that fight afoot  
 While horsemen will be mocked and flouted at ;  
 The warlike husbandman will be despised,  
 High birth and majesty will bear no fruit ;  
 Then men will rob each other, none will know  
 A blessing from a curse, and secret dealing  
 Prevail o'er open, while the hearts of men  
 Will turn to flint, sire will be foe to son,  
 And son will scheme 'gainst sire ; a worthless slave  
 Will be the king, high birth and majesty  
 Will count for nothing ; no one will be loyal.  
 There will be tyranny of soul and tongue.  
 A mongrel race—Íránian, Turkman, Arab—  
 Will come to be and talk in gibberish.<sup>3</sup>  
 They will collect all treasures 'neath their skirts,  
 Toil and resign the product to their foes.

C. 2065

<sup>1</sup> Two couplets omitted.    <sup>2</sup> Three couplets omitted.<sup>3</sup> See Vol. i., p. 34.

Grief, travail, bitterness will thus prevail  
As joy did in Bahrám Gúr's days ; feasts, song,  
Race and renown will cease ; men will set traps,  
Will seek their profit in another's loss,  
And make their pretext Faith ; no difference  
Will be 'twixt Spring and Winter ;<sup>1</sup> there will be  
No wine at feasts ; they will not recognise  
Degree and place but live on barley-bread,  
And dress in wool. When much time hath passed  
thus

None will regard the noble Persian stock.  
They will be shedding blood for lucre's sake,  
An evil age will be inaugurate.  
My heart is full, my face is wan, my mouth  
Is parched, my lips are filled with sighs to think  
That after I—the paladin—have gone  
Sásánian fortune shall become thus dark ;  
So faithless hath revolving heaven grown,  
Ta'en umbrage, and withdrawn from us its love !  
If with my lance I strike a brazen mountain  
I pierce it, being brazen-bodied too,  
But now my shafts with steel-transfixing heads  
Are impotent with men that wear no mail !  
My sword, which felled the necks of elephants  
And lions at a blow, can not cut through  
An Arab skin ! My knowledge bringeth loss  
On loss upon me. Would that I possessed not  
This wisdom since it causeth me to know  
Of this ill day ! The chiefs that are with me  
From Kádisiya are both hardy men  
And hostile to the Arabs. They expect  
That this brake will be filled, that earth will run  
Like the Jihún, with our foes' blood. None knoweth  
The secret of the skies and that this strife

<sup>1</sup> Muhammadan years being lunar the months are associated with  
no particular season.

Can not be quickly ended ; but when fortune  
 Departeth from a race what profit cometh  
 Of travail and of fight ? Be prosperous,  
 My brother ! May the Sháh's heart joy in thee  
 Because this Kádisiya is my charnel,  
 My breastplate is my shroud, my helmet blood :  
 Such is the secret of the lofty sky.  
 Bind not thine own heart to my griefs but keep  
 Thine eyes upon the Sháh, and sacrifice  
 Thyself for him in fight, because the day  
 Of Áhriman is coming on apace  
 When circling heaven will show us enmity."

When he had sealed the letter he said thus :—  
 " My blessing be upon the messenger  
 That shall convey this letter to my brother,  
 And tell him not what I have said, but other ! "

## § 3

*How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how  
 he replied*

C. 2066 He sent a messenger in swiftness like  
 The flash and thunder-clap to Sa'ad. They wrote,  
 In apprehension yet not in despair,  
 A letter on white silk and thus endorsed :—  
 " This from the paladin of paladins—  
 The warlike Rustam, son of Hurmuzdsháh<sup>1</sup>—  
 To Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, the prudent, wise,  
 And circumspect, who hath come forth to fight."  
 It thus began : " We still must fear the World-lord,  
 The Holy, who sustaineth turning heaven,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Mardánsháh as a proper name and p. 59.

Whose rule is justice and beneficence.  
May blessings from Him rest upon the king,  
The lustre of the signet, crown, and throne,  
The lord of sword, of diadem and lasso,  
Whose Grace restraineth Áhriman in bonds.  
A hateful matter hath occurred to us  
In these uncalled for labours and this strife:  
Reply to me and say who is your king,  
Who thou art, what thy rule and custom are,  
And whose assistance is it that ye seek  
With unmailed soldiery and unmailed chief?  
Fed up with bread thou art still ravenous;  
Thou hast no elephants, no throne, no baggage.  
Enough for thee to live within Írán,  
For crown and signet are another man's,  
Who hath Grace, elephants, and crown and throne—  
A famous Sháh of lengthy lineage.  
No throned king hath such stature or the moon  
In heaven such aspect. When enthroned he sitteth  
With smiles that make his silvern teeth appear;  
His gifts would purchase Arabs in the gross,  
And not impoverish his treasury.  
His dogs, his hawks, and cheetahs are twelve thousand,  
And they are decked with golden bells and varvels.  
The whole waste of the wielders of the spear  
Could find not in a year from end to end  
Enough to feed his cheetahs and his hounds  
When he is hunting on the plain. The Arabs,  
From drinking camels' milk and eating lizards,  
Have reached a pitch whereat the Persian throne  
Is coveted! Shame, shame on circling heaven!  
Ye have no veneration in your eyes,  
Or, in your wisdom, love or reverence.  
With such a visage and such tastes and ways  
Is thy heart set upon the crown and throne?  
If thou art seeking power within thy means,

C. 2067

And art not merely speaking words in jest,  
Dispatch to us some man of goodly speech,  
Send some brave veteran and man of lore,  
That he may tell me thine intent and who  
Doth lead thee to attempt the royal throne.  
Then will I send a horseman to the Sháh  
To ask of him whatever thou wilt ask,  
But seek not with so great a king to fight,  
For shame at last will come upon thy face.  
His grandsire was the world-lord Núshírwán,  
Whose justice made the agéd young again.  
His fathers have been Sháhs, and he is king ;  
The age remembereth none like to him.  
Fill not the world with curses on thyself,  
Misprize not thine own precedents. Regard  
This letter of advice and bar not thou  
Thine eyes and ears to wisdom." When the letter  
Was sealed he gave it to high-born Pírúz,  
Son of Shápúr. To Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,  
This paladin and magnates from Írán,  
Of ardent soul, went whelmed in iron, silver,  
And gold, with golden shields and golden girdles.  
On hearing, Sa'ad, that noble man, set forth,  
Swift as the flying dust, to meet Pírúz  
With troops, forthwith dismounted and inquired  
About the army and its paladin,  
About the Sháh, his minister and host,  
The watchful leader and his provinces.  
He spread his cloak beneath Pírúz and said :—  
" We hold the sword and spear to be our mates :  
Brave warriors make no mention of brocade,  
Of gold and silver or of food and slumber.  
Ye have no part in manhood but are like  
To women with your colours, scents, and forms.  
Your prowess is in donning broidery,  
Adorning roofs and decorating doors."

Pírúz then gave the letter and told Sa'ad  
The words of Rustam. Sa'ad heard, read, and  
wondered.

He wrote an answer back in Arabic,  
Announcing good and ill. He wrote there first  
The name of God and of His messenger,  
Muhammad, who directeth to the truth.  
He spake of Jins and men, of what the Prophet,  
The Háshimite,<sup>1</sup> had said, the Unity  
Of God, of the Kurán, of promise, warning,  
Of menace and of novel usages,  
Of liquid pitch, of fire, and icy cold,  
Of Paradise, its streams of milk and wine,  
Of camphor and of musk, of bubbling springs,  
Of wine and honey and the trees of heaven.<sup>2</sup>  
Then: "If the Sháh accepteth the true Faith  
He will obtain both worlds with joy and kingship,  
And have withal the earrings and the crown,  
Perpetual beauty and prosperity.  
His intercessor there will be Muhammad,  
His form like pure rose-water. In as much  
As Paradise will be thy recompense  
We must not plant thorns in the garth of bale.  
The personality of Yazdagird,  
This spacious world, such gardens, riding-grounds,  
And halls and palaces with all the thrones  
And crowns, the festivals and revelries,  
Are less worth than one hair of an Hourí.  
In this our Wayside Hostelry thine eyes  
Are dazed by crown and treasure, and thou trustest  
Too much in ivory throne, in wealth, and signet,  
In fortune and in crown. Why be concerned  
About a world when one draught of cold water  
Out-prizeth it? Whoever cometh forth

C. 2068

<sup>1</sup> Háshim was the great-grandfather of Muhammad.

<sup>2</sup> This is taken from the Kurán. Cf. Vol. i., p. 99.

To fight with me will see a narrow grave,  
And Hell, naught else ; but Paradise is his  
If he believeth. Mark how he should fare.  
He still will choose the one and shun the other  
As every wise man knoweth."

Then he set  
The Arab seal thereon and praised Muhammad.  
The messenger of Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,  
Went with all speed to Rustam. Now what time  
Shu'ba Mughíra went forth from the chiefs  
To journey to the paladin, a noble,  
One of the Iránians, came in from the way  
Before the captain of the host, and said :—  
" A messenger hath come—a weak, old man—  
Without a horse or weapons and ill-clad,  
With thin sword slung about his neck and shirt  
All plainly tattered."

Rustam thus apprised  
Prepared a tent-enclosure of brocade.  
They laid a carpet of gold thread of Chín ;  
The soldiery turned out like ants and locusts.  
They set a golden ante-throne whereon  
The captain of the host assumed his seat  
With eight score warriors attending him—  
Horsemen and lions on the day of battle—  
With crowns, with violet robes, and golden boots,  
With torques and earrings, while the tent-enclosure  
Was royally adorned. Shu'ba Mughíra,  
On coming to the tent-enclosure, walked not  
Upon the cloth but humbly on the ground,  
And used his scimitar as walking-stick.  
He sat upon the dust without a look  
At any—captain of the host or chief.  
Then Rustam said to him : " May thy soul joy,  
And by its knowledge make thy body strong."  
Shu'ba Mughíra said : " If thou, good sir !

Acceptest the true Faith, peace unto thee."

Now Rustam, hearing this, was vexed and frowned.  
He took and gave the letter to a reader.

C. 2069

That learned man told him what was writ, and Rustam  
Made answer: "Tell him: 'Thou art neither king  
Nor an aspirant to the diadem,  
But thou hast seen my fortune in eclipse,<sup>1</sup>  
And so thy heart ambitioneth my throne.  
The case is one of moment to the wise,  
But thou hast not considered it. If Sa'ad  
Had the Sásánian throne I well might share  
His feasts and fights, but since the faithless stars  
Bode ill, what shall I say? This is the day  
Of bale. If for my guide I take Muhammad,  
And this new Faith for old, all will go wrong  
Beneath this crook-backed sky, and all go hard  
With us.' But as for thee, depart in peace;  
The day of battle is no time for words.  
Tell Sa'ad: 'To die with honour is a thing  
Far better for me than crude parleying."

#### § 4

*How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and  
was slain*

Shu'ba Mughíra went his way, and Rustam  
Bade to array the host and sound the trumpet.  
From all sides troops assembled, clouds of dust  
Arose, and din that deafed the sharpest ears.  
"The steely lance-heads mid the murky reek  
Are," thou hadst said, "stars mid night's azure  
gloom,"

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

While spears ne'er ceased to smite on glittering helms.  
The strife endured three days, till water failed  
The Íránians, and their warriors' hands and steeds  
Became unfit for combat. Rustam's lips  
Grew as the dust with drought, his tongue was split,  
And men and horses battered on moist clay,  
So grievous was the stress !

Shouts rose like thunder  
From Rustam and from Sa'ad as they advanced,  
Each from his post. Each left his army's centre,  
And drew off from the field. Departing thus  
They came beneath a steep-up eminence,  
And there those chieftains twain assailed each other  
Revengefully upon that scene of strife  
Till Rustam, roaring like a thunder-clap,  
Smote with his sword Sa'ad's charger on the head,  
Smote the swift charger which came headlong down,  
And brave Sa'ad was unhorsed. Then Rustam reared  
Aloft a trenchant blade to show to him  
The Day of Doom, and was in mind to strike  
His head off, but by reason of the dust  
Raised by the troops they could not see each other.  
Then Rustam lighted from his steed and saddle  
Of leopard-skin and fastened to his belt  
His charger's reins but, while dust blinded him,  
Sa'ad hurried up and smote him with the sword  
Upon his helm whence blood ran down his face,  
And while his eyes were blinded by the gore  
The aspiring Arab gained the upper hand,  
Again smote Rustam on the head and neck,  
And flung his warrior-body on the dust.  
None in the two hosts were aware thereof,  
Or whither those two paladins had gone,  
But searched until they found the scene of strife.  
The Íránians, when they spied their paladin  
Slashed by the scimitar from head to foot,

Fled. Many a chieftain perished in the press,  
And many failed for thirst upon the saddle.  
The world had had full measure of the Sháhs.  
The host fared to the monarch of Írán,  
And hastened on the way both day and night.  
When Rustam had been slain in fight, and when  
The chiefs' heads were all turned, the Muslim host  
Sped like a savage lion in pursuit.<sup>1</sup>  
At that time Yazdagird was at Baghdád ;  
To him the troops came flocking and announced  
That Rustam was no more, and that the sea  
Was dry with grief, that many men had fallen,  
And that the rest had fled the battlefield.  
The hosts, both Persian and Arabian,  
Reached Karkh, and Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd,  
Wroth and with tearful eyes came from the Arwand,  
Arrived at Karkh, fell on the enemy,  
And not an Arab warrior survived.  
The Persians marched out from Baghdád intent  
To meet the foe, and bloody was the event.

## § 5

*How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went  
to Khurásán*

When Farrukhzád had gone back to the Sháh,  
All over dust and in his fighting-gear,  
He lighted from his charger, did obeisance,

<sup>1</sup> The French version of the rest of this section is as follows :—  
" Yezdegird était à Bagdad lorsque ses troupes affluèrent autour  
de lui. Farrukhzad, fils d'Hormuzd, furieux et répandant des  
larmes, traversa le Tigre, entra dans Kerkh et livra un assaut  
terrible qui ne laissa vivant aucun des guerriers armés de lances.  
Les troupes sortirent aussitôt de Bagdad et allèrent chercher le  
combat dans la plaine ; mais lorsque la poussière de la lutte se fut  
dissipée, les Iraniens étaient en fuite."

C. 2071 Blood in his eyes and anguish in his heart,  
 And said to Yazdagird : " Why weep so much ?  
 Is it to wash the throne of kings with tears ?  
 Thou only of the royal race art left  
 To wear the crown and sit upon the throne.  
 One, with a hundred thousand enemies,  
 How canst thou battle when exposed to all ?  
 Betake thee to the forest of Nárwan ;  
 The folk will gather to thee there and thence,  
 Like valiant Farídún, do thou renew  
 The fight like fire."

The king of kings gave ear.  
 New thoughts occurred. Upon the morrow's morn  
 He sat upon his throne, assumed the crown,  
 Held an assembly with his men of lore,  
 The magnates and shrewd-hearted archimages,  
 And said : " What seemeth good to you herein ?  
 What precedents recall ye from the past ?  
 Saith Farrukhzád to me : ' Depart and take  
 Thy followers to the forest of Nárwan :  
 The people of Ámul, are servitors,  
 The people of Sarí all slaves, to thee,  
 And, when thy troops are many, come again  
 With puissance to battle with the Brave.'  
 Do ye approve ? "

They all of them exclaimed :—  
 " That is the course."

The king of kings rejoined :—  
 " It is not well. I purpose otherwise.  
 Shall I desert the chieftains of Írán,  
 And this great host, our country, throne, and crown  
 To save myself ? That were not majesty,  
 Or manliness or policy. To fight  
 The foe is better for me than disgrace.  
 The leopard spake a saw in this regard :—  
 ' Whene'er the time of stress shall come on thee

Turn not in folly from thine enemy.  
 For just as subjects should obey their king  
 In good and ill so he must not desert them  
 In their distress and go off to his treasures."

The great men blessed him, saying: "Crown  
 and signet

Exist for ends like these. Think what thy will  
 And wishes are, and what assurances  
 Thou wouldst of us."

The Sháh thus answered them:—

"Anxiety is ruin to the heart.

Our best course is to go to Khurásán  
 Where we shall feel secure from strife with foes,  
 For there we are possessed of many troops,  
 And valiant paladins. The Turkish chiefs  
 And Khán of Chín will come and do us homage  
 While I will make the union stronger still  
 By marriage with the daughter of Faghfúr.  
 A great host will arrive to succour us,  
 The magnates of Túrán and mighty men.  
 There is the warden of the marches too,  
 Máhwí, with horsemen, elephants, and wealth  
 Of all kinds. He is our chief governor,  
 The highest of the guardians of our coasts.  
 I raised him when he was a vagabond,  
 A minstrel and a braggart, giving him,  
 Though worthless, name and worth, men, government,  
 Lands, elephants. Base though he be and vile  
 Still his advancement hath been at my court.  
 Now I have heard an archmage quote this saw:—  
 'Of one whom thou hast wrongly harmed beware:  
 Of one made rich by thee thy hopes are fair.'  
 I never injured him in aught, and he  
 Will 'venge me on my foe."

C. 2072

But Farrukhzád

Smote his two hands together and exclaimed:—

"O Sháh who fearest God ! put little trust  
 In those of evil bent. In this regard  
 There is a modern saw which runneth thus :—  
 'Howe'er on birth thou practise witchery,  
 And strivest such an one from rust to free,  
 Since the All-giver framed him thus to be  
 To loose God's bonds thou wilt not find a key.'"

"O mighty, raging Lion !" said the Sháh,  
 "To make this trial will work me no hurt."

He stayed that night and, when the morning broke,  
 Those noble men set forth and left Baghdád  
 For Khurásán, and took their travail lightly.  
 The chieftains of Írán all sorrowful  
 Accompanied their Sháh, that noble man,  
 And called down blessings on him, saying : "May  
     time,  
 And earth, ne'er lack thee."

From the host rose wails

For grief and at the going of the king,  
 And all the Íránian thanes—the warriors' stay—  
 Drew near to him with outcries and in tears,  
 And said to him : "O Sháh ! we are thy slaves  
 With souls and bodies filled with love for thee.  
 We all will go with thee to learn how fortune  
 Will sport with our king's life, for if we lose  
 Our Sháh how can our hearts find joy in home,  
 And country ? We will quit our settlements,  
 Our children, and our wealth to share thy toils.  
 We care not for our lives without thy throne :  
 May fortune ne'er abandon thee."<sup>1</sup>

C. 2073

With eyes

All tears the king of kings said to those nobles :—  
 "Be ever more intent in praising God.  
 It may be I shall look on you again,  
 And that our sorrows and distress will cease.

<sup>1</sup> Three couplets omitted.

Ye all are my true helpers and the heirlooms  
 Left by my sires. I would not have you harmed :  
 Share not mine ills then. We will mark the intent  
 Of circling heaven, its progress, and to whom  
 It showeth love. Resign yourself thereto :  
 None can evade its secret purposes."

Then said he to the merchantmen of Chín :—  
 " Make no long tarrying here, else will the Arabs  
 Convert your quest of gain to loss."

They parted

With pain and trouble, sorrow, care, and wailing.  
 So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, led forth  
 The troops and called the veterans of Írán,  
 And then the Sháh set out with wail and woe.  
 The leader led the van. Stage after stage  
 He marched to Rai and tarried there for wine,  
 And minstrelsy, thence went he to Gurgán,  
 Like wind, and stayed one se'nnight sad or glad.  
 Departing thence toward Bust he set his face  
 With wrinkled cheeks and body in ill case.

## § 6

### *How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr*

The world-lord, resolute to go to Marv,  
 Wrote to Máhwí of Súr, the governor,  
 In rage and pain, in tears and hope deferred,  
 And calling an experienced scribe poured forth  
 His heart, and it was full. He first praised God,  
 The all-wise Lord, the Fosterer, the Master  
 Of circling Mars and Sol, of elephant  
 And ant, at will-creating out of naught,  
 And needing no instructor, then proceeded :—

“What hath befallen us! And gone are all  
 This kingship’s hue and perfume. Rustam’s death  
 Upon the battlefield and by the hand  
 Of one whose name is Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,  
 A landless, low-born, witless, aimless man,  
 Hath straitened all the world to us through sorrow.  
 Now that Sa’ad’s army is at Taisafún,  
 With woods and foot-hills fronting them, array  
 Thy host to fight with his and summon all  
 Thy troops to that same end.<sup>1</sup> Lo! I will follow  
 Behind my letter swiftly as the wind,  
 And give thee what I purpose in my mind.”<sup>2</sup>

C. 2074

## § 7

*How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús*

He wrote moreover to the folk of Tús,  
 With full heart and with face like sandarac,  
 First offering his praises to the Judge  
 “From whom are fortune, strength, and excellence,  
 Grace, triumph, throne, and diadem of kingship.  
 From foot of ant to soaring eagle’s plume,  
 From elephant on land to crocodile  
 In water, all are faithful, do His will,  
 And draw no breath unless by His command.  
 This from the world’s Sháh, mighty Yazdagird,  
 Son<sup>3</sup> of a famous king and valorous,  
 Victorious leader of the Íránian host,  
 Who guardeth his domain, desireth more,  
 And cometh of a great, God-fearing race  
 That thank their stars that they possess the crown,

<sup>1</sup> Three couplets omitted.      <sup>2</sup> Two couplets omitted.<sup>3</sup> Reading with P.

Have peopled earth and made crown, throne, and  
signet

Resplendent, to his marchlords with their thrones  
And treasures, Grace, high-bearing, crowns and host  
At Shamírán, Rúína,<sup>1</sup> and Mount Ráda,  
Kalát and elsewhere. May the Fosterer  
Watch over us and keep you from the scath  
Of evil hap. In sooth the chiefs have heard,  
For it hath been an ensign in the world,  
That in regard to warfare, valour, birth,  
Our hearts are full of kindness, love, and justice.  
High birth especially constraineth us—  
The Sháhs—to let our toils exceed our treasures  
On your behalf. What time Bahrám Chúbína,  
That malcontent, grew noted and rejected  
Our rule and diadem ye all abandoned  
Your marches, spacious cities, pleasancess,  
Your parks and palaces, and in that case,  
In terror of disaster, made your homes  
On dale and lofty height. If God almighty  
Shall grant me strength and fortune favour us  
I will repay your good deeds lavishly,  
And pray to Him who watcheth o'er the world.  
In sooth ye must have heard of what the stars  
Have brought upon our head by these vile Snakes  
With looks like Áhriman, who lack all knowledge,  
Shame, fame, and treasure, fortune and descent,  
And fain would let the world go to the winds.  
It is the compass of the lofty sky  
That tribulation shall befall this realm  
By these vile miscreants, these Raven-heads,<sup>2</sup>  
Devoid of sense and knowledge, fame and shame.  
These greedy men, who covet diadems,

C. 2075

<sup>1</sup> "Rouindiz." Mohl.

<sup>2</sup> The Persians translated " 'Aráb " by " Zágh " (raven) and applied the expression to those hated enemies.

Have fixed their eyes upon this royal state,  
 And Núshírwán once dreamed that this our throne  
 Would lose its brilliant lustre. He beheld  
 A hundred thousand Arabs—raging camels  
 With bits<sup>1</sup> snapped—seeking how to cross the Arwand,  
 And bring destruction on our fields and fells,  
 Saw that both Fire and Fane of Fire would perish,  
 The light of New Year end and Sada feast,  
 That in Írán and Babylon dark smoke  
 Would rise from tilth and crop to Saturn's sphere,  
 While on the world-king's hall the battlements  
 Would tumble to the ground.<sup>2</sup> The dream is now  
 Fulfilled and heaven's favour fain to quit us.  
 Those that we value most will be misprized,  
 The base will be set up on high by fortune,  
 Ill scattered through the world, mishap apert  
 And good concealed. In all the provinces  
 Some tyrant, some obscene calamity,  
 And signs of dark night's coming will appear,  
 Our glorious fortune be cut off from us.  
 Now as our counsellors and paladins—  
 Men of pure rede—advise we purpose going  
 To Khurásán and to its warlike marchlords.  
 Because now of the governor of Tús  
 Have I led here the elephants and drums,  
 And we shall see how fortune will make bonds  
 Of our frail knots. I am girt up for battle  
 That I may meet the Arabs face to face,  
 While Farrukhzád—my very veins and skin,  
 And my firm friend—is now at Altúniya,  
 Intent on fight, and host confronteth host,  
 While Kashmigán, that warrior's son, hath reached  
 Our court and spoken well and loyally.

<sup>1</sup> Properly the piece of wood passed through a perforation made in the nostrils of a camel to guide it by.

<sup>2</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 66.

I heard what he could tell about these marches,  
Their heights and depths, their caves, retreats, the  
hold

Upon Mount Gumbadán and Jarmana,  
The fort of Lázhawardí for our stores,  
Spots such as Ál, Makhzúm, and waste of Gil :  
He kindly opened all his heart to me.  
My host for battle is too numerous  
To tarry long within these narrow holds.  
We have held council ; all the paladins  
Attended ; we debated and resolved  
To take with us crown, throne, and seal and  
signet,

All garments of Kashmír and Rúm and Chin,  
Such goods as we can gather from Kibchák  
And from Kírwán, all that we have in hand  
Of clothes and carpets, articles of gold,  
With gems uncut and all that most we prize,  
And provand and equipment for the future.  
Of oxen forty thousand will drag loads  
Of unthrashed corn and after these will come  
Twelve thousand asses drawing loads of dates  
For us. A trusty archimage will bring  
Pistachios, millet, and pomegranate-juice.  
Attending on the outcome they will send  
Thereafter many asses' loads of salt,  
And add a thousand camels' loads of millet,  
Fat from the tails of sheep and butter-skins.  
A thousand Bactrian camels will bring dates,  
Another thousand sugar, as their loads.  
Twelve thousand also will bring drums of honey.  
All these will come at one time to the holds.  
Besides all these my servants will bring in  
Some forty thousand salted carcasses,  
And of black naphtha in the next two months  
Three hundred camel-loads. An archimage

With escort will arrive from<sup>1</sup> Shamírán,  
 And from Mount Ráda while, in sight of all  
 The elders and the wise, the mountain-chiefs,  
 Sent by the marchlords, will convey whate'er  
 Is needed to the gates and give the list  
 To our own treasurer, and if the Great  
 Among the folk will but restrain themselves  
 They will in sooth receive no injury  
 Among the valleys and the lofty hills  
 From Arab or from Turkman. Help from you  
 In these our strenuous times will aid us much.  
 Our minister, that wise and holy man,  
 Will now give orders to our treasurer  
 To send five robes of Persian make to all  
 C. 2077 That toil for us and, when those toils are over,  
 A splendid turban of gold broidery.  
 In these our present troubles each shall have  
 Two score drachms from our treasures, afterwards,  
 For service rendered, for each drachm three-score,  
 Each worth more than ten dāngs,<sup>2</sup> and he will read  
 This legend: 'In the name of holy God,  
 The Object of our reverence, hopes, and fears,'  
 Upon one side. The other side will bear  
 Our face and crown, the legend: 'Through our love  
 The earth becometh fruitful.' These have been  
 Prepared for New Year's Day, the nobles' eyes  
 Fulfilled with wealth. God's blessing on the man  
 Whose faults are few and who forgetteth not  
 Our diadem."

The Sháh when he had sealed  
 The letter sent it to the army-chiefs.  
 With this king's missive in his hand there came  
 A horseman of high fortune and high aim.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

<sup>2</sup> The dāng properly was a quarter of a drachm.

## § 8

*How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr  
met him*

Thence they conveyed the drums and came to Tús  
From Nishápúr. Máhwí of Súr had news :—  
“ The Sháh is on the road to Dahistán,”  
And went to meet him with a mighty power,  
All spearmen and in coats of mail, and when  
The Glory of the royal state appeared,  
The flag of majesty and such a host,  
Alighted from his steed forthwith and paid  
His duty to the king of kings, walked softly  
Upon the burning dust and from his eyes  
Shed tears of reverence. He kissed the ground,  
Prolonging his obeisance. All his troops  
Acclaimed the Sháh and touched earth with their  
heads,  
While Farrukhzád enranked his powers when he  
Beheld the visage of Máhwí of Súr  
By whom his heart was joyed and whom he coun-  
selled  
At large : “ This Sháh of royal race do I  
Commit to thee to serve him, suffering not  
The blast to blow on him, and none save thee  
To earn his thanks. I must depart to Rai,  
Uncertain whether I shall see again  
The royal crown for 'gainst these Arab spearmen  
Full many such as I have died in battle.  
There was not one within the world like Rustam,  
The horseman, never hath the ear of sage  
Heard tell of such, yet by a Raven-head<sup>1</sup>

C. 2078

<sup>1</sup> See p. 91. note.

Was he cut off, so adverse was our day !  
 God grant to him a place among the Just,  
 And give the swarthy Ravens to our spears !

Máhwí replied : " O paladin ! the Sháh  
 Is eye and soul to me. I undertake  
 In thy place to defend thy king, thy Heaven."

So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, departed  
 To Rai as bidden by the Sháh. The sky  
 Revolved awhile with matters in this stay,  
 And all love passed from that malignant's brain,  
 And none dared go to battle with the Arabs  
 Because the azure sky was helping them ;  
 The visage of the monarch of Írán  
 Grew wrinkled ; the foe's deeds made strait his heart.  
 Máhwí saw that the Sháh was at a stay,  
 And driven on by fortune helplessly,  
 Ambitioned speedily the throne and changed  
 In policy, in manners, and dispose,  
 Then for a season he began to affect  
 Ill health and barely showed the Sháh respect.

### § 9

*How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill*

There was a paladin, a Turk by race,  
 A man of influence and named Bízhan ;  
 He dwelt within the coasts of Samarkand  
 Where he had many kin. Ill-starred Mahwí,  
 Becoming self-assertive, wrote to him :—  
 " Thou prosperous scion of the paladins !

A strife hath risen that will bring thee profit :  
 The Sháh is of all places here at Marv  
 And with no troops ! His head and crown and state,  
 Wealth, throne, and host, are thine if thou wilt come.  
 Recall the vengeance owing to thy sires,  
 And give this unjust race its just reward."

Bízhan, considering the letter, saw  
 That insolent Máhwí would win the world,  
 Then spake thus to his minister : " Thou chief  
 Of upright men ! what sayest thou to this ?  
 If I lead forth a host to aid Máhwí  
 'Twill be my ruin here."<sup>1</sup>

The minister

Replied : " O lion-hearted warrior !  
 'Twere shame to help Máhwí and then withdraw.  
 Command Barsám to set forth with a host  
 To aid upon this scene of strife. The sage  
 Will term thee daft to go and fight in person  
 At the insistence of this man of Súr."

C. 2079

Bízhan replied : " 'Tis well, I will not go  
 Myself."

He therefore bade Barsám to lead  
 Ten thousand valiant cavaliers and swordsmen  
 To Marv with all the implements of war  
 If haply he might take the Sháh. That host  
 Went like a flying pheasant from Bukhárá  
 To Marv within one week. One night at cock-crow  
 The sound of tymbals went up from the plain.  
 How could the king of kings suspect Mahwí  
 Of Súr to be his enemy ? Shouts rose.  
 A cavalier reached Yazdagird at dawn  
 To say : " Máhwí saith thus : ' A host of Turks  
 Hath come. What is the bidding of the Sháh ?  
 The Khán and the Faghfúr of Chín command :  
 Earth is not able to support their host ! ' "

<sup>1</sup> Two couplets omitted.

The Sháh wroth donned his mail. The armies ranged.<sup>1</sup>

He formed his troops to right and left, and all  
Advanced to battle. Spear in hand he held  
The centre, and the whole world was bedimmed  
With flying dust. He saw how lustily  
The Turks engaged, unsheathed his sword, and came,  
As 'twere an elephant before his troops.  
Earth Nile-wise flowed. Like thundering cloud he  
charged,

But not a warrior supported him ;  
All turned their backs upon that man of name,  
And left him mid the horsemen of the foe.  
The world's king, when Máhwí withdrew, perceived  
The practice hid till then—the intent and plan  
To capture him—yet played the man in fight,  
Displaying valour, strength, and warriorship,  
Slew many at the centre, but at length  
Fled in despair, with falchion of Kábul  
In hand, pursued by many Turks. He sped  
Like lightning mid night's gloom and spied a mill  
On the canal of Zark<sup>2</sup>. Alighting there  
The world's king lay in hiding from his foes  
Within the mill. The horsemen searched for him ;  
All Zark was hue and cry. The Sháh abandoned  
His gold-trapped steed, his mace, and scimitar  
With golden sheath. The Turks with loud shouts  
sought him,

Excited by that steed and equipage.  
The Sháh within the mill-house lurked in hay.  
With this false Hostel thus it ever is :  
The ascent is lofty and profound the abyss.  
With Yazdagird, while fortune slumbered not,  
A throne enskied<sup>3</sup> by heaven was his lot,  
And now it was a mill ! Excess of sweet

<sup>1</sup> Couplet omitted.

<sup>2</sup> See LEC, p. 400.

<sup>3</sup> Reading with T.

Bred bane for him and, if thou art discreet,  
Affect not this world for its end is ill.  
Whiles a tame serpent to the touch it still  
At whiles will bite, and hot that bite will be.  
Why then affect this cozening hostelry  
While like a drum the signal to be gone  
Thou hearest, bidding : " Bind the baggage on,  
And for sole throne the grave's floor look upon ? "

With mouth untasting and with tearful eyes  
The Sháh abode until the sun arose,  
And then the miller oped the mill-house door.  
He bore a truss of grass upon his back.  
A low-born-man was he, by name Khusrau,  
Poor, foolish, unrespected, purposeless.  
He lived upon the profits of his mill,  
Which gave him full employment. He beheld  
A warrior, like a lofty cypress, sitting  
In dolour on the ground with kingly crown  
Upon his head and with brocade of Rúm  
Bright on his breast ; his eyes a stag's, his chest  
And neck a lion's ; of beholding him  
The eye ne'er tired. He was unique in form ;  
Wore golden boots ; his sleeves were fringed with  
pearls  
And gold. Khusrau looked, stood astound, and  
called

On God, then said : " O man of sunlike mien !  
Say in what sort thou camest to this mill ?  
Why didst thou take it for thy resting-place  
Full as it is of wheat and dust and hay ?  
Who art thou with such form, such Grace and looks ?  
Sure, heaven never saw the like of thee ! "

The Sháh replied : " I am Íránian-born,  
In flight before the army of Túrán."

The miller said, abashed : " I have no comrade  
Save penury, but still, if barley-bread,

With some poor cresses from the river-bank,  
Will serve thee I will bring them ; naught have I  
Besides : a man so straitened well may wail."

Through stress of fight the Sháh had rested not,  
Or eaten, for three days and so replied :—

"Bring what thou hast, that and the sacred twigs  
Will serve my turn."

C. 2081

The poor and lowly miller  
Brought him the cresses and the barley-bread,  
Made haste to fetch the sacred twigs and, reaching  
The toll-house<sup>1</sup> on the way, crossed to the chief  
Of Zark to make request for them. Máhwí  
Had sent men on all sides to find the Sháh,  
And so the chieftain asked the miller : " Friend !  
For whom need'st thou the sacred twigs ? "

Khusrau

Replied : " There is a warrior at the mill,  
And seated on the hay, a cypress slim  
In height, a sun in looks, a man of Grace,  
With eyebrows arched and melancholy eyes :  
His mouth is full of sighs, his soul is sad.  
I set stale fare before him—barley-bread,  
Such as I eat myself—but he is fain  
To take the sacred twigs while muttering grace.<sup>2</sup>  
Thou well mayst muse at him."

The chief rejoined :—

"Go and inform Máhwí of Súr hereof,  
For that foul miscreant must not reveal  
His proper bent when he shall hear of this."<sup>3</sup>

Forthwith he charged a trusty man to take

<sup>1</sup> The toll-house was at the ford or ferry. The same word might also mean a place of worship and accordingly Mohl or rather his successor (see p. 37 *note*) translates :—" Il se rendit au lieu où était l'oratoire et fit prévenir aussitôt le chef de Zark qu'on lui demandait le Barsom."

<sup>2</sup> See Vol. i., p. 80 *s.v.* *Báf*.

<sup>3</sup> *I.e.* if subsequently he should learn that we knew and did not tell him.

The miller to Máhwí who asked of him,  
Then anxious for himself ; " For whom didst thou  
Require the sacred twigs ? Tell me the truth."

The miller all a-tremble made reply :—  
" I had been out to fetch a load and flung  
The mill-door open roughly, when know this :  
The sun was in mine eyes, but his are like  
Those of a startled fawn ; his locks are dark  
As the third watch of night ; his breath suggesteth  
Musk, and his face embellisheth his crown.  
One that hath never seen the Grace of God  
Should take the mill-house key. His diadem  
Is full of uncut jewels, and his breast  
Bright with brocade of Rúm. The mill hath grown  
As 'twere a sun through him, and yet his food  
Is barley-bread, his seat upon the hay !  
' Spring,' thou wouldst say, ' in Paradise is he :  
No thane e'er set so tall a cypress-tree.' "

## § 10

*How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and  
how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear*

Now when Máhwí had taken thought he knew :—  
" 'Tis none but Yazdagird ! " and bade the miller :—  
" Haste and cut off his head forthwith or I  
Will cut thine own off presently and leave  
None of thy stock alive."

C. 2082

The chiefs, the nobles,  
And mighty men heard this and all the assembly  
Were filled with wrath at him ; their tongues were  
charged

With words, their eyes with tears. An archimage,  
 By name Rádwi, whose mind wore wisdom's bridle,  
 Said to Máhwí: "O thou malignant one!  
 Why hath the Dív confused thine eyes? This know:  
 The royal and prophetic offices  
 Are two gems set within one finger-ring.  
 To break one is to trample life and wisdom  
 Beneath thy feet. Reflect upon thy words,  
 And then forbear. Be not the Maker's foe.  
 First will disaster come on thee herefrom,  
 Then thou wilt leave a seed-plot for thy child,  
 With fruit of colocynth and leafage blood.  
 Ere long thou wilt behold thy head abased;  
 Thy villainy will be exposed; thy sons  
 Will reap what thou hast sown. This deed of thine  
 Will wreck the Faith of God, and crown and throne  
 Will curse thee."

Then a devotee devout,  
 Who never put his hand forth to injustice,  
 By name Hurmuzd, son of Kharrád, a man  
 Who rested in the Faith, said to Máhwí:—  
 "O thou oppressor! quit not thus the way  
 Of holy God. I see thy heart and sense  
 Bedimmed. We see thy breast a tomb. Though  
 strong

Thou hast no brain; thy mind is weak; thou seekest  
 The smoke and not the fire. I see that thou  
 Wouldst have the malediction of the world,  
 And, when thou quit'st it, travail, smart, and anguish.  
 Now will thy lifetime prove a wretched one,  
 And fire thy dwelling-place when thou departest."

He sat. Shahrán rose and addressed Máhwí:—  
 "Why this audacity? Thou hast opposed  
 The king of kings and cottoned with the Khán  
 And the Faghfúr. Full many of this race  
 Have proved of no account yet men ne'er hasted

To slay them. Shed not, as thou art a slave,  
The blood of Sháhs because thou wilt be cursed  
Till Doomsday."

This he said, and sat down weeping  
In anguish with heart full and eyes all gall.  
Then Mihr-i-Núsh stood forth in deep distress,  
With lamentation, and addressed Máhwí:—

"O evil man of evil race, who art  
Not well advised or just! a crocodile  
Respecteth royal blood, a leopard finding  
A slain king doth not rend him. O thou worse  
In love and instinct than the beasts of prey!  
Thou covetest the Sháh's crown! When Jamshíd  
Was slaughtered by Zakhák did that affect  
Heaven's will? Nay, when Zakhák had won the earth  
Abtín appeared, the glorious Farídún  
Was born, the fashion of the world was changed,  
And thou hast heard what tyrannous Zakhák  
Brought on himself as sequel of his crimes,  
For though he lived above a thousand years  
Still in the end the avenger came to him.  
Then, secondly, when Túr, the exalted one,  
Afflicted by his longing for Írán,  
Slew in his folly virtuous Íraj,  
On whom the very dust looked pityingly,  
Dispatched him<sup>1</sup> to the hero Farídún,  
And gave the world to sorrow, Minúchihr,  
One of the race, appeared and undid all  
Those bonds. When, thirdly, princely Siyáwush  
Went forth to war, albeit reluctantly,  
Afrásiyáb, inspired by Garsíwaz,  
Washed shame and honour from his mind and wits,  
And slew the youthful and right royal prince,  
So that the world became his enemy.  
Sprung from that prince the world-lord Kai Khusrau

C. 2083

<sup>1</sup> His head, according to the story. See Vol. i., p. 202.

Came and filled all the world with hubbub, clave  
 Asunder with his scimitar his grandsire,<sup>1</sup>  
 And frayed all those that else had sought revenge.  
 The fourth count is the feud against Arjásp,  
 The slayer of Luhrásp. Asfandiyár  
 Went forth to fight with him and took swift wreak.  
 Fifth, is the vengeance ta'en for Sháh Hurmuzd.  
 Khusrau Parwíz, whenas he felt confirmed  
 In heart and power, dealt in the way we know  
 Both with Bandwí and Gustaham. The sky,  
 Which then revolved, revolveth still.<sup>2</sup> Forgetting  
 What they had done for him, when his sire's blood  
 And love and family appealed to him,  
 He in his day of strength abated theirs.<sup>3</sup>  
 One may not scorn the occasion of revenge,  
 For such a time will quickly come to thee,  
 And thou wilt suffer for thine evil thoughts,  
 Thy son will reap what thou hast sown, and fate  
 Will not rest long from vengeance; so refrain  
 From all this treasure-hoard, this heritage  
 Of crown and precious things. Thou art revolting  
 Because the Dív enjoineth, and abjuring  
 The way of God. The Dív, as thou wilt learn,  
 Is tempting thee with things not for thine honour.  
 Burn not thy soul and body in Hell-fire;  
 Dim not this world-illuming crown but gather  
 Thy scattered troops; recant what thou hast said;  
 Go ask the Sháh to pardon thee and when  
 Thou seest him renew thy fealty.  
 From there prepare to battle with the foe;  
 Be instant both in counsel and excuse,  
 For not to hearken to the words of sages  
 Will mark thee out as evil in both worlds.  
 Men bring to naught things done a day too late.

C. 2084

<sup>1</sup> Afrásiyáb, whose daughter Farangís married Siyáwush.<sup>2</sup> *I.e.* history repeats itself.      <sup>3</sup> Vol. viii., pp. 354, 358.

Wilt thou treat Yazdagird, the king of kings,  
 Worse than malignant Turks, for in the fray  
 He is a lion, on the throne a Sháh  
 As bright as sun and moon, a memory  
 Of the Sásánians ? None is girdle-girt  
 Like him. From sire to sire his ancestors  
 Were mighty men and compassers of wisdom  
 From Núshírwán, the Sháh, back to Ardashír,  
 While, seventh backward from Ardashír, Sásán,  
 The world-lord, had the crown,<sup>1</sup> for God entrusted  
 To him the Kaian crown, and all the kings  
 Were of that glorious race. Now many a man  
 Hath been thy better, but they ne'er conceived  
 Designs like these. As for Bahráw Chúbína,  
 Three hundred thousand skilful cavaliers  
 On barded steeds fled at one shaft of his,<sup>2</sup>  
 And left the field of fight to him ; but when  
 His heart grew weary of the race of Sháhs  
 The head of his resplendent fortune fell.  
 So Faráyín, who sought the throne of kings  
 Unworthily and bathed his hands in blood,  
 Was in like manner miserably slain :  
 This age endureth not such mockeries.  
 Fear Him, the Lord, the Maker of the world,  
 For He created throne and crown and signet.  
 Defame not thine own person wantonly  
 Because ere long such things will rise against thee.  
 Know that whoever speaketh not the truth  
 To thee is thy soul's foe. Now thou art sick  
 While I am as the leech, a leech that wailleth,

<sup>1</sup> *De jure* not *de facto*. The first Sásán, here referred to, was the son of Dárá and after his father's overthrow by Sikandar took refuge in obscurity. Several generations later a descendant of his of the same name became the father of Ardashír Pápakán—the founder of the Sásánian Dynasty. The Sásánians, naturally sought to connect themselves with the old line of the Persian monarchy, with the Achaemenids in history and with the Kaiánians in legend. Cf. Vol. vi., p. 199.

<sup>2</sup> See Vol. viii., p. 126.

And sheddeth drops of blood. Thou art thyself  
 Less than the slave of slaves. Be not ambitious  
 In thy heart's thoughts. Leave strife to holy God,  
 And seek in honour's way the throne of greatness."

The shepherd-born<sup>1</sup> had set his heart upon  
 The throne : the archimages' rede was hard.  
 So hath it ever been ; 'tis no new thing :  
 The flouts of fortune are past reckoning,  
 Exalting to the sky above this one,  
 And making that vile, wretched, and undone,  
 Not leagued with that, on war with this not bent,  
 But void of wit, shame, Faith, and precedent.

The archimages all, till the world gloomed and moon  
 Succeeded sun, warned that vindictive man,  
 Who was not one hair better for their talk,  
 And said when night came : " Ye must leave me now  
 C. 2085 O sages ! I will ponder this to-night,  
 And take all kinds of wisdom to my breast.  
 We will call twenty wise men from the host  
 That we may need not to deplore this ill."

The prudent archimages went their ways,  
 The men of war arrived. Máhwí held session  
 With his confederates<sup>2</sup> and said : " What think ye  
 Herein ? If Yazdagird remain alive  
 Troops will collect to him from every side ;  
 My secret purposes have been exposed,  
 And all, both great and small, have heard thereof !  
 My life will end through his hostility,  
 And neither folk nor field and fell be left."

A wise man said : " Thou shouldest not have acted  
 At first so. If the monarch of Írán  
 Be ill-disposed toward thee then past doubt  
 Ill will befall thee from him, yet 'tis ill  
 To shed his blood for then God will avenge him.  
 To left and right are cares and pains of all kinds :

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.* Máhwí. *Cf.* p. 87.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with P.

Consider how thou need'st must act herein."

Máhwí's son said to him : " Well counselled sire !  
 Since thou hast made the Sháh thine enemy  
 Be rid of him ; troops from Máchin and Chín  
 Will come to him and earth grow strait for us.  
 Hold this no trifle. Since thou hast prevailed  
 Tempt not the maws of lions. Thou and all  
 Thy host will be uprooted from the world  
 If standard-wise the Sháh's skirt be unfurl'd."

### § 11

*How Yazdagird was slain by Khasrau, the Miller*

Thereat the shameless, infamous Máhwí  
 Turned fiercely to the miller, saying : " Up !  
 Take cavaliers and shed my foeman's blood."

The miller, hearing, knew not what to do,  
 But when at night the moon assumed her throne  
 Departed mill-ward to the Sháh and when  
 He left the court-gate of Máhwí his eyes  
 Were charged with tear-drops and his heart was full.  
 Forthwith Máhwí dispatched some cavaliers  
 To follow swift as smoke, instructing them :—  
 " See that ye sully not the crown and earrings,  
 The signet and the royal robes with blood,  
 And strip the Sháh when lifeless."

With his eyes

All tearful and cheeks yellow as the sun  
 The miller went, exclaiming : " Judge almighty,  
 Who art above the processes of time !  
 Wring presently his heart and soul for this  
 Abhorred behest !"

C. 2086

With heart all shame and qualm,

With wetted cheeks and tongue all charged with dust,  
 He reached the Sháh and drawing nigh with caution,  
 As one would speak a secret in the ear,  
 Stabbed with a dirk his middle. At the blow  
 The Sháh cried: "Ah!" Then tumbled head and  
 crown,

And barley-bread before him, to the dust!  
 He that abideth when he might depart  
 From this world hath no wisdom in his heart,  
 And wisdom is not in the turning sky,  
 Whose love is as its stress and enmity.  
 'Tis well to look not on the world and so  
 From these its doings love and wrath not know.  
 The planets weary of their fosterlings,

And guiltless folk like Yazdagird are slain;  
 None else hath perished thus of all the kings,  
 Nor of his host a plier of the rein.

The horsemen of accursed Máhwí, on seeing  
 That royal Tree thus laid to rest afar  
 From palace and his scenes of ease, drew near,  
 Gazed, one and all, upon his face, removed  
 His cincture, violet robe, and coronet,  
 His torque and golden boots, and left him there  
 In miserable case upon the ground—  
 The monarch of Írán flung on the dust,  
 Blood-boltered, with gashed side!<sup>1</sup> Those emissaries,  
 When they arose, all framed their tongues to curse:—  
 "Oh! may Máhwí himself fare, prostrate thus,  
 All gory on earth's face."

They told Máhwí:—

"The exalted Sháh hath passed away from throne,  
 From battle and delights," and he commanded  
 To take, when it was night, the monarch's corpse,  
 And fling it in the stream. The miller took  
 The body of the Sháh forth from the mill,

<sup>1</sup> Reading the couplet that follows here two couplets lower.

And flung it (mark the horror!) in the water,<sup>1</sup>  
And there it floated with a bobbing head!<sup>2</sup>

When it was day and people went abroad  
Two men of worship visited the spot.  
One of these men austere and sober reached  
The river-bank and, when he saw the corpse  
All naked in the water, hurried back  
In consternation to the monastery,  
And told the other monks what he had seen:—  
“The Sháh, the master of the world, is drowned,  
And naked in the water-way of Zark!”

Then many of those holy men—the chief  
And others of all ranks—set forth. A cry  
Of anguish rose from them: “O noble man,  
And royal crown-possessor! none e’er saw  
The wearer of it in such plight as this,  
Or ever heard before the time of Christ  
A case like this king’s through his wicked slave,  
This misbegotten dog, this reprobate,  
Who fawned upon his master till ill came;  
Máhwi’s just portion is to be accursed.  
Woe for the head and crown, the height and mien!  
Woe for the breast and arms, the hands and mace!  
Woe for the last descendant of Ardshír!  
Woe for that cavalier so young and goodly!  
Strong wast thou; thou hadst wisdom in thy soul,  
And thou hast gone to bear the news hereof  
To Núshírwán that, though thy face was moonlike,  
And though thou wast a king and soughtest crowns,  
Yet in the mill they pierced thy liverstead,  
And flung thy naked body in the stream!”<sup>3</sup>

Four of the monks went stripped into the water,  
Seized the bare body of the youthful king,

<sup>1</sup> Thus, if we interpret the passage by strict Zoroastrian principles, polluting one of the elements and adding sacrilege to regicide, but *cf.* Vol. iv., p. 129.

<sup>2</sup> Couplet omitted.

<sup>3</sup> Three couplets omitted.

That grandson of the world-lord Núshírwán,  
 And drew it to the bank while young and old  
 Lamented greatly. They prepared for him  
 Within the garth a charnel-house and raised  
 Its summit to the clouds. They sealed his wound  
 With gum, with pitch, with camphor, and with musk,  
 And then arrayed him in brocade of gold,  
 With fine Egyptian linen underneath,  
 And dark-blue Russian cloth o'er all. They decked  
 His place of rest with wine and gum and camphor,  
 With musk and with rose-water.

When the form  
 Was hidden of that noble Cypress-tree  
 What said that honoured thane of Marv? "In secret  
 A guerdon waiteth him that after travail  
 Departeth with good conscience from the world."

Another said: "Though man may laugh, yet know  
 That he is of the sufferers, for he  
 Will find the falseness of the turning sky,  
 Which will reveal to him both rise and fall."

Another said: "Call not him one of wit  
 That serveth his own form with princes' blood,  
 And seeketh wealth, despite of infamy,  
 With soul unfearful of an evil end."

Another said: "Since the Sháh's lips are closed  
 I see not crown or royal seat or signet,  
 Or courtiers or a realm or diadem,  
 Or throne or helmet, and if these possess  
 No moment in themselves why this expense  
 Of toil and time?"

C. 2088

"Thy good report, I see,"

Another said, "will win thee worthy praise.  
 Thou in the garth of Paradise didst set  
 A cypress: now thy soul beholdeth it."

Another said: "God took thy soul and gave  
 Thy body to the care of the devout.

Hereby thy soul is profited, hereby  
Will harm betide the foe. The Sháh hath now  
His work in Paradise ; his foeman's soul  
Is on the road to Hell."

Another said :—

" Wise, knowledge-loving Sháh sprung from Ardashír !  
Thou reapest now the crop that thou didst sow :  
The lamp of sovereignty is still alight."

Another said : " Though thou'rt asleep, young king!  
Thy spirit is awake. Thy lips are mute,  
And with full many a groan thy spirit passed  
And left thy body free. Thy work is done :  
Thy soul is busy now. Thy foeman's head  
Is on the stake. Although thy tongue is tied  
Thy spirit speaketh, and thy soul is purged  
Although thy form is pierced, while if thy hand  
Have dropped the reins thy spirit still will wield  
The spear in battle."

Said another one :—

" O famous warrior ! thou hast departed  
With thine own works as guide. Thy royal seat  
Is now in Paradise ; this earth of bale  
Is now another's share."

" The man that slew  
One such as thee," another said, " will look  
Upon harsh days anon."

The prelate said :—

" Thy slaves are we and laud thy holy soul.  
Be this, thy charnel, as a garth all tulips,  
This bier thine upland and thy plain of joy."

They spake, took up the bier and carried it  
From waste to mausoleum. Thither came  
The hapless Sháh, crown, throne, and casque at end.  
O man of many years, whose words still run !

Turn from the path of greed, break off thy strain.  
What shall we say hereof ? Was justice done,

Or vengeance by the seven planets ta'en,  
 On Yazdagird ? The sage, if unresolved  
 Upon the point, could make me no reply,  
 Or if he spake 'twould be in words involved  
 That keep the answer still a mystery.  
 If thou hast means, good man ! indulge thy heart ;  
 Trust not to what the morrow promiseth,  
 Because the world and thou perforce must part,  
 And time accounteth for thine every breath ;  
 Thou shouldst sow not any save good seed  
 In what remaineth of thy mortal strife ;  
 Control the door of appetite and greed ;  
 He that provided will provide through life,  
 And life itself will but produce for thee  
 Fair fame and happiness, good friend ! Then still  
 C. 2089 With all thy might eschew iniquity,  
 For from a wise man should proceed no ill.  
 Bring wine ; our day is nearly o'er and hence  
 We must away, for what hath been will be.  
 Had I incomings balancing expense  
 Then time would be a brother unto me.  
 The hail this year like death on me hath come,  
 Though death itself were better than the hail,  
 And heaven's lofty, far-extending dome  
 Hath caused my fuel, wheat, and sheep to fail.

## § 12

*How Máhwi of Súr was informed of the Obsequies<sup>1</sup> of  
 Yazdagird and ascended the Throne*

One came and told Máhwi of Súr : " The world-lord  
 Is hidden in the dust. The prelates, priests,

<sup>1</sup> " Slaying " in the text.

And monks of Rúm—all those of life austere,  
Both young and old, throughout that march and  
land—

Went wailing, took his body from the stream,  
And made for him within the garth a charnel—  
A great one, higher than the mountain-slopes.”<sup>1</sup>

Máhwí, that luckless wretch, exclaimed : “ Írán  
Had ne’er before affinity with Rúm.”

He sent and slew the builders of that charnel,  
With those that mourned, and gave that march to  
spoil,

Such was his will and worth ! Thereafter he  
Made search throughout the world and found not one  
Of that great stock. He had a crown and signet,  
The Sháh’s erewhile, and to that shepherd-born  
The throne appealed. He called his intimates,  
Announced the purpose that he had at heart,  
And told his minister : “ Experienced man !  
The day of strife and battle is upon us.  
I have no treasure, fame or lineage,  
And may but give my head up to the winds.  
The name that is upon my signet-ring  
Is Yazdagird : my scimitar hath failed  
To make men yield to me. Throughout Írán  
Men are his slaves although his kin is scattered.  
The sages do not hail me as the Sháh,  
The soldiers do not recognise my seal.  
My machinations tended otherwise.  
Oh ! wherefore did I shed the world-king’s blood ?  
All night am I sore-troubled in my thoughts :  
The World-lord knoweth how it is with me.”

The counsellor replied : “ The thing is done,  
And common talk. Act for thine own behoof,  
For thou hast burst thy belt. The Sháh is dust  
Within the charnel ; dust hath healed his soul.

C. 2090

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

Call round thee all the world-experienced men,  
And set thy tongue to words of pleasantness.  
Say thus : ' The Sháh gave me the crown and signet  
As emblems of authority, perceiving  
The coming of an army from the Turks,  
Called me at dead of night, and said : " When bruit  
Of war ariseth who can say which side  
The dust will be, so take this crown and ring,  
For they may help thee on the day of battle.  
I have one daughter only left to me :  
In truth she is in hiding from the Arabs.  
Hereafter yield not to the foe my throne,  
And by these tokens walk thou in my steps."  
I have then from the Sháh as legacy  
This crown and in accord to his behest  
Am sitting on the throne.' By this device  
Give thou thine acts a gloss for who will know  
The truth from falsehood ? "

" Good ! " exclaimed Máhwí,  
" Thou art a minister—a peerless one ! "

He summoned all the captains of the host,  
And spake at large to them to that effect.  
They knew : " It is not true, and well it were  
To cut his head off for his shamelessness."

A paladin observed : " 'Tis thy concern  
If what thou sayest be the truth or not."

He heard and sat him down upon the throne,  
By his deceit gat hold of Khurásán,  
Distributed the earth among his chiefs,  
And said : " I am the world's king with the signet."

He called his kin and said the same at large ;  
He took the whole earth as it were a gift ;  
The stars were in amaze at him. He chose  
The vicious as accorded to his nature,  
Debased the sages and made everywhere  
Chiefs of the bad. The head of right was humbled,

And knavery on all sides manifest.  
 He gave his elder son Balkh and Harát,  
 And sent troops to each quarter. As his host  
 And treasures grew the heart of that ingrate  
 Was gratified. He gave his troops rewards  
 And put them in good case; he filled the heads  
 Of his own kith and kin with vapourings.  
 Then with his troops and valiant warriors,  
 Preceded by the scouts and Garsiyún—  
 A veteran chief—they marched upon Bukhárá,  
 Intent on war, for “Chách and Samarkand  
 Are ours,” Máhwí said, “and they must be made  
 The captives of this crown and seal, for so  
 Did Yazdagird, king of the world, command—  
 Chief of the planets seven. With the sword  
 Will I take vengeance on Bízhan by whom  
 The fortune of earth’s king was turned to gloom.”

C. 2091

## § 13

*How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and  
 of Máhwí of Súr’s Accession to the Throne, led  
 forth the Host to fight with him*

In time news reached Bízhan: “Máhwí hath seized  
 The throne of might and everywhere imposeth  
 His seal and signet; earth accepteth him,  
 And now with warlike troops his face is turned  
 Toward the Jíhún for battle.”

“Who bestowed  
 The signet on him?” asked Bízhan, and one  
 Acquainted him with all: “When thou didst reach  
 The desert of Farab, and fortune’s lips  
 Were closed to good and ill, there parted hence

To him a force of haughty cavaliers  
 In quest of fame, for he had said : ' If thou  
 Wilt send me troops I will dispatch to thee  
 By privy pact the crown of king of kings  
 With golden throne and signet. In the world  
 The sovereignty is fitly thine.' Thy troops  
 Went hence in haste and found the Sháh at Marv.  
 They compassed him about. The Íránians fled.  
 When that wise king was left alone he feared  
 That ill might come upon him from the host.  
 There was a certain mill upon the ford,  
 And thither went the Sháh, a sun in Grace.  
 Máhwí of Súr heard of him, sent and slew him,  
 And through the royal signet gained the world  
 When he had slain his master. Now the more part  
 Of praise and blame in this affair is thine,  
 Thine were the valiant horsemen and the strife."

Barsám said thus : " O king ! what time<sup>1</sup> I took  
 A mounted force from Chách<sup>2</sup> Máhwí had said  
 To thee : ' The golden throne of Yazdagird,  
 His armlets set with gems, his crown withal  
 And treasure, will I send to Balkh. The throne  
 And crown within the world must needs be thine.'  
 I fought three days at Marv. When on the fourth  
 The world's light shone I battled furiously,  
 For I was pressed. Tyrannical Máhwí  
 Displayed his back. The Íránian king of kings,  
 Abandoned, like a furious lion charged  
 My troops and slaughtered many of my chiefs,  
 But, when he had no comrades left, he too  
 Displayed his back ; but how that master-slayer,  
 That faithless slave, put him to death I know not.  
 Thus with no toil Máhwí obtained and used  
 His master's treasures. Then the miscreant,  
 Becoming dazed by so much wealth, appeared,

C. 2092

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.      <sup>2</sup> Couplet omitted.

Thou mightest say, as if he ne'er had seen me !  
 Although my troops remained two months at Marv  
 He gave us no kind look but put to death,  
 And privily, his lord, so great a king,  
 The lustre of the world, a cavalier  
 That 'raiseth o'er the orbit of the moon  
 His head amidst the host ' thou wouldst have said.  
 No Turk encountered and escaped his mace :  
 He broke our nobles' hearts. I have not seen  
 Such breastplate, hand, and mace. Máhwí thus  
     furnished  
 Seized on the realm in this unholy wise.  
 Now that the foe in arms invadeth thee  
 Thou and thine army must be up and doing.  
 Let not weeds blossom in the royal garden  
 Or it will be forgotten."

Hearing this,  
 Bízhan raged much at having helped to dim  
 The fortune of the Sháh, then bade assemble  
 His host of Turks, his horsemen of the day  
 Of battle, sped forth from Káchár Báshí,  
 And lost no time upon the road. Whenas  
 He drew anear Bukhárá all the waste  
 Was covered with his troops to whom he said :—  
 "Haste not and let Máhwí be first to lead  
 His host across the water<sup>1</sup> to contend  
 With me. Perchance on him I may avenge  
 The Sháh."

He asked thereafter : "Did the king  
 Leave no availful child ? Had he no brother ?  
 In the default of sons had he no daughter,  
 Whom we might carry with us and assist,  
 And take full satisfaction of Máhwí ?"

Barsám replied : "My lord ! this race's day  
 Is passed ; the Arabs hold those provinces ;

<sup>1</sup> The Oxus.

No Sháh is left or worshipper of Fire."

Bízhan, on hearing this, resumed his march,  
Astound at this world's doings. Scouts announced :—  
"A host hath come and campeth at Baigand.  
They crossed in boats, their dust obscured the sun."

Bízhan, the chief, led on his troops to war,  
And when Máhwí of Súr beheld them thou  
C. 2093 Hadst said: "His soul took flight." He was in  
dudgeon

At all those breastplates, helmets, shields of Chín,  
At all those maces, spears, and battle-axes  
Of Chách. The air grew dark and earth was lost  
To sight therein as he arrayed his host.

#### § 14

*How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of  
Bízhan*

Bízhan, when he had drawn up his array,  
Prepared an ambush for the Íránians ;  
Máhwí knew of it and with loud exclaims  
Departed from among his troops. Bízhan  
Looked forth, beheld the flag, and knew: "Máhwí  
Is minded to take flight," and bade Barsám :—  
"Lead from the central host what troops thou hast,  
And draw toward one side ; we must not let  
Máhwí decline the battle and haste thus  
Jíhún-wards. Speed and keep him well in sight,  
For we must deal with him in other wise."

Barsám of Chín observed the flag and drew  
His troops apart until with frowning face,  
And malisons upon his lips, he reached  
The desert of Farab, there found Máhwí,

And, with his weight upon the stirrups, charged ;  
 Then, closing face to face, he plied his sword,  
 Displaying valour, seized his foeman's belt,  
 Unseated him and dashed him to the ground,  
 Alighted, bound his hands, and then remounting  
 Drove him along in front. With that came up  
 Barsám's own comrades, and the bruit of him  
 Filled all the plain. They said : " O chief ! Máhwí  
 Should be beheaded on the way."

He answered :—

" Not so ; Bízhan as yet is not informed  
 About the capture."

Presently Bízhan

Gat news : " That ill-conditioned slave is taken,"  
 Heard and grew glad of heart. He hugged himself,  
 And thus released from care roared lion-like.  
 Then many valiant Turks came and discussed  
 The fashion of the slaying of Máhwí.  
 All that they recognised as of his court  
 They put to death—a countless multitude.  
 They looted all the baggage and dragged off  
 Máhwí stripped bare of all. The guilty wretch  
 Lost all his wits when he beheld Bízhan,  
 Was as a soulless body with affright,  
 And strewed upon his head the unstable sand.  
 Bízhan said : " O thou miscreant ! may none have  
 A slave like thee ! Why didst thou put to death  
 That righteous Sháh, the lord of victory  
 And throne, and by ancestral right both Sháh  
 And king, the memory of Núshírwán ? "  
 Máhwí made answer thus : " The evil-doer  
 Can look for naught but slaying and reproach.  
 Now smite my neck for wrong done and fling down  
 My head in presence of this company."

C. 2094

The other gave reply : " I will so act  
 That I shall banish vengeance from my heart,"

Struck off Máhwí's hand with the scimitar,  
And said : " This hand hath not a peer in crime."

The hand thus lopped, he said : " Cut off his feet  
That he may not escape," and further bade :—  
Cut off his nose and ears, let him be placed  
Upon a horse out on the burning sand  
Until he sleepeth in his shame."

They bound him

From head to foot with cords, the clarions sounded,  
A herald went the circuit of the host,  
And, as he passed the entry of the tents,  
Made proclamation : " Slaves that slay your masters !  
Indulge no foolish thoughts, and may all those  
Without compunction for a monarch's life  
Be as Máhwí and never see the throne."

There was a prince, by name Guráz, at once  
The glory and the pleasure of Máhwí.  
He was the governor of Marv what time  
Máhwí died wretchedly. As eldest son  
He was his father's lustre, who had made  
A crown of gold for him. When fortune loured  
Upon Máhwí the horsemen rode to Marv  
From all sides. Tumult spread. The war-cry rose,  
And strife and turmoil filled the land. Guráz  
Was slain mid those dark doings, and the day  
Of all his race was done. He had three sons  
Among his troops, three favourite sons possessed  
Of crown and throne. A lofty pyre was kindled,  
And he and his three sons were burned thereon.  
None of the seed remained or if some did  
Men harried them. The chieftains cursed that race,  
All vengeful for the slaughter of the Sháh :—  
" May it be cursed and may there never fail  
A man to curse it as it hath deserved."

Bízhán, the Turk, too was an evil-doer.  
His own time came, his wisdom was estranged,

And I have heard that he grew mad at last,  
 And was so till he slew himself. Well done,  
 Thou still revolving, crook-backed sky ! Since then  
 Hath been the epoch of 'Umar, made known  
 The Faith, and to a pulpit changed the throne.

## § 15

*Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma*

When five and sixty years had passed me by  
 I viewed my task with more anxiety,  
 And as my yearning to achieve it grew  
 My fortune's star receded from my view.  
 Persians well read and men of high degree  
 Wrote all my work out and would take no fee.  
 I over-looked from far, and thou hadst said  
 That they had rather handselled me instead !  
 Naught but their praises had I for my part,  
 And while they praised I had a broken heart.  
 The mouths of their old money-bags were tied,  
 Whereat mine ardent heart was mortified.  
 Of famous nobles of this town 'Alí,  
 The Dīlamite,<sup>1</sup> most shared the work with me,  
 For he, a man of ardent temper made,  
 Through kindness of soul forwent no aid.  
 Husain, son of Kutīb, a Persian lord,  
 Asked me for naught without its due reward,  
 But furnished gold and silver, clothes and meat,  
 And found me ways and means, and wings and feet.  
 As for taxation, naught thereof know I ;  
 All at mine ease in mine own quilt I lie.

<sup>1</sup> In Vol. i., p. 35, the names are given according to the reading of BCM.

What time my years attained to ten times seven  
 And one my poetry surmounted heaven.  
 For five and thirty years I bore much pain  
 Here in this Wayside Inn in quest of gain,  
 But all the five and thirty years thus past  
 Naught helped; they gave my travail to the blast,  
 And my hopes too have gone for evermore  
 Now that mine age all but hath reached fourscore.  
 I end the story of Sháh Yazdagird,  
 And in Sapandármad, the day of Ard,  
 And year four hundred of Muhammad's Flight,  
 The last words of this royal book I write.  
 For ever flourishing be Sháh Mahmúd,  
 His head still green, his heart with joy imbued.  
 I have so lauded him that publicly  
 And privily my words will never die.  
 Of praises from the Great I had much store;  
 The praises that I give to him are more.  
 May he, the man of wisdom, live for aye,  
 His doings turn to his content alway.  
 This tale of sixty thousand couplets I  
 Have left to him by way of memory.  
 My life from days of youth to eld hath sped  
 In talk and hearkening what others said.  
 When this, my famous tale, was done at last  
 O'er all the realm my reputation past.  
 All men of prudence, rede, and Faith will give  
 Applause to me when I have ceased to live,  
 Yet live I shall; the seed of words have I  
 Flung broad-cast and henceforth I shall not die.

C. 2096

The Sháhnáma of Firdausí is ended.

# INDEX

*This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Roman numerals.*

## A

ABBREVIATIONS, list of, xi  
 Abtín, father of Farídún, 53, 103  
 Abú Bakr, Khalífa, 76  
     begins war with Persian Empire, 66  
 Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 66  
     supersedes Khálid in Syria, 66  
 Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 67  
     made commander in Persian campaign, 67  
     slain, 67  
 Afrásiyáb, ruler of Túrán, 25, 103  
 Áhriman, the Evil Principle, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91  
 Ál, place, 93  
 Alburz, Mount, 25  
 'Alí, the Dīlamite, friend of Fir-dausí, 121  
 Altúníya, place, 92  
 Ámul, city in Mázandarán, 86  
 Apologue, 86  
 Apothegms, 87, 88, 110  
 Arab, Arabs, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92, 94, *seq.*, 114, 117  
     invasion of Írán by, 3, 65 *seq.*  
     steeds, 11  
     tribes, 65  
     triumph of, over Dhú Kár, 66  
     chieftain, incites Abú Bakr to invade Persia, 66  
     concentrate at Kádísíya, 67

Arab, Arabs, booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), 68  
     annex Mesopotamia, 68  
     Khuzistán, 68  
     = 'Umar, 72  
     seal, 82  
     = Sa'ad, 84  
     defeated, 85  
     Núshírwán's dream of, 92  
 Arabian, Arabians, 74, 85  
 Arabic, 81  
 Archmages, viii  
 Ard, day, 70, 122  
 Ardshír Pápakán, first Sásánian Sháh, 105, 109, 111  
 Ardshír, son of Shírwí, Sháh, vii, 43 *seq.*  
     makes Píruz general, 44  
     entertains Píruz at feast, 48  
     death of, 49  
     treasury of, squandered by Guráz, 53  
 Árish, famous Íránian archer, 25  
 Arjásp, king of Túrán, 104  
 Armaní, Íránian chief, 74  
 'Arús, treasure, 20  
 Arwand (Tigris), river, 85, 92  
 Asfandiyár, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, 25, 26 *note*, 104  
 Ashtád, Íránian chief, 11 *seq.*  
     chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, 9  
     and Kharrád parley with Galfnúsh, 11  
     visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12  
     report to Shírwí, 27  
 Astrolabe, 73

- Astrologer, 73  
 Ázar, month and day, 17  
 Ázar, Ábádagán (*Ázargashasp*  
*q.v.*), 74  
 Ázargashasp, spirit of the light-  
 ning, 55  
   temple of (*Ázar Ábádagán*)  
   at Shíz (*Takht-i-Salai-*  
   *mán*) in Ázarbáiján, 75  
 Ázarmdukht, Sháh, viii, 56, 59,  
   69  
   reproaches Kubád, 7  
   end of, 59, 60
- B
- BABYLON, 65, 92  
   Zahhák, king of, 65  
 Bactrian, camels, 93  
 Bád Áwar, treasure, 20  
 Baghdád, Persian settlement of,  
   67  
   raided by Arabs, 67  
 Baghdád, city (*Cf.* Vol. viii, p.  
   109 *note*), 88  
   Yazdagird quits, 88  
 Bahrain, group of islands in  
   Persian Gulf, 68  
 Bahrám Chúbína, Íránian hero,  
   6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105  
   assassination of, referred  
   to, 4  
   Romance of, 5  
 Bahrám Gúr, Sháh, 26, 77  
 Baigand, city and fortress  
   between Bukhárá and  
   Oxus,  
   Máhwí encamps at, 118  
 Balkh, city, 116  
   bestowed by Máhwí on his  
   son, 115  
 Bandwí, maternal uncle of Khus-  
   rau Parwíz 4  
   execution of, referred to, 4,  
   16, 104  
 Bárbad, minstrel, vii, 29 and  
   *note*  
   visits Khusrau Parwíz in  
   prison, 29  
   lament of, 30
- Barda', city on the borders of  
   Ázarbáiján and Armenia,  
   15  
 Barsám, general of Bízhan 97,  
   117  
   marches on Marv, 97, 116  
   Máhwí's conduct to, 117  
   pursues and overtakes  
   Máhwí, 118  
   captures Máhwí, 119  
 Bartás, region in Turkistán, 19  
 Barzín, father of Kharrád, 4, 9,  
   12, 27  
 Basra (*Bassora*), city on the  
   Shatt-el-Arat, 68, 69  
   founded by 'Umar, 67  
 Battle of the Bridge, 5, 67  
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, viii, 70,  
   96  
   Máhwí writes to, 96  
   consults his minister, 97  
   sends troops to Marv, 97  
   Máhwí makes war on, 115  
   marches against Máhwí, 117  
   lays ambush for Máhwí, 118  
   sends Barsám in pursuit of  
   Máhwí, 118  
   hears of Máhwí's capture,  
   119  
   puts Máhwí to death, 120  
   goes mad and kills himself,  
   120, 121  
 Brahman, 21  
 Bridge, Battle of the, 5, 67  
 Bukhárá, city on the Zarafshán  
   river in the province of  
   Sughd, 97, 115, 117  
 Bust, city in Sistán, 89
- C
- CÆSAR, 10, 23  
   letter of, about the True  
   Cross referred to, 22  
 Chách (*Táshkand*), city in Túrán,  
   115, 116  
   battle-axes of, 118  
 Chahram (*Jahram*), city in Párs  
   29, 61

- Chín country (often=Túrán), 10,  
19, 41, 107, 118  
sashes from, 12, 53  
gold thread of, 82  
Khán of, 87  
merchantmen of, 89  
shields of, 118  
Christ, 24, 109  
Cross of, 23  
Christian, 23  
Commander of the Faithful, 72  
'Umar, the first, 72 and *note*  
Contents Table of, vii  
Cross, the true, 4, 5, 10, 24  
restoration of, 7, 56  
of Christ, 23  
Elevation of, 43  
Crystal, House of, 25 and *note*  
Ctesiphon (Taisafún *q.v.*), 65  
*seq.*  
taken by Shahrbaráz, 43, 44  
Sa'ad, 67  
booty found at, 68

## D

- DAHISTÁN, town, also district  
north of the Atrak, 95  
Dai, day, 17  
Dáng, coin, 94 and *note*  
Darkness, House of, 7  
Dastagird, city, 7  
Dhú Kár, Battle of, 4, 5, 66  
Dflamite, 'Alf the, friend of Fir-  
dausi, 121  
Dív, dývs, 18, 25  
=Áhriman, 47, 102, 104

## E

- EGYPTIAN, 110  
linen, 110

## F

- FAGHFÚR of Chín, 87, 97, 102  
Faithful, Commander of the, 72  
'Umar, the first, 72 and *note*

- Farab (Firabr), town on the  
Oxus opposite to Ámwí,  
desert of, 115, 118  
Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz *q.v.*),  
Sháh, vii, 50, 53, 105  
accession-speech of, 52  
counselled by his eldest son,  
52  
counselled by his youngest  
son, 53  
misrule of, 53  
plot against, 54  
Faridún, Sháh, 25, 39, 53, 71,  
86, 103  
Farruhán (Farrukhán). *See* Far-  
áyín.  
Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See* Far-  
áyín.  
Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd  
*q.v.*), father of Rustam, 69  
Farrukhzád, Sháh, viii, 61 *seq.*,  
70  
Siyah Chashm and, 62  
poisons, 63  
Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd,  
brother of Rustam, and  
favourite of Khusrau Par-  
wíz, 23, 87, 92, 95  
bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to  
murder Khusrau Parwíz,  
33  
defeats the Arabs, 85  
counsels Yazdagird, 86, 87  
leads the host to Khurásán,  
89  
entrusts Yazdagird to  
Máhwí, 95  
goes to Rai, 96  
Farúd, son of Shírín and Khusrau  
Parwíz, 39  
Firdausi, 69  
account of Arab conquest  
by, supplemented, 65  
Yazdagird's death, 70,  
107  
reflections on, 108,  
111  
on completion of Sháhnáma,  
121  
friends and assistants of, 121  
exempt from taxation, 121

- Firdausi, time spent on Sháh-náma, by, 122  
 praise of Sultán Mahmúd, by, 122  
 Flight of Muhammad, referred to, 122  
 Ford and toll-house of Zark, 100 and *note*, 116

## G

- GALBWÍ, Íránian chief, 74  
 Galínúsh, Persian general, 5, 11, 12  
     parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, 11  
 Gang-dizh, stronghold, 25  
 Garsíwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, 103  
 Garsiyún, Íránian chief, 115  
 Gashasp, father of Ashtád *q.v.*, 11  
 Gemini, constellation, 73  
 Gil (Gíl, Gílán ?), district on south-west coast of Caspián, 93  
 Glory. *See* Grace.  
 Grace or Glory, the divine, 8, 26, 30, 31, 41, 44, 47, 73, 74, 79, 90, 91, 95, 99, 100, 101, 116  
 Gúdarz, Íránian hero, 25  
     seventy sons of, 25  
 Gumbadán, Mount, 93  
     stronghold on, 93  
 Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín *q.v.*) general of Khusrau Parwíz and Sháh, vii, 44  
     rebellion of, 45  
     message of, 45  
     writes to Pirúz, 46  
     Pirúz writes to, 47  
     account of, 50  
     meaning of, 50  
     dual personality of, 50  
     marches on Taisafún, 51  
     confers with Íránian mag-nates, 51  
     misrule of, 53  
     conspiracy against, 54  
     goes hunting, 55

- Guráz, end of, 55  
 Guráz, son of Máhwí, referred to, 107, 115  
     governor of Marv, 120  
     put to death with his sons, 120  
 Gurdwí, brother of Bahráam Chúbína, 6  
 Gurdya, sister of Bahráam Chúbína, 6  
 Gurgán, province on the south-eastern shores of the Caspián, 89  
 Gushtásp, Sháh, 25  
 Gustaham, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 6  
     assassination of, referred to, 16, 104

## H

- HAMADÁN, city in 'Irák 'Ajami, 68  
 Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 5  
 Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, 115  
     bestowed by Máhwí on his son, 115  
 Háshim, Arab general, 68  
     sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68  
     wins battle of Jalúla, 68  
     takes Hulwán, 68  
 Háshimite = Muhammad, 81 and *note*  
 Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor, 5, 7  
     Shírwi's letter to, 7  
     alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, 44  
 Hilál, Arab, 69  
     slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, 70  
 Hindústán, 17, 20  
 Híra, city, west of the Euphrates near Nedjef, 5, 66  
     kingdom of, 65  
     abolished by Khusrau Parwíz, 66  
     attacked by Persians, 67

- Houri, 81  
 House of Darkness, 7  
     Crystal, 25 and *note*  
 Hulwán, town on the border of  
     'Irák 'Ajamí, west of Kir-  
     mánsháh  
     Yazdagird retires to, 67  
     taken by Háshim, 68  
 Hurmuzd, son of Núshírwán,  
     Sháh, 4, 15, 104  
 Hurmuzd (Hurmuzdsháh, Far-  
     ruksh-Hurmuzd *q.v.*),  
     father of Rustam, 72, 78  
     85, 89, 96  
 Hurmuzd Shahránguráz (Shah-  
     ránguráz *q.v.*), 54  
 Hurmuzd, devotee, 102  
     pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-  
     dagird, 102  
 Husain, friend of Firdausí, 121  
 Húshang, Sháh, 25, 41

## I

- INDIAN, scimitar, 17  
     script, 17  
     scribe, 17  
 Íraj, son of Farídún, 103  
 'Irák, 66  
 Írán, vii, viii, 9 *seq.*, 15, 21, 22,  
     31, 36, 38, 39, 44, 45, 51,  
     66, 74, 75, 79, 85, 86, 88,  
     92, 96, 103, 106, 108, 113  
 Íránian, Íránians, viii, 22, 23,  
     40, 47, 48, 63, 73, 76, 88,  
     90, 116  
     homage Shírwí, 8  
     choose two chiefs to visit  
     Khusrau Parwíz in prison,  
     9  
     plot against Guráz, 54  
     go hunting with Guráz, 55  
     race, 65  
     enmity of, with Semite,  
     65  
     announces arrival of Shu'ba  
     Mughíra to Rustam, 82  
     defeat of, at Kádisiya, 84  
     retreat to Yazdagird, 85  
     —born, 99

- Íránians, defeat of, at Marv, 116  
     ambushed, 118  
 Istakhr (Persepolis), 50, 54  
     Yazdagird taken to, 64  
     made Sháh at, 65

## J

- JAHRAM. *See* Chahram.  
 Jalúla, 68  
 Jámásp, minister of Gushtásp, 26  
 Jamshíd Sháh, 25, 39, 103  
 Jarmana, place, 93  
 Jerusalem, 43  
     Elevation of the True Cross  
     at, 43  
 Jesus, 10  
 Jihún (Oxus), river, 77, 115, 118  
 Jins, 81

## K

- KÁBUL, city  
     falchion of, 98  
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, 117  
 Kádisiya, town west of Euph-  
     rates and near  
     Nedjef, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78  
     Battle of, 5, 67, 69  
     date of, 67  
     canal of, 69  
     Rustam advances to, 73  
 Kaian, crown, 11, 105  
 Kai Káuś, Sháh, 25  
 Kai Khusrau, Sháh, 25, 103  
 Kai Kubád, Sháh, 25  
 Kalát, stronghold, 91  
 Káran, Íránian hero, 25  
 Karkh, a suburb of Baghdád, 85  
     Arab defeat at, 85  
 Kashmigán, son of Farrukhzád,  
     92  
 Káwa, the smith, 30  
     flag of, 30, 67  
 Khálid, Arab general, 66  
     begins hostilities against  
     Persian Empire, 66  
     recalled to lead Syrian cam-  
     paign, 66

- Khán of Chín, 87, 102  
= Bizhan, 97
- Kharrád, son of Barzín, Íránian minister, 4, 11, 12, 24  
end of, 4  
chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, 9  
Ashtád and, parley with Galinúsh, 11  
visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12  
report to Shírwí, 27
- Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, 102
- Khurásán, province in north-eastern Írán, viii, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
- Máhwí becomes master of, 114
- Khusrau Parwíz, Sháh, vii, 4 *seq.*, 11, 12, 25, 26 *note*, 30, 31, 33 *seq.*, 38 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*  
charges against, 4, 5, 9, 10  
reply of, to charges, 5, 14 *seq.*  
Haram of, 4, 5  
last days of, Theophanes' account of, 6  
Shírwí's treatment of, 7  
sons of, executed, 7, 35  
Shírin and, 7  
imprisoned at Taisafún, 9  
companioned by Shírin, 29  
Bárbad visits, 29  
laments over, 30  
steed of, 30  
son of, 31  
referred to, 33 and *note*  
kingdom of Híra abolished by, 66  
Muhammad's letter to, 66
- Khusrau, father of Pírúz, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
- Khusrau, a miller, viii, 99. *See* Miller.
- Khúzistán (Susiana), province at head of Persian Gulf  
annexed by Arabs, 68
- Khuzrá, treasure, 20
- Kibchák, region east of the Jaxartes and north of Tashkand, 93
- Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes?), 93
- Kisrá Núshírwán. *See* Núshírwán.
- Kubád, son of Pírúz, Sháh, 22, 25
- Kubád (Shírwí *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 3, 4, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64  
tragic reign of, 3  
pestilence during, 3  
boorishness of, 3  
difficult situation of, 3  
reproached by his sisters, 7
- Kúfa, city, west of Euphrates and north of Nedjef, 68, 69  
founded by Sa'ad, 67
- Kurán, 81  
quoted, 81 and *note*
- Kutib, father of Husain, 121

## L

- Lázhawardí fort, 93
- Luhrásp, Sháh, 104

## M

- MÁCHIN (China), 107
- Mahmúd, Sultán, praise of, 122
- Makhzúm, place, 93
- Máhwí, Persian chief, viii, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 *seq.*, 118  
described, 87  
Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird to, 95  
accepts charge of Yazdagird, 96  
becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, 96  
writes to Bizhan, 96, 116  
betrays Yazdagird, 97, 98, 116, 117  
quest of, for Yazdagird, 100  
has tidings of Yazdagird, 101  
consults his warriors, 106  
son of, counsels, 107

- Máhwí, son of, receives Balkh and Harát, 115  
governor of Marv, 120  
put to death with his sons, 120  
sends miller to slay Yazdagird, 107, 116  
troops after miller with instructions, 107  
troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, 108  
hears of death of Yazdagird, 108  
bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, 108  
slays monks, 113  
consults his intimates and minister, 113  
advised by his minister, 113  
claims the throne on false pretences, 114  
becomes master of Khurásán, 114  
evil rule of, 114  
makes war on Bizhan, 115  
conduct of, to Barsám, 117  
crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, 118  
flees, 118  
overtaken by Barsám, 118  
captured by Barsám, 119  
put to death by Bizhan, 120  
Marchlords, viii  
Mardánsháh (Yalán-síná *q.v.*), 5, 6  
son of, 5, 6  
conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6  
mutilation and execution of, 6  
Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírn and Khusrau Parwíz, 39  
Mardásas (Mardánsháh *q.v.*), 7  
execution of, 7  
Mars, planet, 73, 89  
Márúspand, palace, 11  
Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistan, 70, 89, 116, 117  
Marv, traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, 70  
Yazdagird at, 97, 116  
thane of, 110  
apothegm of, 110  
conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, 117  
Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, 120  
Mázandarán, region between Alburz range and Caspian, 74  
Mecca, city, 69  
Mercury, planet, 73  
Mesopotamia, annexed by Arabs, 68  
Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírwí, in Arabic Tabarí, 43  
put to death, 43  
Míhr, feast, 40  
Míhr 'Hasis, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírwí, in Persian Tabarí, 43  
put to death, 43  
Míhr Hurmuzd, murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 34  
account of, 5  
referred to, 6, 33  
conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6  
put to death, 7  
described, 33  
Míhr-i-Núsh, 103  
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 103  
Mill, viii, 98, 116  
Miller, viii, 70  
Yazdagird and, 99  
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, 100  
informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, 101  
bidden to slay Yazdagird, 107  
bidden to fling corpse into stream, 108  
Minúchihr, Sháh, 103  
Mír Khánd, distich of, quoted, 56  
Monks, 109  
find Yazdagird, 109

- Monks, lament over and entomb  
Yazdagird, 109 *seq.*  
sentences of, over Yazdagird, 110  
slain by Máhwí, 113  
Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. *See*  
Shu'ba Mughíra, 69  
Muhammad, the Prophet, 69, 81  
*seq.*  
letter of, to Khusrau Parwiz, 66  
Flight of, referred to, 122  
Muslim, 85

## N

- NAHÁVAND, city, south of Hamadán, 68, 69  
Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, 68  
Battle of, 69  
Nárwan, forest of, 86  
Nastúr, son of Shírin and Khusrau Parwiz, 39  
Nile, 98  
Nímruz\*, 5, 6  
satrapy of, 69  
Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, 95  
Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 23  
Note on Pronunciation, xii  
Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, 5  
Nu'mán, Arab general, 68  
sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, 68  
defeats Pírúzá at Nahávand, 68  
slain, 69  
Núshírwán, Sháh, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119  
Letter of Counsel of, 22  
division of Empire by, 69  
dream of, 92

## O

- OMEN of the quince, 13, 14  
Oxus (Jihún), river  
referred to, 117 and *note*, 118

## P

- PAHLAVÍ, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, 50  
Paidáwasís, Persian coin=five dínárs, 19  
Párs (Persis, Farsistán), country on eastern shore of Persian Gulf, 68  
Persis, 64  
Parwiz. *See* Khusrau Parwiz.  
Persepolis (Istakhr), 65  
Persia, 66  
Persian, Persians, 5, 7, 20, 37, 40, 54, 60, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72, 77, 79, 85, 121  
ideas on marriage, 7  
language, 12, 65  
=Ashtád and Kharrád, 24  
exonerate Shírin, 38  
empire, 65, 66  
Gulf, 66, 68  
win "The Battle of the Bridge," 67  
fail in attack on Híra, 67  
defeat of, at Kádísíya, 67, 84  
Jalúlá, 68  
Nahávand, 69  
Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy to, 69  
robes, 94  
transcribe Sháhnáma for Firdausí, 121  
Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, 3, 7  
Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírwí, vii  
appointed general, 44

\*See p. 333 *note*.

Píruz, letter of Guráz to, 46  
 takes counsel, 46  
 writes to Guráz, 47  
 Guráz marches against, 48  
 appeals to Tukhár, 48  
 feasts with Ardshír, 48  
 informs Guráz of the death  
 of Ardshír, 51  
 put to death, 57  
 Píruz, Íránian prince, 59  
 Píruz, son of Shápúr, Íránian  
 noble  
 takes Rustam's letter to  
 Sa'ad, 80, 81  
 Píruzán, Persian general,  
 commands Persian forces at  
 Nahávand, 68  
 slain, 69  
 Pisces, constellation, 71  
 Plague. *See* Pestilence.  
 Pronunciation, Note on, xii  
 Púrándukht, Sháh, vii, 56  
 reproaches Kubád, 7  
 makes Shahránguráz prime  
 minister, 56  
 True Cross and, 56  
 Pusfarrukh, 50

## Q

QUINCE, omen of the, 13, 14

## R

RÁDA, Mount, 91, 94  
 Rádwi, archimage  
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-  
 dagird, 102  
 Rai, city and district near Tih-  
 rán, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96  
 Rája, 17  
 letter of, 17  
 put in charge of Shírín, 17  
 Raven, Raven-head, 91 and *note*,  
 95 *note*, 96  
 Revellers Rosary of, 38, 40  
 Roman, 50, 66  
 Rosary of Revellers, 38, 40  
 Rúina, place, 91

Rúm, Eastern Roman Empire,  
 10, 11, 20, 39, 41, 45, 46,  
 113  
 brocade of, 99, 101  
 monks of, slain by Máhwí,  
 113  
 Rúman, Rómans, 23, 60  
 Russian, cloth, 110  
 Rustam, son of Zál, Íránian hero,  
 25  
 Rustam, Persian commander  
 in chief under Yazdagird  
 III., viii, 66, 67, 69, 73.  
 81 *seq.*, 90, 95  
 overthrows Ázarmdukht, 59  
 advances to Kádisiya, 67,  
 73  
 end of, 69  
 finds evil aspects in the stars,  
 73  
 writes to his brother, 73  
 hears of Shu'ba Mughíra's  
 arrival, 82

## S

SA'AD, son of Wakkás, Arab  
 general, viii, 67, 68, 82  
*seq.*, 90  
 succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, 67  
 at Kádisiya, 67, 69  
 founds Kúfa, 67  
 takes Ctesiphon, 67  
 recalled, 68  
 sent by 'Umar to invade  
 Írán, 72  
 letter of Rustam to, 78  
 taken by Píruz, 80, 81  
 Sada, feast, 40, 92  
 Samarkand, city in Turkistán,  
 96, 115  
 Sapandármad, month, 70, 122  
 Sari, city in Mázandarán, 86  
 Sásán, son of Dárá, 105 and *note*  
 lineage of, 56, 105  
 Sásánian, Sásánians, 4, 5, 46,  
 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76,  
 77, 83, 105  
 Dynasty, 4

- Sásanian, Empire, conquered by the Arabs, 65 *seq.*
- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's four, 69
- Saturn, planet, 73  
sphere of, 92
- Seasons, confusion of the, 77 *note*
- Semite, race, enmity of, with Íránians, 65
- Shabdíz, steed of Khusrau Parwíz, 30
- Sháhnáma, viii, 4 *seq.*, 43, 50, 61, 70  
completion of, Firdausí on, 121  
length of, 122  
date when completed, 122
- Shahrán, 102  
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 102
- Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, Guráz *q.v.*), vii, 50  
heads conspiracy against Guráz, 54
- Shahrbaráz (Guráz *q.v.*), Íránian general, 43, 50  
rebellion of, 43, 44  
alliance of, with Heraclius, 44
- Shahr-Barz. *See* Shahrbaráz.
- Shahguráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahrwaráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahryár, son of Shírn and Khusrau Parwíz, 39  
father of Yazdagird, 64
- Shamfrán, stronghold north of Harát (?), 91, 94
- Shápúr, father of Píruz, 80
- Shatt-al-Arab, the combined streams of the Tigris and Euphrates, 67
- Shírn, wife of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 28, 36  
Khusrau Parwíz and, 7  
has charge of Shírwí's horoscope, 16  
Raja's letter, 17  
companions Khusrau Parwíz in prison, 29  
reproached and summoned by Shírwí, 36
- Shírn, makes her will, 36  
goes to Court, 37  
justifies herself, 38, 40  
sons of, 39  
unveils to the Court, 39  
Shírwí falls in love with, 39  
makes request of Shírwí, 40, 41  
goes home, 40  
distributes her wealth, 40  
frees her slaves, 41  
poisons herself, 42
- Shírwí (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64  
treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, 7  
writes to Heraclius, 7  
horoscope of, 16  
kept by Shírn, 16  
Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, 27  
reproaches and summons Shírn, 36, 37  
falls in love with Shírn, 39  
grants Shírn's requests, 40, 42  
poisoned, 42  
son of, 42  
length of reign of, 42
- Shu'ba Mughíra, companion of the Prophet, 69, 83  
embassy of, 69, 82
- Sikandar (Alexander the Great), Sháh, 26
- Siyah Chasm, slave of Farrukhzád, 62  
handmaid of Farrukhzád and, 62  
imprisoned, 62  
released, 62  
poisons Farrukhzád, 63
- Siyáwush, son of Kai Káuś, 25  
and *note*, 26 *note*, 103
- Snakes=Arabs, 91
- Súr, Súrán, city near Ispahán, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
- Syrian, 66

## T

- TABARÍ, historian, 4, 56, 61, 64, 69  
 Arabic, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50  
 Persian, 4, 5, 43, 70  
 Tabaristán (Mázandarán), 74  
 Table of Contents, vii  
 Tahmúras, Sháh, 25  
 Taisafún (Ctesiphon), city on left bank of Tigris, 9, 10, 90  
 Khusrau Parwiz imprisoned at, 9  
 Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwiz at, 29  
 Taráz, city north-east of Táshkand, 41  
 Taxation, Firdausí's exemption from, 121  
 Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwiz by, 6  
 Tigris, river, 67  
 Toll-house and ford of Zark, 100 and *note*, 116  
 Tukhár, Íránian general, refuses to help Pirúz against Guráz, 48  
 Túr, son of Farídún, 103  
 Túrán, 11, 89, 99  
 Turk, Turks, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114, 117, 120  
 Turkish, 87  
 Turkistán, 15  
 Turkman, Turkmans, 25, 76, 94  
 king=Afrásiyáb, 25  
 Tús, city in Khurásán, viii, 90, 95  
 governor of, 92

## U

- 'UMAR, Khalifa, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121  
 founds Basra, 67  
 sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68  
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, 68  
 Sa'ad to invade Írán, 72  
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 24

## V

- VENUS, planet, 26, 73  
 Victory of Victories, The, 69  
 Virgo, constellation, 71

## W

- WAKKÁS, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*, viii, 72, 78, 82, 90

## Y

- YALÁN-SÍNA (Mardánsháh *q.v.*), 6  
 Yazdagird, Sháh, viii, 5, 61, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122  
 Era of, 64  
 taken for safety to Istakhr, 64  
 age of, at accession, 65  
 difficult position of, 65  
 historical importance of reign of, 65  
 flight of, from Ctesiphon, 67  
 Hulwán, 68  
 last attempt of, to recover his empire, 68  
 concentrates his forces at Nahávand, 68  
 defeated and a fugitive, 69  
 death of, referred to, 69  
 host returns to, after Kádi-siya, 85  
 hears of Rustam's death, 85  
 quits Baghdád, 88  
 makes for Marv, 89  
 entrusted to Máhwí by Farukhzád, 95, 96  
 at Marv, 97, 116  
 hears of the coming of the Turks, 97  
 betrayed by Máhwí, 98  
 defeated, 98, 116

Yazdagird, miller and, 99 *seq.*  
 described, 99, 101  
 Máhwí bids miller slay, 107,  
 116  
 slain, stripped and flung into  
 stream, 108, 109 and *note*  
 corpse of, recovered, lam-  
 ented over and entombed,  
 109 *seq.*  
 Firdausí on, 111

## Z

ZÁBULISTÁN, 75\*  
 Zahhák, Sháh, 25, 65, 103

Zahhák, an Aryan myth, 65  
 king of Babylon, 65  
 an Arab, 65  
 Zál, son of Sám and father of  
 Rustam, 25  
 Zark, town south-east of Marv,  
 98  
 canal of, 98  
 corpse of Yazdagird flung  
 into, 109  
 recovered from, 109  
 ford and toll-house of, 100  
 and *note*  
 chief of, 100  
 hears from miller about  
 Yazdagird, 109

\*See p. 333 *note*.

## GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

C.—Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma	
L.—Lumsden's	Do.
P.—Mohl's	do.
T.—Tihrán	do.
V.—Vullers'	do.

- AM. The Voiage and Travayle of Sir John Maundeville, Knight  
 . . . Edited . . . by John Ashton.
- AS. The Sháh Námeḥ of . . Firdausí. Translated and  
 abridged. . . . By James Atkinson Esq.
- BAG. A History of Ancient Geography. By E. H. Bunbury  
 F.R.G.S.
- BAN. A Plain and Literal Translation of the Arabian Nights'  
 Entertainments. . . . By Richard F. Burton.
- BBR. Buddhist Records of the Western World. Translated  
 from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629). By  
 Samuel Beal.
- BCM. The Chahár Maqála ("Four Discourses") of Nidhám-i-  
 'Arúf-i-Samarquandí. Translated into English by  
 Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
- BGDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.  
 By Edward Gibbon. Edited by J. B. Bury, M.A.
- BHA. The History of Alexander the Great, being the Syriac  
 Version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes. Edited . . . with  
 an English Translation and Notes, by Ernest A. Wallis  
 Budge, M.A.
- BLEA. The Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great, being a  
 Series of Translations of the Ethiopic Histories of  
 Alexander. . . . By E. A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
- BLHP. A Literary History of Persia. By Edward G. Browne,  
 M.A.
- BLRE. History of the Lower Roman Empire. By J. B. Bury.
- BPB. Photius: Bibliotheca. Ex Recensione Immanuelis Bek-  
 kerí.
- CIG. Corpus Inscriptionum Graecarum.
- CTC. Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis  
 Classeni.
- DAA. Arriani Anabasis . . . F. Dübner.
- DAI. Arriani Indica . . . F. Dübner.
- DEI. J. Darmesteter, Études Iraniennes.

- DFKHP. History of the Parsis. By Desabhai Framji Karaka, C.S.I.
- DHA. The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor Max Duncker. By the late Evelyn Abbot, M.A.
- DZA. Professor Darmesteter's Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts<sup>1</sup> and pages.
- EHI. The History of India as told by its own Historians. By Sir H. M. Elliot, K.C.B.
- EP. Eastern Persia, an Account of the Journeys of the Persian Boundary Commission, 1870-71-72.
- GDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon, Esq. With Notes by Dean Milman and M. Guizot. Edited, with additional Notes, by William Smith, L.L.D.
- GH. The Land of the Hittites. . . . By John Garstang, D.Sc.
- GHP. Histoire des Perses par le Comte de Gobineau.
- GIP. Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie.
- GKS. Kleine Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.
- GYZ. Geiger: Das Yátkár-i Zarífrán und sein Verhältniss zum Sáhname. Sitzungsberichte der philosophisch-philologischen und historischen Classe der k.b. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München. 1890. Bd. II. Heft I. p. 43.
- HAP. History of Art in Persia from the French of Georges Perrot and Charles Chipiez.
- HB. The Country of Balochistan. . . . By A. W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.
- HEP. Essays on the Sacred Language, Writing and Religion of the Parsis. By Martin Haug, Ph. D. Edited and enlarged by E. W. West, Ph. D.
- HIE. The Indian Empire. By W. W. Hunter, C.S.I., C.I.E., L.L.D.
- HLP. The Legend of Perseus. By E. S. Hartland.
- HQC. Q. Curtius Rufus . . . ed. Edmundus Hedicke.
- HRVP. Veterum Persarum . . . Religionis Historia. Ed. 2nd. By Thomas Hyde.
- HS. Syntagma Dissertationum quas olim auctor doctissimus Thomas Hyde S.T.P. separatim edidit.
- JFB. The earliest English version of the Fables of Bidpai . . . now again edited and induced by Joseph Jacobs.
- JP. Persia Past and Present, by Professor A. V. Williams Jackson.
- JRGS. The Journal of the Royal Geographical Society.
- JZ. Zoroaster. By A. V. Williams Jackson.
- KA. Asia. By A. H. Keane, F.R.G.S.
- KUR. Kitáb-i-Yamini of Al Utbi. Translated by the Rev. James Reynolds, B.A.
- LAN. The Arabian Nights' Entertainments. A New Translation from the Arabic. . . . By Edward William Lane.
- LEC. The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate. By G. Le Strange.

<sup>1</sup>The second edition of Part I. is referred to unless otherwise specified.

- LPC. A View of the History and Coinage of the Parthians. By John Lindsay, Esq.
- MA. Alexandre le Grand . . . Par Paul Meyer.
- MCAI. Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian. . . . By J. W. M'Crindle, M.A.
- MCI. The Invasion of India by Alexander the Great. . . . By J. W. M'Crindle, M.A. . . . New Edition.
- MF. Reliqua Arriani et Scriptorum de rebus Alexandri M. Fragmenta collegit . . . Carolus Müller.
- MGN. Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan, etc. By Colonel C. M. MacGregor, C.S.I., C.I.E.
- MHP. History of Persia. By Sir John Malcolm, G.C.B.
- MLM. The Life of Muhammad. By William Muir, Esq.
- MM. Maçoudi : Les Prairies d'Or. Texte et traduction par C Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille.
- MPC. Pseudo-Callisthenes, primum edidit Carolus Mullerus.
- MSJP. A Second Journey through Persia, etc. By James Morier Esq.
- MZA. Rev. L. H. Mills' Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Part and pages.
- NAR. Beiträge zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans, von Prof. Dr. Th. Nöldeke in Denkschriften der . . . Akademie der Wissenschaften . . . Wien, 1890.
- NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.
- NK. Geschichte des Artachšir i Pāpakān aus dem Pellewi übersetzt . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- NPS. Nöldeke : Persische Studien. II. Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. CXXVI. Band.
- NSEH. Sketches from Eastern History. By Theodor Nöldeke. English Translation.
- NT. Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- OHS. The History of the Saracens. By Simon Ockley. Fourth Edition.
- RFGM. The Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RH. The History of Herodotus. . . . By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RK. The Koran translated from the Arabic. By J. M. Rodwell. Second Edition.
- RM. (*In Vols. III and IV*) The Mahābhārata translated into English Prose (*by Kisari Mohan Ganguli*). Published by Pratāpa Chandra Rāi, C.I.E.  
(*Elsewhere*) The Rauzat-us-safa ; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By . . . Mirkhond . . . Translated by E. Rehatsek.
- RP. (*In Vols. I and V*) Records of the Past. First Series.  
(*Elsewhere*) Professor Rawlinson's Parthia in the Story of the Nations' Series.

- RPNS. Records of the Past. Second Series.  
 RSM. The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.  
 SAC. The Chronology of Ancient Nations . . . of Albírúni . . . translated . . . by Dr. C. Edward Sachau.  
 SHC. The "Higher Criticism" and the Verdict of the Monuments. By the Rev. A. H. Sayce.  
 SK. The Koran . . . Translated . . . by George Sale, Gent.  
 SM. History of the Early Kings of Persia . . . Translated from the original . . . Persian of Mirkhond . . . by David Shea.  
 SP. The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea . . . Translated from the Greek and annotated by Wilfrid H. Schoff, A.M.  
 STD. The Dabistán . . . Translated . . . by David Shea and Anthony Troyer.  
 WLS. In the Land of the Lion and Sun . . . By C. J. Wills, M.D.  
 WPR. The Pársí Religion. By John Wilson.  
 WPT. Dr. E. W. West's Trans. of the Pahlaví Texts in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts and pages.  
 YMP. The Book of Sir Marco Polo . . . newly translated. . . . By Colonel Henry Yule, C.B.  
 ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg.

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I		Vol. I
		PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .		vii

## INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I.—LAND AND PEOPLE . . . . .	3
CHAPTER II.—POET AND POEM . . . . .	23
CHAPTER III.—TEXT AND TRANSLATION . . . . .	76
LIST OF PREVIOUS TRANSLATORS . . . . .	87
ANCIENT PERSIAN CALENDAR . . . . .	88
GENEALOGICAL TABLES . . . . .	90
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	93
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	95

## THE SHÁHNÁMA

### THE PRELUDE—

#### SECT.

1. Invocation . . . . .	100
2. Discourse in Praise of Wisdom . . . . .	101
3. Of the Making of the World . . . . .	102
4. Of the Nature of Man . . . . .	104
5. Of the Nature of the Sun . . . . .	105
6. Of the Nature of the Moon . . . . .	105
7. In Praise of the Prophet and his Companions . . . . .	106
8. On the Compilation of the Sháhnáma . . . . .	108
9. Of the Poet Dakíki . . . . .	109
10. How the present Book was begun . . . . .	109
11. In Praise of Abú Mansúr, Son of Muhammad . . . . .	110
12. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd . . . . .	112

## THE BEGINNING OF THE HISTORY: THE PISHDÁDIAN DYNASTY

### GAIÚMART—

1. The Greatness of Gaiúmart and the Envy of Áhriman . . . . .	118
2. How Siyámak was slain by the Dív . . . . .	120
3. How Húshang and Gaiúmart went to fight the Black Dív . . . . .	121

## HÚSHANG—

VOL. I

## SECT.

PAGE

1. The Accession of Húshang and his civilising Arts . . . 122
2. How the Feast of Sada was founded . . . 123

## TAHMÚRAS—

1. Tahnúras ascends the Throne, invents new Arts, subdues the Dívás, and dies . . . 126

## JAMSHÍD—

1. The Greatness and Fall of Jamshíd . . . 131
2. The Story of Zakhák and his Father . . . 135
3. How Ibís turned Cook . . . 137
4. How the Fortunes of Jamshíd went to Wrack . . . 139

## ZAHHÁK—

1. The evil Customs of Zakhák and the Device of Irmá'il and Karmá'il . . . 145
2. How Zakhák saw Farídún in a Dream . . . 147
3. The Birth of Farídún . . . 150
4. How Farídún questioned his Mother about his Origin . . . 152
5. The Story of Zakhák and Káwa the Smith . . . 154
6. How Farídún went to Battle with Zakhák . . . 159
7. How Farídún saw the Sisters of Jamshíd . . . 161
8. The Story of Farídún and the Minister of Zakhák . . . 164
9. How Farídún bound Zakhák . . . 166

## FARÍDÚN—

1. How Farídún ascended the Throne . . . 174
2. How Farídún sent Jandal to Yaman . . . 177
3. How the King of Yaman answered Jandal . . . 181
4. How the Sons of Farídún went to the King of Yaman . . . 183
5. How Sarv proved the Sons of Farídún by Sorcery . . . 184
6. How Farídún made Trial of his Sons . . . 186
7. How Farídún divided the World among his Sons . . . 189
8. How Salm grew envious of Íraj . . . 189
9. How Salm and Túr sent a Message to Farídún . . . 191
10. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . . . 193
11. How Íraj went to his Brothers . . . 197
12. How Íraj was slain by his Brothers . . . 199
13. How Farídún received Tidings of the Murder of Íraj . . . 202
14. How a Daughter was born to Íraj . . . 205
15. The Birth of Minúchihr . . . 206
16. How Salm and Túr had Tidings of Minúchihr . . . 208
17. How Farídún received his Sons' Message . . . 209
18. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . . . 211
19. How Farídún sent Minúchihr to fight Túr and Salm . . . 215
20. How Minúchihr attacked the Host of Túr . . . 218

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

141

## FARÍDÚN (*continued*)

VOL. I.

SECT.	PAGE
21. How Túr was slain by Minúchihr . . . . .	220
22. How Minúchihr wrote to announce his Victory to Farídún . . . . .	221
23. How Káran took the Castle of the Aláns . . . . .	223
24. How Kákwi, the Grandson of Zabbák, attacked the Iránians . . . . .	225
25. How Salm fled and was slain by Minúchihr . . . . .	227
26. How the Head of Salm was sent to Farídún . . . . .	229
27. The Death of Farídún . . . . .	232

## MINÚCHIHHR—

1. How Minúchihr ascended the Throne and made an Oration . . . . .	237
2. The Birth of Zál . . . . .	239
3. How Sám had a Dream touching the Case of his Son . . . . .	243
4. How Minúchihr took Knowledge of the Case of Sám and Zál . . . . .	248
5. How Zál went back to Zábulistán . . . . .	251
6. How Sám gave the Kingdom to Zál . . . . .	253
7. How Zál visited Míhráb of Kábul . . . . .	256
8. How Rúdába took Counsel with her Damsels . . . . .	259
9. How Rúdába's Damsels went to see Zál . . . . .	263
10. How the Damsels returned to Rúdába . . . . .	267
11. How Zál went to Rúdába . . . . .	270
12. How Zál consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Rúdába . . . . .	273
13. How Zál wrote to Sám to explain the Case . . . . .	275
14. How Sám consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Zál . . . . .	278
15. How Síndukht heard of the Case of Rúdába . . . . .	280
16. How Míhráb was made aware of his Daughter's Case . . . . .	284
17. How Minúchihr heard of the Case of Zál and Rúdába . . . . .	288
18. How Sám came to Minúchihr . . . . .	289
19. How Sám went to fight Míhráb . . . . .	292
20. How Zál went on a Mission to Minúchihr . . . . .	295
21. How Míhráb was wroth with Síndukht . . . . .	299
22. How Sám comforted Síndukht . . . . .	301
23. How Zál came to Minúchihr with Sám's Letter . . . . .	306
24. How the Archimages questioned Zál . . . . .	308
25. How Zál answered the Archimages . . . . .	309
26. How Zál displayed his Accomplishment before Minúchihr . . . . .	311
27. Minúchihr's Answer to Sám's Letter . . . . .	314
28. How Zál came to Sám . . . . .	316
29. The Story of the Birth of Rustam . . . . .	320
30. How Sám came to see Rustam . . . . .	324
31. How Rustam slew the White Elephant . . . . .	327

MINÚCHIHĀR (*continued*)

Vol. I.

SECT.	PAGE
32. How Rustam went to Mount Sipand . . . . .	330
33. How Rustam wrote a Letter announcing his Victory to Zāl . . . . .	332
34. The Letter of Zāl to Sām . . . . .	334
35. Minúchihr's last Counsels to his Son . . . . .	335

## NAUDAR—

1. How Naudar succeeded to the Throne. . . . .	339
2. How Pashang heard of the Death of Minúchihr . . . . .	342
3. How Afrásiyáb came to the Land of Írán . . . . .	345
4. How Bármán and Kubád fought together and how Kubád was slain . . . . .	346
5. How Afrásiyáb fought with Naudar the second Time . . . . .	350
6. How Naudar fought with Afrásiyáb the third Time . . . . .	352
7. How Naudar was taken by Afrásiyáb . . . . .	355
8. How Wisa found his Son that had been slain . . . . .	356
9. How Shamásás and Khazarwán invaded Zábú- listán . . . . .	358
10. How Zāl came to help Mihráb . . . . .	359
11. How Naudar was slain by Afrásiyáb . . . . .	362
12. How Zāl had Tidings of the Death of Naudar . . . . .	364
13. How Ighríras was slain by his Brother. . . . .	367

## ZAV—

1. Zav is elected Sháh . . . . .	370
----------------------------------	-----

## GARSHÁSP—

1. How Garshásp succeeded to the Throne and died, and how Afrásiyáb invaded Írán . . . . .	374
2. How Rustam caught Rakhsh . . . . .	378
3. How Zāl led the Host against Afrásiyáb . . . . .	381
4. How Rustam brought Kai Kubád from Mount Alburz . . . . .	382

INDEX . . . . .	389
-----------------	-----

## VOLUME II

GENEALOGICAL TABLES . . . . .	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS. . . . .	3
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	5
	6

## THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY

## KAI KUBÁD—

SECT.	PAGE
1. How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred against Túrán . . . . .	11
2. How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb . . . . .	13
3. How Afrásiyáb came to his Father . . . . .	16
4. How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace . . . . .	18
5. How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Párs . . . . .	22

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

143

KAI KÁÚS—

VOL. II

## PART I. THE WAR WITH MÁZANDARÁN—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Prelude . . . . .	29
2. How Káús sat upon the Throne and was tempted to invade Mázararán. . . . .	30
3. How Zál gave Counsel to Káús . . . . .	36
4. How Káús went to Mázararán. . . . .	38
5. The Message of Kai Káús to Zál and Rustam . . . . .	42

## THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM—

6. The First Course. How Rakhsh fought with a Lion . . . . .	44
7. The Second Course. How Rustam found a Spring . . . . .	46
8. The Third Course. How Rustam fought with a Dragon . . . . .	48
9. The Fourth Course. How Rustam slew a Witch . . . . .	50
10. The Fifth Course. How Rustam took Úlád captive . . . . .	52
11. The Sixth Course. How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang . . . . .	57
12. The Seventh Course. How Rustam slew the White Dív . . . . .	59
13. How Káús wrote to the King of Mázararán . . . . .	63
14. How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázararán . . . . .	66
15. How Káús fought with the King of Mázararán . . . . .	70
16. How Káús returned to the Land of Írán and farewell Rustam . . . . .	76

## PART II. THE DOINGS OF KAI KÁÚS IN THE LAND OF BARBARISTÁN AND OTHER TALES—

1. How Kai Káús warred with the King of Hámávarán . . . . .	82
2. How Káús asked to Wife Súdába, the Daughter of the King of Hámávarán . . . . .	86
3. How the King of Hámávarán made Káús Priscner . . . . .	88
4. How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Írán . . . . .	91
5. How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hámávarán . . . . .	93
6. How Rustam fought with Three Kings and delivered Káús . . . . .	95
7. How Káús sent a Message to Afrásiyáb . . . . .	98
8. How Káús ordered the World . . . . .	101
9. How Káús beguiled by Iblís ascended the Sky . . . . .	102
10. How Rustam brought back Káús . . . . .	104

## THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS—

11. How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb . . . . .	107
12. How Rustam fought with the Túránians . . . . .	111

## KAI KÁÚS—

## PART II. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS

(continued)—

SECT.	VOL. II	PAGE
13. How Pílsam fought with the fránians . . . . .		112
14. How Afrásiyáb fled from the Battlefield . . . . .		116

## PART III. SUHRÁB—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	119
2. How Rustam went to the Chace. . . . .	120
3. How Rustam came to the City of Samangán . . . . .	122
4. How Tahmína, the Daughter of the King of Samangán, came to Rustam . . . . .	123
5. The Birth of Suhráb. . . . .	126
6. How Suhráb chose his Charger . . . . .	127
7. How Afrásiyáb sent Bármán and Húmán to Suhráb . . . . .	129
8. How Suhráb came to White Castle . . . . .	131
9. How Suhráb fought with Gurdáfríd . . . . .	132
10. The Letter of Gazhdaham to Káús . . . . .	136
11. How Suhráb took White Castle . . . . .	137
12. How Káús wrote to Rustam and summoned him from Zábulistán . . . . .	138
13. How Káús was wroth with Rustam . . . . .	142
14. How Káús and Rustam led forth the Host . . . . .	148
15. How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm . . . . .	149
16. How Suhráb asked Hajír the Names of the Chieft of frán . . . . .	152
17. How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káús . . . . .	159
18. How Rustam fought with Suhráb . . . . .	162
19. How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp. . . . .	165
20. How Suhráb overthrew Rustam. . . . .	168
21. How Suhráb was slain by Rustam . . . . .	172
22. How Rustam asked Káús for an Elixir. . . . .	177
23. How Rustam lamented for Suhráb . . . . .	179
24. How Rustam returned to Zábulistán . . . . .	182
25. How Suhráb's Mother received the Tidings of his Death . . . . .	184

## PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	191
2. The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush . . . . .	193
3. The Birth of Siyáwush . . . . .	195
4. How Siyáwush arrived from Zábulistán . . . . .	197
5. The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush. . . . .	199
6. How Súdába fell in Love with Siyáwush . . . . .	200
7. How Siyáwush visited Súdába . . . . .	202
8. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time . . . . .	206
9. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time . . . . .	210
10. How Súdába beguiled Káús . . . . .	211
11. How Súdába and a Sorceress devised a Scheme . . . . .	214
12. How Káús inquired into the Matter of the Babes . . . . .	215
13. How Siyáwush passed through the Fire . . . . .	218

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

145

KAI KÁÚS—

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

VOL. II

SECT.	PAGE
14. How Siyáwush begged Súdába's Life of his Father	222
15. How Káuś heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb	224
16. How Siyáwush led forth the Host	226
17. The Letter of Siyáwush to Kai Káuś	229
18. The Answer of Kai Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush	230
19. How Afrásiyáb had a Dream and was afraid	232
20. How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream	234
21. How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles	235
22. How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush	238
23. How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb	239
24. How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káuś	242
25. How Rustam gave the Message to Káuś	243
26. How Káuś sent Rustam to Sístán	246
27. The Answer of Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush	247
28. How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahráṃ and Zanga	249
29. How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb	252
30. How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush	253
31. How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahráṃ	257
32. The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb	261
33. How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrásiyáb	263
34. How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase	267
35. How Pírán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush	268
36. How Pírán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís	270
37. How Pírán spake with Afrásiyáb	272
38. The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush	274
39. How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush	276
40. How Siyáwush built Gang-dizh	279
41. How Siyáwush discoursed with Pírán about the Future	282
42. How Afrásiyáb sent Pírán into the Provinces	285
43. How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird	285
44. How Pírán visited Siyáwushgird	287
45. How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush	289
46. The Birth of Farúd, the Son of Siyáwush	291
47. How Siyáwush played at Polo	292
48. How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb	296
49. How Garsíwaz returned to Siyáwush	301
50. The Letter of Siyáwush to Afrásiyáb	306
51. How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush	307
52. How Siyáwush had a Dream	308
53. The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís	310
54. How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb	312
55. How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb	317
56. How Siyáwush was slain by Gurwí	320
57. How Pírán saved Farangís	323

## KAI KÁÚS—

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

VOL. II

SECT.

PAGE

58. The Birth of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	325
59. How Pírán entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds . . . . .	328
60. How Pírán brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb . . . . .	330
61. How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird . . . . .	333
PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN—	
1. Firdaus's Lament over his old Age . . . . .	336
2. How Káuś heard of the Case of Siyáwush . . . . .	337
3. How Rustam came to Káuś . . . . .	338
4. How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host . . . . .	340
5. How Farámarz slew Warázád . . . . .	341
6. How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam . . . . .	344
7. How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son . . . . .	348
8. How Pílsam was slain by Rustam . . . . .	350
9. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam . . . . .	353
10. How Afrásiyáb sent Khusrau to Khutan . . . . .	355
11. How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years . . . . .	357
12. How Zawára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyáwush . . . . .	359
13. How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán . . . . .	360
14. How Rustam returned to Írán . . . . .	361
15. How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	363
16. How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	365
17. The Finding of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	369
18. How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird . . . . .	373
19. How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád . . . . .	374
20. How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán . . . . .	377
21. How Kulbád and Nastíhan fled from Gív . . . . .	378
22. How Pírán pursued Kai Khusrau . . . . .	380
23. How Pírán contended with Gív . . . . .	382
24. How Pírán was taken by Gív . . . . .	385
25. How Farangís delivered Pírán from Gív . . . . .	386
26. How Afrásiyáb found Pírán on the Way . . . . .	388
27. How Gív disputed with the Toll-man . . . . .	390
28. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jíhún . . . . .	392
29. How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán . . . . .	394
30. How Kai Khusrau came to Káuś . . . . .	397
31. How Tús refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau . . . . .	399
32. How Gúdarz was wroth with Tús . . . . .	402
33. How Gúdarz and Tús went before Káuś on the Matter of the Kingship . . . . .	403
34. How Tús and Farámarz went to the Castle of Bahman and came back foiled . . . . .	405
35. How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman and took it . . . . .	406

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 147

KAI KÁÚS—

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH, *etc.* (continued)—

SECT.	PAGE	VOL. II
36. How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph . . . . .	409	
37. How Káús set Khusrau upon the Throne of King-ship . . . . .	411	
INDEX . . . . .	413	

## VOLUME III

ABBREVIATIONS. . . . .	PAGE
	3
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	4

## THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART I. HOW KAI KHUSRAU, TO AVENGE SIYÁWUSH, SENT A HOST AGAINST TÚRÁN—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Prelude . . . . .	15
2. How the Nobles did Homage to Kai Khusrau . . . . .	17
3. How Kai Khusrau made a Progress through his Realm . . . . .	19
4. How Kai Khusrau swore to Kai Káús to take Vengeance on Afrásiyáb . . . . .	20
5. How Kai Khusrau numbered the Paladins . . . . .	24
6. How Kai Khusrau bestowed Treasures on the Paladins . . . . .	26
7. How Kai Khusrau sent Rustam to the Land of Hind . . . . .	30
8. How Kai Khusrau reviewed the Host . . . . .	31

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH—

9. The Prelude . . . . .	37
10. How Tús went to Turkistán . . . . .	38
11. How Farúd heard of the Coming of Tús . . . . .	41
12. How Farúd and Tukhár went to view the Host . . . . .	44
13. How Bahrám came to Farúd upon the Mountain . . . . .	47
14. How Bahrám went back to Tús . . . . .	51
15. How Rívníz was slain by Farúd . . . . .	52
16. How Zarásp was slain by Farúd . . . . .	53
17. How Tús fought with Farúd . . . . .	54
18. How Gív fought with Farúd . . . . .	57
19. How Bízhan fought with Farúd . . . . .	61
20. How Farúd was slain . . . . .	62
21. How Jaríra slew herself . . . . .	66
22. How Tús led the Host to the Kása Rúd, and how Paláshán was slain by Bízhan . . . . .	68
23. How the Íránians suffered in a Snowstorm . . . . .	71
24. How Bahrám captured Kabúda . . . . .	73
25. How the Íránians fought with Tazháv . . . . .	75
26. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of Tús and his Host . . . . .	78

## KAI KHUSRAU—

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

VOL. III

SECT.	PAGE
27. How Pírán made a Night-attack on the Íránians . . . . .	80
28. How Kai Khusráu recalled Túš . . . . .	84
29. How Faríbúrz asked a Truce of Pírán . . . . .	87
30. How the Íránians were defeated by the Turkmans. . . . .	89
31. How Bahrám returned to look for his Whip upon the Battlefield . . . . .	95
32. How Bahrám was slain by Tazháv . . . . .	98
33. How Gív slew Tazháv in revenge for Bahrám . . . . .	101
34. How the Íránians went back to Khusráu . . . . .	104

## PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	110
2. How Khusráu reviled Túš . . . . .	111
3. How Khusráu pardoned the Íránians . . . . .	113
4. How Khusráu sent Túš to Túrán . . . . .	115
5. The Message of Pírán to the Army of Írán . . . . .	117
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Army to Pírán. . . . .	118
7. How Túš slew Arzhang . . . . .	119
8. How Húmán fought with Túš . . . . .	120
9. How the Íránians and Túránians fought the second Time . . . . .	125
10. How the Túránians used Sorcery against the Host of Írán . . . . .	128
11. How the Íránians retreated to Mount Hamáwan . . . . .	131
12. How the Host of Túrán beleaguered Mount Hamáwan . . . . .	132
13. How Pírán went in Pursuit of the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan . . . . .	137
14. How the Íránians made a Night-attack . . . . .	139
15. How Kai Khusráu had Tidings of his Host . . . . .	142
16. How Faríbúrz asked to Wife Farangís, the Mother of Kai Khusráu . . . . .	146
17. How Túš saw Siyáwush in a Dream . . . . .	149
18. How Afrásiyáb sent the Khán and Kámús to help Pírán . . . . .	151
19. How the Khán of Chín came to Hamáwan . . . . .	153
20. How the Íránians took Counsel how to act . . . . .	155
21. How Gúdarz had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam . . . . .	156
22. How the Khán of Chín went to reconnoitre the Army of Írán . . . . .	160
23. How Faríbúrz reached Mount Hamáwan . . . . .	163
24. How Pírán took Counsel with the Khán of Chín . . . . .	164
25. How Gív and Túš fought with Kámús. . . . .	168
26. The Coming of Rustam . . . . .	170
27. How the Íránians and Túránians arrayed their Hosts . . . . .	174
28. How Rustam fought with Ashkabús . . . . .	179

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

149

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN (*continued*)—VOL. III

SECT.	PAGE
29. How Pírán held Converse concerning the Coming of Rustam . . . . .	182
30. How the Íránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array . . . . .	185
31. How Alwá was slain by Kámús . . . . .	187
32. How Kámús was slain by Rustam . . . . .	188

PART III. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND THE KHÁN OF CHÍN—

1. How the Khán of Chín had Tidings of the Slaying of Kámús . . . . .	192
2. How Chingish fared with Rustam . . . . .	194
3. How the Khán of Chín sent Húmán to Rustam . . . . .	196
4. How Pírán took Counsel with Húmán and the Khán . . . . .	199
5. How Pírán came to Rustam . . . . .	201
6. How the Túránians took Counsel for Battle with the Íránians . . . . .	206
7. How Rustam harangued his Troops . . . . .	211
8. How the Íránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array . . . . .	215
9. How Rustam reproached Pírán . . . . .	217
10. How the Battle was joined . . . . .	219
11. How Shangul fought with Rustam and fled . . . . .	221
12. How Rustam fought with Sáwa . . . . .	223
13. How Rustam slew Gahár of Gahán . . . . .	224
14. How the Khán was taken Prisoner . . . . .	227
15. How the Host of the Túránians was defeated . . . . .	230
16. How Rustam divided the Spoil . . . . .	232
17. How Rustam wrote a Letter to Kai Khusrau . . . . .	237
18. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Rustam's Letter . . . . .	239
19. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Case of his Army . . . . .	241
20. How Rustam fought with Káfúr the Man-eater . . . . .	243
21. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam . . . . .	249
22. Afrásiyáb's Letter to Púládward . . . . .	254
23. How Púládward fought with Gív and Tús . . . . .	257
24. How Rustam fought with Púládward . . . . .	259
25. The Wrestling of Rustam and Púládward . . . . .	262
26. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam . . . . .	265
27. How Rustam returned to the Court of the Sháh . . . . .	267
28. How Rustam went back to Sístán . . . . .	269

PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM WITH THE DÍV AKWÁN—

1. Prelude . . . . .	272
----------------------	-----

## KAI KHUSRAU—

VOL. III

PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM, *etc.* (continued)—

SECT.	PAGE
2. How Khusrau summoned Rustam to fight the Dív Akwán . . . . .	273
3. How Rustam went in Quest of the Dív . . . . .	275
4. How the Dív Akwán flung Rustam into the Sea . . . . .	276
5. How Afrásiyáb came to inspect his Steeds, and how Rustam slew the Dív Akwán . . . . .	279
6. How Rustam went back to the Land of Irán . . . . .	281

## PART V. THE STORY OF BÍZHAN AND MANÍZHA—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	287
2. How the Irmánians appealed to Khusrau . . . . .	289
3. How Bízhan went to fight the wild Boars . . . . .	292
4. How Gurgín beguiled Bízhan . . . . .	294
5. How Bízhan went to see Manízha, Daughter of Afrásiyáb . . . . .	296
6. How Bízhan went to the Tent of Manízha . . . . .	298
7. How Manízha carried off Bízhan to her Palace . . . . .	299
8. How Garsíwaz brought Bízhan before Afrásiyáb . . . . .	301
9. How Pirán begged Bízhan's Life from Afrásiyáb . . . . .	305
10. How Afrásiyáb put Bízhan in Ward . . . . .	309
11. How Gurgín returned to Irán and lied about Bízhan . . . . .	310
12. How Gív brought Gurgín before Khusrau . . . . .	315
13. How Kai Khusrau saw Bízhan in the Cup that showed the World . . . . .	318
14. How Khusrau wrote a Letter to Rustam . . . . .	319
15. How Gív bore the Letter of Kai Khusrau to Rustam . . . . .	321
16. How Rustam made a Feast for Gív . . . . .	324
17. How Rustam came to Khusrau . . . . .	326
18. How Kai Khusrau held Feast with the Paladins . . . . .	329
19. How Rustam made Petition for Gurgín to the Sháh . . . . .	331
20. How Rustam equipped his Escort . . . . .	333
21. How Rustam went to the City of Khutan to Pirán . . . . .	334
22. How Manízha came before Rustam . . . . .	337
23. How Bízhan heard of the Coming of Rustam . . . . .	340
24. How Rustam took Bízhan out of the Pit . . . . .	344
25. How Rustam attacked the Palace of Afrásiyáb by Night . . . . .	347
26. How Afrásiyáb went to fight with Rustam . . . . .	349
27. How Afrásiyáb was defeated by the Iránians . . . . .	351
28. How Rustam returned to Kai Khusrau . . . . .	353
29. How Kai Khusrau made a Feast . . . . .	355
INDEX . . . . .	359

## VOLUME IV

ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	PAGE
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	3
	4

KAI KHUSRAU (*continued*)—

## PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Prelude . . . . .	9
2. How Afrásiyáb called together his Host . . . . .	10
3. How Kai Khusrau sent Gúdarz to fight the Túr- ánians . . . . .	12
4. How Gív was made the Bearer of Overtures from Gúdarz to Pírán . . . . .	16
5. How Gív visited Pírán at Wisagird . . . . .	19
6. The Arraying of the Hosts . . . . .	22
7. How Bízhan went to Gív to urge him to fight . . . . .	26
8. How Húmán asked Pírán for Leave to fight . . . . .	29
9. How Húmán challenged Ruhhám . . . . .	31
10. How Húmán challenged Fariburz . . . . .	34
11. How Húmán challenged Gúdarz . . . . .	35
12. How Bízhan heard of the Doings of Húmán . . . . .	39
13. How Gív gave the Mail of Siyáwush to Bízhan . . . . .	44
14. How Húmán came to battle with Bízhan . . . . .	47
15. How Húmán was slain by Bízhan . . . . .	49
16. How Nastíhan made a Night-attack and was slain . . . . .	53
17. How Gúdarz asked aid of Khusrau . . . . .	56
18. The Answer of Khusrau to the letter of Gúdarz . . . . .	58
19. How Khusrau arrayed the Host . . . . .	61
20. How Pírán wrote to Gúdarz Son of Kishwád . . . . .	63
21. The Answer of Gúdarz to the Letter of Pírán . . . . .	68
22. How Pírán asked Succour from Afrásiyáb . . . . .	75
23. The Answer of Afrásiyáb to the Letter of Pírán . . . . .	78
24. How the Íránians and Túránians fought a pitched Battle . . . . .	81
25. How Gív fought with Pírán and how Gív's Horse jibbed . . . . .	84
26. How Gúdarz and Pírán arranged a Battle of Eleven Rukhs . . . . .	88
27. How Pírán harangued his Men of Name . . . . .	93
28. How Gúdarz and Pírán chose the Warriors for the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs . . . . .	95
29. How Fariburz fought with Kulbád . . . . .	99
30. How Gív fought with Gurwí . . . . .	99
31. How Guráza fought with Siyámak . . . . .	100
32. How Furúhil fought with Zangula . . . . .	101
33. How Ruhhám fought with Bármán . . . . .	102
34. How Bízhan fought with Rúin . . . . .	102
35. How Hajír fought with Sipahram . . . . .	103
36. How Gurgín fought with Andarímán . . . . .	104
37. How Barta fought with Kuhram . . . . .	105
38. How Zanga, Son of Sháwarán, fought with Akhást . . . . .	105
39. How Gúdarz fought with Pírán . . . . .	106

## KAI KHUSRAU—

VOL. IV

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
40. How Gúdarz returned to the Warriors of Írán . . .	109
41. How Lahhák and Farshíward bewailed Pírán . . .	112
42. How Lahhák and Farshíward took the Road to Túrán . . .	115
43. How Gustaham pursued Lahhák and Farshíward . . .	117
44. How Bízhan followed after Gustaham . . .	119
45. How Lahhák and Farshíward were slain by Gustaham . . .	121
46. How Bízhan beheld Gustaham in the Mead . . .	123
47. How Kai Khusrau built a Charnel-house for Pírán and for the other Chiefs of Túrán, and how he slew Gurwí the Son of Zira . . .	126
48. How the Túránians asked Quarter of Kai Khusrau . . .	129
49. How Bízhan returned with Gustaham . . .	132

## PART VII. THE GREAT WAR OF KAI KHUSRAU WITH AFRÁSIYÁB—

1. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd . . .	139
2. How Kai Khusrau arrayed his Host against Afrásiyáb . . .	145
3. How Afrásiyáb heard that Pírán was slain and that Kai Khusrau had arrayed his Host . . .	150
4. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings that Afrásiyáb advanced to fight with him . . .	157
5. How Shída came before his Father Afrásiyáb . . .	158
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Embassy to Kai Khusrau . . .	161
7. How Kai Khusrau sent an Answer to Afrásiyáb . . .	168
8. How Kai Khusrau fought with Shída the Son of Afrásiyáb . . .	171
9. How Shída was slain by Khusrau . . .	175
10. How the Battle was joined between the Hosts . . .	177
11. How Afrásiyáb fled . . .	183
12. How Kai Khusrau announced his Victory to Káuś . . .	185
13. How Afrásiyáb went to Gang-bihisht . . .	186
14. How Khusrau crossed the Jihún . . .	187
15. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb the second Time . . .	190
16. How Afrásiyáb took Refuge in Gang-bihisht . . .	193
17. The Letter of Afrásiyáb to the Faghfúr of Chín . . .	196
18. How Kai Khusrau arrived before Gang-bihisht . . .	198
19. How Jahn came to Kai Khusrau with an Embassy from Afrásiyáb . . .	200
20. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Jahn . . .	204
21. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb and took Gang-bihisht . . .	207
22. How Afrásiyáb fled from Gang-bihisht . . .	211
23. How Kai Khusrau gave Quarter to the Family of Afrásiyáb . . .	212

## KAI KHUSRAU—

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, ETC. (*continued*)—

## VOL. IV

SECT.	PAGE
24. How Kai Khusrâu exhorted the Íránians . . . . .	216
25. How Kai Khusrâu wrote a Letter with the News of his Victory to Kai Káuś . . . . .	217
26. How Kai Khusrâu had Tidings of the Coming of Afrásiyáb with the Host of the Faghfúr . . . . .	219
27. The Message of Afrásiyáb to Kai Khusrâu . . . . .	221
28. How the Íránians and Túránians fought . . . . .	223
29. How Afrásiyáb made a Night-attack upon Kai Khusrâu and was defeated . . . . .	224
30. How the Faghfúr of Chín sent an Envoy to Kai Khusrâu . . . . .	229
31. How Afrásiyáb crossed the Sea . . . . .	230
32. How Kai Khusrâu sent the Prisoners and Treasure to Káuś with a Letter . . . . .	232
33. The Answer of Sháh Káuś to the Letter of Khusrâu . . . . .	237
34. The Embassage of Kai Khusrâu to the Faghfúr of Chín and the King of Makrán . . . . .	238
35. How Kai Khusrâu fought with the King of Makrán and how the King of Makrán was slain . . . . .	241
36. How Kai Khusrâu crossed the Sea . . . . .	245
37. How Kai Khusrâu reached Gang-dizh . . . . .	247
38. How Kai Khusrâu returned from Gang-dizh to Siyáwushgird . . . . .	250
39. How Kai Khusrâu returned from Túrán to the Land of Írán . . . . .	254
40. How Kai Khusrâu returned to his Grandsire . . . . .	256
41. How Afrásiyáb was captured by Húm of the Race of Farídún . . . . .	259
42. How Afrásiyáb escaped from Húm . . . . .	261
43. How Káuś and Khusrâu came to Húm . . . . .	264
44. How Afrásiyáb was taken the second Time and how he and Garsíwaz were slain . . . . .	266
45. How Káuś and Khusrâu returned to Párs . . . . .	269
46. The Death of Kai Káuś . . . . .	270
47. How Kai Khusrâu fell into Melancholy . . . . .	272
48. How the Nobles inquired why Khusrâu had closed his Court . . . . .	275
49. How the Íránians summoned Zál and Rustam . . . . .	277
50. How Kai Khusrâu saw Surúsh in a Dream . . . . .	280
51. How Zál admonished Kai Khusrâu . . . . .	282
52. How Kai Khusrâu answered Zál . . . . .	284
53. How Zál rebuked Kai Khusrâu . . . . .	286
54. How Kai Khusrâu answered and how Zál excused himself . . . . .	288
55. How Kai Khusrâu gave his last Charge to the Íránians . . . . .	291
56. How Kai Khusrâu appointed Gúdarz to be his Mandatarý . . . . .	294

## KAI KHUSRAU—

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, *etc.* (continued)—

VOL. IV

SECT.	PAGE
57. How Zál asked of Kai Khusráu a Patent for Rustam	296
58. How Kai Kausrau gave a Patent to Giv	298
59. How Kai Khusráu gave a Patent to Tús	299
60. How Kai Khusráu gave the Kingship to Luhrásp.	300
61. How Kai Khusráu farewelled his Women	304
62. How Kai Khusráu went to the Mountains and vanished in the Snow	305
63. How the Paladins were lost in the Snow	308
64. How Luhrásp had Tidings of the Disappearance of Kai Khusráu	311
LUHRÁSP—	
1. How Luhrásp built a Fire-temple at Balkh	316
2. How Gushtásp quitted Luhrásp in Wrath	318
3. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír	320
4. How Gushtásp set off for Rúm	323
5. How Gushtásp arrived in Rúm	324
6. How a Village-chief entertained Gushtásp	327
7. The Story of Katáyún the Daughter of Cæsar	329
8. How Cæsar gave Katáyún to Gushtásp	331
9. How Mírín asked in Marriage Cæsar's second Daughter	333
10. How Gushtásp slew the Wolf	337
11. How Ahran asked Cæsar's third Daughter in Marriage	342
12. How Gushtásp slew the Dragon and how Cæsar gave his Daughter to Ahran.	346
13. How Gushtásp displayed his Prowess upon the Riding-ground	349
14. How Cæsar wrote to Ilyás and demanded Tribute.	352
15. How Gushtásp fought with Ilyás and slew him	355
16. How Cæsar demanded from Luhrásp Tribute for Írán	356
17. How Zarír carried a Message from Luhrásp to Cæsar	359
18. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír to the Land of Írán and received the Throne from Luhrásp	361
INDEX	367

## VOLUME V

ABBREVIATIONS.	PAGE
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	3
	5

## THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)

## GUSHTÁSP—

## PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT AND THE WAR WITH ARJÁSP—

SECT.	
1. How Firdausí saw Dakíki in a Dream.	30
2. How Luhrásp went to Balkh and Gushtásp sat upon the Throne	31

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 155

GUSHTÁSP—

PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT, *etc.* (continued)—

VOL. V

SECT.

PAGE

3. How Zarduhsht appeared and how Gushtásp accepted his Evangel . . . . .	33
4. How Gushtásp refused to Arjásp the Tribute for Írán . . . . .	35
5. How Arjásp wrote a Letter to Gushtásp . . . . .	37
6. How Arjásp sent Envoys to Gushtásp. . . . .	40
7. How Zarír made Answer to Arjásp . . . . .	42
8. How the Envoys returned to Arjásp with the Letter of Gushtásp . . . . .	43
9. How Gushtásp assembled his Troops . . . . .	47
10. How Jámásp foretold the Issue of the Battle to Gushtásp . . . . .	48
11. How Gushtásp and Arjásp arrayed their Hosts . . . . .	54
12. The Beginning of the Battle between the Íránians and Túránians, and how Ardshír, Shírú, and Shídas were slain . . . . .	56
13. How Girámí, Jámásp's Son, and Nívzár were slain . . . . .	58
14. How Zarír, the Brother of Gushtásp, was slain by Bídírafsh . . . . .	61
15. How Asfandiyár heard of the Slaying of Zarír . . . . .	65
16. How Asfandiyár went to Battle with Arjásp . . . . .	66
17. How Nastúr and Asfandiyár slew Bídírafsh. . . . .	69
18. How Arjásp fled from the Battle . . . . .	71
19. How the Turkmans received Quarter from Asfandiyár . . . . .	72
20. How Gushtásp returned to Balkh . . . . .	74
21. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár to all the Provinces, and how the Folk received from him the good Religion . . . . .	76
22. How Gurazm spake Evil of Asfandiyár . . . . .	78
23. How Jámásp came to Asfandiyár . . . . .	80
24. How Gushtásp imprisoned Asfandiyár. . . . .	82
25. How Gushtásp went to Sistán and how Arjásp arrayed his Host the second Time. . . . .	85
26. The Words of Dakíkí being ended, Firdausí resumeth, praising Sháh Mahmúd and criticising Dakíkí . . . . .	87
27. How the Host of Arjásp marched to Balkh and how Luhrásp was slain . . . . .	89
28. How Gushtásp heard of the Slaying of Luhrásp and led his Army toward Balkh . . . . .	93
29. How Gushtásp was put to Flight by Arjásp . . . . .	96
30. How Jámásp visited Asfandiyár. . . . .	98
31. How Asfandiyár saw his Brother Farshídwár . . . . .	103
32. How Asfandiyár came to the Mountain to Gushtásp . . . . .	106
33. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár the second Time to fight Arjásp . . . . .	114

GUSHTÁSP—

VOL. V

## PART II. THE STORY OF THE SEVEN STAGES—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Praise of Mahmūd the great King.	118

## THE SEVEN STAGES OF ASFANDIYÁR—

2. The First Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Wolves	119
3. The Second Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Lions	124
4. The Third Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Dragon	125
5. The Fourth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Witch	128
6. The Fifth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew the Símurgh	131
7. The Sixth Stage: How Asfandiyár passed through the Snow	134
8. The Seventh Stage: How Asfandiyár crossed the River and slew Gurgsár	139
9. How Asfandiyár went to the Brazen Hold in the Guise of a Merchant	143
10. How the Sisters of Asfandiyár recognised him	147
11. How Bishútán assaulted the Brazen Hold	150
12. How Asfandiyár slew Arjásp	152
13. How Asfandiyár slew Kuhram	155
14. How Asfandiyár wrote a Letter to Gushtásp and his Answer	159
15. How Asfandiyár returned to Gushtásp	161

## PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT WITH RUSTAM—

1. How Asfandiyár ambitioned the Throne and how Gushtásp took Counsel with the Astrologers.	167
2. How Asfandiyár demanded the Kingdom from his Father	170
3. How Gushtásp answered his Son	172
4. How Katáyún counselled Asfandiyár	175
5. How Asfandiyár led a Host to Zábúl	177
6. How Asfandiyár sent Bahman to Rustam	179
7. How Bahman came to Zál.	182
8. How Bahman gave a Message to Rustam	184
9. How Rustam made Answer to Asfandiyár	187
10. How Bahman returned	190
11. The Meeting of Rustam and Asfandiyár	192
12. How Asfandiyár summoned not Rustam to the Feast	196
13. How Asfandiyár excused himself for not summoning Rustam to the Feast	198
14. How Asfandiyár spake Shame of the Race of Rustam	200

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

157

GUSHTÁSP—

VOL. V

## PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT, *etc.* (continued)—

SECT.	PAGE
15. How Rustam answered Asfandiyár, praising his own Race and Deeds . . . . .	202
16. How Asfandiyár boasted of his Ancestry . . . . .	204
17. How Rustam vaunted his Valour . . . . .	207
18. How Rustam drank wine with Asfandiyár . . . . .	210
19. How Rustam returned to his Palace . . . . .	215
20. How Zál counselled Rustam . . . . .	218
21. How Rustam fought with Asfandiyár . . . . .	222
22. How the Sons of Asfandiyár were slain by Zawára and Farámarz . . . . .	225
23. How Rustam fled to the Heights . . . . .	229
24. How Rustam took Counsel with his Kin . . . . .	234
25. How the Símurgh succoured Rustam . . . . .	235
26. How Rustam went back to fight Asfandiyár . . . . .	240
27. How Rustam shot Asfandiyár in the Eyes with an Arrow . . . . .	243
28. How Asfandiyár told his last Wishes to Rustam . . . . .	247
29. How Bishútán bare the Coffin of Asfandiyár to Gushtásp . . . . .	251
30. How Rustam sent Bahman back to Írán . . . . .	256

## PART IV. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND SHAGHÁD

1. The Prelude . . . . .	261
2. How Rustam went to Kábul on behalf of his Brother Shaghád . . . . .	263
3. How the King of Kábul dug Pits in the Hunting-ground and how Rustam and Zawára fell therein . . . . .	268
4. How Rustam slew Shaghád and died . . . . .	271
5. How Zál received News of the Slaying of Rustam and Zawára, and how Farámarz brought their Coffins and set them in the Charnel-house . . . . .	273
6. How Farámarz led an Army to avenge Rustam and slew the King of Kábul . . . . .	276
7. How Rúdába lost her Wits through Mourning for Rustam . . . . .	278
8. How Gushtásp gave the Kingdom to Bahman and died . . . . .	279

## BAHMAN, SON OF ASFANDIYÁR—

1. How Bahman sought Revenge for the Death of Asfandiyár . . . . .	283
2. How Bahman put Zál in Bonds . . . . .	285
3. How Farámarz fought with Bahman and was put to Death . . . . .	287
4. How Bahman released Zál and returned to Írán . . . . .	288
5. How Bahman married his own Daughter Humái and appointed his Successor . . . . .	290

HUMÁI—	VOL. V
SECT.	PAGE
1. How Humái cast away her Son Dáráb on the River Farát in an Ark . . . . .	294
2. How the Launderer brought up Dáráb. . . . .	296
3. How Dáráb questioned the Launderer's Wife about his Parentage, and how he fought against the Rûmans . . . . .	300
4. How Rashnawád learned the Case of Dáráb. . . . .	302
5. How Dáráb fought against the Host of Rûm. . . . .	305
6. How Humái recognised her Son. . . . .	307
7. How Humái seated Dáráb upon the Throne. . . . .	309
INDEX . . . . .	313

## VOLUME VI

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SÁSÁNIANS . . . . .	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS. . . . .	3
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	5
	8

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

DÁRÁB—	
1. How Dáráb built the City of Dárábgird . . . . .	20
2. How Dáráb defeated the Host of Shu'fb . . . . .	21
3. How Dáráb fought with Failakús and took to Wife his Daughter . . . . .	22
4. How Dáráb sent back the Daughter of Failakús to Rûm, and how Sikandar was born . . . . .	25

## DÁRÁ, SON OF DÁRÁB—

1. How Dárá harangued the Chiefs and took Order for the Realm . . . . .	34
2. The Death of Failakús and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne . . . . .	35
3. How Sikandar went as his own Ambassador to Dárá . . . . .	38
4. How Dárá fought with Sikandar and was worsted. . . . .	42
5. How Dárá fought with Sikandar the second Time. . . . .	43
6. How Sikandar fought with Dárá the third Time, and how Dárá fled to Kirmán . . . . .	46
7. How Dárá wrote to Sikandar to propose Peace . . . . .	49
8. How Dárá was slain by his Ministers . . . . .	50
9. How Dárá told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died . . . . .	52
10. How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Írán . . . . .	57

## SIKANDAR—

1. How Sikandar sat upon the Throne of Írán . . . . .	85
2. How Sikandar wrote to Dílárái and Rúshanak, the Wife and Daughter of Dárá, touching the Nuptials of Rúshanak. . . . .	85

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 159

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

SECT.	PAGE
3. How Dilárái answered the Letter of Sikandar . . . . .	87
4. How Sikandar sent his Mother, Náhid, to fetch Rúshanak, and how he married her . . . . .	89
5. How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how Mihrán interpreted it . . . . .	91
6. How Sikandar marched against Kaid of Hind and wrote a Letter to him . . . . .	98
7. How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar's Letter and announced the Sending of the Four Wonders . . . . .	99
8. How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the Four Wonders . . . . .	100
9. How Sikandar sent Ten Sages with a Letter to inspect the Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind . . . . .	101
10. How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar . . . . .	103
11. How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent by Kaid of Hind . . . . .	104
12. How Sikandar led a Host against Fúr of Hind and wrote a Letter to him . . . . .	110
13. How Fúr answered the Letter of Sikandar . . . . .	111
14. How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fúr of Hind and made iron Steeds and Riders filled with Naphtha . . . . .	112
15. How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fúr, how Fúr was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar seated Sawurg upon the Throne of Fúr . . . . .	116
16. How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba . . . . .	119
17. How Sikandar led his Troops from Judda toward Misr . . . . .	121
18. Sikandar's Letter to Kaidáfa, Queen of Andalús, and her Answer . . . . .	123
19. How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalús and took the Hold of King Faryán . . . . .	124
20. How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Kaidáfa and was recognised by her . . . . .	127
21. How Kaidáfa counselled Sikandar . . . . .	132
22. How Tainúsh, the Son of Kaidáfa, was wroth with Sikandar, and how Sikandar took Precaution against him . . . . .	134
23. How Sikandar made a Compact with Kaidáfa and returned to his Troops. . . . .	138
24. How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brah- mans, inquired into their Mysteries, and received an Answer . . . . .	143

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

SECT.

PAGE

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 25. How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonders . . . . .   | 147 |
| 26. How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and was victorious . . . . .  | 149 |
| 27. How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpai, how he fought and was victorious, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a Mountain, and was forewarned of his own Death . . . . . | 150 |
| 28. How Sikandar reached the City of Women, named Harum, and saw Wonders there . . . . .   | 153 |
| 29. How Sikandar went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life and spake with Birds and Isráfil . . . . .  | 159 |
| 30. How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a Barrier against Yájúj and Májúj . . . . .  | 163 |
| 31. How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was warned of his Death . . . . .                            | 166 |
| 32. How Sikandar marched his Army to Chin, carried his own Letter to Faghfur, and returned to his Army with the Answer . . . . .   | 169 |
| 33. How Sikandar returned from Chin, made War against the Sindians, and went to Yaman . . . . .  | 174 |
| 34. How Sikandar marched toward Babil and found the Treasure of Kai Khusrau in a City . . . . .  | 176 |
| 35. How Sikandar went to the City of Babil, wrote a Letter to Arastáls, and received his Answer . . . . .  | 178 |
| 36. Sikandar's Letter to his Mother . . . . .  | 181 |
| 37. How Sikandar's Life ended and how they carried his Coffin to Iskandariya . . . . .   | 183 |
| 38. How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar . . . . .   | 185 |
| 39. How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him . . . . .   | 187 |
| 40. Firdaus's Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God . . . . .   | 189 |

## THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY

SECT.

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. The Praise of Mahmúd . . . . .  | 207 |
| 2. The Tribal Kings . . . . .  | 210 |
| 3. How Pápak saw Sásán in a Dream and gave him a Daughter in Marriage . . . . .                  | 211 |
| 4. How Ardshír Pápakán was born, and of his Case with Ardawán . . . . .                          | 213 |
| 5. How Ardawán's Slave-girl fell in Love with Ardshír and how he fled with her to Párs . . . . . | 217 |
| 6. How Ardawán heard of the Flight of Ardshír with the Damsel and pursued them . . . . .         | 220 |
| 7. How Ardawán wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshír . . . . .                               | 223 |

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

161

## THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

SECT.

PAGE

8. How Tabák helped Ardshír, fought with Bahman, and conquered him . . . . . 225
9. How Ardawán led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshír and was slain . . . . . 227
10. How Ardshír fought with the Kurds and was defeated . . . . . 230
11. How Ardshír attacked the Kurds by Night and overthrew them . . . . . 232
12. The Story of Haftwád and the Case of the Worm . . . . . 232
13. How Ardshír fought with Haftwád and was worsted . . . . . 236
14. How Mihrak of Jahram sacked the Palace of Ardshír . . . . . 237
15. How Ardshír heard about the Worm and made Shift to slay it . . . . . 239
16. How Ardshír slew Haftwád . . . . . 244

## THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY

### ARDSHÍR PÁPAKÁN—

SECT.

1. How Ardshír Pápakán sat upon the Throne in Baghdád . . . . . 258
2. The Case of Ardshír and the Daughter of Ardawán . . . . . 259
3. How Shápúr was born to Ardshír by the Daughter of Ardawán, and how after seven Years Ardshír heard of his Son and acknowledged him. . . . . 261
4. How Ardshír, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent to Kaid of Hind, and Kaid's Reply . . . . . 266
5. The Adventure of Shápúr with the Daughter of Mihrak, and his taking her to Wife . . . . . 268
6. How Urmuzd was born to Shápúr by the Daughter of Mihrak . . . . . 271
7. Of the Wisdom of Ardshír and his Method of administering the Realm . . . . . 273
8. How Kharrád praised Ardshír . . . . . 284
9. On the Faithlessness of Fortune. . . . . 285
10. How Ardshír charged Shápúr and died. . . . . 286
11. Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmúd, the great King . . . . . 291

### SHÁPÚR, SON OF ARDShÍR—

1. How Shápúr sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge to the Chieftains . . . . . 295
2. How Shápúr fought with the Rúmans, how Bazánúsh, their General, was taken Prisoner, and how Cæsar made Peace with Shápúr . . . . . 296
3. How Shápúr seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died . . . . . 299

VOL. IX

I.

URMUZD, SON OF SHÁPÚR—	VOL. VI
SECT.	PAGE
1. How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly. . . . .	302
2. How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahrám, charged him, and died . . . . .	303
BAHRÁM, SON OF URMUZD—	
1. How Bahrám succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died . . . . .	307
BAHRÁM, SON OF BAHRÁM—	
1. How Bahrám, Son of Bahrám, ascended the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died . . . . .	311
BAHRÁM BAHRÁMIYÁN—	
1. How Bahrám Bahrámiyán succeeded to the Throne and died four Months after . . . . .	313
NARSÍ, SON OF BAHRÁM—	
1. How Narsí succeeded to the Throne, counselled his Son, and died . . . . .	315
URMUZD, SON OF NARSÍ—	
1. How Urmuzd, Son of Narsí, ascended the Throne, and how his Life ended . . . . .	318
SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAMED ZÚ'L AKTÁF—	
1. How Shápúr, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty days after his Father's Death, and how he was crowned . . . . .	328
2. How Táír, the Arab, carried off the Daughter of Narsí and married her, how Shápúr went to Yaman to fight him, and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shápúr . . . . .	330
3. How Táír was bemused by his Daughter and how she came to Shápúr, who took the Hold and slew Táír . . . . .	333
4. How Shápúr went disguised as a Merchant to Rúm, how he was taken by Cæsar, and how Cæsar ravaged the Land of Írán . . . . .	335
5. How the Damsel took Measures to free Shápúr, and how he fled with her from Rúm . . . . .	339
6. How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing of Shápúr's Arrival, went to him with the Troops . . . . .	345
7. How Shápúr made a Night-attack, and how Cæsar was taken . . . . .	346
8. How Shápúr went to Rúm and fought with Yánuš, Cæsar's Brother . . . . .	351
9. How the Rúmans placed Bazánúsh upon the Throne of Cæsar; his Letter to Shápúr and the Answer. . . . .	353

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

163

## SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, (*continued*)—

VOL. VI  
PAGE

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 10. How Bazánúsh went to Shápúr and made a Treaty of Peace . . . . .   | 355 |
| 11. How Mání, the Painter, came to Shápúr with Pretence of being a Prophet, and was slain . . . . .              | 358 |
| 12. How Shápúr made his Brother Ardshír Regent till his own Son should grow up, and how his Days ended . . . . . | 360 |

## ARDSHÍR, BROTHER OF SHÁPÚR—

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Ardshír sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers . . . . . | 363 |
|--|-----|

## SHÁPÚR, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

- |   |     |
|---|-----|
| 1. How Shápúr, Son of Shápúr, sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers . . . . . | 365 |
|---|-----|

## BAHRÁM, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

- |   |     |
|---|-----|
| 1. How Bahrám sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers . . . . . | 368 |
|---|-----|

## YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers . . . . .   | 374 |
| 2. How Bahrám Gúr, Son of Yazdagird, was born and sent to be brought up by Munzir, the Arab . . . . .  | 375 |
| 3. How Bahrám went to the Chase with a Damsel and how he displayed his Accomplishment . . . . .  | 382 |
| 4. How Bahrám showed his Accomplishment in the Chase before Munzir . . . . .   | 384 |
| 5. How Bahrám came with Nu'mán to Yazdagird . . . . .  | 386 |
| 6. How Yazdagird put Bahrám in Bonds, how he escaped by the good Offices of Tainúsh, and how he returned to Munzir . . . . .   | 389 |
| 7. How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the Spring of Sav and was killed by a Water-horse . . . . .  | 391 |
| 8. How the Íránians took Counsel and placed Khusrau upon the Throne . . . . .  | 394 |
| 9. How Bahrám Gúr heard of the Death of his Father and invaded Írán . . . . .  | 395 |
| 10. How the Íránians heard of Bahrám's Pillaging and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied . . . . .   | 397 |
| 11. How Bahrám Gúr arrived at Jahram with the Host of Munzir, and how the Íránians went out to him . . . . .   | 400 |
| 12. How Bahrám Gúr harangued the Íránians as to his Fitness to rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship if he would take the Crown from between the Lions . . . . . | 402 |

164 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPŪR ( <i>continued</i> )—		VOL. VI
SECT.		PAGE
13.	How Bahrám and Khusrau went to the Waste, and how Bahrám slew the Lions and took his Seat upon the Throne . . . . .	409
INDEX . . . . .		413

VOLUME VII

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE . . . . .	v
ABBREVIATIONS. . . . .	xvi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	xviii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

BAHRÁM GŪR—

SECT.		
1.	How Bahrám ascended the Throne, charged the Officers, and wrote Letters to all the Chiefs . . . . .	7
2.	How Bahrám pardoned the Fault of the Íránians, farewelled Munzir and Nu'mán, and remitted the Íránians' Arrears of Taxes . . . . .	9
3.	How Bahrám went to the House of Lambak, the Water-carrier, and became his Guest . . . . .	12
4.	How Bahrám went to the House of Baráhám, the Jew, who treated him scurvily . . . . .	16
5.	How Bahrám bestowed the Wealth of Baráhám upon Lambak . . . . .	19
6.	How Bahrám slew Lions and forbade Wine-drinking . . . . .	21
7.	The Story of the young Shoemaker and how Bahrám allowed Wine again. . . . .	24
8.	How Rúzbih, Bahrám's High Priest, ruined a Village by a Stratagem and restored it . . . . .	26
9.	How Bahrám married a Country Miller's Daughters . . . . .	31
10.	How Bahrám found the Treasures of Jamshíd and bestowed them upon the Poor . . . . .	34
11.	How Bahrám, returning from Hunting, went to the House of a Merchant and departed displeased. . . . .	39
12.	How Bahrám slew a Dragon and went to a Yokel's House . . . . .	42
13.	How Bahrám went to the Chase and espoused the Daughters of the Thane Barzín . . . . .	48
14.	How Bahrám slew Lions, went to the House of a Jeweller, and married his Daughter. . . . .	55
15.	How Bahrám went to the Chase and passed the Night in the House of Farshídward . . . . .	67
16.	How a Bramble-grubber revealed the Case of Farshídward, and how Bahrám bestowed that Householder's Wealth upon the Poor . . . . .	70

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 165

BAHRÁM GÚR (*continued*)—

VOL. VII

SECT.	PAGE
17. How Bahrám went to the Chase and slew Lions . . . . .	74
18. How Bahrám went to hunt the Onager, showed his Skill before the Princes, and returned to Baghdád and Istakhr . . . . .	80
19. How the Khán of Chín led forth a Host to war with Bahrám, and how the Íránians asked Quarter of the Khán and submitted to him . . . . .	84
20. How Bahrám attacked the Host of the Khán and took him . . . . .	89
21. How Bahrám took a Pledge from the Túránians, how he set up a Pillar to delimit the Realm, and placed Shahrá upon the Throne of Túrán . . . . .	90
22. How Bahrám wrote to announce his Victory to his Brother Narsí and returned to Írán . . . . .	92
23. How Bahrám wrote a Letter of Directions to his Officials . . . . .	96
24. How Bahrám called before him the Envoy of Cæsar, and how the Envoy questioned and answered the Archmages . . . . .	101
25. How Bahrám dismissed Cæsar's Envoy and charged his own Officials . . . . .	106
26. How Bahrám went with his own Letter to Shangul King of Hind . . . . .	109
27. How Shangul received the Letter from Bahrám and made Reply . . . . .	114
28. How Shangul prepared a Feast for Bahrám, and how Bahrám displayed his Prowess . . . . .	116
29. How Shangul suspected Bahrám and kept him from Írán . . . . .	118
30. How Bahrám fought with the Wolf at the Bidding of Shangul and slew it . . . . .	121
31. How Bahrám slew a Dragon . . . . .	124
32. How Shangul became troubled about Bahrám and gave a Daughter to him . . . . .	126
33. How Faghfúr of Chín wrote to Bahrám and how he replied . . . . .	129
34. How Bahrám fled from Hindústán to Írán with the Daughter of Shangul . . . . .	131
35. How Shangul followed Bahrám, learned who he was, and was reconciled to him . . . . .	135
36. How Shangul went back to Hind and Bahrám to Írán . . . . .	137
37. How Shangul with seven Kings visited Bahrám . . . . .	140
38. How Shangul returned to Hindústán, and how Bahrám remitted the Property-tax to the Land-owners . . . . .	144
39. How Bahrám summoned Gipsies from Hindústán . . . . .	148
40. How the Time of Bahrám came to an End . . . . .	150

## YAZDAGIRD, SON OF BAHRÁM GŪR—

Vol. VII

SECT.

PAGE

1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and exhorted the Captains of the Host . . . . 154

## HURMUZ—

1. How Hurmuz, Son of Yazdagird, ascended the Throne . . . . . 157

## PÍRÚZ—

1. How Pírúz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration . . . . . 161
2. How Pírúz built the Cities of Pírúz-Rám and Bádán-Pírúz, and how he went to war with Túrán . . . . . 163
3. The Letter of Khúshnawáz to Pírúz . . . . . 165
4. How Pírúz fought with Khúshnawáz and was slain . . . . . 167

## BALÁSH—

1. How Baláš ascended the Throne and harangued the Íránians . . . . . 171
2. How Súfarai had Tidings of the Slaying of Pírúz, how he wrote a Letter to Khúshnawáz, and how Khúshnawáz replied . . . . . 173
3. How Súfarai fought with Khúshnawáz, and how Kubád was released from his Bondage . . . . . 176

## KUBÁD, SON OF PÍRÚZ—

1. How Kubád sat upon the Throne and made an Oration to the Íránians . . . . . 188
2. How Súfarai went to Shíráz, how the Íránians slandered him to Kubád, and how Kubád slew him . . . . . 190
3. How the Íránians put Kubád in Bonds and committed him to Rizmihr, the Son of Súfarai, and how Jámásp, the Brother of Kubád, was set upon the Throne . . . . . 195
4. How Kubád escaped from Ward with Rizmihr, how he wedded the Daughter of a Thane, and how he took Refuge with the Haitálans . . . . . 197
5. How Kubád returned from Haitál to Írán, how he had Tidings of the Birth of his Son, Núshírwán, and reascended the Throne . . . . . 199
6. The Story of Kubád and Mazdak, and how Kubád adopted the Faith of Mazdak . . . . . 201
7. How Núshírwán rejected the Faith of Mazdak and slew him and his Followers . . . . . 205
8. How Kubád nominated Kisrá as Successor, and how the Great gave him the name of Núshírwán . . . . . 209

## NÚSHÍRWÁN—

VOL. VII

PART I. NÚSHÍRWÁN'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE  
REALM, HIS WARS WITH FRONTIER-TRIBES  
AND WITH RÚM, AND THE REVOLT OF  
NÚSHZÁD—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Prelude . . . . .	220
2. How Núshírwán ascended the Throne and made an Oration to the Íránians . . . . .	221
3. How Núshírwán divided his Realm into four Parts and wrote a Decree to his Officers on the Administration of Justice . . . . .	224
4. How Núshírwán required Bábak to muster the Host . . . . .	230
5. How Núshírwán harangued the Íránians, and how the Kings acknowledged his Supremacy . . . . .	234
6. How Núshírwán went round his Empire and built a Wall in the Pass between Írán and Túrán . . . . .	236
7. How Núshírwán chastised the Aláns and the Men of Balúch and Gílán . . . . .	239
8. How Munzir, the Arab, came to Núshírwán for Succour against the Injustice of Cæsar . . . . .	244
9. The Letter of Sháh Núshírwán to Cæsar of Rúm . . . . .	247
10. How the Letter of Núshírwán reached Cæsar and how he replied . . . . .	248
11. How Núshírwán went to war with Cæsar . . . . .	249
12. How Núshírwán took divers Strongholds in his March to Rúm . . . . .	254
13. The Battle of Núshírwán with Farfúriyús, the Leader of Cæsar's Host, the Victory of Núshírwán, and his Capture of Kálfniyús and Antákiya . . . . .	255
14. How Núshírwán built the City of Zíb-i-Khusrau in the Likeness of Antákiya and settled the Rúman Captives therein . . . . .	259
15. How Cæsar wrote to Núshírwán and sent Tribute . . . . .	261
16. The Birth of Núshzád, the Son of Núshírwán, by a Woman who was a Christian . . . . .	263
17. The Sickness of Núshírwán and the Sedition of Núshzád . . . . .	265
18. The Letter of Núshírwán to Rám Barzín, the Warden of the March of Madá'in, respecting the Taking of Núshzád . . . . .	267
19. How Rám Barzín fought with Núshzád, and how Núshzád was slain . . . . .	272

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR AND THE  
SEVEN BANQUETS OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

1. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmihr  
interpreted it . . . . . 281

## NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR, *etc.* (continued)—VOL. VII

SECT.	PAGE
2. The first Banquet of Núshírwán to the Sages, and the Counsels of Búzurjmihr . . . . .	287
3. The second Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	290
4. The third Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	296
5. The fourth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	301
6. The fifth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	304
7. The sixth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	307
8. The seventh Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages . . . . .	312

## PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD AND OTHER MATTERS—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Story of Mahbúd, the Wazír of Núshírwán, and how Mahbúd and his Sons were slain by the Sorcery of Zúrán and a Jew . . . . .	318
2. How the Sorcery of Zúrán and the Jew in the Matter of Mahbúd was discovered, and how both were slain by Command of Núshírwán . . . . .	323
3. In Praise of the Wisdom of Núshírwán, and how he built the City of Súrán . . . . .	326
4. The Story of the War of the Khán with Ghátkar, the Prince of the Haitálans, the Defeat of Ghátkar, and how they set Faghánish upon the Throne . . . . .	328
5. How Núshírwán had Tidings of the Battle of the Khán with the Haitálans and how he led a Host against the Khán . . . . .	333
6. How the Khán had Tidings of the Coming of the Host of Núshírwán to Gurgán and wrote a Letter in the Cause of Peace . . . . .	337
7. How Núshírwán answered the Letter of the Khán . . . . .	342
8. How the Khán bethought himself and wrote offering his Daughter in Marriage to Núshírwán . . . . .	345
9. How Núshírwán answered the Letter, and sent Mihrán Sitád to see and fetch the Daughter of the Khán . . . . .	349
10. How the Khán sent his Daughter, escorted by Mihrán, with a Letter and Treasures to Núshírwán . . . . .	354
11. How the Khán withdrew, and how Núshírwán marched from Gurgán to Taisafún . . . . .	358
12. Discourse on the Justice of Núshírwán and how Mortals had Peace under his Usages . . . . .	364

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD, *etc.* (continued)— VOL. VII

SECT.	PAGE
13. How Búzurmíhr counselled Núshírwán and dis- coursed on good Deeds and Words. . . . .	366

PART IV. THE INTRODUCTION OF THE GAME OF CHESS  
INTO ÍRÁN. THE LEGEND OF THE INVEN-  
TION OF THE GAME. THE DISCOVERY OF  
THE BOOK OF KALÍLA AND DIMNA

1. How the Rája of Hind sent the Game of Chess to Núshírwán . . . . .	384
2. How Búzurmíhr invented Nard, and how Núshírwán sent it with a Letter to the Rája of Hind. . . . .	389
3. The Story of Gav and Talhand, and the Invention of Chess . . . . .	394
4. How Núshírwán sent Barzwí, the Leech, to Hind- ústán to fetch a wondrous Drug, and how Barzwí brought back the Book of Kalíla and Dimna . . . . .	423

INDEX . . . . .	433
-----------------	-----

VOL. VIII

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	xv
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	xvi

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)

NÚSHÍRWÁN (continued)—

PART V. THE FALL AND RESTORATION TO FAVOUR OF  
BÚZURJMIHR, AND THE WISDOM OF NÚSH-  
ÍRWÁN—

SECT.		
1. How Núshírwán was wroth with Búzurmíhr and ordered him to be put in Ward . . . . .	4	
2. How the Ambassador of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with a locked Casket and how Búzurmíhr was set at large to declare its Contents . . . . .	8	
3. Discourse on the Responses of Núshírwán . . . . .	14	
4. Núshírwán's Letter of Counsel to his Son Hurmuzd . . . . .	25	
5. How an Archmage questioned Núshírwán and how he made Answer . . . . .	28	

PART VI. THE SHÁH'S LAST YEARS—

1. How Núshírwán made ready to war against Cæsar . . . . .	43
2. How Núshírwán took the Stronghold of Sakíla and how a Shoemaker had Dealings with him. . . . .	46
3. How the Envoys of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with Apologies and Presents. . . . .	51
4. How Núshírwán chose Hurmuzd as his Successor. . . . .	54

## NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART VI. THE SHÁH'S LAST YEARS (*continued*)— VOL. VIII

SECT.	PAGE
5. How the Archimages questioned Hurmuzd and how he replied . . . . .	57
6. How Núshírwán appointed Hurmuzd as his Successor and gave him parting Counsels . . . . .	61
7. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmíhr interpreted it as signifying the Appearance of Muhammad . . . . .	66

## HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	77
2. How Hurmuzd ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs . . . . .	78
3. How Hurmuzd slew Ízid Gashasp, Zarduhsht, Símáh Barzín, and Bahrám Ázarmihán, his Father's Ministers . . . . .	81
4. How Hurmuzd turned from Tyranny to Justice . . . . .	90
5. How Hosts gathered from all Sides against Hurmuzd, and how he took Counsel with his Wazírs . . . . .	92
6. How Hurmuzd heard of Bahrám Chúbína and sent for him . . . . .	96
7. How Bahrám Chúbína came to Hurmuzd and was made Captain of the Host . . . . .	100
8. How Bahrám Chúbína went with twelve thousand Cavaliers to fight King Sáwa . . . . .	106
9. How King Sáwa sent a Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer . . . . .	113
10. How King Sáwa and Bahrám Chúbína set the Battle in Array against each other. . . . .	115
11. How King Sáwa sent another Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer . . . . .	117
12. How Bahrám Chúbína had a Dream in the Night, how he gave Battle the next Morning, and how King Sáwa was slain . . . . .	121
13. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Letter announcing his Victory, and the Head of King Sáwa, to Hurmuzd, and his Answer . . . . .	129
14. How Bahrám Chúbína fought with Parmúda, Son of King Sáwa, and overcame him, and how Parmúda took Refuge in the Hold of Áwáza . . . . .	134
15. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Message to Parmúda and how Parmúda asked Quarter . . . . .	138
16. How Bahrám Chúbína asked of Hurmuzd a Warrant to spare the Life of Parmúda and the Answer . . . . .	141
17. How Hurmuzd's Letter, granting Quarter to Parmúda, reached Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína was wroth with Parmúda . . . . .	143

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 171

HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN ( <i>continued</i> )—		VOL. VIII
SECT.		PAGE
18.	How Parmúda came before Hurmuzd with the Treasures sent by Bahrám Chúbína . . . . .	149
19.	How Hurmuzd heard of the Ill-doing of Bahrám Chúbína and made a Compact with the Khán . . . . .	151
20.	How Hurmuzd wrote a chiding Letter to Bahrám Chúbína and sent him a Distaff-case, Cotton, and Women's Raiment . . . . .	153
21.	How Bahrám Chúbína put on the Woman's Dress and showed himself therein to the Chiefs of the Host . . . . .	154
22.	How Bahrám Chúbína went to hunt and saw a Lady who foretold the Future to him . . . . .	156
23.	How Bahrám Chúbína assumed the royal Style and how Kharrád, Son of Barzín, and the Archscribe fled . . . . .	158
24.	How Hurmuzd received News of Bahrám Chúbína's Doings, and how Bahrám Chúbína sent a Frail of Swords to Hurmuzd. . . . .	160
25.	How Bahrám Chúbína made known to the Chiefs his Designs upon the Throne, and how his Sister Gurdy advised him . . . . .	163
26.	Bahrám Chúbína's Letter to the Khán and how he coined Money with the name of Khusrau Parwíz and sent it to Hurmuzd . . . . .	172
27.	How Bahrám Chúbína wrote to Hurmuzd and how Khusrau Parwíz fled from his Father . . . . .	173
28.	How Hurmuzd sent Ayín Gashasp with an Army to fight Bahrám Chúbína and how he was slain by his Comrade . . . . .	177
29.	How Hurmuzd grieved, refused Audience to the Íránians, and was blinded by Bandwí and Gustaham . . . . .	182
30.	How Khusrau Parwíz heard of the Blinding of Hurmuzd . . . . .	184
KHUSRAU PARWÍZ—		
1.	The Prelude . . . . .	196
2.	How Khusrau Parwíz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration. . . . .	197
3.	How Khusrau Parwíz visited his Father and asked Forgiveness . . . . .	198
4.	How Bahrám Chúbína heard of the Blinding of Sháh Hurmuzd and how he led his Troops against Khusrau Parwíz . . . . .	200
5.	How Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbína met and parleyed . . . . .	204
6.	How Bahrám Chúbína and Khusrau Parwíz returned, how Gurdy advised Bahrám Chúbína, and how Khusrau Parwíz told his Purpose to the Íránians . . . . .	220

KHUSRAU PARWIZ (*continued*)—

VOL. VIII

SECT.

PAGE

7. How Bahrám Chúbína attacked the Army of Khusrau Parwiz by Night and how Khusrau Parwiz fled . . . . . 226
8. How Khusrau Parwiz went to his Sire and fled to Rûm, and how Hurmuzd was slain . . . . . 230
9. How Bahrám Chúbína sent Troops after Khusrau Parwiz and how Bandwî contrived to rescue him from their Hands. . . . . 233
10. How Bahrám, the Son of Siyâwush, took Bandwî and carried him to Bahrám Chúbína . . . . . 237
11. How Bahrám Chúbína summoned the Magnates of Írán, how they discussed his Pretensions to the Kingdom, and how he acceded to the Throne . . . . . 239
12. How Bandwî plotted with Bahrám, the Son of Siyâwush, to slay Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bandwî fled from Bond . . . . . 245
13. How Khusrau Parwiz went toward Rûm by the Desert-route and how a Hermit told him of the Past and Future . . . . . 249
14. How a Cavalier of Cæsar came to Khusrau Parwiz and how he sent an Answer by Gustaham, Bálwî, Andiyân, Kharrád, Son of Barzîn, and Shâpûr to Cæsar. . . . . 257
15. How Cæsar answered the Letter of Khusrau Parwiz . . . . . 260
16. How Cæsar wrote to Khusrau Parwiz, declining to help him, and his Answer . . . . . 261
17. How Cæsar wrote the second Time to Khusrau Parwiz about giving him Aid . . . . . 264
18. How Khusrau Parwiz answered Cæsar about the Alliance . . . . . 269
19. How Cæsar made a Talisman and deceived the Envoys of Khusrau Parwiz, and how Kharrád, Son of Barzîn, solved the Mystery . . . . . 271
20. How Kharrád, Son of Barzîn, expounded the Faith of the Indians and exhorted Cæsar . . . . . 275
21. How Cæsar sent a Host and his Daughter to Khusrau Parwiz. . . . . 278
22. How Khusrau Parwiz led his Host to Ázar Ábâdagân and how Bandwî met him on the Way . . . . . 281
23. How Bahrám Chúbína had Tidings of the Coming of Khusrau Parwiz and wrote a Letter to the Chiefs of Írán, and how the Letter fell into the Hands of Khusrau Parwiz and his Answer . . . . . 284
24. How Khusrau Parwiz fought with Bahrám Chúbína and how Kût, the Rûman, was slain . . . . . 288
25. How Khusrau Parwiz fought with Bahrám Chúbína the second Time, was defeated, and escaped from him by the Help of Surûsh. . . . . 292

# GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

173

KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (*continued*)—

VOL. VIII

SECT.

PAGE

26. How Khusráu Parwíz fought the third Time with Bahrám Chúbína and defeated him . . . . . 300
27. How Khusráu Parwíz sent an Army under Nastúh after Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína captured him and reached the Khán of Chín . . . . . 303
28. How Khusráu Parwíz pillaged the Camp of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to Cæsar who answered it with a Robe of Honour and Gifts . . . . . 306
29. How Niyátús was wroth with Bandwí and how Maryam made Peace between them . . . . . 309
30. How Khusráu Parwíz gave Presents to Niyátús and the Rûmans, how he dismissed them to Rûm, and wrote Patents for the Nobles of Írán . . . . . 312
31. Firdausí's Lament for the Death of his Son . . . . . 315
32. The Story of Bahrám Chúbína and the Khán of Chín . . . . . 316
33. How Makátúra was slain by Bahrám Chúbína . . . . . 320
34. How the Lion-ape slew a Daughter of the Khán, how it was slain by Bahrám Chúbína, and how the Khán gave him a Daughter and the Kingdom of Chín . . . . . 322
35. How Khusráu Parwíz heard of the Case of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to the Khán, and how he replied . . . . . 327
36. How Khusráu Parwíz sent Kharrád, Son of Barzín, to the Khán and how he schemed to slay Bahrám Chúbína . . . . . 331
37. How Bahrám Chúbína was slain by Kulún as Kharrád, Son of Barzín, had planned . . . . . 336
38. How the Khán had Tidings of Bahrám Chúbína's Death and how he destroyed the House and Family of Kulún . . . . . 343
39. How Khusráu Parwíz had Tidings of the Slaying of Bahrám Chúbína and honoured Kharrád, Son of Barzín . . . . . 345
40. How the Khán sent his Brother to Gurdya, the Sister of Bahrám Chúbína, with a Letter touching her Brother's Death and asking her in Marriage as his Queen, and her Answer . . . . . 346
41. How Gurdya consulted her Nobles and fled from Marv . . . . . 349
42. How the Khán received Tidings of the Flight of Gurdya and how he sent Tuwurg with an Army after her, and how Gurdya slew Tuwurg . . . . . 351
43. How Gurdya wrote to Gurdwí . . . . . 354
44. How Khusráu Parwíz slew Bandwí . . . . . 354
45. How Gustaham rebelled against Khusráu Parwíz and took Gurdya to Wife . . . . . 355

KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (*continued*)—

VOL. VIII

SECT.	PAGE
46. How Khusráu Parwíz took Counsel with Gurdwí concerning Gustaham and how Gurdyá, prompted by Gurdwí, slew him . . . . .	358
47. How Gurdyá wrote to Khusráu Parwíz and how he summoned and married her . . . . .	361
48. How Gurdyá showed her Accomplishment before Khusráu Parwíz . . . . .	363
49. How Khusráu Parwíz sent an ill-disposed March-lord to Rai and how he oppressed the Folk there . . . . .	365
50. How Gurdyá made Sport before Khusráu Parwíz and how he gave Rai to her . . . . .	367
51. How Khusráu Parwíz portioned out his Realm . . . . .	368
52. How Shírwí, the Son of Khusráu Parwíz, was born of Maryam with bad Auspices and how Khusráu Parwíz informed Cæsar . . . . .	371
53. How Cæsar wrote a Letter to Khusráu Parwíz, sent Gifts, and asked for the Cross of Christ . . . . .	374
54. How Khusráu Parwíz answered Cæsar's Letter and sent Gifts . . . . .	379

## THE STORY OF KHUSRAU PARWÍZ AND SHÍRÍN—

55. The Prelude . . . . .	382
56. How Khusráu Parwíz loved Shírin, how they parted, how he met her again while hunting and sent her to his Bower . . . . .	383
57. How the Nobles heard that Shírin had come to the Bower of Khusráu Parwíz and how they advised him and were satisfied with his Answer . . . . .	386
58. How Shírin murdered Maryam and Khusráu Parwíz put Shírwí in Bonds . . . . .	389
59. How Khusráu Parwíz made the Throne of Tákdís . . . . .	391
60. The Story of Sarkash and Bárbad, the Minstrel, and Khusráu Parwíz . . . . .	396
61. How Khusráu Parwíz built the Palace of Madá'in . . . . .	400
62. Discourse on the Splendour and Greatness of Khusráu Parwíz . . . . .	405
63. How Khusráu Parwíz turned from Justice, how the Chiefs revolted, and how Guráz called in Cæsar . . . . .	407
64. How Cæsar withdrew through an Expedient of Khusráu Parwíz and how the Chiefs released Shírwí from Bonds . . . . .	409
65. How Khusráu Parwíz was taken and how Shírwí sent him to Taisafún . . . . .	418
INDEX . . . . .	423

## VOL. IX

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE . . . . .	v
ABBREVIATIONS. . . . .	xi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	xii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

## KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)—

## SECT.

1. How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses . . . . . 8
2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí . . . . . 15
3. How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat . . . . . 27
4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music . . . . . 29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd . . . . . 32
6. How Shírwí asked Shírn in Marriage, how Shírn killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain . . . . . 36

## ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ—

1. How Ardshír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs . . . . . 44
2. How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Píruz Son of Khusrau. . . . . 45

## GURÁZ ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN—

1. How Guráz, (also called Faráyín,) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráz . . . . . 51

## PÚRÁNDUKHT—

1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Píruz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended . . . . . 56

## ÁZARMDUKHT—

1. How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died . . . . . 59

## FARRUKHZÁD—

1. How Ferrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave . . . . . 61

## YAZDAGIRD—

VOL. IX

SECT.

PAGE

1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs . . . . . 70
2. How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother . . . . . 72
3. How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied . . . . . 78
4. How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain . . . . . 83
5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went to Khurásán . . . . . 85
6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr . . . . . 89
7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús . . . . . 90
8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him . . . . . 95
9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill . . . . . 96
10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear . . . . . 101
11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller . . . . . 107
12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne. . . . . 112
13. How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him . . . . . 115
14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bízhan . . . . . 118
15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma . . . . . 121

# CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

## VOLUME I.

- Page xii, line 21, *for* 'Evil' *read* 'evil.'
- Page xiii, line 15, *for* 'Born' *read* 'born.'
- Page 4, line 4, *delete* 'still.'
- Page 5, line 22, *after* 'camel' *add* 'of which the red-haired variety was most esteemed.'
- Page 6, line 21, *for* 'Scythian' *read* 'Elamitic.'
- Page 7, line 19, *for* 'was' *read* 'became,' line 25 and elsewhere, *for* 'Tritá' and 'Traitána' *read* 'Trita' and 'Traitana.'
- Page 9, line 16 and elsewhere, *for* 'Ázarbiján' *read* 'Ázarbáiján.'
- Page 10, bottom. The date of the fall of Nineveh has lately been assigned to the year B.C. 612. See 'The Fall of Nineveh,' p. 9 *seq.* By C. J. Gadd.  
reference number 2, *after* R *insert* P.
- Page 11, line 29 and elsewhere, *for* 'Hira and Anbar' *read* 'Hira and Ambár.'
- Page 13, reference number 2, *for* 'NESH' *read* 'NSEH.'
- Page 14, line 25, *for* 'Sámánides' *read* 'Sámánids.'
- Page 17, *delete* lines 7-10.  
reference number 1, *add* 'See too A. V. Williams Jackson,'  
'From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam,'  
Ch. v.'
- Page 19, line 19, *for* 'Sacaestan' *read* 'Sacaestán,'  
reference number 3, *delete* 'iii.'
- Page 21, line 7 and elsewhere, *for* 'Nuh' *read* 'Núh,'  
line 12, *for* 'appealed' *read* 'turned.'
- Page 29, line 12 from bottom, *cf* LEC, pp. 206, 207 and *note*.
- Page 31, *delete* lines 13-16, and *read* 'that Fazl, son of Ahmad, is referred to on both occasions.'
- Page 33, line 23, *delete* full stop, *insert* comma, and *for* 'Such is not' *read* 'not be in.'
- Page 34, five lines from bottom, *delete* 'While I sat looking on' and *read* 'While I o'erlooked from far.'
- Page 37, line 22, *for* 'Arúdí' *read* 'Arúdí.'
- Page 38, seven lines from bottom, *for* 'Bazh' *read* 'Bázh,'  
six lines from bottom, *after* 'city' *add* reference number 1.  
at bottom *add* *note* 'The quarter in which Bázh was situated was known as Tabarán.'
- Page 39, bottom, reference number 1, *delete* '§1 and 7' and *read* 'The too spiritual conception of the Deity in §1 and the references to 'Alí in §7.'

- Page 41, last line, for 'axe' read 'ax.'
- Page 43, note 2, for 'fakká' read 'fakká,' and for 'Cf.' read 'Cf.'
- Page 45, line 24, after 'indigo' add reference number 2.  
line five from bottom, after 'Cemetery' add reference number 3.  
at bottom add 'Cf. Encl. Brit. (11th ed.), Vol. 11, p. 917, col. 2.  
\* Professor A. V. Williams Jackson's suggestion that, as burial in the Muhammadan cemetery was refused, the corpse of Firdausi was reconveyed within the walls and buried in ground belonging to him, seems far from improbable. From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar Khayyám, p. 291.
- Page 50, line 7, for 'Ahriman' read 'Áhriman.'
- Page 51, line 23, add reference number 1.  
bottom, add 'Thus Pirán (see p. 55) may represent Perun, the Slavonic god of thunder.'
- Page 61, line 3, delete 'which' and to end of sentence, and insert 'i.e. of Ázargashasp.'
- Page 62, bottom, after reference number 7 insert DZA, i, 209.
- Page 67, line 18, end, add 'bin.'
- Page 68, line 9, end add 'or identical with.'  
bottom, reference number 1, add NIN, 15.
- Page 69, bottom, for '108' read '107.'
- Page 71, line 19, after 'Oxus' insert 'Caspian.'  
line 20, after 'Dardanelles' insert 'Mediterranean.'  
bottom, reference number 6, after '80' add 'notes.'
- Page 73, line 8 from bottom, for 'land' read 'earth.'  
" 7 " after 'Sháhs' add reference number 1.  
" 5 " after 'canal' add reference number 2.  
bottom, add 'Kai Kubád. See Vol. ii, p. 22. \* Id. 192.'
- Page 74, line 8, after 'tree' add reference number 1.  
bottom, add 'Cercis Siliquastum.'
- Page 77, line 11, for 'the first half' read 'three-fifths.'  
line 8 from bottom, after 'repetitions' add reference number 1.  
bottom, add 'These of course do not include the great duplications of tradition in the poem.'
- Page 82, line 11, for 'regarded' read 'looked upon.'  
line 25, after 'farr' add reference number 2.  
bottom, add 'pp. 369, 370.'
- Page 83, line 18, before 'múbidán' insert—  
line 25, after 'subject' add reference number 2.  
bottom, add 'The expression is used, however, of Bahrám Gúr (Vol. vii, p. 78) and of Nûshírwán (viii, p. 14). It is also applied to non-Íránians, to Suhráb, who was opposing the Íránians (ii, 145), Pirán (ii, 261, 275, 324, iii, 106), Pilsam (ii, 352), Tazháv, an Íránian deserter (iii, 28), Bazánúsh (vi, 297), and there are other instances.'
- Page 84, line 3, for 'camp enclosure' read 'camp-enclosure.'

- Page 85, line 20, *for* 'end' *read* 'beginning.'
- Page 87, bottom, *add* 'Rogers, The Shah-namah of Fardusi. Translated from the original Persian. 1909. (A version partly in verse and partly in epitomized prose.)'
- Page 83, lines 11 and 27, *for* 'Ardibihisht' *read* 'Ardibihisht,'  
 line 12 and bottom, *for* 'Sharivar' *read* 'Shahrivar,'  
 lines 12 and 26, *for* 'Farvardin' *read* 'Farwardin,'  
 line 17 and page 89, line 3, *for* 'Adar' *read* 'Azar.'
- Page 89, line 4, *for* 'Din' *read* 'Dai.'
- Page 90, line 9, *for* '3 generations' *read* '4 generations' *and add at bottom,* 'See Vol. v. p. 203.'  
*for* 'Barmaiun. Kataiun.' *read* 'Purmaya. Kaiánush.'  
 15 *add as son to* Minúchihir 'Zarasp.'  
 17, *add as son to* Tús 'Zarasp.'
- Page 92, line 5 *add as descendant from* Túr 'Máh Áfrid, d.'  
 line 10, *add as descendant of* Wisa 'Kurákhán.'  
 line 11, *for* 'Pírán' *read* 'Pírán=Gulshahr.'  
 line 15, *to descendants of* Afrásiyáb *add* 'Manizha, d.= Bizhan'  
*and delete* 'Rúin.'
- line 17, *for* 'Kurakhán' *read* 'Kurákhán.'
- Page 93, lines 20 and 22, *transpose* 'EP' *and* 'EHI.'
- Page 94, *delete lines* 4-5.  
 bottom, *add* 'ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari. Traduite sur la version Persane d'Abou-'Ali Mo'hammed Bel'ami par M. Hermann Zotenberg.'
- Page 100, line 4, *for* 'Shaddad son of Ad' *read* 'Shaddád son of 'Ad.'
- Page 100, line 7, *for* 'Shaddad' *read* 'Shaddád.'
- Page 100, line 10, *for* 'Nasiru'd' *read* 'Násiru'd.'
- Page 104, after line 4 *insert*—  
 'Thus is it now: what the world's end will be  
 None knoweth openly or privily.'
- Page 106, line 12, *for* 'The' *read* 'In.'
- Page 108, line 15, *for* 'with' *read* 'to.'
- Page 112, line 2, *for* 'The' *read* 'In.'  
 8 from bottom, *for* 'light' *read* 'blaze.'
- Page 113, line 7 and elsewhere, *for* 'Ind' *read* 'Hind.'  
 line 19, end, *add full stop*.
- Page 117, line 2, *Delete* 'FOR.'
- Page 118, line 4, *for* 'mountain of the holy' *read* 'Mountain of the Holy.'
- Page 120, line 1, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain' *and delete* 'the Hand of.'
- Page 121, line 5, *for* 'Fight' *read* 'fight.'
- Page 126, line 5, *add* 'This is the first of many doublets in the poem.'  
 line 16, *for* 'gold' *read* 'good.'
- Page 129, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'o' *read* 'of.'

- Page 130, line 11, *after* 'gallery' *insert* . . .  
 line 23, *for* 'have' *read* 'find,' *and add to reference* 4  
 'WPT. i. 142.'
- Page 131, line 15, *for* 'They' *read* 'they.'
- Page 132, line 11, *add full stop at end.*
- Page 135, line 3, *for* 'departed from' *read* 'abandoned.'  
 line 11 from bottom, end, *delete comma and insert full stop.*
- Page 138, line 8 from bottom, *delete* 'thou my' *and read* 'any.'
- Page 141, line 4 from bottom, *for* 'light' *read* 'Grace.'
- Page 142, line 5 from bottom, *for* 'downstricken' *read* 'down-  
 stricken.'  
 line 4 from bottom, *for* 'Áspikán' *read* 'Áspikán.'
- Page 143, line 7, *for* '1' *read* '2.'  
 15, *for* '2' *read* '3.'  
 20, *for* 'Baghdad' *read* 'Baghdád.'  
 25, *after* 'Ispahán' *add reference number* 4.  
 31, *for reference number* 3 *read* 5.  
 33, *for reference number* 4 *read* 6.  
 bottom, *after reference* 3 *insert* 'ZT, i, 117,' *and for*  
*reference numbers* 4 *and* 5 *read* 5 *and* 6.
- Page 145, line 25, *for* 'Evil' *read* 'evil.'
- Page 147, line 7, *for* 'Kúrds' *read* 'Kurds.'
- Page 161, line 6, *for* 'Bait al' *read* 'Baitu'l.'
- Page 171, line 2, *for* 'HIS REIGN WAS' *read* 'HE REIGNED.'
- Page 173, line 31, *for* 'glory' *read* 'Glory.'
- Page 174, *after line* 21 *add* '§24. We have here another doublet.  
 Cf. p. 290.'
- Page 175, line 13, *for* 'He,' *read* 'Be.'
- Page 181, line 13, *delete* 'never' *and insert it after* 'children.'  
 2 from bottom, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 184, line 18, *for* 'except' *read* 'unless.'
- Page 189, line 4 from bottom, *for* 'Envious' *read* 'envious.'
- Page 199, line 7 from bottom, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain.'
- Page 201, note, line 4, *for* 'Námáh' *read* 'Námah.'
- Page 205, line 9, *for* 'Born' *read* 'born.'
- Page 207, line 13, *for* 'Chach' *read* 'Chách.'
- Page 208, line 12, *for* 'wagons did they fill' *read* 'wains they  
 filled.'
- Page 209, line 19, *for* 'no longer harboureth' *read* 'hath ceased  
 to harbour.'  
 line 20, *for* 'evident' *read* 'plain.'
- Page 211, *delete line* 2 *and read* 'With treasure and brocade,  
 dinárs and gems.'
- Page 212, line 21, *for* 'All' *read* 'all.'  
 line 7 from bottom, *for* 'turquoise' *read* 'turquoise.'
- Page 219, line 5 from bottom, *for* 'a' *read* 'the' *and after* 'ball'  
*add reference number* 1.  
 bottom, *insert* 'See p. 79.'
- Page 221, line 18, *for* 'Announce' *read* 'announce.'  
 line 7, from bottom, *for* 'he' *read* 'He.'

- Page 224, line 11, *after* 'me' *insert* 'stay.'
- Page 224, line 12, *for* 'Stop to draw breath' *read* 'To breathe.'
- 22, *for* 'moralising' *read* 'moralling.'
- Page 226, line 4, *delete* 'of our.'
- Page 227, line 21, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain' and *delete* 'the Hand of.'
- Page 228, line 9, *for* 'produce of it' *read* 'fruit thereof.'
- Page 230, line 9, *for* 'our avenging' *read* 'vengeful.'
- Page 236, *after* line 7 *insert* '§18. Cf. previous reign, §24.'
- line 8, beginning, *insert* '§29.'
- 5 from bottom, beginning, *insert* '§31.'
- Page 237, bottom, note 1, *add* 'But cf. Vol. v. p. 30.'
- Page 250, side reference, *prefix* 'V.'
- Page 252, line 15, *for* 'Danbar' *read* 'Dambar.'
- Page 256, line 4, *for* 'Dunbar' *read* 'Dambar.'
- Page 275, line 3 from bottom, *for* 'Explain' *read* 'explain.'
- Page 280, line 9, and elsewhere, *for* 'Almighty' *read* 'almighty' *when not absolute.*
- Page 284, line 1, *for* 'Aware' *read* 'aware.'
- Page 292, line 20, *for* 'War against' *read* 'fight.'
- Page 293, end of note, *add* '309.'
- Page 299, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'Wroth' *read* 'wroth.'
- Page 307, line 7 from bottom, *add* reference number 1 *after* 'lasso.'
- Page 325, line 11, *for* 'Sám' *read* 'Zál.'
- Page 337, line 2, *delete* 'FOR.'
- Page 338, line 6, *for* 'Yast' *read* 'Yasht,' and at bottom, note 1, *after* 1 *insert* 'Cf. p. 59.'
- From 342, line 3 from bottom, *for* 'Knowhow' *read* 'Know how.'
- Page 347, line 10, *for* 'lowered' *read* 'loured.'
- Page 351, side reference, *insert* 2.
- 4 lines from bottom, *insert* comma *after* 'throb.'
- Page 352, line 4, *delete* semicolon.
- Page 354, line 21, *for* 'Guzhdaham' *read* 'Gazhdaham.'
- Page 355, line 4 from bottom, *delete* comma at end.
- Page 358, line 6 and elsewhere, *for* 'Hirmund' *read* 'Hírmund.'
- Page 366, line 12, *delete* 'not.'
- Page 373, line 2, *for* 'HIS REIGN WAS' *read* 'HE REIGNED.'
- Page 378, line 7, *for* 'lance' *read* 'spear.'
- Page 380, line 6 from bottom, *after* 'harm' *add* reference number 1, and at bottom *add* 'Cf. BLHP, i, 452. Jackson, "From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar Khayyam," p. 119.'
- Page 381, line 4 from bottom, *for* 'plants' *read* 'plans.'

## VOLUME II.

- Page v, line 13, end, *add*—
- Page ix, line 25, *delete* 'Kai.'
- Page 3, line, 12, *for* 'Kataiún' *read* 'Katáyún.'

- Page 3, line 15, to children of Gushtâsp *add* Farshîdward, Shîrû,  
and thirty-seven others (un-named), *for* 'Bishû-  
tan' *read* 'Bishûtan *and for* 'Afrîd' *read* 'Áfrîd.  
bottom, *after* (20) *insert* =d. of Kaîd.
- Page 5, line 20, *after* 'd'Or,' *add* full stop, *and for* 'texte' *read*  
'Texte.'
- Page 6, heading, *for* 'NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION' *read*  
'ABBREVIATIONS.'
- Page 18, line 4, *for* 'Kharzarwân' *read* 'Khazarwân.'
- Page 19, line 18, *for* 'Turkestân' *read* 'Turkistân.'
- Page 27, line 1, *delete* full stop *at end*.  
line 4 from bottom. 'There is actually a tribe existing to  
this day among the Elburz Mountains, or the  
fastnesses of ancient Hyrcania, which still bears  
the name Div Sapeed.' S. G. W. Benjamin,  
Persia and the Persians, p. 302.
- Page 29, note 1, *add* 'Vol. v, p. 116.'
- Page 61, line 9, *for* 'bears' *read* 'bear.'
- Page 69 line 20 *add* semicolon *at end*.
- Page 81, line 3 from bottom, *after* 'crystal' *insert* reference number 9  
*and at bottom add* 'Ruins near Aivan-i-Kaif (Kai?)  
some forty miles South-east of Tihrán are still  
traditionally ascribed to Kai Káuś. See A. V.  
Williams Jackson. From Constantinople to the  
Home of Omar Khayyam, p. 123.'
- Page 89, line 25, *end, insert* comma.  
26 *after* 'Káuś' *insert* comma.
- Page 96, line 6 from bottom, *after* 'Zawára' *add* reference number 1  
*and at bottom add* 'This is the first mention of  
Rustam's brother.'
- Page 97, line 5, *for* 'a Zam of' *read* 'Zam's stream with.'  
bottom, *delete* 'The name of a river' *and read* 'i.e. the  
Oxus.'
- Page 103, line 12, *for* 'What ever' *read* 'Whatever.'
- Page 118, bottom, *for* 'i, p. 236' *read* 'v, p. 30.'
- Page 119, bottom, *after* 'V' *insert* full stop.
- Page 121, line 21, *after* 'him' *insert* reference number 1, *and at*  
*bottom add* 'C. adds rightly:—  
They led him herdwards  
That they might have their portion from that steed;  
As I have heard, he covered forty mares  
And one became with foal.  
Cf. p. 128 and NIN, p. 45 note 1.'
- Page 157, line 7, *for* 'spoken' *read* 'unspoken.'
- Page 196, line 16, *for* 'heart and eyes' *read* 'Heart and Eyes.'
- Page 200, line 11, *for* 'she' *read* 'She.'
- Page 221, line 13, *for* 'unled' *read* 'unsoiled.'
- Page 224, *end of last line, insert* reference number 1 *and add at*  
*bottom* 'See pp. 38 seq., 88 seq.'
- Page 225, line 12, *for* 'All-righteous' *read* 'all-righteous.'
- Page 229, line 16, *for* 'Who' *read* 'who.' *and elsewhere*.

- Page 247, line 5 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
- Page 252, line 4, for 'my' read 'mine.'
- Page 256, line 6 from bottom, for 'caparisoned' read 'betrapped.'
- Page 257, line 2 from bottom, delete full stop and insert comma at end.
- Page 261, line 21 and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' when not absolute.
- Page 265, line 18, delete comma at end.
- Page 281, line 22, for 'Irán' read 'Túrán.'
- Page 285, line 1, for 'dressed' read 'drest.'
- Page 306, line 14, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 310, line 4 from bottom, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy.'
- Page 312, line 4 from bottom, after 'league' insert comma.
- Page 313, line 5 from bottom, end, insert comma.  
4 from bottom after 'hearing' insert comma.
- Page 321, line 1, end, add reference number 1.  
12, end, add reference number 2.  
bottom, insert 'See p. 261. See p. 293.'
- Page 328, line 11, for 'Kalúr' read 'Kalú.'  
5 from bottom, for 'blunt' read 'pointless.'  
4 from bottom, for 'would go' read 'hunted,' and insert full stop at end.  
3 from bottom, delete 'To hunt,' and for 'at' read 'At.'
- Page 341, line 8 from bottom, for 'Kawá' read 'Káwa.'
- Page 374, line 6 from bottom, end, insert reference number 1.  
bottom, insert 'See p. 312.'
- Page 377, line 22, insert reference number 1.  
bottom, insert 'See p. 273.'
- Page 384, line 7 from bottom, delete comma and insert full stop at end.
- Page 390, bottom, delete " and insert "".
- Page 395, line 3, end, insert reference number 1.  
bottom, insert 'See p. 363.'
- Page 412, last line, for 'toward' read 'tow'rd.'

## VOLUME III.

- Page 3, line 24, end, add 'Kisari Mohan Ganguli and published by.'
- Page 14, line 30, end, add reference number 5 and 'The text also allows the view that Farúd dwelt on Mount Sapad. See Vol. v, p. 30.'
- Page 15, Note 1, end, add 'There was no difficulty in finding an additional rhyme without using 'Pashan,' 'Gashan' (much) rhymes with 'Pashan' in Vol. viii, p. 397 and note.'
- Page 20, line 22, end, add reference number 1, and at bottom 'Cf. Vol. 1, p. 61.'
- Page 36, line 8, for 'Tis' read 'Tis.'
- Page 45, line 23, for 'that' read 'thou.'

- Page 59, line 17 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
- Page 68, line 18, for 'stoneand' read 'stone and.'
- Page 83, note 2, end, add '(p. 10).'
- Page 84, line 7 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy' when not absolute.
- Page 102, line 22 for 'Omnipotent' read 'omnipotent.'
- Page 110, line 2 and elsewhere, for 'Who' read 'who.'
- 6, for 'Whom' read 'whom.'
- Page 130, line 11, add comma at end.
- Page 134, line 6, end, add !
- line 15, end, add ''.
- Page 141, line 2 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' when not absolute.
- Page 148, note, for 'Pehlevan' read 'Pehlewan' and after 'donna' delete comma
- Page 151, line 4 from bottom, add full stop at end.
- Page 172, note, for 'Car' read 'car.'
- Page 191, line 12, for 'Abul' read ''Abu'l.'
- Page 194, line 8, for 'Khan' read 'Khân.'
- Page 213, line 22, for 'Oleader' read 'O leader.'
- Page 234, note, for 'Et' read 'et' and for 'comblan' read 'comblant.'
- Page 237, line 7, prefix ''.
- Page 241, line 22, delete 'far.'
- Page 251, note, for 'Sur' read 'sur.'
- Page 275, line 10, end, delete !
- Page 285, line 8 from bottom, for 'fraicheur' read 'fraîcheur.'
- last line, add reference number 2.
- Page 287, side reference, for 'V. 1063' read 'V. 1065' and subsequent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1066,' 'V. 1067,' etc., up to page 305.
- Page 294, line 7, for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'
- Page 298, note, for 'La' read 'la.'
- Page 304, line 11, delete semicolon and insert comma.
- Page 305, line 25, add side reference 'V. 1086,' and read subsequent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1087,' 'V. 1088,' etc., up to page 356.
- Page 318, note, for 'Il' read 'il.'
- Page 328, line 12, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 348, line 15, add comma at end.

## VOLUME IV.

- Page v, line 5, end, delete full stop and insert —
- Page ix, line 10, for 'wrath' read 'Wrath.'
- Page 8, line 10, end, add 'See Vol. vii, pp. 381, 422.'
- Page 31, line 6, delete comma and insert semicolon.
- Page 40, line 9, end, add reference number 1, and insert at bottom 'Cf. Vol. i, p. 386 and note.'

Page 85, note, *prefix reference number 1.*

Page 139, note 2, *add 'It is interesting to find the dog appearing in the Book of Tobit in which there are Iránian elements. Cf. Vol. iii, p. 271 and Encl. Brit. 11th Ed. s.v. Tolit.'*

Page 141, line 9, end, *delete*—

Page 143, line 6, from bottom, *insert comma at end.*

Page 144, line 8, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 150, line 8, *for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'*

§3. There appears to be a doublet here as Afrásiyáb is first said to be beyond Jaz and then at Baigand, *i.e.*, in the neighbourhood first of the Jaxartes and then of the Oxus, but the context favours the latter position.

Page 155, line 10, *delete and insert 'He ranged the army's centre and its wings.'*

Page 256, line 1, *delete and insert 'All filled with minstrelsy and harp and wine.'*  
bottom, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 259, line 7 from bottom, *delete 'Barda', a cavern 'and insert 'to Barda', one'*

Page 262, note 2, *Add 'The situation of Barda' would, however, make Lake Gokcha more appropriate. Cf. p. 259.'*

Page 304, line 14, end, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 324, line 12 from bottom, *for 'shore' read 'river', and at bottom add note 'The Euphrates.'*

Page 325, line 8 *after 'city' add reference number 1 and at bottom add note 'Shúráb. Cf. Vol. vii, p. 254.'*

Page 339, line 1, *for 'sea' read 'river.'*

Page 340, line 3, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

Page 344, line 16, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

25. *for 'sea' read 'river.'*

28. *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

31. *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

Page 346, line 18, end, *add reference number 1, and at bottom add note 'Cf. Vol. v, p. 233 note.'*

## VOLUME V.

Page 14, line 2 from bottom, end, *add reference number 11, and at bottom 'Spitáma seems to mean 'White.' See JZ, p. 13.'*

Page 30, line 19, *for 'Girdkuh' read 'Girdkúh.'*

line 24, *add 'It has been stated by an oriental authority that Dizh Gumbadán ('the Domed Fort') and Girdkúh were identical. See LEC, p. 365.'*

Page 71, line 13, *for 'his' read 'a.'*

- Page 71, line 17, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom 'In Firdausi Nūsh Āzar is the son of Asfandiyār, but in Dakīkī may of course be a brother and the one referred to above.'
- Page 126, line 4, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom 'Cf. p. 233 note.'
- Page 133, line 21, for 'wisdon' read 'wisdom.'
- Page 160, line 23, end, add quotation mark.'
- Page 161, last line, end, insert full stop.
- Page 214, line 14, end, add quotation mark.'
- Page 277, line 8, insert full stop.  
6 from bottom, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 288, note 1, add 'Cf. E.P. i, 256.'

## VOLUME VI.

- Page vi, line 3, for 'Married' read 'married.'
- Page ix, line 14, for 'Rūmāns' read 'Rūmans.'
- Page 3, line 8 from bottom, delete 'Rustam.'  
7 from bottom, for 'Chubīna' read 'Chúbīna.'  
4 from bottom, for 'Shirwi' read 'Shirwi'
- Page 6, line 21, for 'Muller' read 'Müller.'
- Page 15, line 10, for 'legend' read 'Legend.'  
note 3, add 'Cf. Vol. vii, p. 79.'
- Page 17, line 1, for 'Mukaffa' read 'Mukaffa'.
- Page 39, line 6 from bottom, end, delete ? and insert !
- Page 64, line 8, for 'Ravi' read 'Rāvi.'
- Page 81, line 2, end, insert hyphen.
- Page 89, line 5, for 'Married' read 'married.'
- Page 98, line 14, end, insert comma.
- Page 133, line 4, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 135, line 12 from bottom, read 'He must not privily devise.'  
10 from bottom, for 'wise' read 'sage.'
- Page 136, line 4, end, insert !
- Page 137, line 7, end, insert comma.
- Page 150, bottom line, end, insert comma.
- Page 154, line 13 from bottom, end, insert full stop.
- Page 161, line 20, end, insert reference number 1.  
bottom, insert note 'Cf. Vol. i, pp. 118, 132.'
- Page 207, line 7, after 'above' insert ' (p. 195).'
- Page 209, line 10, end, insert reference number 2, and at bottom add note  
'\* Mohl, rightly according to Nöldeke (NIN, p. 26 and note), reads 'Sāmānians' for 'Ashkānians.' The former claimed descent from Bahrām Chúbīna.'
- Page 210, line 13 from bottom, end, delete comma.
- Page 212, note, add 'Cf. p. 201.'
- Page 231, line 4 from bottom, end, insert comma.
- Page 250, line 9 from bottom, for 'Chubīna' read 'Chúbīna.'
- Page 288, line 9, beginning, delete "
- Page 291, line 10 from bottom, after 'Oh' insert !
- Page 292, line 1, end, insert comma.

- Page 296, line 6 from bottom, for '*Rûmdns*' read '*Rûmans*.'
- Page 298, line 13 from bottom, for '*Pars*' read '*Pârs*.'
- Page 304, bottom line, end, *insert* comma.
- Page 312, line 3, for '*respect*' read '*respecteth*' and for '*thou art*' read '*thou'rt*.'
- Page 316, second note, *prefix* 2.
- Page 323, note, line 5 from bottom, end, *insert* comma.
- Page 327, line 7, for '*Ambar*' read '*Ambâr*.'
- line 8, for '*Abbasid*' read '*Abbâsid*.'
- Page 339, note, for '*Shammas*' read '*Shammâs*.'
- Page 372, line 2 from bottom, for '*the spring of*' read '*a lake near*.'
- bottom line, after '*birth-place*' *add*, *reference number* 8, and at bottom *add note* 'The lake in question being the source of two rivers the expression '*Spring*' used by Firdausi in connexion with it is not wholly inappropriate.'
- Page 376, line 7 from bottom, for '*great*' read '*Great*.'
- Page 387, line 12 from bottom, *prefix* ''.
- Page 402, line 1, end, *insert* comma.

## VOLUME VII.

- Page vii, line 4, for '*SASĀNIAN*' read '*SĀSĀNIAN*.'
- Page xi, line 13 from bottom, for '*Feasts*' read '*Banquets*.'
- Page 85, line 16 from bottom, *insert* comma at end.
- 3 from bottom, for '*Kharzarwân*' read '*Khazarwân*.'
- Page 95, line 18 end *delete* comma and *insert* semicolon.
- Page 106, line 15, after '*scabbards*' *insert* comma.
- Page 110, line 15, for '*an as*' read '*as an*.'
- Page 118, line 11 from bottom, for '*Irân*' read '*Îrân*.'
- Page 155, line 9 from bottom, *delete* semicolon and *insert* comma.
- Page 156, line 6, after '*Hormisdas*' *delete* comma and *insert* 'III.'
- Page 184, note, line 14 from bottom, after '*bunch*' *delete* . and *insert* ?
- Page 185, bottom note, *prefix* 4.
- Page 207, heading, for '*KUBAD*' read '*KUBĀD*.'
- Page 209, line 2, after '*below*' *insert* *reference number* 1, and at bottom *add* 'Cf. MHP, ii, 77, RH, Bk. iii, ch. 35 and note.'
- line 3 from bottom, end, *delete* 1 and *insert* 2, and before note *delete* 1 and *insert* 2.
- Page 217, line 4 from bottom. Sura appears to be identical with Thapsacus of which Tiphseh (1 Kings, iv. 24) meaning probably 'ford' seems to have been the Hebrew form. The army of Cyrus the Younger in his expedition against his brother Artaxerxes II. (Mnemon) crossed the river there on foot. Xenophon, *Anabasis*, I, iv, 17.

- Page 227, line 5 from bottom, *after 'crown' insert comma.*  
 Page 231, bottom line, *delete full stop and insert comma.*  
 Page 239 and 247, heading, *read 'NUSHÍRWÁN.'*  
 Page 251, line 13 from bottom, *for 'Garshasp' read 'Gashasp.'*  
 Page 263, line 6 from bottom, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*  
 Page 275, bottom line, end, *insert comma.*  
 Page 300, line 11, *insert comma after 'For' and 'know.'*  
 Page 331, line 4, *delete 'the' and insert 'from.'*  
 Page 348, line 20, *for 'Sáhh' read 'Sháh.'*  
 Page 369, line 18, *for 'frowning face' read 'looks afrown.'*  
 Page 395, line 10, *for 'was' read 'were.'*  
                   11, *for 'were' read 'was.'*  
 Page 400, line 1, *for 'crown' read 'treasure.'*  
                   2, *for 'treasure, for' read 'crown because.'*  
 Page 410, bottom line, *for 'Almighty' read 'almighty.'*

## VOLUME VIII

- Page v, line 17, for 'answer' read 'Answer.'  
 Page viii, line 13 from bottom, add 'to Caesar.'  
 Page xv, line 20, for 'PCHAP' read 'HAP.'  
 Page 72, line 21, for 'Khán's read 'Khán's.'  
 Page 91, note, for 'Parwiz read 'Parwiz.'  
 Page 122, line 14, delete first hyphen.  
 Page 138, line 19, delete id.  
 Page 143, line 10, insert comma after 'Letter' and 'Parmüda.'  
 Page 147, line 11, for 'great' read 'Great.'  
 Page 153, line 18, delete full stop and insert comma.  
 Page 189, line 16, for 'Zab' read 'Záb.'  
 Page 190, line 16, for 'Garabzin,' 'Galabzin' read 'Garábzin'  
 'Galábzín'  
 Page 191, line 12, according to Muir's 'The Life of Mohammad,'  
 edited by T. H. Weir (1923), p. 431 note, the  
 battle of Dhú Kár was fought A.D. 611.  
 Page 192, note, for 'PCHAP' read 'HAP.'  
 Page 205, line 6 from bottom, after 'take' insert reference number 1  
 and at bottom add 'See Vol. 5, p. 156 note.'  
 Page 225, justify line 25.  
 Page 265, line 22, delete full stop and insert comma.  
 Page 270, line 5, for 'Luhrasp' read 'Luhrásp.'  
 line 6, for 'Asfanfiyar' read 'Asfandiyár.'  
 Page 272, line 1, insert comma after 'one.'  
 Page 279, line 4 from bottom, for 'and readers of the stars' read  
 'with the astrologers.'  
 Page 285, line 5, for 'great' read 'Great.'  
 Page 287, line 20, for 'achieved' read 'accomplished.'  
 Page 313, line 21, end, delete full stop and insert comma.  
 Page 317, line 2 from bottom, delete comma.  
 Page 327, line 13, for 'brave' read 'Brave.'  
 Page 328, bottom, for 'in haste' read 'with speed.'  
 Page 343, bottom, for 'gory' read 'glory.'

Page 348, line 6 from bottom, *for* ' in a letter to the king.'  
*read* ' to the monarch in a letter.'

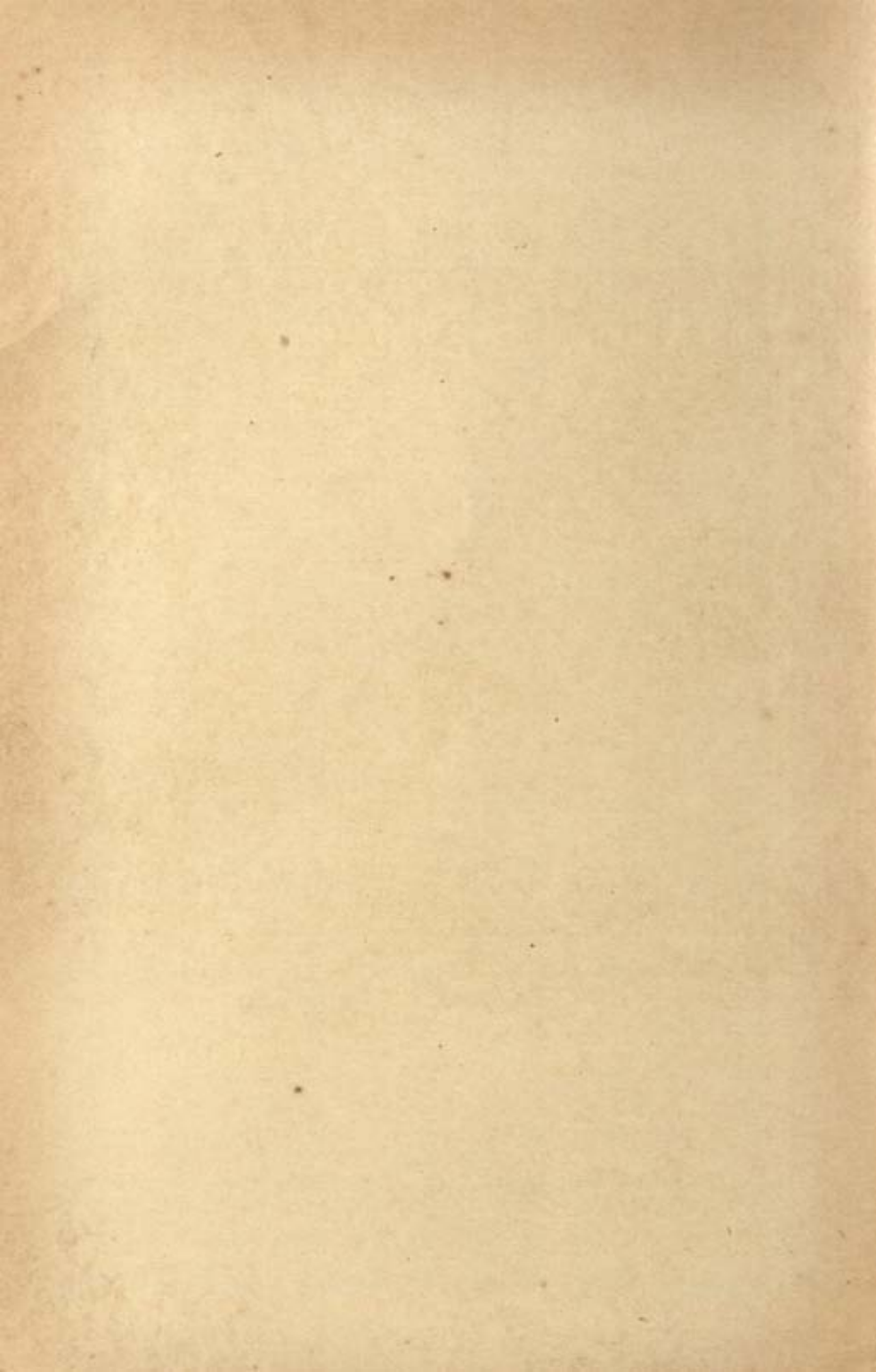
Page 353, line 5, *for* ' If ' *read* ' It '

Page 362, line 11 from bottom, *delete* hyphen.

Page 374, line 8, *for* ' Ot ' *read* ' Of.'

Page 411, line 8, *for* ' the ' *read* ' thy.'

Page 421, line 12 from bottom, *for* ' Galínús ' *read* ' Galínúsh.'



# GENERAL INDEX

*This Index and the General Table of Contents in this volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Italics.*

## A

- AAISHMA DAÉVA, demon, iii., 272  
= Asmodeus probably, iii., 272
- Ábán, genius, iii, 287, 328
- 'Abbás, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
- 'Abbásid, 'Abbásids, Muhammadan dynasty, vi, 327  
rise of, i, 13  
fall of, i, 14
- Abbreviations, General List of, ix, 135
- Abdaas, bishop, vi, 372
- Abraham, patriarch, vi, 65
- Abtín (Áptya, Áthwya), mythical Iránian hero, husband of Farának and father of Faridún, ix, 53, 103  
legend of, i, 145  
Zahhák slays, i, 151, 153  
Faridún avenges, i, 170  
mythological origin of, i, 171, 172, 174
- Abú-'Alí Muhammad, Persian poet, Sháhnáma of, i, 69
- Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa (A.D. 632-4), i, 12, ix, 76  
begins war with Persian Empire, ix, 66
- Abú Dulaf, friend of Firdausí, i, 35  
assists Firdausí, i, 35  
reciter of the Sháhnáma, i, 39
- Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl bin Ahmad, minister of Mahmúd and perhaps a patron of Firdausí, i, 30, 100, iv, 141  
account of, i, 36  
disgrace of, may have affected Firdausí, i, 37
- Abú'l Fazl, minister under the Sámánids, father of Abú 'Alí al Bal'amí who translated Tabarí, vii, 430  
patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383
- Abú'l Kásim (Firdausí, *q.v.*), i, 24, 38, 99, 112, iv, 140, v, 89, 119, vi, 20, 207, viii, 28
- Abú'l Kásim of Gurgán, shaikh, iii, 191  
dream of, about Firdausí, iii, 191
- Abú' Muzaffar. *See* Nasr.
- Abú Mansúr bin Abdu'r Razzák, prince of Tús, i, 67 *seq.*, vi, 16  
Sháhnáma of, vi, 16  
probably compiled by Magi for, i, 69, viii, 71, 73  
importance of, for Firdausí, viii, 73.
- Abú Mansúr bin Muhammad, son of above (?), 139  
patron of Firdausí, i, 29, 110  
murdered, i, 29, 111  
praise of, i, 110  
advice of, to Firdausí, i, 111

- Abú Raihán Muhammad. *See* Albírúni.
- Abú Tálib, uncle of Muhammad, i, 12
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 66  
supersedes Khálid in Syria, ix, 66
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 67  
made commander in Persian campaign, ix, 67  
slain, ix, 67
- Accession of a Sháh, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Achaemenid, Achaemenids, the, first historical Persian dynasty, i, 64, v, 10, 281, vi, 194, 197, 198
- Achshunwar. *See* Akhshunwar.
- 'Ad, father of Shaddád, *q.v.*
- Arab tribe, viii, 276
- 'Adan, seaport and territory in southern Arabia, vi, 386
- Ádar. *See* Ázar.
- Ádarbád, son of Mahraspand, Zoroastrian Saint, v, 16  
*note*  
ordeal of, v, 16 *note*
- Aden. *See* 'Adan.
- Adonis, iv, 315
- Ægean sea, vi, 204
- Afrásiyáb, son of Pashang, ruler of Túrán and one of the arch-enemies of Írán, 142-153, i, 42, 55, 72, ii, 11, 13, 14, 16 *seq.*, 20, 79, 81, 98 *seq.*, 118, 127, 149, 184, 189, 242 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 283, 286, 288, 322 *seq.*, 335, 347 *seq.*, 360 *seq.*, 369, 373, 380, 381, 386, 392 *seq.*, 401 *seq.*, iii, 8, 12, 13, 15, 23, 26, 27, 29, 40, 42, 47, 73, 76 *seq.*, 100, 108, 123, 134, 136, 143, 146, 152, 153, 164, 165, 176, 183, 185, 193, 200 *seq.*, 207 *seq.*, 211, 213, 218, 223, 228, 241, 260 *seq.*, 268, 271, 277 *seq.*, 285, 295, 298, 300, 320, 333, 337, 339, 346
- Afrásiyáb—*cont.*  
*seq.*, iv, 7, 8, 17, 19 *seq.*, 25, 29, 46, 56, 58 *seq.*, 65, 66, 70, 75, *seq.*, 83, 89, 93, 94, 96, 103, 108, 110, 113, 117, 128, 129, 145, 146, 150 *seq.*, 192 *seq.*, 235, 252, 253, 273, 287, 289, 294 v, 12, 13, 21, 44, 62, 176, 203, 208, vi, 15, 79, 177, 240 and *note*, vii, 330, 335, 337, 359, viii, 242, 300, 349, ix, 25, 103  
one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*  
mythological origin of, i, 337  
first mention of, in Sháh-náma, i, 342  
advocates war with Naudar, i, 343  
bidden by Pashang to invade Írán, i, 343  
sends Shamásás and Khazarwán to invade Sístán, i, 345  
marches to Dahistán, i, 346  
writes to Pashang, i, 346  
encourages Bármán to challenge the Íránians to single combat, i, 347  
rewards Bármán, i, 348  
fights with Naudar, i, 348 and *seq.*  
encounters Káran, i, 350  
victorious, i, 350, 352  
beleaguers Naudar in Dahistán, i, 353  
sends Kurúkhán to attack Párs, i, 353  
takes Naudar and other chiefs prisoners, i, 355  
hears of the death of Bármán and bids Wisa pursue Káran, i, 356  
hears of the Turkman defeats, i, 362  
sends for, and slays, Naudar, i, 362  
spares the other captives at Ighríras' request, i, 363

Afrásiyáb, imprisons the captives at Sarí, i, 363  
 advances to Rai, i, 363  
 wroth with, and slays, Igh-ríras, i, 367  
 fights with Zál, i, 368  
 Pashang's wrath with, i, 374  
 invades Írán, i, 374 *seq.*, 381  
 sends Kulún to intercept Rustam, i, 382  
 fights with Arabs for Írán and takes it, ii, 92  
 king of Túrán and Chín, ii, 99  
 expelled from Írán by Kai Káuś and Rustam, ii, 101  
 fights with the Seven Warriors, ii., 111 *seq.*  
 nearly taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 14, 116, 354, iii, 242, 250 and *note*  
 plot of, against Suhráb and Rustam, ii, 129  
 gifts of, to Suhráb, ii, 130  
 identical with Astyages in legend, ii, 191  
 referred to, ii, 322, 347, 394, iii, 206, iv, 145, 150, 194  
 invades Írán, ii, 224 *seq.*  
 dream of, ii, 232, 243, 297, iv, 170, 267  
 determines to sue for peace and sends hostages, ii, 235 *seq.*  
 receives Zanga and consults Pírán, ii, 253 *seq.*  
 sends Pírán to welcome Siyáwush, ii, 258  
 plays at polo with Siyáwush, ii, 264  
 marries Farangís to Siyáwush, ii, 275  
 recalls Siyáwush, from Gang-dízh, ii, 285  
 sends Garsíwaz to Siyáwushgird, ii, 289  
 deceived by Garsíwaz respecting Siyáwush, ii, 296 *seq.*

Afrásiyáb, sends Garsíwaz to summon Siyáwush and Farangís to court, ii, 300 *seq.*  
 attacks, takes, and has Siyáwush executed, ii, 314 *seq.*  
 appealed to by Farangís, ii, 317  
 ill-treatment of Farangís by, ii, 320, 322  
   referred to, iv, 204  
 appeal of Pírán to, ii, 324  
   referred to, iv, 205  
 spares Farangís, ii, 325, and her son Kai Khusrau, ii, 327  
 interview of, with Kai Khusrau, ii, 332  
   referred to, iv, 205  
 sends Surkha against the Íránians, ii, 344  
   marches to avenge Surkha, ii, 348  
 fights with Túś, ii, 353  
 rescue of, from Rustam by Húmán, ii, 354  
 crosses the sea of Chín, ii, 356  
 consults Pírán about Kai Khusrau, ii, 356  
 returns, ii, 362  
 vengeance of, on Írán, ii, 363  
 pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 388 *seq.*  
 disgraces Pírán, ii, 390  
 turns back at the Jíhún, ii, 394  
 Kai Khusrau's oath to take vengeance on, iii., 21  
 hears of the approach of the Íránian host, iii, 71  
 bids Pírán gather troops, iii, 71, 79  
 numbers the host, iii, 79  
 loss of kindred of, in battle, iii, 94  
 rewards Pírán, iii, 106  
 reinforces Pírán, iii, 118

Afrásiyáb, announces to his chiefs the defeat of his host, iii, 242  
 exhorted by his host to continue the war, iii, 243, 249  
 makes his preparations, iii, 243, 250  
 sends Farghár to spy on Rustam, iii, 250  
 consults with Shída, iii, 250  
 describes Rustam, iii, 251  
 receives Farghár's report, iii, 253  
 consults with Pírán, iii, 253  
 bids Pírán continue the war, iii, 254  
 sends Shída to summon Púládward, iii, 255  
 consults Púládward, iii, 256  
 interferes in the fight between Rustam and Púládward, iii, 263  
 withdraws to Chín and Máchín, iii, 265  
 goes in pursuit of Rustam and is defeated, iii, 280  
 hears of the case of Bízhan and Manízha, iii, 301  
 consults Kurákhán, iii, 301  
 sends Garsiwaz to search Manízha's palace, iii, 301  
 sentences Bízhan to death, iii, 304  
 respites Bízhan, iii, 308  
 imprisons Bízhan, iii, 309  
 disgraces Manízha, iii, 309  
 escapes from Rustam, iii, 348  
 bids Pírán prepare for war, iii, 349  
 arrays the host against Rustam, iii, 350  
 flees from Rustam, iii, 352  
 goes to Khallukh, iv, 10  
 addresses his nobles, iv, 10  
 sends Shída to Kharazm, iv, 11.  
 Pírán against Írán, iv, 11  
 reinforcements and bids him break off negotiations with Gív, iv, 20

Afrásiyáb, receives tidings from Pírán, iv, 77  
 =king of Gang, iv, 134  
 Kai Khusrau's great war with, 152, iv, 135 *seq.*  
 encamped at Baigand (Kunduz), iv, 151  
 hears ill tidings of Pírán and of the host, iv, 151  
 distress of, iv, 152  
 swears to be avenged on Kai Khusrau, iv, 152  
 hears of the advance of Kai Khusrau, iv, 153  
 harangues and equips his host, iv, 153  
 patrols the Jihún with boats, iv, 153  
 holds a council, summons Kurákhán, and crosses the Jihún, iv, 154  
 sends Kurákhán with half the host to Bukhárá, iv, 154  
 marches to Ámwí, iv, 154  
 encamps in Gílán, iv, 155  
 arrays his host, iv, 155  
 takes his post at the centre, iv, 155  
 gives Shída command of the left wing, iv, 155  
 sends Jahn to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155  
 gives a grandson command of the right wing, iv, 156  
 commands to Gurdgír, Nastúh, Ighríras, and Garsiwaz, iv, 156  
 proposes to invade Nímruz, iv, 156  
 reviews the host and prepares to encounter Kai Khusrau, iv, 158  
 urged by Shída not to delay the attack, iv, 159  
 reply of, iv, 160  
 wishes to meet Kai Khusrau in single combat, iv, 161  
 sends Shída on an embassy to Kai Khusrau, iv, 161

- Afrásiyáb, hears of Shída's death, iv, 176  
 grief of, iv, 176  
 commands in person against Kai Khusrau, iv, 179  
 sends Jahn to the left, iv, 180  
 reinforced by Garsíwaz, iv, 181  
 forced by Garsíwaz and Jahn to quit the field, iv, 182  
 returns to camp, iv, 183  
 abandons his camp and recrosses the Jihún, iv, 184  
 joins forces with Kurákhán, iv, 186  
 stays at Bukhárá, iv, 186  
 withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 187  
 reinforced by Kákula, iv, 188  
 sends troops to Chách, iv, 188  
 under Tawurg desertward, iv, 188  
 marches to meet Kai Khusrau, iv, 190  
 commands the centre, iv, 190  
 hears of Kurákhán's defeat and return, iv, 193  
 hears that Rustam is advancing, iv, 194  
 fails in attempt to surprise Rustam and withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 194, *seq.*  
 asks aid from the Faghfúr, iv, 196  
 prepares Gang-bihisht for a siege, iv, 197  
 besieged in Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*  
 offers terms of peace to Kai Khusrau, iv, 203  
 rallies his troops at the storming of Gang-bihisht, iv, 209  
 escapes, iv, 211  
 gets possession of the treasures of Pirán, iv, 219
- Afrásiyáb, arrays his host to fight with Kai Khusrau, iv, 220  
 offers Kai Khusrau peace or single combat, iv, 221  
 fights a general engagement against Kai Khusrau, iv, 223, 226  
 defeated and escapes by flight, iv, 227  
 army, of, surrenders to Kai Khusrau, iv, 228  
 takes refuge at Gang-dizh, iv, 230  
 captive kindred of, sent to Kai Káuś by Kai Khusrau, iv, 232  
 Kai Káuś on, iv, 237  
 Khusrau's inquiries concerning, iv, 247  
 hears of Kai Khusrau's approach and quits Gang-dizh, iv, 248  
 searched for by Kai Khusrau, iv, 248  
 fears of the Iránians concerning, iv, 249  
 Kai Khusrau takes counsel with Kai Káuś about, iv, 258  
 wanderings and wretched plight of, iv, 259  
 takes refuge in a cave near Barda', iv, 259  
 lament of, overheard by Húm, iv, 260  
 capture of, by Húm, iv, 261  
 Darmesteter on, iv, 136  
 pitied and unbound by Húm, iv, 262  
 escapes into lake Urumiah, iv, 262 and *note*  
 attracted by the voice of Garsíwaz, iv, 265  
 holds converse with Garsíwaz, iv, 266  
 recapture of, by Húm, iv, 266  
 slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 268

- Afrásiyáb, daughter of = Farangís, iv, 304  
 Khán of Chín descended from, vii, 334  
 hoard of, viii, 148, 406
- Africa, vi, 30
- Áfrigh, king of Khírazm, ii, 190
- 'Afrít, genie, i, 42
- Agani, Sargon I. of, v, 293
- Age, old, Firdausi's lament over his, ii, 336  
 Golden. *See* Golden.
- Aghraératha (Ighríras, *q.v.*), iv, 137
- Aghrérad (Ighríras, *q.v.*), i, 338
- Aghríras. *See* Ighríras.
- Agni, Vedic personification of fire, ii, 25
- Ahdnámak (Andarznámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257
- Ahmad, son of Ismá'íl, Sámánid, vii, 383
- Ahmad, son of Sahl, lord of Marv, v, 260, 261
- Ahmad, Fazl son of. *See* Ábú'l 'Abbás Fazl.
- Ahmad Hasan Maimandí, minister of Mahmúd, i, 32, 39, 45
- Ahmad ibn Muhammad, patron of Firdausi, i, 29
- Ahran, Rúman chief, 154, iv, 342 *seq.*, 353  
 bidden by Caesar to slay the dragon of Mount Sakla, iv, 342  
 takes counsel with Mírín, iv, 342  
 referred by Mírín to Hishwí, iv, 344
- Ahran, required by Gushtásp to furnish him with arms, iv, 345  
 goes with Gushtásp and Hishwí to Mount Sakla, iv, 346
- Hishwí and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 347  
 gives gifts to Gushtásp, iv, 347
- Ahran, has the dead dragon conveyed to Caesar's court, iv, 348  
 marries Caesar's third daughter, iv, 348
- Mírín and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
- Caesar's wrath with Mírín and, iv, 351
- Mírín and, send a scornful message to Caesar, iv, 353  
 set to guard the baggage, iv, 355
- Áhriman, the Zoroastrian Evil Principle, sometimes used metaphorically, 139, i, 5, 6, 50, 134, 138, 159, 194, 205, 218, 236, 238, 241, 245, 287, 315, 360; ii, 34, 42, 43, 51, 53, 56, 78, 160, 208, 214, 217, 250, 260, 303, 315, 324, 358, 361, 374 *seq.*, 405 *seq.*; iii, 17, 123, 214, 228, 251, 266, 275, 277, 287, 293, 294, 300, 303, 304, 314, 316, 318, 338; iv, 23, 41 *seq.*, 45, 46, 89, 103, 124, 128, 130, 162, 163, 179, 206, 243, 272, 288, 342, 348, 352; v, 17, 33, 36, 45, 50, 90, 99, 103, 122, 123, 125, 147, 177, 198, 206, 246, 271, 276; vi, 106, 112, 206, 240, 281, 290, 299, 318, 384; vii, 89, 233, 265, 271, 290, 312, 323, 334, 359, 366, 367, 369; viii, 19, 21, 22, 86, 87, 176, 177, 198, 210, 219, 243, 293, 333, 364, 421; ix, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91  
 envies Gaiúmart, i, 118  
 son of (the Black Div), i, 119  
 Surúsh warns Gaiúmart against, i, 119  
 ridden by Tahmúras, i, 125, 127  
 = Zakhák, i, 162  
 = Salm and Túr, i, 194

- Áhriman=Afrásiyáb, i, 366  
   Faith of, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290  
   = idolater, viii, 54  
   = Bandwí or Gustaham, viii, 89  
   = Kharrád, son of Barzín, viii, 111  
   = Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 295  
 Ahuna Vairya, Zoroastrian sacred formula, v, 17  
 Ahura Mazda (Urmuzd), the Zoroastrian Good Principle, i, 116, 235; ii, 2581; iv, 137  
 Ahwáz, city and province (Khúzistán, Susiana), i, 286; vi, 35, 199, 298, 357; vii, 197, 198, 201, 214, 224; viii 400, 402  
 Airán-vegô (Írán-vej q.v.), ii, 189  
 Akem Manau, Zoroastrian demon, iii, 271, 272  
   =Akúmán=Akwán, iii 272  
   assails Zarduhsht v, 17  
 Akesines (Chináb), Indian river, vi, 31, 64  
 Akhást, Túránian hero, 151; iv, 105  
   chosen to fight with Zanga, iv, 97  
   slain by Zanga, iv, 106  
 Akhshunwar (Achshunwar), Haitálian king, vii, 160  
 Akki, foster-father of Sargon I of Agani, v, 293  
 Aknaton, Pharaoh (XVIII dynasty)  
   lover of peace like Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371  
 'Akr Bâbil, prison, viii, 194, 196  
 Akúmán. See Akem Manau.  
 Akwán, dív, 150, iii, 270 seq., 280 seq., 284, 309  
   Story of, iii, 271  
   Professor Nöldeke on the, iii, 271  
   Firdausí on, iii, 273, 281  
   boulder of, iii, 271, 276, 309, 343, 344, 347  
   removed from pit's mouth by Rustam, iii, 345  
 Akwán, appears in the form of an onager, iii, 273 seq.  
   pursued by Rustam, iii, 275  
   foils Rustam, iii, 276  
   takes Rustam at a disadvantage, iii, 276  
   offers Rustam a choice of deaths, iii, 277  
   outwitted by Rustam, iii, 277  
   slain by Rustam, iii, 281  
   described by Rustam, iii, 282  
 Ál, place, ix, 93  
 Aláns (Alani), people, now the Ossetes of the Caucasus, 141, 167, i, 217; iv, 14, 60, 65, 301; vi, 395; viii, 369  
   invade Írán, i, 19  
   castle of the, i, 223  
   taken by Káran, i, 223, seq.  
   castellan of, duped by Káran, i, 224  
   monarch of, vi, 395  
   Núshírwán's dealings with, vii, 216, 239 seq.  
   King of=Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 208, 209, 213  
 Alár, a village in Ardshír-Khurra q.v., vi, 205  
 Albírúní, Abú Raihán Muhamad, Oriental author and chronologist (A.D. 973-1048), ii, 189  
   account of Alfír (Gangdizh?) by, ii, 190  
 Alburz, mountain-range south of the Caspian, also mythical range (Hara-berezaíti) surrounding the earth, 142, i, 4, 71, 145, 158, 235, 248, 250, 277, 298, 351, 373; ii, 11, 23, 27, 79, 96, 144, 336, 401; iii, 120; iv, 136; v, 202; vii, 177; ix, 95  
   Farídún taken by his mother to, i, 152  
   Zál cast away, and found, upon, i, 241 seq.

- Alburz, Kai Kubád brought by Rustam from, i, 382 *seq.*  
 Kai Káu's buildings on, ii, 81
- Aleppo (Chalybon - Beroea), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41
- Alexander I, king of Epirus  
 Italian expedition of, vi, 12  
 attributed to Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Alexander the Great (Sikandar *q.v.*), B.C. 356-323, son of Philip II of Macedon and his queen Olympias, i, 14, 49; ii, 8 *seq.*; iv, 314; v, 30; vi, 193, 194, 204, 252, 253, 373; vii, 383  
 barrier of, i, 16; vi, 78  
 legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78  
 persecutor of Zoroastrianism, i, 15, 59, 61, 63, 338  
 paternity of, i, 55 and *note*; vi, 16, 18  
 one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*  
 said to have burnt the Zoroastrian scriptures, i, 63  
 Zoroastrianism under, i, 63  
 Era of, ii, 190  
 accompanied by experts to the East, vi, 11  
 Romance of, origin and growth of, vi, 12 *seq.*  
 diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Syriac Christian Legend of, *See* Syriac.
- Muhammad's references to, in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77  
 Persian national hero, how he became, vi, 15  
 cities founded by, vi, 13, 18  
 name, Persian legend of his, vi, 19  
 Aristotle, tutor of, vi, 29  
 letter to, vi, 68  
 correspondence about the succession with, vi, 81
- Alexander the Great, Roxana (Rúshanak) and, vi, 30, 32  
 reign of, first years of, in history and romance, vi, 30  
 Darius' banquet, his flight from, vi, 30  
 his pursuit of, vi, 31  
 murderers of, his treatment of them in history and romance, vi, 32, 33  
 daughter of, marries, vi, 33  
 Fakirs and, vi, 61  
 Calanus and, vi, 61  
 Porus and, historical account of, vi, 63  
 camp of, his visit to, vi, 64  
 iron steeds, his device of, vi, 64  
 stature of, vi, 64  
 Cleopis and, vi, 65  
 Ammon, Oasis of, his visit to, vi, 65  
 Candace (Kaidáfa) and, vi, 65 *seq.*  
 Antigonus (Naitkún), assumes name of, vi, 66  
 Plutarch's Life of, vi, 67  
 Brahmins, visit of, to the, vi, 67  
 Indus mistaken for the Nile by, vi, 68  
 marvels of his return-journey, vi, 69  
 admiral of (Nearchus), vi, 69  
 Amazons and, vi, 12, 72  
 legend of, vi, 72  
 Gloom and Fount of Life, legend of his expedition to, in the Pseudo-Calisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*  
 Andreas, his cook, legend of, vi, 76  
 in the Kurán, vi, 77  
 Will of, vi, 81  
 death of, vi, 82  
 dispute over his place of interment, vi, 82  
 corpse of, taken to Memphis, vi, 82

- Alexander, the Great, interred at Alexandria, vi, 82  
 tomb of, vi, 82  
 Mas'ûdí on, vi, 82  
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82  
 wars on the death of, vi, 197
- Alexander, son of Alexander the Great and Cleophis (?), vi, 65
- Alexandria (Iskandariya *q.v.*), city and sea-port in Egypt, vi, 13, 15, 17, 83  
 founded by Alexander the Great, vi, 13  
 Pseudo-Callisthenes originated at, vi, 13  
 Alexander, the Great, buried at, vi, 82  
 his tomb at, vi, 82  
 Mas'ûdí on, vi, 82  
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
- Alfír (Gangdizh ?), palace-fortress of the capital of Khárazm, ii, 190
- Al Hadr. *See* Hatra.
- 'Alí, husband of Fátima, daughter of Muhammad, and fourth Khalífa (A.D. 656—661)  
 Muhammad on, i, 12, 106  
 cult of, i, 13  
 known as "the Lion," i, 13, 107  
 assassination of, i, 13  
 Firdausí's references to, i, 24, 37, 40, 41, 106, 107; ii, 337 and *note*
- 'Alí, the Dīlamite, friend and helper of Firdausí, i, 35; ix, 121  
 transcriber of the Sháh-náma, i, 39
- Alif, terminal, Firdausí's use of, iii, 283
- Al Iskandarús. *See* Halai.
- Al Khidr (Khizr *q.v.*), the Green Prophet, vi, 78 and *note*
- Alkús, Túránian hero, ii, 114
- Alkús, fights with, and worsts, Zawára, ii, 115  
 slain by Rustam, ii, 115
- Allah, Muhammadan name of the Deity, i, 50
- Al Mansúr, 'Abbásid Khalífa (A.D. 754-775), founder of Baghdád, vi, 254
- Almás, river, iii, 251
- Alp-Arselan (Arslán), Seljúk Sultán (A.D. 1063-1073), ii, 219 *note*
- Alptigin, founder of the Ghazni-vid dynasty, i, 20
- Altúniya, place, ix, 92
- Alwá, Rustam's spear-bearer, slain by Kámús, 149, iii, 188
- Alwá, Íránian hero, probably identical with the above, v, 166  
 slain by Núsh Ázar, v, 226
- Amasis, viii, 193
- Amazons, their disputed visit to Alexander, the Great, vi, 12, 72  
 origin of, vi, 71  
 described, vi, 153 *seq.*  
 Sikandar's correspondence with, and visit to, vi, 153 *seq.*
- Ambár (Anbár, Pírúz - Shápúr), city on the left bank of the Euphrates some forty miles west of Baghdád, founded by Shápúr son of Urmuzd (Sapor II.). The word means "granaries." vi, 327; viii, 188  
 foundation of, attributed to the Azdites, i, 11
- Ambassadors, instances of kings and chiefs going in person as ambassadors or spies, vi, 325
- Ambúh, place, iii, 41
- Amen-Ra, Egyptian god personated by Nectanebus, vi, 16

- Ameshapentas, the, personifications of good qualities in Zoroastrian theology, iii, 271; v. 15 *seq.*
- Amida (Diyárbakr), city on the upper Tigris, vii, 187
- Amin, 'Abbásid Khalifa, (A.D. 809-813), i, 14
- Ammianus Marcellinus (4th century A.D.) Roman historian, v, 13
- Ammon, Oasis of, Alexander the Great's visit to, vi, 30, 65
- 'Ammúriya, Róman stronghold in Asia Minor between Sívrí Hisár and Ak-Shahr probably representing the ancient Amorium but sometimes confounded with Angora (Angúriya) the ancient Ancyra further to the north-east, vi, 23 *note*, 89, viii, 46 (*Cf.* LEC. pp. 134, 153)
- Failakús marches from, against Dáráb, vi, 23
- Amorium. See 'Ammúriya.
- Amr, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
- Ámul, city in Mázandarán, i, 145, 177, 289, 298, 344, 366, 367; ii, 18, 104; v, 284; vii, 89, 237; viii, 355, 356, 358, 392; ix, 86
- Ámul. See Ámwí.
- Amulet, of Kai Khusrau, iv, 133 given by Zarduhsht to Asfandiyár, v, 130
- Ámwí (Ámul, Amúyah, now Charjúi), city on the left bank of the Oxus where crossed by the route from Marv to Bukhárá, iv, 11, 65, 154, 184, 206; vii, 91 and *note*, 331, 357, 359; viii, 354
- Ánábdéh, vi, 32
- Anæsthetics, employment of, i, 236, 321 *seq.*
- Anbár. See Ambár.
- Ancyra. See Ammúriya.
- Andalús (Land of the West or of the Vandals), Spain, 159, vi, 66, 122, 138
- queen of (Kaidáfa *q.v.*), vi, 121 *seq.*
- Andamán, Íránian noble, viii, 202
- Andaráb, town in Afghánistán between Balkh and Kábul, iv, 65
- Andarímán, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 264; iv, 26; v, 29
- fight with Gustaham, iv, 87
- steed of, slain by Hajír, iv, 87
- rescued by the Turkmans, iv, 87
- chosen to fight with Gurgín, iv, 97
- slain by Gurgín, iv, 104
- Andarímán (Vandaremaini), brother of Arjásp, v, 12, 141, 155
- commands one wing of the host, v, 46
- executed by Asfandiyár, v, 158
- Andarznámak (Abdnámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257
- Andív, country, viii, 313
- Andiyán, Íránian warrior, 172
- viii, 225, 257, 259, 269, 293, 294, 296
- deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 273
- Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
- receives Kirmán, viii, 313
- Andreantiscus, sea, vi, 77
- Andreas, Alexander the Great's cook,
- legend of, vi, 76 *seq.*
- in Kurán, vi, 77
- Androphagoi, the, iii, 191
- Anestres Castri=Núshírwán, vii, 383
- Angora. See 'Ammúriya.
- Angra Mainyu=Áhriman, ii, 28
- Animals, domestication of, i, 126
- Ant, the, Firdausí's plea for, i, 201 and *note*

- Antákiya (Antioch), city in  
 Syria on the Orontes, 167,  
 viii, 41  
 taken by Nūshīrwān, vii,  
 218, 258 *seq.*
- Antigonus (Naitkūn), name as-  
 sumed by Alexander the  
 Great in legend, vi,  
 66
- Antioch. *See* Antákiya.  
 New, vii, 218, 259
- Antiochus, Macedonian general,  
 vi, 76
- Antiochus Sidetes, ii, 80, 81
- Aogemaide, Pahlavī treatise, iv,  
 136
- Antipater, regent in Macedonia  
 for Alexander the Great,  
 intrigued against by  
 Olympias, vi, 82
- Aphrodite, goddess, iv, 315
- Apollo, god, and the Python,  
 vi, 203
- Apologues, i, 242, 265, 285;  
 iii, 332; iv, 18, 21, 28,  
 47; vi, 310; ix, 86
- Apothegms, i, 259, 260; ii, 157,  
 158, 170, 224, 254, 273,  
 298, 300, 313, 315, 330,  
 357, 383; iii, 53, 91, 96,  
 167, 188, 212, 260, 277,  
 301, 316, 341, 348, 350,  
 351; iv, 13, 32, 33, 38,  
 39, 59, 93, 108, 121, 131,  
 268; v, 78, 105, 168, 214,  
 242, 249, 250, 265; vi,  
 50, 303, 343; vii, 17, 18,  
 20, 42, 270, 277, 296, 301,  
 403; viii, 119, 166, 206,  
 215, 221, 235, 295; ix,  
 87, 88, 110
- Apprentice, a merchant's, enter-  
 tains, and finds favour  
 with, Bahrán Gúr, vii,  
 40 *seq.*
- Apries (Pharoah-Hophra, B.C.  
 589-570), vi, 16
- Apsheron, peninsula on the  
 western shore of the Cas-  
 pian, i, 58, *note*
- Áptya. *See* Abtín.
- Arab, Arabs, 162, 163, ii, 79, 81,  
 99; iii, 14; iv, 14; v,  
 31; vi, 66, 171, 209, 254,  
 321 *seq.*, 377, 385, 396,  
 398, 402, 406; vii, 10,  
 107, 201, 219, 244, 245,  
 247; viii, 67, 94, 188, 190,  
 191, 208, 230, 241, 250,  
 251; ix, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69,  
 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92,  
 94 *seq.*, 114, 117  
 migration of, northward, i,  
 11  
 raids of, into Persian terri-  
 tory, i, 12; vi, 17, 21,  
 322  
 domination of, over Írán, i,  
 12 *seq.*  
 king = Mardás, i, 135  
 = Zahhák, i, 139, 275  
 rebellion of, against Kai  
 Káús, ii, 83  
 Afrásiyáb fights with, for  
 Írán, ii, 92  
 Dáráb demands tribute from  
 vi, 22  
 steed, i, 243, 251, 290; vi,  
 380; viii, 126, 302; ix, 11  
 cymbal, vi, 244  
 invasion of, viii, 72, 93; ix,  
 3, 65 *seq.*  
 withdraw, viii, 96  
 sage, sages, vii, 406  
 quoted, vii, 277  
 tribes, ix, 65  
 triumph of, over Dhú Kár,  
 ix, 66  
 chieftain, incites Abú Bakr  
 to invade Persia, ix, 66  
 concentrate at Kádisiya, ix,  
 67  
 booty found by, at Ctesi-  
 phon (?), ix, 68  
 annex Mesopotamia, ix, 68  
 Khúzistán, ix, 68  
 = 'Umar, ix, 72  
 seal, ix, 82  
 = Sa'ad, ix, 84  
 defeated, ix, 85  
 Nūshīrwán's dream of, viii,  
 66 *seq.*, ix, 92

- Arabia, ii, 100; vi, 70, 72, 206, 322, 355; viii, 24 *note*  
trade of, ancient, i, 11  
Írán and, the portion of  
Íraj, i, 189  
Shápúr son of Urmuzd's  
expedition to, vi, 322
- Arabian, Arabians, vi, 378, 388,  
ix, 74, 85  
Faith, vi, 95  
Nights, i, 51; vi, 71, 78, 250;  
vii, 317  
provenance of, vi, 250;  
vii, 3  
quoted, vi, 73
- Arabic, language, i, 32; vi,  
147, 205; viii, 73; ix,  
81  
infrequent in Sháhnáma, i,  
47  
versions of Pahlaví texts, vi,  
255 *seq.*  
Fables of Bidpai (Kalíla and  
Dimna) translated into,  
vii, 382, 430  
Tabarí. *See* Tabarí.
- Arachosia, the district about  
Kandahar, vi, 32
- Aragán (Rámkubád), town, vii,  
188
- Aral Sea, i, 57 *note*; iii, 10
- Arar tree, vi, 19
- Aras (Araxes), river in Ázar-  
báiján, v, 13, 14  
confused with the Oxus, i,  
71, 370
- Árash, king of the Khúzians  
*q.v.*, iv, 146, 148
- Árash, son of Kai Kubád. *See*  
Kai Árash.
- Árash, Ashkánian king, vi, 197,  
210
- Árash, Íránian chief, vi, 394
- Arash, city. *See* Hulwán.
- Arastálís (Aristotle *q.v.*), 160,  
vi, 35  
counsels Sikandar, vi, 179  
sentences of, over the coffin  
of Sikandar, vi, 185
- Árásti, uncle of Zarduhsht (Zor-  
oaster), v, 17
- Araxes (Aras *q.v.*), battle of, viii,  
76
- Árayish-i-Rúm (Hierapolis), city  
in northern Syria, west  
of the Euphrates and  
north of Aleppo, vii, 217,  
218, 254; viii, 188  
taken by Núshírwán, vii,  
255
- Arba, river, viii, 194, 195
- Archer, iv, 179  
constellation, v, 86
- Archery, i, 263, 297, 312, 359;  
ii, 163, 266, 293, 328;  
iii, 53 *seq.*, 74, 93, 98 *seq.*,  
179 *seq.*, 246; iv, 38, 48,  
99, 101, 102, 104, 107, 122,  
179, 338; v, 111, 122,  
229, 239 *seq.*, 272; vi,  
379, 383 *seq.*; vii, 54,  
55, 80, 118, 122, 125
- Archimedes, 141, 168, 170, 176
- Architect, Rúman, and Khusrau  
Parwíz, viii, 401 *seq.*
- Architecture, invention of, i,  
129, 133
- Archscribe, 171. *See* Ízid Gas-  
hasp and Mihrán.
- Ard, day, i, 88, *q.v.*, ii, 287; iv,  
252; vi, 298, 390 and  
*note*; vii, 112; ix, 70,  
122  
Sháhnáma finished on the  
day of, i, 24
- Ardabl (Bádán - Pirúz *q.v.*), city  
in Ázarbáiján, ii, 336, 405,  
iv, 147, 188; vii, 89, 163,  
224; viii, 93, 99, 100,  
184, 226
- Ardawán, Bahrám, Artabanus  
III or IV, the last Ash-  
kánian (Parthian) king,  
160, 161, vi, 3, 205, 214  
*seq.*, 254 *seq.*, viii, 214, 285
- Macrinus, his war and treaty  
with, i, 81  
effect of, on Persian coin-  
age, i, 81  
= Bahrám, vi, 197, 210  
status of, in Persian tradi-  
tion, vi, 201

- Ardawán, daughter of 161, vi, 202  
 marries Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202, 229  
 incited by her brother Bahman to poison Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259  
 condemned to death, vi, 260  
 saved by Ardshír Pápakán's minister, vi, 260  
 gives birth to Shápúr, vi, 261  
 restored to favour, vi, 265  
 writes to Pápak, vi, 214  
 summons Ardshír Pápakán to court, vi, 214  
 receives gifts from Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215  
 highly esteems Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215  
 sons of, vi, 215, 255, 267  
*note*  
 their fate, vi, 228, 229 and *note*, 259  
 disgraces Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 216  
 Ardshír Pápakán intrigues with slave-girl of, 160, vi, 201, 217 *seq.*  
 eldest son of, made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*  
 consults the astrologers, vi, 218  
 Ardshír Pápakán, vainly pursued by, vi, 221 *seq.*  
 returns to Rai, vi, 223  
 writes to his son about Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223  
 Ardshír Pápakán marches against, vi, 227  
 prepares to encounter Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227  
 defeated, captured by Khar-rád, and slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 228  
 buried by Tabák, vi, 229  
 palace of, at Rai spared (?) by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 229 and *note*
- Ardawán, secretary of, slain by Shápúr, vi, 256  
 = Mihrak = Mithrak = Mádik (?), vi, 256  
 Ardibihisht, ameshaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286, 328  
 month, i, 82; v, 16, 39, 92 *note*  
 Ardshír, son of Bízhan, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362  
 Ardshír, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26, 51  
 death of, foretold by Jámasp, v, 49  
 slain, v, 57  
 Ardshír, Íránian hero, perhaps the son of Bízhan, *supra*  
 tells Nastúr where to find Zarír, v, 67  
 takes Farámarz prisoner, v, 288  
 Ardshír (Bahman *q.v.*), Sháh, vi, 213, 271 and *note*  
 meaning of, v, 259 and *note*  
 Ardshír (Artaxerxes II), brother of Shápúr, Sásánian Sháh, 163, vi, 3, 328  
 Shápúr arranges for the succession with, vi, 360 *seq.*  
 title of, vi, 364  
 abdication of, vi, 364  
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.*, Pírúz, vii, 179 *seq.*  
 released by Khúshnawáz, vii, 180  
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.*, Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333, 337, 342  
 discourse of, vii, 305  
 questions Búzurjmíhr, vii, 308  
 Ardshír Khurra (Khurra-i-Ardshír), city, (Gúr or Júr, now Fírúzábád), and district in Párs, vi, 199, 205, 206, 229 and *note*, 231, 241, 245; vii, 206; viii, 251, 252, 412 and *note*

- Ardshír Khurra, city. Ardshír Pápakán builds a Fire-temple in, vi, 230  
 makes irrigation-works in, vi, 230  
 meaning of, vi, 290 *note*
- Ardshír Pápakán (Artaxerxes I), Sháh and founder of the Sásanian dynasty, 160, 161; i, 42; ii, 10; v, 10; vi, 193, 209 *note*, 213 *seq.*, 294 *seq.*, 303, 307, 315, 322, 325, 405; vii, 79, 185, 212; viii, 191, 214, 222, 265, 270, 285, 392, 393; ix, 105, 109, 111  
 Notes on, vi, 193 *seq.*, 254 *seq.*  
 founds a new national dynasty, restores Zoroastrianism, and collects its scriptures, i, 62 *seq.*  
 genealogical table of his descendants, vi, 3  
 rise of, compared to that of Cyrus the Great, vi, 194  
 Tabari's account of, vi, 198  
 legend of Cyrus the Great transferred to, vi, 195  
 birth of, vi, 213  
 summoned to court by Ardawán, vi, 214  
 equipped by Pápak, vi, 214  
 presents gifts to Ardawán, vi, 215  
 Ardawán favours, vi, 215  
 prowess of, in the chase, vi, 215  
 disgraced, vi, 216  
 writes to Pápak, vi, 216  
 advised by Pápak, vi, 216  
 intrigues with Gulnár, vi, 217 *seq.*  
 hears from Gulnár of the presage of the astrologers, vi, 219  
 flees with Gulnár to Párs, vi, 220 *seq.*  
 followed by the divine Grace in the form of a mountain-sheep, i, 374; vi, 221 *seq.*
- Ardshír Pápakán, adherents flock to, vi, 223  
 addresses his supporters, vi, 224  
 founds a city, vi, 202, 224  
 receives promises of help, vi, 224  
 joined by Tabák, vi, 225  
 Tabák and, defeat Bahman, son of Ardawán, vi, 226  
 marches from Párs against Ardawán, vi, 227  
 defeats and slays Ardawán, vi, 228  
 as recorded in Kárnámak, vi, 202  
 gives the spoil to the troops, vi, 229  
 spares (?) Ardawán's palace at Rai, vi, 229 and *note*  
 Tabák counsels, vi, 229  
 marriage of, with Ardawán's daughter, vi, 202, 229, 259  
 returns to Párs, vi, 229  
 builds Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi, 229 and *note*  
 irrigation-works of, at Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi, 230  
 war of, with the Kurds, vi, 196, 230 *seq.*  
 and Haftwád, vi, 236 *seq.*  
 message sent by arrow to, vi, 238  
 worsted by Haftwád and entertained and counselled by two youths, vi, 239 *seq.*  
 slays Mihrak, vi, 241  
 marches to attack the Worm, vi, 241  
 gives instructions to Shahr-gír, vi, 241  
 stratagem of, against the Worm, vi, 242  
 slays the Worm and its attendants, vi, 244  
 summons Shahr-gír, vi, 244 and *note*  
 takes Haftwád's stronghold, vi, 244

- Ardshîr Pâpakân, defeats and slays Haftwâd and Shâh-wî, vi, 245  
 carries off the spoil, vi, 245  
 builds a Fire-temple, vi, 245  
 rewards the two youths, vi, 245  
 invasion of Kirmân by, vi, 205, 245  
 goes to Taisafûn, vi, 245  
 principles of government of, vi, 250, 273 *seq.*, 286 *seq.*  
 Reign of, 161, vi, 254 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 254  
 length of, vi, 254  
 Tabari on, vi, 254  
 coins of, vi, 256, 257, 265  
 Shâpûr crowned by, vi, 257  
 cities of, vi, 257  
 prophecy of, vi, 257  
 enthroned at Baghdâd, vi, 258  
 title of King of kings of, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273  
 inaugural address of, vi, 258  
 daughter of Ardawân and, stories of, vi, 255  
 plot of, with her brother Bahman, to poison, vi, 259  
 discovers plot against him, vi, 260  
 consults his minister, vi, 260  
 condemns the daughter of Ardawân to death, vi, 260  
 minister of, saves daughter of Ardawân and mutilates himself, vi, 196, 261  
 Shâpûr, son of, born, vi, 261  
 hears about Shâpûr from his minister, vi, 262  
 recognises and acknowledges Shâpûr, vi, 264  
 restores the daughter of Ardawân to favour, vi, 265  
 rewards his minister, vi, 265  
 makes a new coinage in honour of his minister, vi, 256, 265  
 builds Jund-i-Shâpûr, vi, 266
- Ardshîr Pâpakân, harassed by wars, consults Kaid, vi, 266  
 wroth at Kaid's advice, vi, 267  
 seeks in vain for the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268  
 referred to, vi, 270  
 discovers Urmuzd, vi, 271  
 counsels Urmuzd, vi, 280  
 calls and counsels Shâpûr, vi, 286 *seq.*  
 Church and State, his views on, vi, 250 *seq.*, 286  
 duration of his dynasty, vi, 252, 257, 289  
 death of, vi, 291  
 Balûchistân, his failure to conquer, vii, 242  
 Nard, invention of, attributed to, vii, 382  
 True Cross in treasury of, viii, 380
- Ardshîr, son of Shirwî, Shâh, 175, ix, 43 *seq.*  
 makes Pîrûz general, ix, 44  
 entertains Pîrûz at feast, ix, 48  
 death of, ix, 49  
 treasury of, squandered by Gurâz, ix, 53
- Aregat-aspa. *See* Arjâsp.
- Aries, constellation, i, 88, 118, 310, 335; iii, 26, 38, 187, 318; iv, 24, 147, 158, 180; v, 39, 109, 118, 119, 126; viii, 342, 394
- Ariobarzanes, the murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Ariobarzanes, satrap, vi, 32 and *note*
- Árish, legendary Íránian archer, v, 62; vii, 234 and *note*; viii, 75, 219 and *note*; ix, 25
- Aristobulus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Aristotle (Arastális *q.v.*), Greek philosopher (B.C. 384-322)

- Aristotle, Alexander the Great's  
tutor, vi, 29  
letter to, vi, 68  
correspondence with,  
about the succession, vi,  
81, 83  
silk-worm, his account of,  
vi, 204
- Arjâsp, Tûrânian hero, ii, 264;  
iv, 26
- Arjâsp (Aregaſ-aspa), king of  
Tûrân, 155, 156, i, 61;  
ii, 9, 29; iii, 109; v, 9,  
11 *seq.*, 20, 22, 24 *seq.*, 29,  
31, 51 *seq.*, 89, 98, 99, 107  
*seq.*, 116, 141, 142, 159,  
167, 171, 172, 180, 206;  
vii, 330, 335, 337, 359;  
viii, 95, 104, 148; ix, 104  
hoard of, viii, 148  
in receipt of tribute from  
Gushtâsp, v, 32  
hears of Gushtâsp's resolve  
not to pay tribute, sum-  
mons, and harangues his  
priests, v, 36  
sends Bîdirafsh and Nâm-  
khâst to Gushtâsp, v, 37,  
40  
receives Gushtâsp's answer  
and calls out the host, v,  
45  
gives one wing to Kuhram,  
v, 46  
the other to Andarîmân,  
v, 46  
the chief command to  
Gurgsâr, v, 46  
banner to Bîdirafsh, v, 46  
vanguard to Khashâsh, v,  
46  
rear to Húshdîv, v, 46  
marches against Írán, v, 46  
defeat of, foretold by Jâm-  
âsp, v, 52  
gives one wing to Bîdirafsh,  
v, 55  
the other to Gurgsâr, v,  
56  
centre to Nâmkhâst, v, 56  
takes the rear himself, v, 56
- Arjâsp, gives Kuhram the com-  
mand in chief, v, 56  
thrice offers rewards to any  
that will fight Zarîr, v, 61,  
62  
offer of, accepted by Bîdi-  
rafsh, v, 62  
calls for Bîdirafsh to fight  
Nastûr, v, 69  
fights with the Íránians, v,  
71  
defeat of, v, 72  
proclaimed by Gushtâsp,  
v, 75  
hears of Asfandiyâr's im-  
prisonment and of Gush-  
tâsp's absence in Sîstân,  
v, 86  
Summons his chiefs, v, 86  
sends Sitûh as spy to Írán,  
v, 86  
on receiving Sitûh's report  
calls out the host, v, 87  
sends Kuhram to attack  
Balkh, v, 90  
marches against Gushtâsp,  
v, 94  
commands the centre, v,  
95  
defeats Gushtâsp and be-  
leaguers him on a moun-  
tain, v, 96  
Asfandiyâr's vow of, and  
prayer for, vengeance on,  
v, 103, 104  
hears of Asfandiyâr's arrival,  
v, 108  
proposes to retreat, v, 108  
sends away the spoil of  
Balkh, v, 108  
five sons of, v, 108  
persuaded by Gurgsâr to re-  
main and fight, v, 108, 109  
makes Gurgsâr leader of the  
host, v, 109  
arrays the host, v, 109  
commands the centre, v, 109  
surveys the battlefield from  
a height, v, 110  
prepares for flight if needful,  
v, 110

- Arjasp, dismayed at Asfandiyár's prowess, reproaches Gurgsár v, 111  
 hears of Gurgsár's capture and flees, v, 112  
 entertains Asfandiyár disguised as a merchant, v, 145  
 questions Asfandiyár, v, 146  
 allows Asfandiyár to entertain the Turkman chiefs, v, 149  
 prepares to attack Bishútan, v, 151  
 bids Kuhram prepare for war, v, 151  
 sends out Turkhán with troops to reconnoitre, v, 151  
 hears from Kuhram that Asfandiyár has come, v, 152  
 bids the Turkmans march out in force, v, 152  
 palace of, attacked by Asfandiyár, v, 153  
 arms and encounters Asfandiyár, v, 153, 154  
 beheaded by Asfandiyár, v, 154  
 palace of, fired and his women carried off by Asfandiyár, v, 154, 162  
 head of, thrown from the ramparts of the Brazen Hold, v, 157  
 sons of, grieve for, v, 157  
 Asfandiyár takes the treasure of, v, 161  
 Khán of Chín descended from, vii, 334  
 Arjuna, one of the five Pándavas (Indian mythology) iv, 138, 139  
 Ark, 158  
 Arman, Armenia or district in Ázarbáiján, vii, 263  
 Armaní, Iránian chief, ix, 74  
 Armenia (Arman, Irmán *q.v.*), country, iii, 12; vi, 202, 203; vii, 153, 224; viii, 93, 96, 184, 193, 202, 377  
 Armenia, Roman, vii, 187  
 Armenian, Armenians (Irmánians), iii, 286; viii, 188, 189, 195, 226, 248, 282  
 version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14  
 —like, viii, 254  
 = Mausil, viii, 293 and *note*  
 Armín, son of Kai Kubád. *See* Kai Armín.  
 Arnawáz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zabhák and Farídún, and mother of Íraj, i, 142  
 married to Zabhák, i, 146  
*seq.*  
 counsels Zabhák as to his dream, i, 148  
 Farídún meets, i, 162  
 Zabhák tries to kill, i, 167  
 son of, by Farídún, i, 177  
 Arnold, Mathew, his "Sohrab and Rustum," ii, 118  
 Arrán, the modern Karabagh, the region between the Kur and Aras rivers, i, 9  
 Arrian, Greek historian (A.D. 96-180), vi, 31, 68  
*Anabasis* of, vi, 12  
*Indica* of, vi, 12  
 Caspian Gates of, vi, 32  
 on the stature of Porus, vi, 64  
 Ichthyophagi, vi, 69 *seq.*  
 Alexander and the Amazons, vi, 72  
 death of Alexander, vi, 82  
 Arrow-shots, three famous, viii, 75  
 Bahrám Chúbína's, viii, 126  
 Arsaces, name of the founder and other kings of the Parthian (Ashkánian) dynasty, vi, 197  
 Arsacid, Arsacids, dynastic title of the above, iii, 9; vi, 205, 255; vii, 156, 185, 212  
 imperial system of, vi, 198  
 some of, escape from Ardshír Pápakán to Armenia, vi, 203

- Arzacid, rivalry of, with Sásánians, viii, 73
- Arsalás, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Arses, Sháh (B.C. 338-336) vi, 29
- Arslán Gázib, one of Mahmúd's generals, i, 100  
referred to, i, 114
- Artabanus III (II according to some reckonings), Parthian king (A.D. 10-40), iii, 9, 10
- Artabanus, son of above, iii, 9
- Artabanus, Persian captain of the guard *temp.* Xerxes, v, 282
- Rustam and, v, 282
- Artabanus III or IV (Ardawán *q.v.*), vi, 201
- Artang, the house of the heresiarch Mání, ii, 19 and *note*; vii, 355 and *note*; viii, 172 and *note*, 362 and *note*
- Artaxerxes Longimanus, Sháh, v, 281, 282
- Bahman and, v, 282
- Artaxerxes Mnemon, Sháh, i, 59
- Artaxerxes Ochus, Sháh (B.C. 359-338), vi, 18 *note*, 29
- Nectanebus II conquered by vi, 29  
murdered, vi, 29
- Artaxerxes I, Sásanian Sháh.  
*See* Ardshír Pápakán.
- Artaxerxes II (Ardshír brother of Shápúr), Sásanian Sháh, vi, 363
- Arts, invention of the. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshíd.
- 'Arús, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*, ix, 20
- Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), ii, 392, 404; vi, 329; viii, 90; ix, 85, 92
- Faridún's crossing of the, i, 160
- Arzhang, a dív and commander of the troops of Mázan-darán, 143; ii, 43, 44, 56 *seq.*, 63, 64; v, 203
- Arzhang, put in charge of Kai Káu's and his troops when taken prisoners, ii, 41  
slain by Rustam, ii, 57
- Arzhang, dungeon of, iii, 309
- Arzhang, Túránian hero, 148, iii, 76, 77  
challenges the Íránians, iii, 119  
slain, iii, 120
- Arzhang, Mání the heresiarch's house. *See* Artang.
- Aryan, Aryans, race, iii, 10 and *note*, iv, 137  
race, i, 7  
early seats of, i, 7  
meaning of, i, 7  
organization of, i, 7  
primitive religion of, i, 7  
belief in magic of, i, 8  
division of, i, 8  
India and Írán conquered by, i, 8  
Indian, their relations with the Íránians, i, 15
- Árzú, daughter of Sarv and wife of Salm, i, 188 and *note*  
referred to, i, 178 *seq.*
- Árzú, daughter of Máhiyár the jeweller, vii, 59, 61  
referred to, vii, 55, 56, 58  
sings to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 60  
Bahrám Gúr woos and weds, vii, 61 *seq.*  
meaning of, vii, 65 *note*
- Ascalon, city in Palestine, v, 292
- Asclepias acida*, plant. *See* Homa.
- Asfandiyár (Spento-data, Spandát), mythical Íránian hero, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, and the rival in legend of Rustam, 155-157, i, 42, 55; ii, 29; v, 9, 10, 12, 24 *seq.*, 29, 30, 41 *seq.*, 45, 49, 69 *seq.*, 90 *seq.*, 258, 259, 261, 279, 281 *seq.*, 289, 290, 293; vi, 15, 49, 55, 200, 213, 224, 242, 251, 271; viii, 95, 104 and

Asfandiyâr—*cont.*

- note*, 171, 270, 332, 395  
*note*; ix, 25, 26 *note*, 104  
 invulnerability of, v, 19  
 sisters of, 156, v, 20, 22  
   carried off by the Turk-  
   mans, v, 93, 100, 171  
   rescued by, v, 153, 162  
   lament over, v, 252 *seq.*  
 marriage of, with Humâi,  
   v, 22, 77  
   ignored by Firdausi, v, 22  
 birth of, v, 32  
 answers, in conjunction with  
   Zarîr and Jâmâsp, Ar-  
   jâsp's letter, v, 42  
 triumph of, over Arjâsp  
   foretold by Jâmâsp, v, 52  
 given command of one wing,  
   v, 55  
 addresses his five brothers,  
   v, 65  
 hears his father's offer of  
   the crown and throne to  
   the avenger of Zarîr, v, 66  
 slays Bidirafsh, v, 70  
 presents the head of Bidira-  
   fsh and the steed of Zarîr  
   to Gushtâsp, v, 71  
 divides the host, v, 71  
 attacks, with Nastûr and  
   Nûsh Âzar, the Turkmans,  
   v, 71  
 grants quarter to the Turk-  
   mans, v, 72  
 made chief ruler of Îrân  
   under Gushtâsp and sent  
   by him to convert the  
   world, v, 76  
 rests from his labours, v, 77  
 makes Farshîdward gover-  
   nor of Khurâsân, v, 77  
 reports the success of his  
   administration to Gush-  
   tâsp, v, 77  
 slandered by Gurazm, v, 78  
 recalled to court, v, 80 *seq.*  
 sons of, 157, v, 80, 81  
 resigns his host to Bahman,  
   v, 82  
 arraigned by Gushtâsp, v, 83

## Asfandiyâr, put in bonds, v.

- 84  
 sent to Gumbadân, v, 84  
 solaced by Bahman and  
   others, v, 85  
 Jâmâsp advises Gushtâsp  
   to release, v, 97  
 hears of arrival of Jâmâsp,  
   v, 98, 99  
 parley of, with Jâmâsp, v,  
   99 *seq.*  
 eight and thirty brothers  
   of, v, 101, 103, 111, 160  
 bids Jâmâsp send for black-  
   smiths, v, 101  
 breaks his bonds himself, v,  
   102, 206  
 calls for his steed and arms,  
   v, 102  
 sets off with Jâmâsp, Bah-  
   man, and Nûsh Âzar, v,  
   103  
 vow of, v, 103  
 laments over Farshîdward,  
   v, 104  
 prays that he may avenge  
   Farshîdward on Arjâsp, v,  
   104  
 shrouds Farshîdward, v, 105  
 sees and addresses the corpse  
   of Gurazm, v, 105  
 passes the Turkman trenches  
   and defeats the outposts,  
   v, 106  
 interview of, with Gush-  
   tâsp, v, 106  
 receives the promise of the  
   crown and undertakes to  
   deliver Gushtâsp, v, 107  
 arrays and leads the host,  
   v, 109  
 attacks the Turkmans, v,  
   110  
 defeats Kubram, v, 110  
 takes Gurgsâr prisoner, v,  
   111  
 defeats Arjâsp, v, 112, 206  
 grants quarter to the Turk-  
   mans, v, 113  
 distributes the spoil, v,  
   114

- Asfandiyár, undertakes to rescue his sisters from the Turkmans, v, 115  
 prepares to invade Túrán, v, 115  
 Seven Stages (Haft Khwán) of, ii, 29; v, 27, 118, 119, 121, 135, 162; viii, 171  
 Story of, 156, v, 116 *seq.*  
 compared with Rustam's, v, 117  
 rivalry in legend between Rustam and, v, 116  
 quits Balkh and goes, with Gurgsár as guide, to Túrán, v, 120  
 offers the kingdom of the Turkmans to Gurgsár in return for faithful service, v, 120  
 questions Gurgsár, v, 120 *seq.*, 124, 125, 128, 131, 134, 139, 141  
 during his adventures in the Seven Stages, leaves Bishútan in command, v, 122, 124, 126, 129, 132 *note*, 144  
 praised by Bishútan and the host, v, 123, 125, 131, 133  
 scythed chariot made by, v, 126  
 revived by Bishútan after encountering the dragon, v, 127  
 song of, v, 129  
 amulet given to, by Zarduhsht, v, 130  
 encourages the Íránians to persevere, v, 136  
 prays for deliverance from the snow, v, 138  
 leaves the baggage behind, v, 138  
 reproaches Gurgsár for giving false information, v, 139, 140  
 offers to make Gurgsár captain of the Brazen Hold if he will be a trusty guide, v, 140
- Asfandiyár, guided by Gurgsár crosses ford with host, v, 140  
 cursed by Gurgsár, v, 141  
 slays Gurgsár, v, 141  
 surveys the Brazen Hold, v, 142  
 captures, questions, and slays two Turkmans, v, 142  
 Bishútan and, consult, v, 143  
 stratagem of, to take the Brazen Hold, v, 116, 143  
 disguised as a merchant, interviews Arjásp, v, 145  
 assumes the name of Khar-rád, v, 146  
 questioned by Arjásp, v, 146  
 trades as a merchant in the Brazen Hold, v, 147  
 meets his sisters, v, 147  
 gives a banquet to the Turkman chiefs, v, 149  
 surprises the Brazen Hold, v, 152 *seq.*  
 provides for his sisters' safety, v, 153  
 attacks the palace of Arjásp, v, 153  
 encounters Arjásp, v, 154  
 beheads Arjásp, v, 154  
 fires Arjásp's palace, v, 154  
 carries off the women, v, 154  
 quits the Brazen Hold and leaves Sáwa in charge, v, 154  
 joins Bishútan, v, 155  
 pursues Kuhram to the Brazen Hold, v, 156  
 encounters and takes Kuhram prisoner, v, 157  
 grants no quarter to the Turkmans, v, 158  
 puts to death Andarímán and Kuhram, v, 158  
 announces his victory to Gushtásp, v, 159  
 disposes of the spoil, v, 161

- Asfandiyār, carries off his sisters,  
the womenfolk of Arjāsp,  
and others from the  
Brazen Hold, v, 162  
sets fire to, and dismantles,  
the Brazen Hold, v, 162  
sends his sons homeward by  
different routes, v, 162  
returns himself by the Seven  
Stages, v, 162  
picks up his left baggage,  
v, 162  
hunts while waiting for his  
sons, v, 162  
rejoined by his sons, v, 163  
welcome of, on his return  
to Írán, v, 163  
banquets with Gushtāsp, v,  
164  
fight of, with Rustam,  
Story of, 156  
recited by Nadr, son of  
Hārith, at Mecca, v, 166  
complains to his mother of  
Gushtāsp's treatment of  
him, v, 167  
counselled by his mother,  
v, 168, 175  
fate of, foretold by Jámāsp,  
v, 169  
recounts his deeds before  
Gushtāsp, v, 170  
promised the throne by  
Gushtāsp when he has  
brought Rustam and his  
kin in bonds to court, v,  
173, 174  
meets with an ill omen on  
starting for Zābulistán, v,  
177  
consults with Bishūtan, v,  
178  
sends Bahman on an em-  
bassage, v, 179 *seq.*  
message of, to Rustam, v,  
179  
receives Rustam's answer  
from, and is wroth with,  
Bahman, v, 191  
converses of Rustam with  
Bishūtan, v, 192
- Asfandiyār, goes attended to  
meet Rustam, v, 192  
parleys with Rustam, v,  
192 *seq.*  
declines Rustam's invita-  
tion to visit him, v, 193  
invites Rustam to a feast,  
v, 195  
repents of having invited  
Rustam, v, 196  
counselled by Bishūtan to  
keep on friendly terms  
with Rustam, v, 196, 217  
does not summon Rustam  
to the feast, v, 197  
wrangles with Rustam, v,  
198 *seq.*  
does not assign Rustam his  
proper seat at the feast,  
v, 200  
remonstrated with by Rus-  
tam, v, 200  
bids Bahman resign his own  
seat to Rustam, v, 200  
vilifies Zāl and Rustam, v,  
201  
recounts his lineage, v, 205  
his exploits, v, 205  
his capture of a hill-fort,  
v, 206  
tries a handgrip with Rus-  
tam, v, 208  
challenges Rustam, v, 209  
astonished at Rustam's  
prowess at the board, v,  
210  
declines Rustam's overtures,  
v, 211 *seq.*  
calls Zābulistán "Babble-  
stead," v, 216  
parodies Rustam's address  
to royal tent-enclosure,  
v, 216  
arms for fight with Rustam,  
v, 223  
refuses Rustam's sugges-  
tion of a general engage-  
ment, v, 224  
informed by Bahman of the  
slaying of Nūsh Āzar and  
Mīhr-i-Nūsh, v, 227

- Asfandiyâr, enraged with Rustam, v, 228  
wounds Rustam and Rakhsh, v, 229  
jeers at Rustam, v, 229  
calls upon Rustam to surrender, v, 230  
returns to camp, laments for Nûsh Âzar and Mihr-i-Nûsh, and sends their corpses to Gushtâsp with a message, v, 232  
converses with Bishûtan of the fight with Rustam, v, 232, 240  
Simurgh instructs Rustam how to overcome, v, 237 *seq.*  
branch of tamarisk fatal to, v, 239 and *note*  
summoned by Rustam to fight and becomes despondent, v, 240  
Rustam's final effort for peace with, v, 241 *seq.*  
Bahman and Bishûtan hear of the overthrow of, v, 244  
address of, to Bishûtan, v, 245  
Rustam bewails, v, 246  
confides Bahman to Rustam, v, 248  
foretells evil for Rustam, v, 248  
gives his last charge to Bishûtan, v, 249  
death of, v, 250  
Rustam laments over, v, 250  
corpse of, sent to Gushtâsp by Rustam, v, 251  
funeral procession of, conducted by Bishûtan, v, 251  
lamentations over, v, 252 *seq.*  
corpse of, displayed by Bishûtan, v, 253  
Rustam writes to Gushtâsp to excuse himself in the matter of, v, 256  
Xerxes and, v, 282
- Asfandiyâr, Bahman on the vengeance due for, v, 283  
referred to, v, 288  
Asfandiyâr-nâma (Spand-dât-nâma), v, 26, 27  
Ashemaogha, vii, 188  
Ashi Vanguhi, 'the genius of piety, iv, 137  
Ashk, presumed founder of the Ashkânian (Parthian) dynasty, vi, 197, 210  
meaning of, vi, 197  
Ashkabûs, Tûrânian hero, 148, iii, 183, 186, 207, 268  
challenges the Íránians, iii, 179  
Ruhhâm worsted by, iii, 179  
Rustam's fight with, iii, 109, 179 *seq.*  
referred to, viii, 75  
parleys with Rustam, iii, 180  
slain by Rustam, iii, 181  
Ashkânian, Ashkânians, race and dynasty, i, 49; iii, 9, 11; v, 10, 282; vi, 196, 209; viii, 214  
duration of rule, vi, 193  
times, Firdausi's lack of materials for, vi, 193  
surviving traditions of, transferred to other dynasties, vi, 194  
importance of, vi, 194  
genealogy, vi, 197  
Ashkash, Íránian hero, iii, 33, 34, 89, 347, 350, 352; iv, 13, 57, 61, 65  
Rustam and, go to rescue Bîzhan, iii, 334  
conveys baggage toward Írán, iii, 346  
Kai Khusrâu sends, to Khârazm, iv, 15  
Shîda defeated by, iv, 60, 72  
troops of, recalled, iv, 145  
sent with a host to Zam, iv, 157  
pillage of Makrán by, stopped by Kai Khusrâu, iv, 243

- Ashkash, appointed governor of Makrán, iv, 244  
 Kai Khusrau welcomed by, on his return from Gangdizh, iv, 251  
 Ashtád, Iránian chief, ix, 11 *seq.*  
   chosen to visit Khusrau Parwiz at Taisafún, ix, 9  
   and Kharrád parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11  
   visit Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 12  
   report to Shírwí, ix, 27  
 Asia, iv, 315, v, 293, viii, 187  
   Minor, vi, 30; viii, 193, 194  
   Central, vi, 73  
 Asmodeus, demon, iii, 272  
 Asoka, Indian king (B.C. 264-228-7), i, 15  
 Asp, as Persian termination, ii, 9  
 Assurbanipal, Assyrian king, and Khusrau Parwiz, reigns of compared, viii, 193  
 Assyria, v, 292  
 Assyrians, i, 10  
   invasions of Irán by, i, 10  
 Astawadh. *See* Haftwád.  
 Astivihád, demon, iv, 137  
 Astrolabe, i, 104, 188, 310 *note*;  
   ii, 215, 273; iv, 158, 297;  
   vi, 376; vii, 353; ix, 73  
 Astrologer, Astrologers, Astrology, i, 104, 188, 255, 310  
   and *note*; ii, 233, 284,  
   409; iv, 27, 158, 159, 279,  
   284, 334, 335; v, 48, 168  
   *seq.*, 263; vi, 108, 109,  
   114, 132, 195, 198, 201,  
   218, 227, 377; ix, 73  
   importance of, in Sháh-námá, i, 52  
   consulted by Farídún, i, 194  
   Minúchíhr i, 251, 307  
   Zál i, 255  
   Sám i, 278  
   Kai Kátús ii, 103, 215, 217  
   Afrásiyáb, ii, 273; iv, 158  
   Siyáwush, ii, 282  
   Rustam, iii, 219  
   Kai Khusrau, iv, 158  
   Húmán, v, 310  
 Astrologer, consulted by Sikan-dar, vi, 180  
 Ardawán, vi, 218  
 Yazdagird, son of Shápúr,  
   vi, 375 *seq.*, 390  
 Bahrám Gúr, vii, 144, 145  
 Khán of Chín, vii, 353  
 Talhand, vii, 408, 413, 418  
 Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 372  
 Astyages (Istuvegu), king of the Medes (Manda *q.v.*, B.C. 584-550)  
   conquered by Cyrus, i, 18;  
   vi, 194  
   identified by Armenian historians with Zahhák, i, 72,  
   144  
 Mandane and, legend of, ii,  
   190  
 Afrásiyáb and, in legend, ii,  
   191  
 Asura. *See* Ahúra.  
 Atbara, tributary of the Nile, vi,  
   65  
 Athenaeus, Greek writer (2nd-3rd centuries A.D.), iv, 316  
*Deípnosophistae* of, ii, 10  
   quoted, iv, 314  
 Athens, schools of, closed by Justinian, vii, 280  
 Áthravans, priests of the Cult of Fire, i, 56  
 Áthwya. *See* Abtín.  
 Atkinson, James, on the Sháh-námá, vi, 250  
 Atossa, wife of Cambyzes and Darius Hystaspis, v, 11  
   =Hutaosa, wife of Gush-tásp (?), v, 11  
 Atropatene (Ázarbáiján *q.v.*), i,  
   9, 61  
   primitive seat of Fire-worship, i, 56  
   sub-kingdom in Parthian times, vi, 198  
 Attock, town on the Indus in northern India, vi, 52  
 Aurand, father of Sháh Luhrásp, v, 205  
 Aurvaś-aspa (Luhrásp *q.v.*), iv,  
   316; v, 11

- Autumnal equinox, iv, 313  
 Kai Luhrásp crowned at, iv, 313  
 Avars, Caucasian tribe, viii, 194  
 Avasta. *See* Zandavasta.  
 Avidius Cassius, Roman general, vi, 291 *note*  
 Áwa, Iránian hero, iv, 149  
 Áwáza, stronghold, 170, viii, 134, 138  
 Axumite, Ethiopian, dynasty, viii, 24 *note*  
 Áyás, region, v, 61, 74, 107  
 Áyín Gashasp (Yazdánbakhsh), Iránian noble, 171, viii, 75, 150 *note*, 222  
 Hurmuzd consults, viii, 174, 177  
 and the prisoner, story of, viii, 177 *seq.*  
 marches to Hamadán, viii, 178  
 consults a seer, viii, 178  
 murdered, viii, 181  
 avenged by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 181  
 troops of, disperse, viii, 181  
 Ázád Sarv, Firdausi's authority for the Story of Rustam and Shaghád, v, 260 *seq.*  
 Ázád Sarv, archmage and agent of Núshírwán, v, 261, vii, 283 and *note*  
 goes to Marv, vii, 283  
 discovers Búzurjmíhr, vii, 283  
 returns with Búzurjmíhr to court, vii, 283  
 Ázáda, Rúman slave-girl, vi, 382  
 goes hunting with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 382  
 tries to shame Bahrám Gúr in his marksmanship, vi, 383  
 slain by Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384 and *note*  
 Ázar (Ázarbáiján *q.v.*), ii, 195  
 Ázar, genius, iii, 287, 328  
 Ázar (Ádar), month and day, i, 88, 89; vi, 411; viii, 244, 421; ix, 17  
 Ázar Ábádágán (Ázarakhsh, Ázargashasp *q.v.*), Fire-temple at Shíz (Takht-i-Sulaimán) near the south-eastern border of Ázarbáiján, not at Tabriz with which the place has been wrongly identified (NT, p. 100, *note*), 172, iv, 259; vii, 86, 224, 362; viii, 282; ix, 74  
 importance of, i, 61  
 visited by Kai Khusráw, iii, 20  
 Kai Khusráw and Kai Káuś go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258  
 Khátún, wife of Khán, sent to serve at, vii, 5  
 Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 86, 94  
 Núshírwán visits, vii, 250, 363  
 Ázar Afrúz, third son of Asfandiyár, v, 81  
 Ázarakhsh (Ázargashasp, Ázar Ábádágán *q.v.*), Fire-temple, i, 61  
 importance of, i, 61  
 Ázarbáiján (Atropatene *q.v.*), province in north-western Persia, i, 9, 61; ii, 336; iv, 136; v, 16; vi, 198, 203; vii, 160, 214  
 meaning of, i, 56  
 Ázargashasp, spirit of the lightning, i, 73, 248, 309, 349; ii, 57, 294, 345; iii, 23, 53, 72, 92, 97, 114, 194, 276, 327; iv, 84, 100, 147, 175, 275, 307, 360; vi, 381; vii, 21, 79, 232; viii, 46, 122, 152, 176, 245, 256, 415  
 temple of (Ázar Ábádágán *q.v.*), iv, 136, 258, 259; vii, 89, 250, 317, 365; viii, 68, 184, 210 and *note*  
 visited by Kai Khusráw, iii, 20

- Ázargashasp, temple of Kai  
   Khusrau and Kai Káuś  
   go on a pilgrimage to,  
   iv, 258  
   referred to, iv, 264  
   =Gushasp *q.v.*, vi, 212  
   and *note*  
 Bahrán Gúr visits, vii,  
   86, 139  
   high priest of, converts  
   Sapínúd to Zoroastrian-  
   ism, vii, 139  
   Núshírwán visits, vii, 250,  
   363  
   Khusrau Parwíz visits,  
   viii, 283, 307, 312  
 Ázargashasp, Íránian warrior,  
   viii, 296  
 Ázar Makán, father of Farrukh-  
   zád, viii, 408  
 Ázarndukht, Sháh, 175, v, 294 ;  
   ix, 56, 59, 69  
   reproaches Kubád, ix, 7  
   end of, ix, 59, 60  
 Ázarnarsí, son of Hurmuzd son  
   of Narsí, vi, 318  
 Azdites, Arab tribe, i, 11  
 Azhi, Azi (Daháka, Zakhák *q.v.*),  
   i, 142 ; ii, 81
- B
- BÁBAK, Tribal King. *See* Pápak.  
 Bábak, muster-master of Núshír-  
   wán  
   bidden to enrol the host,  
   167, vii, 230  
   insists on Núshírwán's at-  
   tendance for enrolment,  
   vii, 231  
   asks pardon of the Sháh, vii,  
   232  
 Bábar, founder of the Mogul  
   dynasty in India  
   resolutions of, as to wine-  
   drinking, vii, 75 *note*  
 Babbalestad, nonce name given  
   by Asfandiyár to Zábul-  
   istán, v, 216  
 Bábil (Babylon *q.v.*), 160

- Babr-i-Bayán, a surcoat of leo-  
   pard or tiger skin worn by  
   Rustam in battle, iii, 184,  
   186  
   referred to, iii, 278  
 Babylon (Bábil, gate of the god),  
   city on the left bank of  
   the Euphrates, now repre-  
   sented by the modern  
   Hillah on the right bank,  
   ii, 80 ; iii, 286 ; vi, 17,  
   31, 81, 83 ; viii, 194, 249 ;  
   ix, 65, 92  
   hanging gardens of, v, 293  
   Sikandar marches toward,  
   vi, 176, 178  
   prodigious birth at, vi, 81,  
   180  
   Sikandar sickens at, vi, 181  
   dies at, vi, 81, 183  
   Zakhák king of, ix, 65  
 Babylonia, ii, 80, 81  
 Babylonian, vi, 254  
   script, vi, 320  
 Bacchus, Saint and Martyr, viii,  
   188  
 Bactria, region between the  
   Hindu Kush and the  
   Oxus, vi, 32, 198  
 Bactrian plains, iii, 10  
   camels, viii, 47 ; ix, 93  
 Badakshán, region south of the  
   Upper Oxus and east of  
   Balkh, famous for its  
   rubies, iv, 65, 192  
   signet-ring of, i, 300  
   gem of, vi, 382 and *note*  
 Bádán-Pírúz (Shahrám - Pírúz,  
   Ardabíl *q.v.*), city built  
   by Sháh Pírúz in Ázar-  
   báiján, 166, vii, 160, 163  
 Badar, Badr, battle of, ii, 337  
   *note*, v, 166  
 Bád Áwar, treasure viii., 406,  
   and *note*, ix., 20.  
 Baeton, Greek writer, *temp.*  
   Alexander the Great, vi,  
   12  
 Baghdád, city on the Tigris,  
   founded by the 'Ab-  
   básid Khalífa Al Mansúr

Baghdád—*cont.*

- as his capital in A.D. 762  
on the site of an old Baby-  
lonian city (Baghdadu),  
161, 165, i, 14, 160; iii,  
35; iv, 147, 256; v, 28;  
vi, 254, 290, 322, 327;  
vii, 83 and *note*; viii, 109  
*note*, 112, 174, 193, 203,  
393; ix, 68  
Ardshír Pápakán enthroned  
at, vi, 258  
Yazdagird quits, ix, 88  
Persian settlement of, ix, 67  
raided by Arabs, ix, 67  
Bágiz, vi, 32  
Bagoas, vi, 29  
Bahár, district in Turkistán  
where Siyáwushgird was  
built, ii, 286  
Bahman (Vohu Manau), ame-  
shaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286,  
327; v, 16; vi, 362 and  
*note*  
Yasht, Pahlaví Text, vii, 188  
month and day, iv, 81 *note*,  
v, 310; vii, 31 and  
*note*  
Bahman (Ardshír, Artaxerxes),  
son of Asfandiyár, Sháh,  
156, 157, i, 42; ii, 9;  
v, 81, 166, 251, 254, 293,  
297, 303; vi, 20 *note*, 34  
and *note*, 49, 200, 213,  
270 and *note*; viii, 270  
eldest son of Asfandiyár, v,  
80  
Asfandiyár resigns the host  
to, v, 82  
hears of Asfandiyár's im-  
prisonment, v, 85  
goes with others to solace  
him, v, 85  
accompanies Asfandiyár  
from Gumbadán, v, 103  
sent on an embassy, v,  
179 *seq.*  
crosses the Hírmund, v, 182  
coming of, reported to Zál,  
v, 182  
interview of, with Zál, v, 183

- Bahman, follows Rustam to the  
hunting-ground, v, 184  
tries to kill Rustam, v,  
184  
interview of, with Rustam,  
v, 185 *seq.*  
entertained by Rustam, v,  
186  
astonished at Rustam's  
appetite, v, 186  
leaves Rustam, v, 190  
gives Rustam's answer to  
Asfandiyár, v, 191  
Asfandiyár's wrath with, v  
191  
resigns his seat at the feast  
to Rustam, v, 200  
informs Asfandiyár of the  
slaying of Núsh Ázar and  
Míhr-i-Núsh, v, 227  
hears of Asfandiyár's over-  
throw, v, 244  
confided to Rustam by  
Asfandiyár, v, 248  
Zawára warns Rustam  
against, v, 250  
remains with Rustam, v,  
252, 256  
instructed by Rustam and  
profits thereby, v, 256  
Gushtásp advised by Já-  
másp to write to, v, 258  
Gushtásp's letter of recall  
to, v, 258  
equipped by Rustam for his  
journey, v, 258  
welcomed and called Ard-  
shír by Gushtásp, v, 259  
and *note*  
long arms of, v, 281  
appointed by Gushtásp to  
succeed him, v, 279  
historical position of, in  
Persian legend, v, 281  
ascends the throne and har-  
angues the chiefs on the  
vengeance due for Asfan-  
diyár, v, 283  
invades Sistán, v, 284 *seq.*  
sends a hostile message to  
Zál, v, 285

- Bahman, rejects Zál's conciliatory overtures, v, 286  
 sacks Zál's palace, v, 286  
 pillages Zábulistán, v, 287  
 fights, defeats, and executes Farámarz, v, 288  
 Bishútan intercedes for Zál with, v, 288  
 stops the pillage of Zábul and releases Zál, v, 289  
 quits Zábul by Bishútan's advice, v, 290  
 passes over his son Sásán and nominates Humái and her issue as successors to the throne, v, 291  
 death of, v, 294  
 referred to, v, 310  
 Bahman, son of Ardawán, 160, 161, vi, 202, 225, 227, 260  
 made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*  
 referred to, vi, 222  
 bidden by Ardawán to seek out Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223  
 wounded and put to flight by Ardshír Pápakán and Tabák, vi, 227  
 escapes to Hind after the defeat of Ardawán, vi, 228  
 urges his sister to poison Ardawán, vi, 259  
 Bahman, Iránian magnate, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 312; viii, 22  
 Bahman, castle of, in Ázarbáiján, 146, ii, 336, 405 *seq.*  
 Bahrain, group of islands off the Arabian shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 330; ix, 68  
 Bahrám, genius, iii, 287, 328; vii, 406 and *note*  
 day, viii, 279  
 fatal to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 337 and *note*, 339 and *note*  
 Bahrám, moralist, quoted by Firdausí, ii, 186  
 Bahrám (Vardanés), son of Gúdarz and brother of Gív, Iránian hero and Parthian king, 145, 147, 148; ii, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 85, 127, 138, 144, 158, 249, 257, 258, 271, 290, 318, 338, 340; iii, 13, 15, 19, 43, 46 *seq.*, 67, 72, 95 *seq.*, 114, 116, 132, 200, 214, 232; iv, 8, 312; vi, 197  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*  
 goes with Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226  
 put in command by Siyáwush, ii, 250, 257  
 interviews Farúd, iii, 47 *seq.*  
 Farúd presents his mace to, iii, 50  
 reports his interview with Farúd to Tús, iii, 51  
 tries to save Farúd, iii, 52  
 reproaches the Iránians, iii, 66  
 slays Kabúda, iii, 74  
 rescues the crown of Rívníz, iii, 94  
 loses his whip, iii, 11, 95  
 becomes fey, iii, 95  
 succours a wounded brother, iii, 97  
 finds his whip, iii, 95  
 loses his horse, iii, 95  
 set on by Turkmans, iii, 98  
 Rúín, iii, 99  
 wounds Rúín, iii, 99  
 interviews Pírán, iii, 99  
 attacked by Tazháv, iii, 101  
 found by Gív, iii, 102  
 death and burial of, iii, 104  
 Bahrám, son of Zarasp, Iránian hero, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
 commands the host in Zarír's absence, iv, 360  
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362

- Bahrám, Iránian warrior or king, iv, 268
- Bahrám = Ardawán, vi, 197, 210
- Bahrám, son of Pirúz, Iránian warrior, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Bahrám, father of Shírwí *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251, 262
- Bahrám, son of Urmuzd, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran I), 162, vi, 3  
receives the throne from, and is counselled by, Urmuzd, vi, 303 *seq.*  
mourns for Urmuzd, vi, 306  
Reign of, vi, 307 *seq.*  
Note on, vi, 307  
appoints his successor and dies, vi, 309  
Mání and, vi, 327
- Bahrám, son of Bahrám, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran II), 162, vi, 3, 308  
appointed to succeed his father, vi, 309  
Reign of, vi, 310  
Note on, vi, 310  
story told of, vi, 310
- Bahrám, son of Shápúr, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran IV), 163, vi, 3, 371  
Reign of, vi, 368  
Note on, vi, 368  
ruler of Kirmán, vi, 368  
title of, vi, 313, 368  
seal of, vi, 368  
Tabari's account of, vi, 368  
daughter of, vi, 369  
resigns the throne to his brother, vi, 369  
dies, vi, 369
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, 172, viii, 75, 163, 245  
reported slain, viii, 128  
returns with captive sorcerer, viii, 128  
speech of, viii, 166  
related to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 187  
wife of viii, 187
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, wife of, warns Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247  
pursues Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 233  
besieges Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 236  
beguiled by Bandwí, viii, 236, 245  
returns with Bandwí to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238  
blamed by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238  
given custody of Bandwí, viii, 238  
slain by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247
- Bahrám, Iránian general, left in charge of host by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 296
- Bahrám, father, in Persian Tabari, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77
- Bahrám, name of, inscribed on cup incites Khusrau Parwiz to afflict Rai, viii, 365 and *note*
- Bahrám Ázarmihán, Iránian scribe, 170  
Hurmuzd attempts to suborn, viii, 85 *seq.*  
reveals state-secret to Hurmuzd, viii, 88  
put to death, viii, 89
- Bahrám Bahrámiyán, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran III), 162, vi, 3, 316, 324, 334  
Reign of, vi, 313  
Note on, vi, 313  
miscalled "Kirmánsháh," vi, 313, 368  
appoints his son to succeed him, vi, 314, 315
- Bahrám Chúbína, son of Gas-hasp, marchlord of Rai, Persian warrior and usurper, 170-173, i, 14; vi, 209, 250; viii, 70, 73, 184, 187, 199, 209, 214, 215, 343 *seq.*, 352 *seq.*

Bahrám Chúbína—*cont.*

- 356 *seq.*, 360, 383; ix, 6,  
15, 16, 22, 91, 105  
Romance of, viii, 72 *seq.*,  
187, 191, 304 *note*; ix, 5  
Nöldeke on, viii, 73  
account of, viii, 72  
seller of sheep's heads and,  
viii, 74, 107  
dream of, viii, 75  
withholding of booty by,  
viii, 76, 148  
insult of Hurmuzd to, viii,  
76  
defeat of, in Lazic war, viii,  
76  
sends swords to Hurmuzd,  
viii, 76  
parentage of, viii, 76, 77  
malicious speech about, viii,  
77, 150  
coinage of, viii, 77, 173  
brought to notice of Hur-  
muzd, viii, 98  
described, viii, 98, 206  
identified by Zād Farrukh,  
viii, 99  
sent for by Hurmuzd, viii,  
100  
consulted by Hurmuzd, viii,  
100  
made commander-in-chief,  
viii, 102  
selects his troops, viii, 102  
justifies his method in so  
doing, viii, 104  
receives Rustam's banner  
from Hurmuzd, viii, 105  
Mihrán as recorder from  
Hurmuzd, viii, 106  
marches from Taisafūn, viii,  
106  
refuses to be recalled, viii,  
108  
marches to Khūzistān, viii,  
109 and *note*  
hay-seller and, viii, 109  
marches toward Dāma-  
ghān, viii, 109  
parley of, with Faghfūr,  
viii, 112

- Bahrám Chúbína, refuses Sāwa's  
offers, viii, 113 *seq.*, 117  
*seq.*  
counselled by Kharrād, viii,  
121  
arrays his host, viii, 122  
prayer of, before battle,  
viii, 123  
encourages the Íránians  
against Sāwa's sorcery,  
*etc.*, viii, 124 *seq.*  
defeats and slays Sāwa, viii,  
126  
doings of, after battle with  
Sāwa, viii, 130  
rewarded by Hurmuzd, viii,  
133  
ordered to attack Parmúda,  
viii, 133  
holds revel in a garden,  
viii, 135  
attacked by and defeats  
Parmúda, viii, 135 *seq.*  
besieges Parmúda in Áwāza,  
viii, 138  
informs Hurmuzd, viii, 138  
negotiates for surrender of  
Áwāza with Parmúda,  
viii, 138 *seq.*  
receives surrender of, and  
insults, Parmúda, viii, 143  
blamed by Kharrād and  
archscribe, viii, 144  
tries to appease Parmúda,  
viii, 145  
has inventory made of the  
wealth in Áwāza, viii, 147  
sends Ízid Gashasp with  
spoil to Írán, viii, 148  
Hurmuzd begins to suspect,  
viii, 151  
advances of, to Khán re-  
jected, viii, 153  
goes to Balkh, viii, 153  
guided by an onager, viii,  
156  
incited to seek the king-  
ship, viii, 158  
change in, viii, 158  
questioned by Kharrād, viii,  
158

Bahrám Chúbína, sends Yalán-sína after Kharrád and archscribe, viii, 159  
 pardons archscribe, viii, 160  
 Luck of, viii, 162  
 renounces allegiance to Hurmuzd, viii, 162  
 intercepts the royal letters, viii, 163  
 consults the chiefs, viii, 163  
 becomes friends with the Khán, viii, 172  
 appoints a prince for Khurásán, *etc.*, viii, 173  
 marches to Rai, viii, 173  
 avenges murder of Ayín Gashasp, viii, 181  
 historical campaign of, against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 189  
 carline and, viii, 189, 303  
 marches to the Nahrawán, viii, 201  
 spies' report of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 201  
 Khusrau Parwíz marches to meet, viii, 203  
 interview of, with, viii, 204 *seq.*  
 tampers with troops of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 225  
 combat of, with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 228  
 arrives at Taisafún, viii, 231  
 sends Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, in pursuit of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233  
 blames Bahrám, viii, 238  
 chides, warns and imprisons Bandwí, viii, 238  
 addresses the magnates, viii, 239  
 elected Sháh, viii, 243  
 gives malcontents three days to quit Írán, viii, 244  
 plot against, viii, 245 *seq.*  
 warned, viii, 247  
 slays Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, viii, 247  
 hears of Bandwí's escape, viii, 248

Bahrám Chúbína, deceived by forged letters, viii, 287, 293, 294  
 marches against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 287  
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, viii, 288  
 arrays his host, viii, 289  
 fights with and slays Kút, viii, 290  
 sends back corpse of Kút, viii, 291  
 worsts Rûmans, viii, 292  
 "Harvest of," viii, 292  
 charges and routs Khusrau Parwíz' centre, viii, 294  
 fights with Gurdwí, viii, 294  
 goes to fight Khusrau Parwíz and his body-guard, viii, 297  
 leaves Jánfurúz in charge of host, viii, 297  
 puts to flight and pursues Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 298  
 Surúsh saves Khusrau Parwíz from, viii, 299  
 deserted by his chiefs, viii, 302  
 retreats, viii, 302  
 releases Nastúh, viii, 306  
 goes to Rai, viii, 306  
 welcomed by Khán, viii, 316  
 asks oath of Khán, viii, 317  
 counsels Khán to resist Makátúra, viii, 318  
 challenged by Makátúra, viii, 319  
 fight of, with Makátúra, viii, 320  
 Khán sends gifts to, viii, 321  
 asked by Khán's wife to avenge death of her daughter on lion-ape, viii, 324  
 battle of, with lion-ape, viii, 325  
 extradition of, demanded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 328  
 urges Khán to make war on Írán, viii, 330  
 sets forth for Írán, viii, 331

- Bahrám Chúbína, Kharrád at-tempts to prejudice, with Khán, viii, 333  
arrives at Marv, viii, 336  
fatal day of, viii, 337, 339  
Kulún seeks interview with, viii, 339  
stabs, viii, 340  
sister of, mouras, viii, 340  
dying speech of, viii, 341  
makes Yalán-sína his man-datory, viii, 342  
letter of, to Khán, viii, 343  
burial of, viii, 343  
name of, on cup, viii, 365 and *note*  
assassination of, referred to, ix, 4
- Bahrám Gúr, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran V), 163-165, i, 42; vi, 3, 250, 325, 329 and *note*, 394 *seq.*; vii, 160, 164, 165, 170 and *note*, 174, 178, 187, 334, 359; viii, 75, 129 and *note*; ix, 26, 77  
birth of, vi, 375  
Yazdagird advised by mag-nates to choose governor for, vi, 376  
put in Munzir's charge, vi, 372, 378  
goes with Munzir to Yaman, vi, 378  
nurses of, vi, 378  
education of, vi, 378 *seq.*  
obtains his tutors' dismissal, vi, 380  
makes choice of steeds, vi, 380  
slave-girls, vi, 381  
goes to the chase with a slave-girl, vi, 382  
markmanship of, vi, 383 *seq.*  
slays his slave-girl, vi, 384 and *note*  
goes hunting with Nu'mán and Munzir, vi, 384  
picture of, hunting, sent to Yazdagird, vi, 385
- Bahrám Gúr, returns with Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386  
complains of Yazdagird to Munzir, vi, 387  
receives advice and his slave-girl from Munzir, vi, 388  
falls into disgrace at court, vi, 389  
asks Tainúsh to intercede for him, vi, 389  
released and returns to Mun-zir, vi, 390  
welcomed by Munzir, vi, 390  
hears of his father's death and of the election of Khusrau, vi, 395, 396  
claims the kingship and is supported by Munzir, vi, 396 *seq.*  
interview of, with Jawánwí, vi, 398  
negotiates with the Írán-ians, vi, 401 *seq.*  
Íránians produce examples of Yazdagird's cruelty to, vi, 404  
addresses the Íránians, vi, 404  
proposes to decide the ques-tion of the kingship by ordeal, vi, 405  
promises to rule justly, vi, 406  
agrees to be the first to face the ordeal, vi, 409  
Reign of, 164, vii, 3 *seq.*  
Note on, vii, 3 *seq.*  
length of, vii, 3  
largely legendary, vii, 3  
character of, vii, 3  
resembles James V of Scot-land, vii, 3  
accession of, vii, 7  
age of, at, vi, 373  
inaugural measures at, vii, 7 *seq.*  
holds eight days' court, vii, 7 *seq.*  
appoints ministers, vii, 4, 8, 11

- Bahrám Gúr, sends letters to the chiefs, vii, 8  
 pardons his enemies, vii, 9  
 makes festival for three days, vii, 9  
 rewards Nu'mán and Munzir, vii, 10  
 honours Khusrau, vii, 10  
 remits arrears of taxes, vii, 11  
 restores the nobles exiled by Yazdagird to their honours, vii, 11  
 proclamations of, vii, 12, 79, 82  
 persecutes the Christians, vi, 373; vii, 4  
 war of, with Rûm, vii, 4  
 adventures of, 164, vii, 4, 12 *seq.*  
 forbids wine-drinking, vii, 23  
 allows wine-drinking again, vii, 25  
 whip of, vii, 47, 54, 63, 64  
 equipage of, for the chase, vii, 48, 76  
 loses and finds his tughral, vii, 49, 50  
 visit of, to Barzîn, vii, 49 *seq.*  
 marries Barzîn's daughters, vii, 53  
 hunting-feats of, vi, 383 *seq.*; vii, 54, 55, 77, 80, 81  
 visits a jeweller, vii, 56 *seq.*  
 course of life of, bewailed by Rûzbih, vii, 56  
 many wives of, vii, 56  
 asks and obtains Arzû in marriage, vii, 61 *seq.*  
 visit of, to Farshîdward, vii, 68  
 forbids all plundering, vii, 79  
 ear-marks and brands onagers, vii, 81  
 remits the tribute of Barkûh and Jaz, vii, 82  
 visits Baghdád, vii, 83  
 holds revel at Baghdád, vii, 83
- Bahrám Gúr reproaches Rûzbih for parsimony, vii, 83  
 reported to be given up to pleasure, vii, 84  
 reproached by his chiefs, vii, 84  
 secret preparations of, against the Khán, vii, 85  
 summons his chiefs, vii, 85  
 levies a host, vii, 86  
 makes Narsî viceroy, vii, 86  
 goes to Ázar Ábâdagán, vii, 86, 94, 139  
 march of, to Marv against the Khán, vii, 89  
 defeats the Khán at Kashmihán, vii, 4, 5, 90, 170 *note*  
 marches on Bukhárá, vii, 90  
 defeats the Turkmans, vii, 91  
 grants peace to the Turkmans, vii, 91  
 boundary pillar of, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164  
 makes Shahrá ruler of Túrán, vii, 92  
 goes to Istakhr, vii, 95  
 makes gifts of treasure, vii, 95, 96  
 deposits the Khán's crown in a Fire-temple, vii, 95  
 goes to Taisafún, vii, 95  
 welcomed by Narsî and the chiefs, vii, 96  
 remits taxes for seven years, vii, 5, 97  
 happiness of the world under, vii, 99  
 bestows Khurásán on Narsî, vii, 99  
 inquires about Cæsar's envoy, vii, 100  
 gives audience to Cæsar's envoy, vii, 101  
 Cæsar's questions to, vii, 102  
 parting gifts of, to Cæsar's envoy, vii, 106  
 addresses the archmagés, vii, 106

- Bahrám Gúr, wazír complains of Shangul to, vii, 109  
 writes to Shangul, vii, 110.  
 visit of, to Hind, vii, 5, 112 *seq.*  
   motive of, vii, 5  
   fabulous, vii, 6  
 bears his own letter to Hind, vii, 112  
 audience of, with Shangul, vii, 112  
 entertained by Shangul, vii, 116  
 wrestles before Shangul, vii, 117  
 displays his marksmanship before Shangul, vii, 118  
 calls himself Barzwí, vii, 121  
 slays monsters, vii, 121 *seq.*  
 offered a daughter and great advancement by Shangul, vii, 127  
 takes to wife one of Shangul's daughters, vii, 128  
 receives an invitation from Faghfúr, vii, 129  
 reply of, vii, 130  
 tells Sapínúd of his wish to quit Hind, vii, 131  
 meets some Iránian merchants and pledges them to secrecy, vii, 133  
 feigns sickness, vii, 134  
 escapes with Sapínúd, vii, 134  
 reproached by Shangul, vii, 135  
 makes a league with Shangul, vii, 137  
 welcome of, on his return, vii, 137  
 addresses the nobles, vii, 138  
 praised by the nobles, vii, 139  
 makes a new treaty with Shangul, vii, 140  
 entertains Shangul and seven other kings, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Bahrám Gúr, appointed Shangul's heir, vii, 143  
 parting gifts of, to Shangul, vii, 144  
 takes account of his treasures, vii, 144  
 term of life of, foretold by the astrologers, vii, 144  
 resolves to levy no more taxes, vii, 145  
 unsuccessful attempts of, to benefit his subjects, vii, 146 *seq.*  
 Gipsies introduced into Irán by, vii, 6, 149  
 appoints Yazdagird his successor, vii, 150  
 death of, vii, 6, 150  
 Firdausí's reflections on, vii, 150, 151  
 mourning for, vii, 151  
 Bahrám-Gushnasp, father, in Arabic Tabari, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77  
 Bahrám Tal, viii, 138 and *note*  
 Baidá (White), a town in Párs a few miles north of Shiráz, not to be confounded with the stronghold known as "White Castle" further north, i, 236; vi, 198 and *note*, 199  
 Baigand, city and fortress (Kuhandizh?) between Bukhárá and the Oxus, vii, 176  
 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151  
   marches from, iv, 154  
 Máhwí encamps at, ix, 118  
 Baisinghar Khán, grandson of Tímúr the Lame, life of Firdausí by, i, 23  
   edition of Sháhnáma of, i, 23  
   preface to, i, 67  
 Baitu'l Mukaddas (Gang-i-Dizhukht), Zakhák's capital (Babylon?), also an Arab name for Jerusalem, i, 161

- Baitu'l Harám, the Kaaba *q.v.*, vi, 119, 121
- Báj, Zoroastrian system of praying, i, 80
- Bakhtagán, father of Búzurmíhr, vii, 279
- Baku, town on the peninsula of Apsheron on the western shores of the Caspian and a chief centre of the petroleum industry, i, 58 *note*
- Bakyír, mountain where Afrá-siyáb had a palace, iv, 136
- Balaam, prophet, v, 15
- Bal'amí, Abú 'Alí Muhammad al-, (died A.D. 996), Sámánid minister and compiler of the Persian version of Tabarí's Annals, vii, 5
- Balas (Balásh *q.v.*), Sásánian Sháh, vii, 170 *seq.*
- Balásh, king of Kirmán, slain by Ardashír Pápakán, vi, 205
- Balásh (Balas), Sásánian Sháh, 166, vi, 3  
appointed regent by Píruz, vii, 164  
hears of the overthrow of Píruz, vii, 169  
Reign of, vii, 170 *seq.*  
Note on, vii, 170  
character of, vii, 171  
introduces public baths, vii, 171  
end of, vii, 171  
title of, vii, 171  
accession of, vii, 171  
Súfarai's letter to, vii, 173  
welcomes Súfarai on his return from Túrán, vii, 181  
dethroned, vii, 182
- Balkh, city in northern Afghánistán, 154, 155, ii, 101, 228, 231, 242, 246, 249; iii, 153, 192; iv, 19, 20, 65, 156, 157, 255; v, 18, 20, 29, 31, 33, 41, 48, 73, 86, 87, 91, 104, 171, 255; Palkh—*cont.*  
vii, 94, 331, 359, 384;  
viii, 22, 74, 95, 153, 159, 161, 173; ix, 116  
ancient seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7  
situated on ancient trade-route, i, 57  
seat of the Magi, i, 60 *seq.*  
Zoroaster's successful evangel at, i, 61; v, 18  
Zoroaster slain at, i, 61 v, 92, 93  
rhyme-word, Firdausí's difficulty with, i, 74  
Sháhnáma, scene of, shifted to, ii, 9.; iv, 317  
Siyáwush defeats Garsíwaz at, and takes, ii, 229  
Luhrásp makes, his capital, iv, 713  
becomes a devotee at, v, 31  
Kuhram sent by Arjásp to attack, v, 90  
stormed, v, 92, 93  
Luhrásp slain at, v, 91, 93  
spoil of, sent away by Arjásp, v, 108  
Asfandiyár quits, to invade Túrán, v, 120  
aphorist of, viii, 221  
bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
- Balúch, Balúchistán (Gedrosia, Makrán), country, 167, ii, 80, 226; iii, 34; iv, 136; vi, 12, 70; vii, 340  
Ardashír Pápakán's ill success against, vii, 242  
Núshírwán conquers, vii, 242  
becomes prosperous, vii, 362
- Balúchís, people, vii, 241 *seq.*  
ravages of, vii, 217, 241  
chastised by Núshírwán, vii, 242
- Bálwí, Íránian noble, 172, viii, 257, *seq.*  
deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 273

- Eálwi, praised by Caesar, viii, 279  
receives Chách, viii, 314
- Bámdát, father of Mazdak, vii, 188
- Bámiyán, city in Afghánistán, north of the Kuh-i-Baba mountains and famous for its Buddhist remains, iv, 65
- Banák, Íránian chief, *temp.* Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202
- Bandáwa, Sindian chief, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 175
- Band-i-Kaisar, dam at Shúsh-tar, vi, 295
- Bandwí, Íránian noble *temp.* Kubád, vii, 207
- Bandwí, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 171-173, viii, 200, 202, 204 *seq.*, 224, 225, 227, 231, 234, 245 *seq.*, 289, 296, 298, 356, 357; ix, 4  
imprisonment of, viii, 77, 176
- Gustaham and, escape and revolt, viii, 182  
referred to, viii, 189  
put to death, viii, 191, 355  
accompanies Khusrau Parwíz in his flight, viii, 231  
turns back and murders Hurmuzd, viii, 232  
rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233  
promises to save Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 234  
disguises himself as Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 235  
beguiles Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, viii, 236, 245  
imprisoned by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238
- Bandwí, Bahrám Chúbína hears of escape of, viii, 248  
entertained by Mausíl, viii, 249  
goes with Mausíl to meet Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 282  
Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
- Eandwí, causes defection of Bahrám Chúbína's chiefs, viii, 302  
insults of, to Niyátús, viii, 309, 310  
reconciled to Niyátús, viii, 311  
minister of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 313  
adherents of, beheaded, viii, 370  
execution of, referred to, ix, 16, 104
- Baní Tayy, Arab tribe, viii, 188
- Banquets, the Seven, of Núshírwán, 168. *See* Núshírwán.
- Bánúgashasp, daughter of Rustam and wife of Gív, ii, 4  
stays with Rustam while Gív seeks Kai Khusrau, ii, 365  
suitors of, ii, 383, 384  
rejoins Gív, ii, 395
- Bár, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 30
- Bár, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Baráhám, a Jew, 164, vii, 13  
entertains Bahrám Gúr scurvily, vii, 16 *seq.*  
goods of, confiscated, vii, 20
- Bárbad, minstrel, 175, viii, 396 *seq.*, 406, ix, 29 and *note*  
supersedes Sarkash, viii, 399  
visits Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 29  
lament of, ix, 30
- Barbar, Barbaristán, town and country (British Somaliland), 143, ii, 82 *seq.*, 90, 93, 98; iii, 207, 269; iv, 136, 148; vi, 114; vii, 327; viii, 381  
identification of, ii, 79  
king of, ii, 83, 94, 95  
taken prisoner by Guráza, ii, 97  
sends embassy to Gush-tásp, v, 75

- Barda', city in Arrán *q.v.*, now in ruins, on the Tharthúr a tributary of the Kur, iv, 147; vii, 341; viii, 99, 100, 184, 222, 226; ix, 15  
Afrásiyáb takes refuge in a cave near, iv, 259
- Bardí. *See* Baidá.
- Barkúh, city between Istakhr and Yazd, vii, 79, 80  
tribute of, remitted by Bah-rám Gúr, vii, 82
- Barmáíún (Purmáya *q.v.*), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91
- Bármán, son of Wisa, Túránian hero, 142, 144, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 129, 130, 150, 349; iii, 79, 210; iv, 149  
spies out the Íránian host, i, 346  
challenges the Íránians to single combat and slays Kubád, i, 347  
rewarded by Afrásiyáb, i, 348  
besieges Gazhdaham in White Castle, i, 354  
defeated and slain by Káran, i, 354  
revival of, in legend, ii, 119  
marches on Írán, ii, 228  
defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229  
chosen to fight Ruhhám, iv, 97  
slain by Ruhhám, iv, 102
- Barrier, Alexander's (Sikan-dar's), in the Caucasus, 160, i, 16, vi, 189, 249  
legend of, vi, 78  
site of, vi, 79  
described, vi, 164
- Barsaentes, satrap, vi, 32  
murderer of Darius Codo-manus, vi, 32  
executed, vi, 32
- Barsám, general of Bízhan, ix, 97, 117  
marches on Marv, ix, 97, 116  
Máhwí's conduct to, ix, 117
- Barám, pursues and overtakes Máhwí, ix, 118  
captures Máhwí, ix, 119
- Barsam, the sacred twigs, imple-ment in Zoroastrian reli-gious ceremonial, i, 80
- Barsine (Stateira), eldest daugh-ter of Darius Codomanus, vi, 33  
marries Alexander the Great, vi, 33
- Barta, Íránian hero, 151, iii, 25, 92; iv, 149  
chosen to fight with Kuh-ram, iv, 97  
slays Kuhram, iv, 105
- Bartás, region in Turkistán, ix, 19
- Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire - temple on the Binalúd Kuh, south west of Tús and Mashad in Khurásán, i, 237; ii, 107; vi, 391; viii, 216  
Íránians worship at, vi, 400
- Barzín, Fire-temple built by Luhrásp at Balkh, iv, 318
- Barzín, Íránian hero, i, 365; ii, 12, 22, 73; iii, 25, 127, 273
- Barzín, father of Bihzád, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395
- Barzín, Íránian noble, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, 164  
visited by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 49  
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 50 *seq.*  
gives his daughters in mar-riage to Bahrám Gúr, 164, vii, 53
- Barzín, father of Rád and Dád, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 86
- Barzín, father of Ustád, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
- Barzín, father of Shádán, vii, 382, 423
- Barzín, bower of, vii, 83
- Barzín, general of Núshírwán, viii, 17

- Barzin, father of Kharrád, 171-173, viii, 74, 76, 190, 205 and *passim*, ix, 4, 9, 12, 27
- Barzín, father of Jahn, viii, 391
- Barzví, nonce-name assumed by Bahráw Gúr in Hind, vii, 121, 134
- Barzví, physician and sage, *temp.* Núshírwán, 169, vii, 383
- goes on a mission to Hind, vii, 424
- consults a sage, vii, 427
- hears of the book of Kalíla and Dimna (Fables of Bidpai), and procures it for Núshírwán, vii, 427, 428
- translates the above into Pahlaví, vii, 382, 428
- asks boon of Núshírwán, vii, 429
- Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arab, ix, 68, 69
- founded by 'Umar, ix, 67
- Bastám, city near Dámaghán on the road to Nishápúr, vii, 357
- Bástán-náma (Khudái - náma), Firdausi's chief authority, v, 24, 27, 261; vi, 17, 84
- traditional origin of, i, 67
- discussed, i, 68
- translated into Arabic by Ibn Mukaffá', vi, 16, 373
- modern Persian, i, 67 *seq.*; vii, 382
- Bastavairi, Bastvar (*Nastúr q.v.*), v, 12, 25
- Bátarún (Marcian), Rúman general, viii, 41, 47, 52
- Baths, public, introduction of, by Balásh, vii, 171
- Battle of the Twelve Rukhs, 151, iv, 7 *seq.*, v, 29
- Firdausi's reflections on, iv, 98, 106
- Eleven Rukhs, 151, iv, 88
- arranged by Gúdarz and Pirán, iv, 95 *seq.*
- of the Bridge, ix, 5, 67
- Battlestead = Brazen Hold, v, 121
- Bazánúsh (Valerian, *q.v.*), 161
- defeat of, and capture by, Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 295
- single combat of, with Garshásp, vi, 297
- bridge built by, at Shúsh-tar, vi, 298
- Bazánúsh (Jovian *q.v.*), 162, 163, vi, 324, 326
- elected Emperor, vi, 353
- sues for peace, vi, 353
- accepts Shápúr's terms, vi, 355
- Bazh, suburb of Tús, i, 38
- Bázrangí, dynasty of Tribal kings, vi, 198
- Bázúr, Túránian warlock, iii, 128
- uses magic against the Iránians, iii, 128
- wounded by Ruhhám, iii, 129
- Beas (Hyphasis), easternmost of the rivers of the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Bedouins, i, 135, 179
- desert of the, iv, 148
- commanded by Zahir in Kai Khusrau's host, iv, 148
- Bel, Babylonian god, v, 293
- temple of, v, 293
- Belisarius, Roman general (A.D. 505-565), vii, 186, 187, 217, 218
- Berber, race in northern Africa, vi, 73
- Berbera, trading-station in the Gulf of Aden, ii, 79
- Berlin, viii, 192
- Berozias, Barzví *q.v.*, vii, 383
- Bessus, satrap, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 32
- assumes royal state in Bactria, vi, 32
- executed, vi, 32
- Bhima, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138, 139
- Bhután, Indian kingdom, between Assam and Thibet, vi, 81

- Bibliotheca*, of Diodorus, v, 293
- Bid, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93  
slain, ii, 59, 64; iii, 256;  
iv, 296; v, 204
- Bidád, city of Cannibals in the  
vicinity of Sughd, iii, 244  
*seq.*  
meaning of, iii, 244 *note*  
stormed by Rustam, iii, 246
- Bidirafsh (Vidrafsh), Túránian  
hero, 155, v, 24, 25, 41,  
51, 52, 62 *seq.*  
goes as envoy to Gushtásp,  
v, 37, 40 *seq.*  
returns with Gushtásp's  
answer, v, 44  
receives banner from Ar-  
jásp, v, 46  
commands one wing, v, 56  
volunteers to fight Zarír, v,  
62  
slays Zarír, v, 63  
fights Nastúr, v, 70  
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 70  
head of, presented to Gush-  
tásp, v, 71
- Bidpai, Indian sage, vii, 383  
Fables of (Book of Kalila  
and Dimna), brought to  
Persia, 169, vii, 213, 382
- Bih Áfrid, daughter of Gush-  
tásp, ii, 3; v, 22  
taken captive by the Turk-  
mans, v, 93, 94, 100  
goes with Humái to draw  
water and meets As-  
fandiyár, v, 147  
escapes from Arjásp's  
palace, v, 153  
laments over Asfandiyár, v,  
252  
reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
- Biháfridh, ancestor of Ardshír  
Pápakán, vi, 200
- Bih Ardshír, Seleucia *q.v.* as  
rebuilt by Ardshír Pápa-  
kán, vi, 254, 291 *note*,  
viii, 194, 196
- Bihbihán, town near the left  
bank of the Táb river in  
Párs, vii, 188
- Bihisht (Paradise), name of the  
country round Gang, iv,  
195
- Bihistún. *See* Bistún.
- Bihruz, a scribe *temp.* Bahrá-  
m Gúr, vii, 71 *seq.*  
makes an inventory of the  
goods of the miser  
Farshídwad, vii, 72
- Bihzád ("well bred"), the horse  
of Siyáwush and sub-  
sequently of Kai Khus-  
rau, 146, ii, 391; iv, 172,  
303  
Siyáwush's last charge to,  
ii, 312  
Farangís instructs Kai  
Khusrau how to obtain,  
ii, 374 *seq.*
- Bihzád, Gushtásp's horse, v, 56,  
69
- Bihzád, Iránian chief, *temp.*  
Yazdagird son of Shápúr,  
vi, 395; vii, 85 (?)
- Bihzád, Iránian chief, *temp.*  
Kubád son of Píruz, vii,  
207
- Binalúd, mountain-range, west  
of Mashhad, north of  
Nishápúr, v, 29
- Birds, Sikandar holds converse  
with, 160, vi, 160
- Birka-i-Ardshír, city in Párs  
founded by Ardshír Pápa-  
kán, vi, 290 and *note*
- Birmáya, cow, i, 151  
supplies the infant Faridún  
with milk, i, 151  
slain by Zakhák, i, 152, 153,  
162
- Birthmark, characteristic of  
Kaian race, ii, 372; iii,  
49 and *note*  
described, ii, 372; iii, 49  
Siyáwush's, iii, 49  
Kai Khusrau's, ii, 372; iii,  
49 and *note*  
Farúd's, iii, 49
- Bisá (Fasá, Pasá, city south of  
Lake Bakhtigán in Párs,  
vii, 89 ?)

- Bishop or prelate *q.v.*, iv, 341, 348  
 as militarist, i, 373, 378;  
 iv, 197; v, 306; vi, 352  
 advises Caesar, iv, 330  
 Nûshzâd's last requests to,  
 vii, 275
- Bishûtan (Peshô-tanu), brother  
 of Asfandiyâr, 156, 157,  
 v, 66, 117, 178, 179, 182,  
 195, 216, 223, 244 *seq.*,  
 249 *seq.*, 261, 288 *seq.*  
 an immortal, v, 12, 19  
 birth of, v, 32  
 commands the host during  
 Asfandiyâr's absence in  
 the Seven Stages, v, 122,  
 124, 126, 129, 132, 144,  
 150  
 Asfandiyâr praised by the  
 host and, v, 123, 125, 131,  
 133  
 revives Asfandiyâr after his  
 encounter with the dragon  
 v, 127  
 prays for deliverance from  
 the snow, v, 138  
 Asfandiyâr and, consult, v,  
 143  
 sees Asfandiyâr's signal and  
 approaches the Brazen  
 Hold, v, 150  
 passes himself off as Asfan-  
 diyâr, v, 143, 151, 152  
 joined by Asfandiyâr, v,  
 155  
 advises Asfandiyâr, v, 179  
 Asfandiyâr holds talk about  
 Rustam with, v, 192  
 advises Asfandiyâr to main-  
 tain friendly relations  
 with Rustam, v, 196, 217  
 Rustam served with un-  
 tempered wine by, v, 211  
 despair of, at the situation  
 between Rustam and  
 Asfandiyâr, v, 218  
 laments for Nûsh Âzar and  
 Mihr-i-Nûsh, v, 232  
 Asfandiyâr talks of the  
 fight with Rustam to, v,  
 240
- Bishûtan, hears of Asfandiyâr's  
 overthrow and laments  
 for him, v, 244  
 Rustam bewails Asfandiyâr  
 to, v, 246  
 Asfandiyâr's last charge to,  
 v, 249  
 heads Asfandiyâr's funeral  
 train, v, 251  
 displays the corpse of As-  
 fandiyâr, v, 253  
 reproaches Gushtâsp, v, 253  
 Jâmâsp, v, 254  
 consoles Katâyûn, v, 255  
 supports Rustam's over-  
 tures to Gushtâsp, v, 257  
 intended by Gushtâsp to be  
 Bahman's minister, v, 279  
 intercedes for Zâl, v, 288  
 intercession of, accepted, v,  
 289  
 counsels Bahman to quit  
 Zâbul, v, 290
- Bistâm (Gustaham *q.v.*), viii, 255  
 and *note*, 256
- Bistûn (Bagistana *i.e.* "Place of  
 God," Behistûn, Bîs-  
 tûn), a lofty rock a few  
 miles east of Kirmânshâh  
 and famous for its in-  
 scriptions, i, 379; ii, 128;  
 iii, 12, 184, 350; iv, 190;  
 v, 56, 184; vii, 61, 363;  
 viii, 209  
 inscription of Darius Hys-  
 taspis at, i, 6; v, 11  
 Gotarzes at, iii, 9, 11  
 = Zâl's white elephant, i, 328  
 = Rustam, v, 229
- Bîwarasp (Zahhâk), i, 72, 144  
 meaning of, i, 135
- Bîward, Tûrânian hero, iii, 161  
 comes to aid Pîrân, iii, 152
- Bîward, Îrânian chief *temp.*  
 Yazdagird son of Shâpûr,  
 vi, 395
- Bîzhan, Îrânian hero, son of Gîv,  
 147, 150-152, ii, 4, 366  
 and *note*; ii, 4, 366 and  
*note*; iii, 20, 45, 67, 76  
*seq.*, 81, 92, 101, 115, 121,

Bizhan—*cont.*

- 129, 130, 133, 139, 141,  
157 *seq.*, 211, 234, 247,  
248, 253, 259, 264, 271,  
284 *seq.*, 289, 330 *seq.*, 337  
*seq.*, 349, 350, 352 *seq.*;  
iv, 7, 13, 26 *seq.*, 56, 77,  
88, 91, 102, 123 *seq.*, 147,  
292; vi, 194  
favourite with the poet, iv, 8  
parentage of, iii, 324  
friendship of, with Gusta-  
ham the son of Gazhda-  
ham, iii, 15  
relations of, with Giv, iii, 15  
undertakes to slay Paláshán,  
iii, 26  
to carry off the crown  
and handmaid of Ta-  
zháv, iii, 27  
swears to avenge Zarásp, iii,  
59  
borrows a steed from  
Gustaham, iii, 59  
the mail of Siyáwush,  
iii, 60, 69  
worsts Farúd, iii, 62  
praises Farúd to Tús, iii, 62  
fights with Farúd, iii, 64  
Paláshán, iii, 70  
pursues Tazháv, iii, 77  
takes Ispanwí captive, iii, 78  
prowess of, with Káwa's  
standard, iii, 93  
shares his steed with Gusta-  
ham, iii, 95  
goes with Giv in quest of  
Bahrám, iii, 102  
attacks Bídád, iii, 244  
goes to summon Rustam,  
iii, 245  
worsted by Púládwand, iii,  
258  
Story of, and Manízha, 150,  
iii, 12, 285 *seq.*  
historical basis of, iii, 11  
Mohl on, iii, 285  
Firdausí on, iii, 287  
referred to, viii, 72  
volunteers to go to the help  
of the Irmánians, iii, 291

- Bizhan, goes to Irmán with  
Gurgín, iii, 292  
destroys the wild boars, iii,  
293  
envied by Gurgín, iii, 294  
steed of, iii, 296, 302, 313  
interview of, with Manízha's  
nurse, iii, 297  
visits Manízha, iii, 298  
drugged, iii, 299  
wakes in Afrásiyáb's palace,  
iii, 300  
holds revel with Manízha,  
iii, 300  
discovered by Garsíwaz, iii,  
302  
taken before Afrásiyáb, iii,  
303  
sentenced to death, iii, 304  
lament of, iii, 305  
imprisoned, iii, 309; v, 116  
searched for by Gurgín,  
iii, 310  
receives Rustam's ring, iii,  
340  
Rustam's conditions of re-  
lease for, iii, 345  
released, iii, 346  
pardons Gurgín, iii, 346  
joins in attack on Afrá-  
siyáb's palace, iii, 347  
presented to Kai Khúsráu  
by Rustam, iii, 354  
holds converse with Kai  
Khusrau, iii, 356  
desires to fight Húmán, iv,  
39  
asks Giv to lend him the  
mail of Siyáwush, iv, 40  
seeks Gúdarz' permission to  
fight Húmán, iv, 41  
receives the mail of Siyá-  
wush from Giv, iv, 45  
parleys with Húmán, iv,  
45  
returns after the fight in  
Húmán's armour, iv, 51,  
defeats night-attack and  
slays Nastíhan, iv, 54  
attacks with Giv Pírán's  
centre, iv, 83

- Bizhan, fights with Farshidward, iv, 87  
 chosen to fight with Rúin, iv, 97  
 slays Rúin, iv, 103  
 asks Gúdarz for help for Gustaham, iv, 117  
 rescues Gustaham, iv, 124 *seq.*, 132  
 brings back the corpses of Lahhák and Farshidward, iv, 126, 132  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275  
 Kai Khusrau gives audience to, and other nobles, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's gift to iv, 295  
 brings Luhrásp before Kai Khusrau, iv, 300  
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307  
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308  
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308  
 end of, iv, 309  
 Gúdarz' grief for, iv, 310, 312  
 sons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362  
 Bizhan, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210  
 Bizhan, Khán of Turks, 176, ix, 70, 96  
 Máhwí writes to, ix, 96  
 consults his minister, ix, 97  
 sends troops to Marv, ix, 97  
 Máhwí makes war on, ix, 113  
 marches against Máhwí, ix, 117
- Bizhan, Khán of Turks, lays ambush for Máhwí, ix, 118  
 sends Barsám in pursuit of Máhwí, ix, 118  
 hears of Máhwí's capture, ix, 119  
 puts Máhwí to death, ix, 120  
 goes mad and kills himself, ix, 120, 121  
 Black Div. *See* Div.  
 horse, Gushtásp's, v, 18  
 cured by Zarduhsht, v, 18  
 Stone, meteorite built into the wall of the Kaaba at Mecca, ii, 163 and *note*, vi, 65  
 Blest, Country of the, vi, 74, 76  
 Boars, wild, devastate Irmán, iii, 290  
 slain by Bizhan, iii, 293  
*Bombyx Mori. See* Silk.  
 Book of Kings, Firdausí's Sháh-náma, i, 43  
 Indication and Revision, Mas'údí's, vi, 252  
 quoted, vi, 252  
 Boot, golden. *See* Golden.  
 Borysthenes, river (Dnieper *q.v.*), iii, 191  
 Boulder of the Div Akwán, iii, 271, 343 *seq.*, 347  
 Rustam carried off on, iii, 276  
 flung into the sea with, iii, 278  
 raised from the sea, iii, 309  
 used to cover Bizhan's prison, iii, 309  
 removed from pit's mouth by Rustam iii, 345  
 Boundary-pillar, Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164  
 Bowl, the full, symbolism of, vi, 63  
 Brabantio, his warning to Othello, vi, 324  
 Brádrók-résh, a Karap, v, 15  
 slayer of Zarduhsht, v, 15  
 Brahman, Hindu priest, iii, 29; iv, 50; v, 207, vii, 425; ix, 21

- Brahmans (Gymnosophistæ), 159  
     vi, 64  
     Palladius on, vi, 61  
     country of, vi, 143, 147  
     hear of Sikandar's coming  
     and write to him, vi,  
     143  
     Sikandar's interview with,  
     vi, 67, 143 *seq.*  
     described, vi, 144  
     reply to Sikandar's ques-  
     tions, vi, 144 *seq.*  
     Sikandar quits, vi, 147  
 Brahmanism supersedes Budd-  
     hism in eastern Írán, i, 16  
 Brains, human, prescribed to  
     Zahhák by Iblís, i, 139,  
     146  
 Bramble-grubber, 164. *See*  
     Diláfrúz.  
 Brand-mark, iii, 291  
     of Káuś, iii, 291  
 Brazen Hold, the 156, v, 116,  
     117, 119 *seq.*, 159, 197,  
     206, 255  
     route to, v, 120, 135  
     described, v, 121, 135, 141  
 Asfandiyár's stratagem for  
     taking, v, 116, 143  
     surprised from within by  
     Asfandiyár, v, 152 *seq.*  
     left in charge of Sáwa, v,  
     154  
 Arjásp's head thrown from  
     the ramparts of, v, 157  
 Asfandiyár destroys, v, 162  
     referred to, viii, 171  
 Bride, the, one of the Kai Káuś'  
     treasures, iv, 295  
     given by Kai Khusráu to  
     Gíw, Zál, and Rustam, iv,  
     295  
 Brides of the Treasure, Genii  
     that watch over secret  
     hoards, vi, 250  
 Bridge, Battle of the, ix, 5, 67  
 Browning, Robert, his poem of  
     "The Glove," vi, 384  
 Bucephala, city founded by  
     Alexander the Great, vi,  
     18  
 Bucephalus, horse of Alexander  
     the Great, vi, 18  
     birth of, vi, 26  
     a mare (Ethiopic version),  
     vi, 18  
     offered by Darius to Porus,  
     vi, 31  
     death of, vi, 18, 64  
     city built by Alexander in  
     memory of, vi, 18  
 Buddha, birth stories of, vii, 383  
 Buddhism, in eastern Írán and  
     Kábulistán, i, 15  
     superseded by Brahman-  
     ism, i, 16  
     regarded as idolatrous by  
     Zoroastrians, i, 16  
 Buddhist saints, story of two, vi,  
     63  
 Budge, Dr. E. A. Wallis, his  
     editions of the Syriac  
     and Ethiopic versions of  
     the Pseudo-Callisthenes,  
     vi, 14, 17 *note*  
 Budini, race, vi, 73  
 Báiti, demon, assails Zarduhsht  
     i, 62; v, 17  
 Bukhára, city on the Zarafshán  
     river in the province of  
     Sughd, ii, 241; iv, 65;  
     vii, 331, 348, 359, 384;  
     ix, 97, 115, 117  
     Kurákhán sent to, iv, 154  
 Afrásiyáb joins Kurákhán  
     at, iv, 186  
 Fire-temple built by Túr at,  
     iv, 225  
 Bahrám Gúr attacks, vii, 90  
     receives tribute from, vii,  
     94  
 Bukhtakán. *See* Bakhtagán.  
 Bulghár (Bulgaria), viii, 406  
 Bull, mythological, i, 71; ii,  
     407; vii, 245  
     -fish, ii, 128  
 Bundahish, Pahlavi text, i, 91,  
     92, 117, 125, 131, 235,  
     236, 337 *note*, 338, 369;  
     ii, 3 *note*, 11, 26, 81, 118,  
     189  
     meaning of, i, 70 *note*

- Burdahih, account of Creation in, i, 117
- Búrâb, court-farrier to Cæsar, iv, 326  
refuses to employ Gushtâsp, iv, 327
- Burâza, minister under Yazdagird son of Shâpûr, vii, 4
- Burial-place of Rustam's race, the scene of the battle between Bahman and Farâmarz, v, 287
- Burjak and Burjâtûr, vi, 207.  
*See* Youths, the two.
- Burjâsp, Tûrânian hero, iv, 26  
commands the left wing, iv, 26
- Burns, quoted, viii, 3
- Burrus, Prætorian prefect *temp.* Nero, vii, 279
- Burzmîhr, Irânian warrior, vii, 86  
bears Narsi's letter to Bahram Gûr, vii, 94
- Burzmîhr, scribe, viii, 81, 87, 313  
= Bûzurjmîhr (?) *q.v.*, viii, 71
- Burzûyalâ, Tûrânian hero, iv, 182  
fights and flees from Kai Khusrau, iv, 183
- Bûsipâs, nonce name used by Hûmân when parleying with Rustam, iii, 198
- Bust, city in Sîstân, situated at the junction of the Kandahâr and Helmund rivers, i, 252; iv, 65; v, 173, 277, 287; vi, 175; vii, 173, 395; ix, 89  
stream of, i, 252
- Buzgûh, name of tribe, ii, 55  
and *note*, iii, 207
- Bûzurjmîhr, chief counsellor of Nûshîrwân in Irânian tradition and famous for his wisdom, 167-170, i, 27; v, 261; vii, 5; viii, 3 *seq.*, 67 *seq.*  
associated with the Persian Wisdom-literature, vii, 278
- Bûzurjmîhr, a semi-mythical personage, vii, 280  
found by Azâd Sarv at Marv, vii, 283  
undertakes to interpret Nûshîrwân's dream vii, 283  
goes with Azâd Sarv to court, vii, 283  
adventure of, with a snake, vii, 284  
interprets Nûshîrwân's dream, vii, 284  
rewarded and honoured by Nûshîrwân, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315, 388  
accomplishments of, vii, 286  
discourses of, at the Seven Banquets of Nûshîrwân, vii, 287 *seq.*  
on fate and fortune, vii, 291  
on the attainment of greatness, vii, 291, 296  
on what is worthiest, vii, 291  
on sages, vii, 288, 291, 292, 294, 296 *seq.*, 309  
on fools, vii, 297, 298, 306  
on conduct, vii, 288, 291 *seq.*, 299, 309  
on kings, vii, 290, 294, 295, 301, 312  
on the wise administrator, vii, 294  
on sons, vii, 295, 303, 311.  
on riches and poverty, vii, 295  
questioned by Ardshîr and Yazdagird, vii, 308  
on scribes, i, 27; vii, 311  
on loyalty, vii, 312  
discourse of, vii, 366  
questioned by Nûshîrwân, vii, 367 *seq.*  
expounds the game of chess, vii, 380, 388  
invents the game of nard, vii, 381, 389  
welcomed on his return from Hind by Nûshîrwân, vii, 393

Búzurmíhr, goes hunting with,  
and is suspected of theft  
by, Nūshírwán, viii, 4  
• disgraced by Nūshírwán,  
viii, 5  
instructs Nūshírwán's page,  
viii, 5  
refuses to admit himself in  
the wrong, viii, 6 *seq.*  
treated with increasing  
rigour, viii, 7, 8  
released, viii, 9  
divination by, viii, 10 *seq.*  
advises with Nūshírwán,  
viii, 47 *seq.*  
instructed by Nūshírwán  
to prove Hurmuzd, viii,  
56 *seq.*  
abolition of Fire-worship  
foretold by, viii, 68  
death of, viii, 69, 71  
=Burzmíhr (?), viii, 71  
Mas'údí on, viii, 71  
Byzantine title, vii, 218

## C

CÆSAR, the dynastic title of the  
kings of the West or Rûm  
who were regarded as be-  
ing descended from Salm,  
the son of Farídún, 154,  
161, 162, 165, 167, 169,  
172-174, i, 262; ii, 383;  
iii, 9; vi, 112, 297, 353;  
vii, 163; viii, 8 *seq.*, 19,  
43 *seq.*, 51 *seq.*, 230, 232,  
245, 252 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 299,  
306 *seq.*, 334, 373 *seq.*,  
408 *seq.*; ix, 10, 23  
transliteration of, i, 84 and  
*note*  
*temp.* Luhrásp, 154, iv, 339  
*seq.*; v, 11, 32, 167  
daughter of =Katáyún, iv,  
314; v, 167, 205  
capital of, founded by Salm,  
iv, 325

Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrásp, Nastár,  
master of the herds to, iv,  
325  
refuses to employ Gush-  
tásp, iv, 326  
Búráb, court-farrier to, iv,  
326  
refuses to employ Gush-  
tásp, iv, 327  
proposes to give his eldest  
daughter in marriage, iv,  
329  
wrath of, at his daughter's  
choice of Gushtásp, iv,  
330  
yields to bishop's counsel,  
iv, 331  
refuses to provide for his  
daughter and Gushtásp,  
iv, 331  
bids Mírin slay the wolf of  
Fáskún, iv, 333  
inspects the slain wolf, iv,  
341  
marries his second daugh-  
ter to Mírin, iv, 341  
bids Ahran slay the dragon  
of Mount Sakila, iv, 342  
third daughter of, iv, 342  
*seq.*  
married to Ahran, iv,  
348  
rejoices in his two sons in  
law, iv, 348  
proclaims the tidings of the  
slaying of the wolf and  
the dragon, iv, 349  
sons-in-law of, display their  
accomplishment on the  
riding-ground, iv, 349  
sees Gushtásp's prowess and  
questions him, iv, 350  
learns the truth about the  
wolf and the dragon and  
asks pardon of Gushtásp  
and Katáyún, iv, 351  
wrath of, with Mírin and  
Ahran, iv, 351  
seeks to find out through  
Katáyún who Gushtásp  
is, iv, 351

- Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrâsp, receives Gushtâsp with honour at court, iv, 352  
 Ilyâs refuses to pay tribute to iv, 352  
 receives a scornful message from Mîrîn and Ahran, iv, 353  
 takes counsel with Gushtâsp, iv, 353  
 bids Gushtâsp lead forth the host, iv, 354  
 arrays the host, iv, 355  
 Gushtâsp brings the dead body of Ilyâs to, iv, 355  
 welcomes Gushtâsp after his victory, iv, 356  
 consults Gushtâsp about demanding tribute from Írán, iv, 356  
 sends an envoy to Luhrâsp, iv, 356  
 gives audience to Zarír, iv, 360  
 replies, to, and dismisses Zarír, iv, 361  
 questions Gushtâsp, iv, 361  
 sends Gushtâsp to Zarír's camp, iv, 361  
 goes to feast with Gushtâsp and discovers who he is, iv, 363  
 gives gifts to Katáyûn, iv, 363  
   the Íránian chiefs, iv, 364  
 parts in good will from Gushtâsp, iv, 364  
 sends embassy to Gushtâsp on hearing of Arjásp's defeat, v, 75  
*temp.* Humái, sues to Rushnawâd for peace, v, 307  
   = Failakûs *q.v.*, vi, 24, 26, 27  
   = Sikandar *q.v.*, vi, 40, 42, 49  
     113, 114, 118, 121, 122, 124, 128, 129, 142, 158, 161, 170, 174, 178, 183  
   = Valerian (Bazánûsh *q.v.*), vi, 326  
   = Jovian (Bazánûsh *q.v.*), vi, 353, 354
- Cæsar, *temp.* Shápûr son of Ardshír, 161  
 pays tribute, vi, 298  
*temp.* Shápûr son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 341 *seq.*, 345 *seq.*  
 Shápûr in disguise visits, vi, 336  
   entertained by, vi, 337  
   discovered by, vi, 337  
   arrested by, vi, 337  
   sewn up in an ass's skin by, vi, 338  
   put in charge of wife of vi, 338  
 invades and ravages Írán, vi, 338  
 Shápûr prepares to attack, vi, 346  
 overthrown by Shápûr at Taisafûn, vi, 346 *seq.*  
 Shápûr's treatment of, vi, 349, 357  
 mother of, vi, 351  
 brother of (Yánûs *q.v.*), vi, 351  
*temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápûr, vi, 389  
 pays tribute, vi, 389  
*temp.* Bahrâm Gûr, 165  
 embassy of, to Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 5, 86, 100  
 marches on Írán, vii, 84  
 propounds questions to Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 102  
 envoy of, questioned by the high priest, vii, 104  
*temp.* Nûshîrwân, 167, 169, 172-174, vii, 244 *seq.*, 269, 273  
 replies to Nûshîrwân concerning Munzir, vii, 245  
 treasures of, taken by Nûshîrwân, vii, 255, 258  
 sues to Nûshîrwân for peace, vii, 261  
 sends tribute to Nûshîrwân, vii, 362  
 death of, viii, 43  
*temp.* Nûshîrwân, Hurmuzd, and Khusrâw Parwîz, 172

- Cæsar, temp.* Núshírwán, *etc.*,  
 offends Núshírwán, viii,  
 44 *seq.*  
 marches against Núshírwán, viii, 46  
 attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93  
 retakes cities, viii, 93  
 makes peace with Hurmuzd, viii, 95  
 welcomes Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 257  
 offers help to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 261  
 changes his mind, viii, 262  
 consults the astrologers, viii, 264  
 decides to help Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 265  
 offers daughter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 266  
 offers of, accepted by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 269, 270  
 talisman of, viii, 271, 275  
 deceives Rúman envoys, viii, 272  
 mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274  
 gifts of, to Kharrád, viii, 278  
 writes to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 279  
 praises Rúman envoys, viii, 279  
 counsels Maryam, viii, 279, 280  
 gives Niyátús charge of Maryam, viii, 280  
 corpse of Kút sent to, viii, 291  
 Khusrau Parwíz announces death of Bahráman Chúbína to, viii, 345  
 daughter of, gives birth to Shírwí, viii, 371  
 Khusrau Parwíz' letter to, viii, 373  
 rejoicing of, at birth of Shírwí, viii, 374  
 embassy of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 374  
 gifts of, given by Khusrau Parwíz to Shírwí, viii, 381
- Cæsar, temp.* Núshírwán, *etc.*,  
 invited to seize Írán, viii, 408  
 tricked by Khusrau Parwíz and retreats, viii, 410  
 letter of, about the True Cross referred to, ix, 22  
*Cæsaean* birth, of Rustam, i, 236, 321 *seq.*  
*Calanus* (Sphínés), Indian ascetic, vi, 61  
*Onesicritus* and, vi, 61  
*Alexander the Great* and, vi, 61  
 death of, vi, 61  
 derivation of, vi, 61  
 identical with the sage sent by Kaid to Sikandar (*see* Four Wonders), vi, 62  
*Calendar*, Zoroastrian, i, 88; iii, 286  
 adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59  
*Callinicus*. *See* Káliniyús.  
*Callisthenes*, Greek historian *temp.* Alexander the Great  
 vi, 12, 74  
 Romance of Alexander fathered on, vi, 13  
 account of, vi, 13  
*Callitris quadrivalvis*, the Arar tree, vi, 19  
*Cambyes*, father of Cyrus the Great, ii, 190  
 identical with Siyáwush in legend, ii, 191  
*Cambyes*, son of Cyrus the Great and King of Persia (B.C. 528-521), v, 10, 11; vi, 16  
*Camel*, piece in chess, vii, 422  
 position of, vii, 422  
 move of, vii, 422  
*Cancer*, constellation, iii, 125, 151, 255; vii, 257  
 moon in, an evil omen, i, 188; iii, 255 (?)  
*Candace* (Kandake, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), dynastic title of the queens of Ethiopia, vi 13, 72

- Candace Alexander the Great and, vi, 65 *seq.*
- Candahar. *See* Kandahar.
- Cannibalism, iii, 191, 244
- Canopus, star, i, 188  
of Yaman, i, 266; ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382
- Cappadocia (Pálawina), vi, 294
- Captives, mutilation of, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357  
settlement of, vi, 327, 357
- Carline and Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 189, 303
- Carnelians, ii, 123  
of Yaman, ii, 123
- Carthæ, defeat of Crassus at, i, 15
- Carthaginians, the, vi, 30  
Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
- Casaubon, Isaac, vi, 13
- Caspian Sea, i, 3, 4, 16, 19, 56, 57, 338; ii, 189, 336; iii, 10, 192; iv, 136; v, 13
- Caspian Gates, iv, 315; vi, 31, 32
- Cassander (B.C. 350-297), eldest son of Antipater and King of Macedonia, vi, 82
- Castellan, bishop as. *See* Bishop.
- Castes, division of Aryans into, i, 7  
Íránians into, i, 130, 132
- Castle, White. *See* White Castle.  
of the Aláns. *See* Aláns.  
Bahman. *See* Bahman.  
Oblivion, vii, 184  
Kubád son of Píruž confined in, vii, 184  
escapes from, viii, 184
- Catholicus, viii, 195
- Catullus, Roman poet (B.C. 84-54), i, 60  
on Persian next of kin marriage, i, 60
- Caucasus, mountain-range running in a south-easterly direction from the Black Sea to the Caspian, i, 16; iv, 316; vi, 15; vii, 214, 217; viii, 72
- Caucasus, passes in, i, 16; vi, 79  
fortified, i, 16, vii, 153, 187, 216, 239  
Mas'údi's account of, vii, 215  
barrier (mythical) of Alexander the Great (Sikandar) in, i, 16; vi, 78, 189, 249  
legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78  
site of, vi, 79  
described, vi, 164
- Cave, cavern, in Mázarán, ii, 28
- White Div's, ii, 28, 55, 58 *seq.*
- Afrásiyáb's, in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136 *seq.*, 259 *seq.*
- Central clime. *See* Clime.
- Chách (Shásh, Old Táshkand, now in ruins), city on the right bank of the Jaxartes west of Ferghána, famous for its bows, ii, 241, 258; iv, 19, 187, 188, 255; vii, 167, 329, 334, 340, 343, 348, 358, 359; viii, 314, 377; ix, 115, 116  
bow of, i, 227; iii, 123, 181, 227; v, 244; vi, 384; viii, 125, 126, 294  
government of, given to Tús by Rustam, ii, 358  
thane of, one of Firdausi's authorities, vi, 197, 210  
referred to, vi, 229 and *note*  
daughter of governor of, vii, 285  
intrigue of, vii, 285  
executed, vii, 286  
battle-axes of, ix, 118
- Chaghán, district on the right bank of the Oxus where that river is crossed from Tirmid, and city further north on the upper waters of river of the same name, iii, 152, 177, 228; vii, 94, 157, 359

- Chaghán, ceded by Kubád to the Haitálans, vii, 198  
monarch of = Faghánish, vii, 333
- Chaghwán = Chaghán (?), vi, 174  
Sikandar visits, vi, 174  
quits, vi, 175
- Cháha, hostelry of, i, 45
- Chahár Makála, Persian treatise, i, 23  
account of Firdausí in, i, 38, 39, 45
- Chahram (Jahram *q.v.*), city in Párs
- Chalah, viii, 193
- Chálandshán. *See* Chánlandshán.
- Chalcedon, viii, 194, 195
- Chalybon-Beroea (Aleppo), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41  
held to ransom by Núshírwán, vii, 218
- Champions, the Twelve, vii, 156.  
*See* Rukhs.
- Chamrosh, mythical bird, i, 235
- Chánlandshán (Khálánján, Khánlanján), district and town (Fíruzán) near Ispahán on the Zayinda river (*see* LEC. pp. 206, 207 and *note*), i, 29  
Ahmad ibn Muhammad of, patron of Firdausí, i, 29  
Firdausí's escape from drowning at, i, 26, 29
- Chao-wou = Sáva *q.v.*, viii, 72
- Characters, chief, of Sháhnáma, i, 49
- Characteristics, of Irán, i, 3 *seq.*
- Characteristics of a Happy Man, Pahlaví text, vii, 279
- Charam, place in Irán, iii, 40, 41, 52, 68, 85, 86, 111, 112
- Charbar, place on the coast of Balúchistán (Makrán), vi, 70
- Chares of Mytilene, Greek writer and official at the court of Alexander the Great ii 10; vi, 61
- Chare: of Mytilene, story by, of Hystaspes and Zariadres quoted, iv, 314
- Charinda, river, iii, 10 *note*
- Charjui (Ámwi *q.v.*), city on the Oxus, vii, 91 *note*
- Charogos. *See* Tainúsh.
- Chase, equipage for, vii, 48, 76; viii, 384
- Chess, game of, 169, vi, 201; vii, 14 and *note*, 280, 385 *seq.*; viii, 371  
*Note* on, vii, 380  
sent by the Rája of Hind to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 380, 384 *seq.*  
expounded by Búzurjmíhr, vii, 380, 388  
symbolism of, vii, 381  
two forms of, vii, 381, 388, 422  
changes in powers of pieces in, vii, 381  
Mas'údí on, vii, 382  
invention of, *Story* of the, 169, vii, 394 *seq.*
- Chess-board, vii, 14, 385, 388
- Chess-men, vii, 14, 380, 388
- Chevy Chase, ii, 82
- Chigil (Naryn ?) district and river, tributary of the Jaxartes, iv, 155  
monarch of, v, 110  
commands the left, v, 110  
= Arjásp, v, 54, 86  
Turkman of, = Gurgsár, v, 139
- Chihrzád (Humái), daughter and wife of Sháh Bahman, ii, 3; v, 290 and *note*  
meaning of, v, 290 and *note*
- Chijast (Khanjast, Urumiah), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136 *note*
- Children, sometimes brought up un-named, i, 8, 179
- Chín, country, China, but generally in the Sháhnáma equivalent to Chinese Tartary and sometimes to Túrán, 160, 165, 173,

Chin, country, China—*cont.*

- i, 207, 229, 230, 261, 267, 351, 371; ii, 77, 82, 111, 143, 154, 156, 237, 277, 286, 287, 289, 297, 305, 307, 357, 359, 383, 394; iii, 46, 49, 103, 106 and *passim*.  
 assigned by Farídún to Túr, i, 189  
 brocade of, i, 269, 233 and *passim*  
 coasts of, vi, 173  
 cloth of gold from, ii, 275; vi, 182, 334  
 dínárs of, iv, 241  
 Faghfúr of. *See* Faghfúr.  
 helm of, i, 132  
 images of, v, 35  
 implements of, vi, 122  
 Khán of. *See* Khán.  
 King of=Afrásiyáb, ii, 99; iv, 165, 170, 230  
 =Khán, iii, 227, 228; vii, 87  
 =Arjásp, v, 36, 52, 55, 69, 86, 108  
 =Faghfúr, vii, 131  
 lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142  
 =Sikandar, vi, 113  
 =Faghfúr, vi, 171  
 mace of, iii, 129  
 ornaments of, ii, 232; vi, 102, 139  
 paper of, vi, 172  
 pen of, vi, 57, 99  
 prince of=Khán, iii, 226  
 =Afrásiyáb, iv, 194  
 =Arjásp, v, 35  
 =Parmúda, viii, 142  
 =Sáwa, viii, 222  
 rarities of, vi, 171, 173; vii, 49  
 robes of, iii, 329; viii, 205, 257  
 Rose of=daughter of the Khán, vii, 363 and *note*  
 sea of, i, 113, 140, 252, 349; ii, 12, 256, 276, 285, 356, 357; iii, 151, 252; iv, 237, 254; v, 109, 203,

Chin, sea of—*cont.*

- 233, 239 *note*; vi, 149; vii, 343; viii, 377  
 shield of, iii, 125, 140, 256; ix, 118  
 Sikandar goes to, vi, 169  
 silk of, i, 157; iii, 104, 165; v, 159, 295; vi, 85, 266; vii, 73, 92, 347, 364, 418; viii, 258, 269, 374  
 steel of, iii, 186  
 stuffs of, vi, 143, 215  
 ware of, vii, 78  
 sage of, viii, 235  
 sashes from, ix, 12, 53  
 gold thread of, ix, 82  
 merchantmen of, ix, 89  
 China, country, vi, 204  
 silk industry of, vi, 204  
 Chináb (Akesines), river in the Punjab, vi, 31, 64  
 Chinese, viii, 72  
 language, vi, 147  
 Chingish, Túránian hero, 140, iii, 207  
 volunteers to avenge Kámús, iii, 194  
 challenges Rustam, iii, 194  
 slain by Rustam, iii, 195  
 Chínwí, noble of Chín, viii, 331  
 Chionitæ, people, v, 13  
 geographical position of, v, 13  
 Chorene, Moses of. *See* Moses.  
 Chosrau, Chosroes I (Kisrá), Sásánian Sháh, vii, 212, 281. *See* Nūshírwár.  
 Chosroes, king of Armenia, vi, 202  
 Christ, 174, vi, 339; vii, 207, 249, 264, 270, 273, 276; ix, 24, 109  
 Faith of, vi, 133, 339; vii, 274; viii, 43, 191, 272, 310, 380  
 account of, viii, 276  
 father of, viii, 276  
 mother of, viii, 276  
 Cross of, viii, 377, 380; ix, 23  
 laughter of, viii, 191, 380

- Christian, Christians, 167, vi, 342; vii, 171, 254, 270; viii, 21, 67, 195, 196, 256, 272, 308, 310, 381; ix, 23  
rites of marriage, vi, 104  
Faith, vi, 356  
persecution of, vii, 153  
Firdausi's view of, vii, 219  
wife of Nūshīrwān, vii, 263, 274  
    mother of Nūshzād, vii, 263  
    helps Nūshzād in his revolt, vii, 266  
    laments for Nūshzād, vii, 276  
    support Nūshzād, vii, 266, 272  
    shut gates of Kārsān against Khusrau Parwīz, viii, 252  
Christianity, vi, 138  
    polemics against, vii, 219, 270, 273  
Chúbín (Júbín), father, according to Mas'ūdī, of Bahrām Chúbīna, viii, 77  
Chúbīna, viii, 215, 222  
    meaning of, viii, 98 *note*  
Cilicia (Kaidāfa), most south-easterly province of Asia Minor, vi, 294  
Circesium, viii, 188  
City of Women, 160. *See* Harām.  
Claudius, Roman emperor (A.D. 41-54), iii, 10  
Cleophas, Indian queen, vi, 65  
    Alexander the Great and, vi, 65  
Climate, of Irān, i, 4, 5  
    Māzandarān, ii, 27  
Clime, Climes, the seven, i, 40, 71, 122, 123, 238; ii, 15  
    *note*, 372; iii, 290, 317; vi, 179, 262, 266, 273, 280, 376, 377; viii, 395  
    Kai Khusrau surveys, in his divining-cup, iii, 318  
    Central, i, 71, 122; ii, 27  
Cloud, emblem of prosperity, i, 73, 113, 114; ii, 263 and *note*; iv, 141; vi, 96  
Cloud, thunder-, as water-stealing demon, i, 7  
    of bale=Afrāsīyāb, ii, 13  
    name given by Rustam to himself, ii, 53  
Clough, quoted, viii, 187  
Cocks and hens, taught to crow daybreak, i, 126  
Colchians, people of the south-eastern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72  
Colic, cure of, vii, 39  
Commander of the Faithful, ix, 72  
    'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*  
Commons, king of the, vii, 3  
Communists (Mazdakites, *q.v.*), vii, 185  
Companions of the Prophet (Muhammad), 139  
    praise of, 139, i, 106  
Constantinople, vii, 316; viii, 194  
    conspirator against Nūshīrwān escapes to, vii, 316  
Contents, General Table of, ix, 139  
Cook, chief, of Nūshīrwān, grievance of, viii, 18  
Cordwainer. *See* Shoemaker.  
Corn-land, taxes on, vii, 215  
Corpse, 160  
Cos, island in the Ægean sea, vi, 204  
    silk industry of, vi, 204  
Cosmogony, ancient Irānian, i, 5, 71  
    Firdausi's, 102, iv, 136  
Country of the Blest. *See* Blest.  
Courses, the Seven, of Rustam, 143, ii, 29, 44 *seq.*  
Crassus, the triumvir (B.C. 115-53), i, 15  
    defeat of, at Carrhæ, i, 15  
Creation, Zoroastrian account of, i, 5, 117  
    Firdausi's account of, i, 102 *seq.*  
Crete, island, south of Greece, vi, 323 *note*.

- Crete, Minos king of, legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Crocodile, iii, 278  
=assassin, i, 111  
=Kámús, iii, 192
- Cross, the, 174, vi, 351, 352; vii, 249, 270, 276; viii, 308, 309, 374  
captured by Dáráb, vi, 306 and *note*  
religion of, vi, 138  
Passion of, vi, 339  
the true, viii, 191, 196, 253, 377, 378, 380; ix, 4, 5, 10, 24  
restoration of, ix, 7, 56  
of Christ, ix, 23  
Elevation of, ix, 43
- Crows and Owls, story of, viii, 263 and *note*
- Crystal, House of, ix, 25 and *note*
- Ctesias. *See* Ktesias.
- Ctesiphon (Taisafún *q.v.*), city on the left bank of the Tigris some 25 miles below Baghdád, originally an extension of Seleucia on the right bank of that river, ii, 80; vi, 321, 322, 325, 372; viii, 42, 188, 189, 193, 194, 196; ix, 65 *seq.*  
taken by Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44  
Sa'ad, ix, 67  
booty found at, ix, 68
- Culture-heroes. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshíd, i, 118 *seq.*
- Cup, divining-, of Kai Khusráu, iii, 317, 318, 323  
inexhaustible, of Kaid, 159, vi, 94, 100, 109  
poisoned, proffered to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259  
crystal, to detect poison (?), vii, 51
- Cybele, Greek goddess, vi, 71  
=Hittite Ma, vi, 71
- Cymbals, of the Brides of the Treasure, vi, 250; vii, 35 and *note*
- Cypress, of Kishmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Cyrus the Great (B.C. 558-528), son of Cambyses and founder of the Persian empire  
legend of, in Herodotus identical with that of Kai Khusráu, ii, 9, 190  
in Ctesias transferred to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 195  
rise of, i, 18  
compared to that of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 194  
historical parallel with Kai Khusráu, v, 10

## D

- DABISTÁN, 17th century Persian treatise, v, 28
- Cypress of Kishmar, account of, in, v, 28
- Dád, Iránian warrior, vii, 86
- Dádáfríd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*
- Daévas. *See* Div.
- Daghwl, desert in Turkistán, ii, 193; iv, 117
- Dahae *i.e.*, "foes" or "robbers," a name given by the Iránians to the nomad tribes dwelling east of the Caspian and north of the Atrak in the region now occupied by the Yamut Turkmans, i, 19; iii, 10
- Daháka (Azhi, Azi, Zakhák *q.v.*), evil spirit, i, 7, 142, 172
- Dahistán, stead or home of the Dahae *q.v.* and town between Harát and Marv, i, 280, 344 *seq.*, 349, 363, iv, 61, 72, 79, 148, 157; ix, 95
- Naudar beleaguered in, by Afrásiyáb, i, 353

- Dai, genius, i, 88, 89; iii, 287, 328  
 month or day, i, 88, 89; v, 43; vi, 306; viii, 173, 421; ix, 17  
 pa Mihr, day, i, 88; v, 16
- Dái Marj, place where Bahrám Gúr is said to have been drowned, vii, 6
- Dáitya, river, v, 13
- Daizan (Táir *q.v.*), vi, 322  
 legend of, vi, 322  
 daughter of, legend of, vi, 323
- Dakhma, "Tower of Silence," i, 81 and *note*
- Dakíkí, Persian poet, 139, 154, 155, ii, 3 *note*, 8; v, 10, 13; vi, 196; viii, 190  
 account of, i, 28, 67, 69, 109; v, 20  
 Firdausí and, v, 21 *seq.*, 30, 87, 88  
 work of, compared with the Yátkár-i-Zarírán, v, 24 *seq.*
- Dámaghán, city on the road from Tíhrán to Nishápúr and the capital of the province of Kúmis, ii, 15; iv, 255; viii, 109, 189
- Dáman-i-Kuh, the northern "mountain-skirt" of modern Persia, iii, 15
- Damascus, chief city in Syria, vi, 195  
 Nicolaus of, Greek historian, *temp.* Augustus, vi, 195
- Damáwand, volcano nearly 20,000 feet high and the culminating peak of the mountain-range south of the Caspian, i, 143, 144, 148; vi, 202; viii, 391
- Zahhák fettered on, i, 169, 173
- Arish's arrow-shot from, v, 12
- Dambar, city in Kábulistán (?) which was regarded as Indian, i, 252, 256; iv, 278, 283, 284; vii, 396, 399, 421
- Dámdád, Nask, i, 70 *note*
- Damúr, Túránian hero, ii, 296, 319; iv, 156  
 overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295  
 advocates execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
- Danbar. *See* Dambar.
- Dandamis. *See* Mandanes.
- Dáng, coin, ix, 94 and *note*
- Dánishwar, the dihkán, supposed compiler of the Bástán-náma, *temp.* Yazdagird III, i, 67, 68
- Danube, river, v, 11  
 Darius' expedition to, v, 11.
- Dará, son of Dáráb, Sháh (Darius Codomanus *q.v.*) 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281; vi, 83 *seq.*, 112, 113, 123, 124, 132, 137, 170, 172, 188, 325, 353; viii, 220, 242, 387  
 first historic Sháh in the Sháhnáma, i, 49  
 origin of name, v, 297 *note*  
 legendary son of Dáráb, vi, 17, 27  
 appointed by Dáráb to succeed him, vi, 27  
 Reign of, 158, vi, 29 *seq.*  
*Note* on, vi, 29 *seq.*  
 historical account of, vi, 29  
 movements of, after his final defeat by Alexander (Sikandar), vi, 31  
 Sikandar's correspondence with the wife and daughter of, vi, 33  
 accession of, vi, 34  
 letter of, to the kings, vi, 34  
 pays his troops, vi, 35  
 ambassadors come to, vi, 35  
 demands tribute from Sikandar, vi, 36

- Dará, marches against Sikandar, vi, 37  
 Sikandar's visit to the camp of, vi, 38  
 invites Sikandar to a banquet, vi, 40  
 ambassador of, recognises Sikandar, vi, 40  
 sends horsemen in pursuit of Sikandar, vi, 41  
 defeated by Sikandar, vi, 43  
 collects another army, vi, 43  
 defeat of, vi, 44  
 goes to Chahram, vi, 44  
 Istakhr, vi, 44  
 takes counsel with his chiefs, vi, 45  
 collects a new host, vi, 46  
 marches from Istakhr, vi, 46  
 defeat of, vi, 46  
 withdraws to Kirmán, vi, 46  
 bewails himself, vi, 47  
 letter of, to Sikandar, vi, 49  
 Fúr, vi, 50  
 marches against Sikandar, vi, 51  
 abandoned by his troops and flees, vi, 51  
 murdered by his ministers, vi, 52  
 murderers of, arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53  
 dying interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 53  
 vengeance promised to, by Sikandar, vi, 53  
 tells his last wishes to Sikandar, vi, 54  
 bestows Rúshanak upon Sikandar, vi, 55, 86  
 dies, vi, 55  
 burial of, vi, 56  
 Sásán, son of, vi, 211  
 kindred of, support Ard-shír Pápakán, vi, 223  
 Dará (Daras), city, viii, 41, 194  
 taken by Núshírwán, viii, 41  
 ceded by Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 188  
 Dará Panáh, viii, 189, 284  
 goes disguised to Khusráu Parwíz' camp, viii, 286  
 betrays Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286  
 returns to Bahrám Chúbína, with forged letter, viii, 287  
 Dáráb, Sháh, son of Bahman and Humái, 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281, 292, 297 *seq.*; vi, 11, 34 and *note*, 49, 83, 84, 86, 132, 137, 172, 188; vii, 215; viii, 191  
 foundling legend of, ii, 11; v, 293 *seq.*  
 Tabarí's version of, v, 297 *note*  
 birth of, v, 294  
 referred to, v, 294 *seq.*  
 exposed on the Farát, v, 295  
 found and adopted by a launderer, v, 296 *seq.*  
 royal birth of, asserts itself, v, 298  
 youthful escapades of, v, 298  
 brought up as a cavalier, v, 299  
 feels lack of natural affection for the launderer, v, 300  
 hears of his case from the launderer's wife, v, 300  
 enlists, v, 301  
 seen by Humái, v, 302  
 and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303  
 receives gifts from Rashnawád, v, 304  
 questioned by Rashnawád, v, 304  
 prowess of, against the Rûmans, v, 305, 306  
 praised and rewarded by Rashnawád, v, 305, 306  
 captures the Cross, v, 306 and *note*  
 takes of the spoil one spear, v, 307  
 returns to Írán, v, 307

- Dáráb, Rashnawád hears from the launderer and his wife of the case of, v, 308  
 Rashnawád writes to Humái about, v, 308  
 recognised by Humái as being her son, v, 308  
 appears with Rashnawád before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*  
 crowned by Humái and accepts her excuses, v, 310  
 Humái proclaims the accession of, v, 311  
 visited by, and rewards, the launderer and his wife, v, 311, 312  
 Reign of, 158, vi, 11 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 11 *seq.*  
 father of Sikandar in Persian legend, vi, 16  
 legendary father of Dárá, vi, 17  
 harangues the chiefs, vi, 20  
 ambassadors come to, vi, 21  
 employs Rúman artificers, vi, 21  
 wars with the Arabs, vi, 21  
 defeats and demands tribute from Arabs, vi, 22  
 wars with Rúm, vi, 22  
 defeats Failakús, vi, 23  
 grants terms of peace to Failakús, vi, 24  
 marries the daughter of Failakús, vi, 25  
 returns to Párs, vi, 25  
 becomes disaffected towards his wife (Náhd), vi, 25  
 marries again, vi, 27  
 Dárá is born to him, vi, 27  
 fails in health, vi, 27  
 appoints Dárá to succeed him, vi, 27  
 dies, vi, 28  
 Dáráb, Dárábgird, city in Párs, 158, vi, 17, 198, 199; viii, 313  
 Darband, town and pass between the Caucasus *q.v.*, and the Caspian, ii, 336; viii, 369 *note*  
 Darband, Pass of, described, i, 16  
   fortification of, i, 16, 17  
   and *note*, vii, 213, 239  
   Mas'údi's accounts of, vii, 215  
 Darí, vii, 430 and *note*  
 Dariel, Pass of, in the Caucasus, vi, 79  
 Darius, Hystaspis, Sháh, i, 9, 65; v, 10; viii, 187  
   trilingual inscription of, at Bihistún, i, 6  
   Zoroastrian calendar adopted by, i, 59  
   reign of, and Gushtásp's compared, v, 11  
   conversion of, v, 11  
 Darius, Codomanus (Dárá *q.v.*)  
   Sháh, i, 49; vi, 16, 17, 29  
   defeated at Issus, vi, 30  
   Alexander escapes from the banquet of, vi, 30  
   defeated at Gaugamela, vi, 31  
   asks that his family may be restored to him, vi, 31  
   writes to Porus, vi, 31  
   historical account of the death of, vi, 31  
   daughter of, marries Alexander, vi, 33  
   corpse of, sent to Párs, vi, 33  
   assassins of, punished, vi, 33  
 Dareja, river in Ázarbáiján, v, 14  
 Darkness, Land of. *See* Gloom.  
   House of, ix, 7;  
 Dármán, viii, 202  
 Darmesteter, Professor, on Firdausi's geography, ii, 79, 80  
   on Afrásiyáb's capture by Húm, iv, 136  
   Story of the Worm, vi, 203  
   Haftwád, vi, 206  
 Darún, Zoroastrian religious rite, v, 19  
 Daryai Rúd, river in Ázarbáiján, v, 14

- Dastagird, city, viii, 193, 196;  
ix, 7  
taken by Heraclius, viii, 194
- Dashma, Iránian hero, iv, 148
- Dástán (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84, 248, 264
- Dástán-i-Sám (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84
- Dástán-i-Zand (Zál *q.v.*), i, 245  
and *note*, 248
- Date-palm, i, 4  
taxes on, vii, 215, 225
- Daughter of Kaid. *See* Kaid,  
Four Wonders of.
- Daulat Sháh, author of "Lives  
of the Poets," i, 24
- Death, early, Firdausí's justifi-  
cation of, ii, 119
- Dead Sea, viii, 192
- Deinon. *See* Dinon.
- Deipnosophistæ*, of Athenæus, ii,  
10  
quoted, iv, 314
- Derketo, goddess, v, 292  
legend of, v, 292
- Destiny, Muhammadan and Zor-  
oastrian conceptions of, i,  
52
- Déwasárm, king of Hind, vii, 381  
sends the game of chess to  
Núshírwán, vii, 380
- Dharma, Indian god of righteous-  
ness, iv, 138  
follows in the form of a dog  
the Pándavas in their pil-  
grimage, iv, 139
- Dhoulkarnain. *See* Zu-'l-kar-  
nain.
- Dhú Kár, battle of, viii, 188, ix,  
4, 5, 66  
historical account of, viii,  
190  
date of, viii, 191
- Diagram to illustrate reign of  
Gushtásp, v, 27  
Persian Romance of Alex-  
ander the Great, vi, 84
- Díba-i-Khusrauí, treasure, viii,  
406 and *note*
- Dice, vii, 381  
used in the game of nard,  
vii, 381, 389  
symbolism of, vii, 381, 382
- Dihkán, Persian generic title, i,  
56, 81  
Faith of, vi, 95
- Dijla (Arwand, Tigris *q.v.*), river,  
i, 160  
Farídún's crossing of, i, 160
- Diláfrúz, Iránian hero, iv, 147
- Diláfrúz, a bramble-grubber,  
Bahráw Gúr and, vii, 70  
*seq.*
- Diláfrúz-i-Farrukhpái, Iránian  
slave-girl, 162, vi, 3  
slave to Cæsar's wife, vi,  
338  
pities Shápúr, vi, 339  
discovers who Shápúr is, vi,  
339  
frees Shápúr from the ass's  
skin, vi, 340  
escapes with Shápúr from  
Rúm, vi, 340 *seq.*  
entertained by a gardener,  
vi, 342  
praised by Shápúr, vi, 346  
named and honoured by  
Shápúr, vi, 356  
meaning of, vi, 356 *note*
- Dílám, Dílámán, district on the  
Caspian now represented  
by Talish and part of  
Gílán, vi, 202, 227; vii,  
243, 244, 362
- Dílámids (Buyids), dynasty rul-  
ing in south-western Írán  
in the 10th century A.D.,  
i, 14, 21, 45
- Dílámite, 'Alí the, friend and  
helper of Firdausí, i, 35;  
ix, 121
- Dilánjám, Cæsar's (*temp.* Luh-  
rásp) second daughter, iv,  
333  
asked in marriage by Mírín,  
iv, 333  
married to Mírín, iv, 341
- Dilárái, wife to Dárá and mother  
of Rúshanak, 158, 159, vi,  
87 *seq.*  
visited by Náhid, vi, 89
- Dimna, Kalíla and, 169. *See*  
Fables of Bidpai.

- Dīna-i Ma'nog-i Khirad, Pahlavi text, ii, 189  
 quoted, vii, 279
- Dīnār, gold coin, i, 81, 231, 363  
 and *passim*
- Dīnawari, Arabic historian (ninth century), vi, 16, 64, 80, 81, 256, 323; vii, 6, 156, 186, 214
- Dīnkard, Pahlavi text, i, 70 *note*, 373; ii, 26, 81; vi, 252
- Diodorus, Greek historian, *temp.* Julius Caesar and Augustus, v, 293  
*Bibliotheca* of, v, 293
- Diogenetus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Dionysus, Greek god, vi, 71  
 temple of, visited by Si-kandar, vi, 71
- Dīram. See Drachm.
- Dirāzdast (Longimanus), title, v, 281; vi, 324 and *note*
- Dīv, dīvs (Daēvas), demons or "foreign devils," 140, 143, 150, i, 42, 82, 130, 131, 134, 148, 227, 290; ii, 27, 33, 34, 38, 41 *seq.*, 57 *seq.*, 68, 73, 101, 102, 144; iii, 70, 74, 200, 232, 244, 255, 257 *seq.*, 261, 268, 273 *seq.*, 320, 330; iv, 86, 87, 177, 288, 296; v, 32, 58, 66, 71, 108, 174; 201, 202, 213, 220, 230; 245; vi, 135, 146, 150, 241; vii, 115, 154, 174, 368 *seq.*; viii, 159, 161, 206, 209, 211, 217, 218, 290, 341, 342, 399 and *note*, 418; ix, 18, 25
- rebel against Tahmūras, i, 127
- overthrown by Tahmūras, i, 127
- teach Tahmūras the art of writing, i, 127
- build edifices for Jamshīd, i, 133
- Dīv, dīvs, carry Jamshīd on his throne up to the sky, i, 133
- title of honour, ii, 29
- song of a, ii, 31
- Arjāsp informed by a, of Gushtāsp's resolve not to pay tribute, v, 36
- Mazdak's five, vii, 205
- Būzurjmihr's ten, vii, 368
- Akwān. See Akwān.
- =Ahriman, 139, i, 82, 126, 156, 195, 260; ii, 46, 324, 342, 370, 386, 400; iii, 189, 293, 333; iv, 63, 84, 201, 206, 278, 282, 286, 289 *seq.*, 301, 322, 341; v, 35, 81, 180, 188, 189, 194 *seq.*, 218, 228, 242; vi, 349; vii, 93, 107, 109, 117, 143, 154, 206, 227, 268, 289, 303, 304, 323, 332, 368 *seq.*, 376, 390; viii, 27, 50, 87, 123, 215, 222, 304, 341, 346, 411; ix, 47, 102, 104
- =Bahrām Chūbīna, viii, 153, 219, 293, 298
- witch, viii, 161
- =Zahhāk, viii, 242
- =Kulūn, viii, 342
- Binder of the=Tahmūras, i, 42, 125, 126, 214
- =Gūdarz, iv, 35
- =Rustam, iii, 253, 262
- Black, son of Ahriman, 139, i, 82, 117; ii, 53; v, 199; viii, 171
- White, 143, i, 82; ii, 27, 39 *seq.*, 43, 44, 54, 55, 58 *seq.*, 66, 93, 163, 373; iii, 143, 256, 314; iv, 136, 296; v, 117, 176, 203, 207, 234
- defeats Kāūs, ii, 40
- blood of, cures blindness, ii, 58, 62
- slain by Rustam, ii, 60
- Divining-cup. See Cup.
- Dneiper (Borysthenes), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Black Sea, iii, 191

- Don (Tanais), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Sea of Azov, iv, 315 *note*, 316
- Doni*, *The Morall Philosophie of*, vii, 383
- Drachm (diram), silver coin, i, 81
- Dragon, 143, 154, 156, 160, 164, 165, i, 42, 123; vi, 132, 146
- Faridún takes the form of, i, 186
- of the Kashaf, i, 235
- Sám and the, i, 296 *seq.*, v, 202
- slain by Rustam and Rakhsh, ii, 48 *seq.*
- of Mount Sakila, iv, 342 *seq.*
- Gushtásp and, iv, 343 *seq.*
- teeth of, produced by Híshwi to Caesar, iv, 351
- referred to, iv, 358
- Sikandar's adventure with, vi, 71, 151
- slain by Bahráw Gúr, vii, 42, 123 *seq.*
- described, i, 123, 296; iv, 345; v, 202; vi, 151; vii, 43, 123
- Dragon=Afrásiyáb, iii, 22, 46, 211, 219, 222, 248, 319, 343; iv, 270
- =Ahriman, i, 195; iii, 330
- =Ardawán, vi, 222
- =Fúr, vi, 113
- =Gív, iii, 58
- =Húmán, iv, 43, 52
- =Paláshán, iii, 26
- =Púládward, iii, 264
- =Rakhsh's dam, i, 379
- =Rakhsh, i, 380
- =Rustam, iii, 222
- =Zahhák, i, 155, 158, 161, 163, 168, 169, 275, 288, 292
- Dragon's child=Rúdába, i, 304
- Drangiana (Sístán), province in eastern Irán, i, 4; vi, 32
- Dream, dreams, veridical, i, 51
- Firdausí on, vii, 281
- Dream, Abúl Kásim of Gurgán's, iii, 190
- Afrásiyáb's, ii, 232 *seq.*
- referred to, ii, 243, 297; iv, 170, 267
- Firdausi's, of Mahmúd, i, 112
- Dakikí, v, 23, 30
- Gúdarz's, ii, 363, 404
- Gushtásp's, v, 19
- Kaid's, v, 62, 91
- Katáyún's, iv, 316, 329, 330
- Núshirwán's, vii, 282 *seq.*; ix, 92
- Odatis', iv, 315
- Pápak's, vi, 200, 212
- Pírán's, ii, 325
- Sám's, i, 243, 244
- Siyáwush's, ii, 309
- Tús', iii, 149
- Zariadres', iv, 315
- Draupadi, joint wife of the five Pándavas, iv, 138 and *note*, 139
- Drought and famine in Irán, i, 3, 5, 370, 371; ii, 363; vii, 159, 162
- Pírúz's measures to alleviate, vii, 159, 162
- breaking up of, described, vii, 163
- Mazdak's parable concerning, vii, 201
- Drváspa, genius of cattle, iv, 137
- Dualism, i, 5, 49, 50, 52, 56, 58
- taught by Urmuzd to Zar-duhsht, v, 16
- Dugdhóvá, v, 14, 15
- account of, v, 14
- Dúk, plain, viii, 282, 284
- mountain, viii, 289
- Dukhtnúsh. *See* Núsha.
- Dunbar. *See* Dambar.
- Duncker, Professor, ii, 9
- on date of Zandavasta, ii, 9
- Dúrásróbó, a Karap *q.v.*, v, 15
- Dust, prevalence of, in Irán, i, 3
- as a metaphor, i, 73 and *passim*
- Dynasty, dynasties, Iránian, i, 49
- Pishdádian *q.v.*
- Kaiánian *q.v.*

Dynasty, Ashkánian *q.v.*  
Sásánian *q.v.*

## E

ECLIPSE of sun, total, *temp.*  
Pírúz, vii, 159

Edessa, S. James of, i, 374

Eggs, golden, as tribute, vi, 24,  
36, 160, 169

Egypt (Misr, *q.v.*), ii, 80; vi, 12,  
16, 17, 72, 81, 82; viii,  
187, 193

Pseudo-Callisthenes written  
in, vi, 13

invaded by Alexander the  
Great, vi, 30

Egyptian Egyptians, vi, 16;  
viii, 193; ix, 110

falsification of history by,  
vi, 16

thorn, viii, 210

linen, ix, 110

Ekbatana (Hamadán), the capi-  
tal of Media, i, 17; ii,  
191; vi, 31, 32

capital of the Manda, *q.v.*,  
i, 17

Elam (Susiana, Khúzistán),  
ancient kingdom and Per-  
sian province at the head  
of the Persian Gulf, i, 9;  
vi, 194, 198

Elburz. *See* Alburz.

Elements, the four, i, 102, 286

Elephant, elephants, i, 112 and  
*passim*

towers on, iv, 179

Fúr's, vi, 115, 116

Sikandar's device to over-  
come, vi, 115, 116

= Rustam, iii, 221, 253

= Rakhsh, iii, 257

= Fúr, vi, 117

piece in chess, vii, 285,  
423

position of, vii, 388, 422  
move of, vii, 422

White, Zál's, 141, i, 328

referred to, i, 377

Elephantine, the = Rustam, ii,  
65, 67

Eleven Rukhs, Battle of the, iv,  
88

arranged by Gúdarz and  
Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*

Firdausi's reflections on, iv,  
7, 98, 106

Ellipi, kingdom of, i, 9, 17

Elixir, 144, ii, 177, 178

Elymais (Elam, *q.v.*), kingdom,  
vi, 198

Endless peace, the, vii, 217

Enótokoitai, the, vi, 80

Epirus, ancient kingdom in  
northern Greece, vi, 12

Alexander I of, vi, 12

his expedition to Italy,  
vi, 12

Equinox, autumnal, iv, 313

Erinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*, 11

Esdras (Ezra), Jewish priest and  
scribe, supposed by the  
Muhammadans to have  
restored from memory the  
law lost during the cap-  
tivity, vii, 207, 264

Ether, viii, 275

Ethics, Muhammadan, respected,  
viii, 74

Ethiop, Ethiopian, Ethiopic, i,  
44; iii, 226; vi, 43, 71,  
80

= Indian, vi, 13, 68

western and eastern, vi, 13,  
68, 71

version of the Pseudo-Callis-  
thenes, *q.v.*, vi, 17 and  
*note*, 18, 30, 33, 66, 67,  
71, 74, 82, 83

Ethiopia, vi, 72

flight of Nectanebus to, vi,  
18 *note*

western and eastern, vi, 68

= India, vi, 68

Eumenes, Greek ephemerist,  
*temp.* Alexander the

Great, vi, 12

Euphrates (Farát, *q.v.*), river, ii,  
80; v, 292; vi, 31, 327;  
vii, 217; viii, 188, 190

Euxine, sea, i, 16; ii, 191, 336;  
vi, 72  
Eye, metaphor for child, i, 178,  
180, 181, 185, 194; ii,  
297, 328; v, 272; vii,  
276, 356  
evil, ii, 204, 252; iii, 141,  
157, 337; iv, 144, 282;  
v, 194, 245, 251, 290;  
vi, 266, 402; vii, 78, 81,  
172; viii, 16, 417  
turns milk to bane, vii, 320  
*seq.*, 324, 325

## F

FABLES OF BIDPAI (Book of  
Kalila and Dimna), vii,  
213, 427 *seq.*; viii, 202  
*note*, 390  
introduction of, into Persia,  
vii, 213  
translation of, vii, 382, 383  
Firdaus's account of, vii,  
430  
vogue of, vii, 383  
origin of, vii, 383  
Núshírwán's acquisition of,  
vii, 423 *seq.*  
Faghánish, *temp.* Pírw, king of  
the Haitálans, 168, vii,  
157  
helps Pírw for a considera-  
tion, vii, 157  
*temp.* Núshírwán, 168  
made king instead of  
Ghátkar, vii, 333  
Núshírwán takes counsel  
about, vii, 333  
descent of, from Bahrám  
Gúr, vii, 334  
Núshírwán writes to, vii,  
337  
makes submission to Núsh-  
írwán, vii, 360  
Faghfúr, dynastic title of the  
rulers of Chín and Máchín,  
152, 153, 160, i, 262;  
ii, 383; iv, 11, 135, 196,  
238 *seq.*; v, 221; vi, 35,

Faghfúr—*cont.*  
80, 113, 169 *seq.*, 325;  
vii, 340, 343, 408; viii,  
74; ix, 87, 97, 102  
*temp.* Kai Khusráu, helps  
Afrásiyáb, iv, 219  
Khán and, sue to Kai  
Khusráu for peace, iv,  
229  
orders Afrásiyáb to quit  
Khutan and Chín, iv,  
230  
grants facilities to Kai  
Khusráu for his march  
through Chín, iv, 239  
Khán of Chín and, welcome  
Kai Khusráu, iv, 240  
confirmed in the posses-  
sion of Chín and  
Máchín, iv, 252  
*temp.* Sikandar, ambassa-  
dors from, come to Dára,  
vi, 35  
Sikandar visits as his own  
ambassador, vi, 170  
gives audience to Sikandar,  
vi, 170  
entertains Sikandar, vi, 171  
answers Sikandar, vi, 172  
gifts of, to Sikandar, vi,  
173  
sends envoy with Sikandar,  
vi, 173  
*temp.* Bahrám Gúr, 165  
daughter of, the wife of  
Shangul, vii, 115  
hears of Bahrám Gúr's ex-  
ploits in Hind, vii, 129  
invites Bahrám Gúr to visit  
him, vii, 129  
Bahrám Gúr's reply to, vii,  
130  
*temp.* Núshírwán, viii, 97  
Faghfúr, son of Sawa, viii, 74,  
75, 120  
confused with Faghfúr of  
Chín, viii, 74  
parley of, with Bahrám  
Chúbína, viii, 112  
head of, on spear, viii,  
132

- Failakús (Philip II of Macedon), grandfather in Iránian legend of Sikandar (Alexander the Great), 158, vi, 57, 102, 112, 125, 130, 131, 151, 182; vii, 215; viii, 387  
     wars with Dáráb, vi, 22  
     allied with the king of Rús, vi, 22  
     marches from 'Ammúriya to encounter Dáráb, vi, 23  
     defeated and returns to 'Ammúriya, vi, 23  
     sues for peace, vi, 23  
     agrees to send tribute, and give his daughter in marriage, to Dáráb, 158, vi, 24, 25  
     adopts Sikandar as his heir, vi, 27  
 Faith, Faiths, the four, vi, 92, 95  
     of Christ, Christian, vi, 133, 352, 356  
     of Áhriman, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290  
 Faithful, Commander of the, ix, 72  
     'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*  
 Fakírs, the, vi, 61  
     Alexander the Great and, vi, 61  
     Onesicritus and, vi, 61  
 Fakká', a kind of drink, i, 43  
     *note*  
 Falátún (Plato), vii, 100; viii, 264  
 Falconry, ii, 108, 196; vi, 176; vii, 42, 48 *seq.*, 54, 55, 76 and *note*  
     origin of, i, 126  
 Famine, *See* Drought.  
 Farab (Fáriyáb? *q.v.*), iv, 185  
 Farab (Firabr), desert and town on the right bank of the Oxus opposite to Ámwí, *q.v.*, vii, 91, 92  
     desert of, ix, 115, 118  
 Fará'in, Iránian chief, vii, 207  
 Farámarz, son of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 319, 341 *seq.*, 349, 351, 354; iii, 18, 30, 35, 36, 202, 323, 325, 326, 328; iv, 14; v, 173, 174, 182, 183, 198, 231, 260, 261, 272, 274, 281, 283, 284  
     parentage of, iii, 323  
     appointed to expel the Turkmans from Zábulis-tán, iii, 31  
     referred to, v, 184  
 Zawára and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190  
     slays Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227  
     goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247  
     marches against Kábul, v, 274, 276  
     takes the corpses of Rustam, Zawára, and Rakhsh from the pits, and conveys them to Zábul for burial, v, 274 *seq.*  
     fights with the king of Kábul and puts him and his kin to death, v, 276, 277  
     makes a Zábuli king of Kábul, v, 277  
     returns to Zábul, v, 277  
     hears of Bahman's invasion and marches against him, v, 287  
     defeated and put to death, v, 288  
 Farának, wife of Abtín and mother of Faridún, i, 90, 145, 157  
     Faridún brought up by, on Birmaya's milk, i, 151  
     taken by, to Mount Alburz, i, 152  
     told by, about his origin, i, 153  
     prays for Faridún's safety, i, 158

- Farānak, rejoices over Farīdūn's success, i, 175  
 gifts of, to Farīdūn, i, 176
- Farānak, daughter of Barzīn, vii, 53  
 married to Bahrām Gūr, vii, 53
- Farangīs, daughter of Afrāsiyāb, wife of Siyāwush, and mother of Kai Khusrau, 145, 146, 148, ii, 270 *seq.*, 288 *seq.*, 299, 306, 373, 381, 386 *seq.*; iii, 96, 117, 203, 211
- Mandane and, identical in legend, ii, 191
- Siyāwush marries, ii, 270
- Afrāsiyāb summons, to court, ii, 300 *seq.*
- Siyāwush confides in, ii, 307 *seq.*
- Afrāsiyāb appealed to by, ii, 317 *seq.*
- imprisoned, ii, 320
- sentenced, ii, 322
- Pirān saves and takes charge of, ii, 324 *seq.*
- Kai Khusrau born of, ii, 326
- dwells at Siyāwushgird, ii, 333
- instructs Kai Khusrau how to find Bihzād, ii, 374
- gives Gīv the mail of Siyāwush, ii, 376
- crosses the Jihūn, ii, 392
- provided for by Kai Kāús, ii, 399
- Fariburz marries, iii, 148
- referred to, iii, 146 *seq.*, 202; iv, 205, 213, 216
- death of referred to, iv, 304
- Farāt (Euphrates), river, 158, v, 294, 309; vi, 37, 42, 43, 290; viii, 93, 250
- Dārāb cast away upon, v, 295
- Faráyīn (Gurāz, Shahrbarāz *q.v.*), Shāh, 175, ix, 50, 53, 105
- accession-speech of, ix, 52
- counselled by his eldest son, ix, 52
- Faráyīn, counselled by his youngest son, ix, 53
- misrule of, ix, 53
- plot against, ix, 54
- Farfuriyūs (Porphyrogenitus?), Rūman general, 167, vii, 218
- defeated by Nūshīrwān, vii, 256
- makes report to Cæsar, vii, 260
- Farghān, Rūman architect, and Khusrau Parwīz, viii, 401 *seq.*
- Farghāna, region south of the Jaxartes, east of Sughd, iii, 109
- Farghār, Tūrānian hero, iii, 250
- goes to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
- reports to Afrāsiyāb, iii, 253
- Farhād, Irānian hero, ii, 73, 85, 138, 316, 338, 340; iii, 11, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 127, 268, 289, 313, 327, 331, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 25, 42, 147, 292
- Parthian origin of, iii, 11
- goes as envoy to the king of Māzandarān, ii, 63
- takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 111
- steed of, iii, 313
- goes with Rustam to rescue Bīzhan, iii, 334
- left in command by Gīv, iv, 83
- put in command of the left wing, iv, 92
- left at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
- Farhād, Irānian general, *temp.* Nūshīrwān, vii, 251
- commands left wing, vii, 251
- Farhād, lover of Shīrīn, viii, 192
- Fariburz, son of Kai Kāús, 148, 151, ii, 3, 62, 199, 316, 335, 336, 340, 358, 405 *seq.*, 409; iv, 14, 24, 32, 45, 50, 145 *seq.*, 164, 166, 167, 174, 177, 182, 187,

Fariburz—*cont.*

- 211, 213, 215, 238, 239,  
253, 258, 268, 289, 331;  
iv, 13, 34, 37, 91  
encampment of, described,  
ii, 155  
claims of, to the throne sup-  
ported by Tús, ii, 401,  
iii, 13  
recognises Kai Khusrau as  
Sháh, ii, 410  
Kai Khusrau's letter to,  
iii, 84  
reads to the chiefs Kai  
Khusrau's letter, and  
supersedes Tús, iii, 86  
sends Ruhhám to Pírán, iii,  
87  
obtains an armistice and  
prepares to renew the  
campaign, iii, 89  
fights and is defeated, iii, 90  
returns to Írán, iii, 111  
asks Rustam to support his  
suit to Farangis, iii, 146  
marries Farangis, iii, 148  
leads the van of Rustam's  
expedition to succour Tús,  
iii, 148  
meets Gúdarz, iii, 163  
joins forces with Tús, iii,  
169  
goes to Kai Khusrau with  
tidings of victory, iii, 236  
*seq.*  
returns to the host, iii, 241,  
243  
commands the right wing,  
iv, 24  
superseded *pro tem.* by  
Katmára, iv, 92  
chosen to fight with Kulbád,  
iv, 97  
slays Kulbád, iv, 99  
commands with Tukhár the  
troops from Kháwar, iv,  
148  
slays Fartús, iv, 181  
commands the right, iv, 191  
takes part in the siege of  
Gang-bihisht, iv, 199

- Fariburz, Kai Khusrau remon-  
strated with by, and  
other nobles for refusing  
audience, iv, 275  
Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv,  
295  
sets out with Kai Khusrau  
on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
refuses to turn back when  
bidden by Kai Khusrau,  
iv, 307  
Kai Khusrau farewells and  
warns, and his comrades,  
iv, 308  
disappears and is sought  
in vain by, and his com-  
rades, iv, 308  
vainly reminds his com-  
rades of Kai Khusrau's  
warning, iv, 309  
end of, iv, 309  
Farídún (Thraétaona), Sháh, son  
of Abtin and Farának, 140,  
141, 153, i, 30, 42, 54, 55,  
90 *seq.*, 142, 286, 336, 341,  
349, 351, 364, 370, 382,  
384, 385; ii, 11, 17, 19,  
21, 29, 33, 36, 37, 99, 193,  
195, 204, 237, 274, 318,  
327, 392, 400, 404; iii,  
21, 37, 245, 257; iv, 17,  
66, 69, 89, 91, 142, 149,  
151, 153, 168, 174, 203,  
204, 221, 222, 255, 259,  
260, 262, 266, 269, 286,  
289, 299, 313, 328; v, 32,  
34, 160, 180, 196, 204  
*seq.*, 245, 260, 261, 271,  
283; vi, 73, 172, 209,  
406; vii, 37, 38, 60, 62,  
73, 79, 101, 120, 199, 207;  
viii, 129, 205, 218, 231,  
242, 260, 300, 376 *seq.*,  
391, 392; ix, 25, 39, 53,  
71, 86, 103  
mythological origin of, i, 171  
*seq.*  
Zahhák's dream of, i, 147  
*seq.*  
advent of, prophesied, i,  
149

Faridún, birth of, i, 150  
 father of, slain by Zakhák, i, 151  
 brought up on the milk of the cow Birmáya, i, 151  
 taken by his mother to Mount Alburz, i, 152  
 palace of, burned by Zakhák, i, 152, 153  
 questions his mother about his origin, i, 152  
 contemplates revenge on Zakhák, i, 154  
 dissuaded by his mother, i, 154  
 Káwa revolts to, i, 157  
 resolves to war with Zakhák, i, 157  
 brothers of, i, 158  
 ox-head mace invented by, i, 158  
 rewards the smiths, i, 158  
 goes to fight Zakhák, i, 159  
*seq.*  
 visited and instructed by Surúsh, i, 159  
 life of, attempted by his brothers, i, 160  
 saves himself by his magic power, i, 160  
 van of, led by Káwa, i, 160  
 crosses the Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), i, 160  
 enters Zakhák's capital, i, 161  
 overthrows Zakhák's talisman, i, 161  
 seeks in vain for Zakhák, i, 162  
 finds the sisters of Jamshíd, i, 162  
 hears where Zakhák is, i, 163  
 Story of, and Zakhák's minister (Kundrav), i, 164  
 doings of, reported to Zakhák by Kundrav, i, 165  
 attacked by, and overthrows, Zakhák, i, 168, 288  
 counselled by Surúsh about Zakhák, i, 168, 169

Faridún, becomes Sháh, i, 168  
 fetters Zakhák upon Mount Damáwand, i, 169  
 Reign of, 140, i, 171 *seq.*  
 Note on, i, 171 *seq.*  
 three sons of, i, 174, 177  
 ethnical significance of, i, 54  
 accession of, i, 174  
 holds a feast, i, 175  
 makes a progress through the world, i, 176  
 builds himself a seat, i, 177  
 sends Jandal on a mission, i, 177  
 receives Jandal's report, i, 182  
 instructs his sons how to deal with Sarv, i, 182  
 sons of, outwit Sarv, i, 184  
 receive Sarv's daughters in marriage, i, 185  
 return home, i, 186  
 proved by Faridún, i, 186  
 named by Faridún, i, 187  
 wives of, named by Faridún, i, 188  
 horoscopes of, taken by Faridún, i, 188  
 divides the world among his sons, i, 189  
 grows old, i, 189  
 Salm and Túr write to, to demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191  
 makes answer to his sons, i, 193  
 holds converse with Íraj, i, 195  
 writes to Salm and Túr, i, 197  
 Íraj's head sent to, i, 202  
 mourning of, for Íraj, i, 203  
*seq.*  
 sight of, injured by mourning for Íraj, i, 204  
 hopes for issue from Íraj, i, 205  
 recovers his sight, i, 206  
 gifts of, to Minúchíhr, i, 207  
 gives a feast to the nobles, i, 207

- Farīdūn, receives an embassy from his sons, i, 209  
 makes answer to his sons, i, 211  
 sends Minúchihir to fight with Salm and Túr i, 215  
 hears of Minúchihir's victory, i, 222  
 Minúchihir sends the heads of Salm and Túr to, i, 222, 229  
 welcomes Minúchihir on his return in triumph, i, 230  
 confides Minúchihir to Salm, i, 231  
 gives thanks to God and prays for death, i, 232  
 distributes the spoil to the troops, i, 232  
 enthrones Minúchihir, i, 232  
 passes his last days in austerities, i, 232  
 dies, i, 232  
 burial of, i, 233  
 mourning for, i, 233, 237  
 Firdausi's reflections on, i, 170, 232  
 final warfare of Zakhák with, i, 278, *cf.* 173  
 Mount Sipand besieged by order of, i, 329  
 Grace of, i, 335  
 saying of, ii, 219 and *note*  
 flag of = flag of Káwa, vi, 59  
 capital of, vii, 215, 238  
 Fárikín (Maiyafárikín, Martyropolis), city in Roman Armenia, vii, 200  
 taken by Kubád, vii, 200  
 Fáriyáb, city half way between the town of Marvrúd and Balkh, iv, 65  
 Farr, i, 82. *See* Grace.  
 Farruhán (Farrukhán). *See* Faráyin.  
 Farrukh, ruler of Nímruz, viii, 375  
 Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See* Faráyin.  
 Farrukhánzád (Farrukhzád *q.v.*), viii, 195  
 Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd *q.v.*), father of Rustam, ix, 69  
 Farrukhzád (of glorious birth), name assumed by Gush-tásp in Róm, iv, 351 *seq.*, 357, 360  
 Farrukhzád, Sháh, 175, ix, 61 *seq.*, 70  
 Siyah Chashm and, ix, 62  
 poisons, ix, 63  
 Farrukhzád (Farrukhánzád *q.v.*), son of Hurmuzd, brother of Rustam, and favourite of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 23, 87, 92, 95  
 conspires with Guráz, viii, 408, 412  
 goes to the host, viii, 412  
 rebels in favour of Shírwí, viii, 413  
 brother of, viii, 413 and *note*  
 conspires with Tukhár, viii, 414  
 proclaims Shírwí Sháh, viii, 416  
 hears where Khusrau Parwíz is hiding, viii, 419  
 holds talk with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 420  
 bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to murder Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 33  
 defeats the Arabs, ix, 85  
 counsels Yazdagird, ix, 86, 87  
 leads the host to Khurásán, ix, 89  
 entrusts Yazdagird to Máhwí, ix, 95  
 goes to Rai, ix, 96  
 Farrukhzád, Iránian warrior, viii, 241, 296  
 speech of, viii, 240  
 Farsang (parasang), measure of length, about 3.88 miles, i, 82  
 Farshídwad, son of Wisa and brother of Pirán, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; iii,

Farshidward—*cont.*

- 90, 166, 198, 205, 252;  
 iv, 7, 10, 119, 122, 125,  
 133, 153, 160, 162  
 summons Pirán to save  
 Farangis, ii, 322  
 commands with Lahhák the  
 right wing, iv, 26  
 attacks the Iránians in  
 flank, iv, 82  
 opposed by Zanga, iv, 83  
 goes to help Pirán and  
 attacks Giv, iv, 85  
 prowess of, iv, 86  
 fights with Guráza, iv, 87  
 Bízhan, iv, 87  
 Lahhák and, put in joint  
 command, iv, 84  
 Pirán's instructions to,  
 iv, 95  
 hear of the death of Pirán  
 and the coming of Kai  
 Khusrau, iv, 112  
 lament for Pirán, iv, 112  
 take counsel with the  
 host, iv, 113  
 fight and escape Iránian  
 outpost, iv, 116  
 referred to, iv, 118, 120,  
 126  
 repose themselves, iv, 121  
 corpses of, brought back  
 by Bízhan, iv, 126, 132  
 deaths of, announced to  
 Afrásiyáb, iv, 152  
 Farshidward, brother of Asfan-  
 diyár, 155, v, 20, 22, 110,  
 114, 141, 171  
 governor of Khurásán, v, 77  
 stationed on the Iránian  
 right, v, 94  
 mortally wounded by Kuh-  
 ram, v, 95, 101, 104  
 Asfandiyár laments for, v,  
 101, 104  
 resolves to avenge, v, 104  
 dies, v, 104  
 shrouded by Asfandiyár, v,  
 105  
 Farshidward, a miser, 164, vii,  
 67 *seq.*

- Farshidward, a miser, Bahrám  
 Gúr visits, vii, 68 *seq.*  
 pretended destitution of,  
 vii, 68 *seq.*  
 wealth of, described, vii, 70,  
 72, 73  
 Fartús, Túránian hero, iii, 182,  
 213, 231, 251  
 comes to aid Pirán, iii, 152  
 hears of the coming of  
 Rustam, iii, 175  
 slain by Fariburz, iv, 181  
 Farúd, son of Siyáwush and  
 Jaríra daughter of Pirán,  
 and half brother of Kai  
 Khusrau, 145, 147, i, 92,  
 370; ii, 3, 291; iii, 8, 14,  
 42 *seq.*, 72, 85, 87, 93, 107,  
 111 *seq.*; iv, 42, 135;  
 v, 30  
 birth of, ii, 291  
 hostility of Tús to, iii, 13  
 Story of, 147, iii, 37 *seq.*  
 referred to, iii, 39  
 advised by Tukhár, iii, 47,  
 52 *seq.*  
 interview of, with Bahrám,  
 iii, 47 *seq.*  
 birth-mark of, iii, 49  
 gives his mace to Bahrám,  
 iii, 50  
 eighty slaves of, the, iii, 55  
 their mockery of Tús, iii,  
 56  
 their mockery of Giv, iii,  
 58  
 slays the steed of Tús, iii, 56  
 wounds the steed of Giv, iii,  
 58  
 slays the steed of Bízhan,  
 iii, 61  
 worsted by Bízhan, iii, 62  
 attacks the Iránians, iii, 63  
 prowess of, iii, 64  
 mortally wounded, iii, 64  
 dies, iii, 65  
 mother and slaves of,  
 destroy themselves, iii, 66  
 burial of, iii, 68  
 Kai Khusrau's grief for, iii,  
 84 *seq.*, 112

- Farúd, son of Shírin and Khusrau  
 Parwíz, ix, 39
- Farukhzád. *See* Farrukhzád.
- Farwardín, genius, i, 88; iii, 287, 328  
 name of month and day, i, 88, 133, 263; iii, 230, 286, 317, 323; vi, 375; vii, 363; viii, 367, 371  
 origin of, iii, 286
- Faryán, king, father-in-law of  
 Kaidrúsh, 159, vi, 66, 67, 124 *seq.*, 171, 172  
 city of, taken by Sikandar, vi, 124  
 slain, vi, 125  
 daughter and son-in-law of, taken prisoners, vi, 125  
 brought before Naitkún, vi, 126  
 sentenced to death, vi, 126  
 pardoned, vi, 126
- Fáskún, forest in Rúm, iv, 333, 335 *seq.*
- Wolf of, 154  
 described, iv, 333, 336  
 Mírín bidden by Cæsar to slay, iv, 333  
 Gushtásp undertakes to slay, iv, 336  
 keeps tusks of, iv, 338  
 tusks of, produced before Cæsar by Híshwí, iv, 351  
 referred to, iv, 359
- Fátima, daughter of Muhammad and wife of 'Alí, i, 12
- Fazl. *See* Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl.
- Feast. *See* Mihrgán, Naurúz, New Year's Day, Sada.
- Ferghána. *See* Farghána.
- Fight of the Seven Warriors, 143, ii, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Firdausí, Persian poet and author of the Sháhnáma, 146, 154, 155, 160, 173, i, 3, 22 *seq.*; ii, 9, 10, 82, 119; iii, 11, 108, 271, 272; iv, 136, 138, 314, 316; v, 10, 20 *seq.*, 29, 282; vi, 16, 17, 64 *seq.*, Firdausí—*cont.*  
 72, 78, 80 *seq.*, 197, 198, 202, 250, 254, 294, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, 326, 328, 368; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 156, 159, 185, 186, 188, 213, 214, 217 *seq.*, 317; viii, 71, 73, 74, 187, 190, 192, 193, ix, 69  
 materials for the life of, i, 23 *seq.*  
 personal references of, in the Sháhnáma, i, 24 *seq.*  
 conclusions from, i, 35  
 date of birth of, i, 24  
 Muhammadan of the Shí'ite sect, i, 24, 106, 107  
 fond of wine, i, 25; iv, 313; v, 164, vi, 291, 306, 309, 314, 362, 369; vii, 277  
 owned or occupied land, i, 25; vi, 411; ix, 112  
 escape of, from drowning, i, 26, 29  
 son of, i, 26; viii, 190  
 referred to (?), i, 27; vii, 277, 311  
 death of, 173, i, 26; viii, 190  
 complains of old age, 160, i, 26; ii, 336; iv, 141; v, 262; vii, 220  
 patrons, friends and helpers of, i, 29 *seq.*, 35, 39, 110; ix, 121  
 exempted from taxation, i, 35, 39; ix, 121  
 Nizámí's account of, i, 38 *seq.*, 45  
 later legends of, iii, 15, 109, 191; iv, 8  
 Dakíki, and. *See* Dakíki.  
 Mahmúd and, *See* Mahmúd.  
 Satire of. *See* Mahmúd.  
 Sháhnáma of. *See* Sháhnáma.  
 Yúsuf and Zulkha of, i, 45  
 admits Muhammadan traditions into Sháhnáma, viii, 42

- Firdausi, and rhyme-word, viii,  
397, *note*  
account of Arab conquest  
by, supplemented, ix,  
65  
Yazdagird's death, ix, 70,  
107  
reflections on, ix, 108,  
111  
on completion of Shāhnāma,  
ix, 121  
time spent on Shāhnāma,  
ix, 122  
praise of Sultān Mahmūd—  
See Mahmūd  
Fire, ancient cult of the Aryans,  
i, 7, 49, 56  
priests of. See Magi.  
region of, ii, 56  
Húshang's discovery of, i,  
123  
institution of the Cult of,  
i, 116, 123  
Feast of Sada, i, 124  
ordeal by, 144, ii, 218 *seq.*  
sacred, vi, 21, 201, 212  
Fire—fane or temple, 154. See  
Ázar Abádagán, Ázar-  
gashasp, Barzín.  
—worship, abolition of, pro-  
phesied, viii, 68  
Fírúz, Iránian king, iv, 149  
Fírúzábád. See Gúr.  
Fírúzi Kuh, pass in the Alburz  
range, ii, 28  
Fish, mythological, i, 71, 72,  
148, 252; ii, 15, 299; iv,  
279; vii, 341 and *note*,  
406; viii, 212 and *note*  
salt, the, legend of, vi, 76  
*seq.*  
—eaters. See Ichthyo-  
phagi.  
Fleece, Golden. See Golden.  
Flesh-meats, introduction of,  
attributed to Áhriman,  
i, 138  
Flight, of Muhammad, referred  
to, ix, 122  
Flying-machine, of Kai Káuś, ii,  
103  
Fo-lin, vi, 73 and *note*  
Footman (pawn), piece in chess,  
vii, 385  
position of, vii, 388  
move of, vii, 422  
promotion of, vii, 422  
Ford and toll-house of Zark, ix,  
100 and *note*, 116  
Fort, hill, Malcolm's descrip-  
tion of a, i, 236  
Fortifications vitrified vi, 79, 165  
Fount of Life, the, vi, 74  
*seq.*, 158 *seq.*  
Sikandar's expedition to,  
vi, 158 *seq.*  
account of, in the Pseudo-  
Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*  
Sikandar fails to find, vi,  
160  
Founts, the Seven, viii, 392  
Four, Wonders of Kaid. See  
Kaid.  
Faiths, vi, 91, 95  
Frangrasyan (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*),  
i, 338; ii, 81, 189; iv,  
137, 138  
Frashókart, son of Gushtasp, v,  
26  
Frásiyáv (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*), i,  
338; ii, 81  
Fravashí, i, 369; ii, 82; iii, 286  
Frazdánava, lake or river, v, 13  
Frúbá, sacred Fire, vi, 201, 255  
Funj, leader of Khán's host,  
*temp.* Núshirwán, vii, 330  
Fúr (Porus, *q.v.*), dynastic title  
and Indian king, *temp.*  
Sikandar, 159, vi, 31, 51,  
62, 64, 110, *seq.* 123, 132,  
135, 137, 170, 172, 175;  
vii, 395  
Dará's letter to, vi, 50  
Sikandar's war with, vi, 67,  
112 *seq.*  
routed by Sikandar's iron  
steeds, vi, 116  
single combat of, with Sik-  
andar, vi, 117  
slain, vi, 117  
troops of, submit to Sikan-  
dar, vi, 118

Furúhíl, Íránian hero, 151, iv,  
24, 33  
chosen to fight with Zan-  
gula, iv, 97  
slays Zangula, iv, 101

## G

GABRIEL, angel, i, 114; iv, 140;  
vi, 138 *note*  
Gahán (Kahan, town above  
Juwayn on the Farah  
river which flows into  
the northern end of the  
Lake of Zírih in Sístán?)  
149, iii, 152, 177, 224, 225  
Gahár, Túránian hero, 149, iii,  
216, 224, 251  
comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152  
slain by Rustam, iii, 225  
Gaiúmart, the first Sháh and  
culture-hero, and the first  
man in Zoroastrian tradi-  
tion, 139, i, 90, 91, 116,  
123; vi, 208; viii, 24,  
55, 260, 269, 310, 376  
Reign of, i, 117 *seq.*  
Note on, i, 117  
greatness of, i, 118  
culture-hero, i, 118  
son of, i, 119  
slain by Black Dív, i, 120  
envied by Áhriman, i, 119  
warned by Surúsh, i, 119  
grief of, for the death of  
Siyámak, i, 120  
bidden by Surúsh to avenge  
Siyámak, i, 120  
goes with Húshang to fight  
Black Dív, i, 121  
death of, i, 121  
Firdausí's reflections on, i,  
121  
rites of, vii, 53  
Faith of, vii, 273; vii, 277  
Galbwí, Íránian chief, ix, 74  
Galínúsh, put in charge of Khus-  
rau Parwíz, viii, 421; ix,  
5, 11, 12  
parley of, with Kharrád and  
Ashtád, ix, 12 *seq.*

Gandarep, monster, i, 143  
slain by Keresáspa, i, 172,  
173  
Gang, mountain, iv, 162; v, 216  
Gang, sea of, ii, 362  
Gang, stronghold in Túrán and  
seat of Afrásiyáb, ii, 241,  
261, 309, 344, 357, 369;  
iii, 236, 253; iv, 258  
king of=Afrásiyáb, iv, 134  
two places known as, iv, 136  
=Gang-bihisht *q.v.*, iv, 190,  
195, 197, 198, 202, 208,  
218, 220, 221, 229, 232  
=Gang-dizh *q.v.*, iv, 247  
Gang-bihisht, north of the Jax-  
artes, stronghold and seat  
of Afrásiyáb, 152, iv, 135,  
136, 207 *seq.*, 228  
Afrásiyáb at, iv, 187  
marches from, iv, 190  
returns to, iv, 196  
described, iv, 195  
prepared for a siege by  
Afrásiyáb, iv, 197  
besieged by Kai Khusrau,  
iv, 198, 208 *seq.*  
taken by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*  
occupied by Kai Khusrau  
for a while, iv, 218  
Gúdarz left in command of,  
iv, 219  
Gustaham, son of Naudar,  
left in command of, iv, 238,  
Kai Khusrau dwells for a  
year in, iv, 254  
Gang-dizh (Gang-i-Siyáwush),  
stronghold, 145, 153, iv,  
135, 136, 186 *note*, 203,  
257, 264; ix, 25  
possible identification of, ii,  
189  
meaning of, ii, 19  
building and description of,  
ii, 279 *seq.*  
Afrásiyáb takes refuge at,  
iv, 230  
Kai Khusrau resolves to  
pursue Afrásiyáb to, iv,  
231  
marches to, iv, 247

- Gangdizh, Kai Khusrav, forbids his troops to injure, iv, 247 enters, iv, 248 remains a year at, iv, 249 advised by his paladins to leave, iv, 249 appoints a governor for, iv, 249 distributes treasure at, iv, 250
- Gang-i-Dizhukht (Baitu'l Mukaddas *q.v.*), i, 161, 226
- Gang-i-Siyawush. *See* Gangdizh.
- Ganges, Indian river, vi, 64
- Garâmik-kart. *See* Girâmî.
- Garcha, Tûrânian hero, iii, 152 comes to aid Pîrân, iii, 152
- Garden of the Hesperides, vi, 74 Indians, viii, 196
- Gardener, a, vi, 341 entertains Shâpûr son of Urmuzd, vi, 341 *seq.* sent by Shâpûr to the high priest, vi, 344 describes Shâpûr, vi, 344 rewarded by Shâpûr, vi, 357
- Gargwî, Irânian hero, v, 109 commands the left, v, 109
- Garlb, surface-measure, vii, 215 and *note*
- Garshâsp. *See* Keresâspa.
- Garshâsp, son of Zav, Shâh, 142, i, 90, 91, 174; ii, 336 Reign of, i, 373 *seq.* Note on, i, 373 relation of, to Keresâsp, i, 174 accession of, i, 374 death of, i, 375
- Garshâsp, Irânian hero, i, 42, 144, 207, 212, 214, 239, 345; ii, 4; iii, 260, 273; v, 202 relation of, to Keresâspa, i, 174
- Garshâsp, Irânian chief, *temp.* Shâpûr son of Ardshîr, vi, 297 single combat of, with Bazânûsh, vi, 297
- Garshâsp, Irânian noble, *temp.* Nûshîrwân, viii, 18
- Garsiawaz, brother of Afrâsiyâb, 145, 150, 153, i, 92, 342, 349; ii, 3, 188, 189, 193, 195, 228, 231 *seq.*, 249, 253, 264, 268, 269, 286, 289 *seq.*, 313 *seq.*; iii, 197, 208, 306, 310, 350, 352; iv, 10, 135 *seq.*, 209 *seq.*, 252, 268; vi, 325; ix, 103 defeated by Siyâwush, ii, 229 *seq.* sues for peace to Siyâwush, ii, 237 *seq.* fails to string the bow of Siyâwush, ii, 266 visits Siyâwush, ii, 289 *seq.* envies Siyâwush, ii, 292 *seq.* challenges Siyâwush, ii, 294 slanders Siyâwush, ii, 296 *seq.* betrays Siyâwush, ii, 301 *seq.* compasses the death of Siyâwush, ii, 315 *seq.* charged with the execution of Farangîs, ii, 322 goes to Manîzha's palace, iii, 301 finds Bîzhan, iii, 302 takes Bîzhan before Afrâsiyâb, iii, 303 ordered to execute Bîzhan, iii, 304 imprison Bîzhan, iii, 309 disgrace Manîzha, iii, 309 put in charge of the elephants, iv, 156 reinforces Afrâsiyâb, iv, 181 Jahn and, compel Afrâsiyâb to quit the field, iv, 182 commands the rear, iv, 191 taken prisoner by Rustam at the storming of Gangbihisht, iv, 210 referred to, iv, 211 sent to Kai Kâûs, iv, 233 imprisoned, iv, 235

- Garsiwaz, sent for by Kai Káuś and Kai Khusrau, and put to the torture, iv, 265  
 voice of, attracts Afrasiyáb from lake, iv, 265  
 holds converse with Afrasiyáb, iv, 266  
 slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 269
- Garsiyún, Íránian chief, ix, 115
- Gashan, as rhyme-word, viii, 397 *note*
- Gashasp, Íránian chief, vi, 394  
 addresses the nobles on the succession to the throne, vi, 394
- Gashasp, Íránian general, *temp.* Núshirwán, vii, 251  
 put in charge of baggage-train, vii, 251
- Gashasp, Íránian noble, viii, 17, 18
- Gashasp, father in Sháhnáma of Bahráma Chúbína, viii, 76, 99, 162, 169, 304
- Gashasp, father of Ashtád *q.v.*, ix, 11
- Gáthas, ii, 8; v, 11, 12, 17
- Gaugamela, village near Nineveh, vi, 31, 32 *note*  
 battle of, vi, 31
- Gaumata (the false Smerdis), Magus, vi, 207  
 usurpation, and death of, i, 58  
 overthrow of, celebrated at the Magophonia, i, 59
- Gav, king of Hind, 169, vii, 395 *seq.*  
 mother of, vii, 395 *seq.*  
 two marriages of, vii, 395, 396  
 two sons of, vii, 395, 396  
 becomes queen, vii, 397  
 tries to keep peace between her sons, vii, 397 *seq.*  
 hears of the death of Talhand, vii, 419  
 reproaches Gav, vii, 420
- Gav, mother of, chess invented to appease, vii, 421  
 death of, vii, 423  
 birth of, vii, 395  
 tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 407, 408, 410, 413, 417, 421  
 rivalry between Talhand and, vii, 397 *seq.*  
 war between Talhand and, vii, 404 *seq.*  
 attempts of, at accommodation with Talhand, vii, 405, 408, 413  
 defeats Talhand, vii, 412  
 proposes a decisive battle to Talhand, vii, 414  
 victory of, vii, 416  
 invents chess to console his mother for the death of Talhand, vii, 421
- Gaza, city in south-western Palestine, vi, 30  
 siege of, by Alexander the Great, vi, 30
- Gazdaham, Íránian hero and castellan of White Castle, 144, i, 369; ii, 131, 132, 134, 138, 139, 145, 146; iii, 15, 25, 33, 40, 45, 294; iv, 13, 24, 149  
 besieged by Bármán, i, 354  
 relieved by Káran, i, 354  
 Suhráb described by, ii, 136  
 evacuates White Castle, ii, 137
- Gedrosia (Makrán, Balúchistán), vi, 69
- Gelani. *See* Gilán.
- Gemini, constellation, vi, 155; viii, 86, 203; ix, 73
- Genealogical tables  
 Pishdadian dynasty, i, 90, 91  
 Kaiánian dynasty, ii, 3  
 Sásanian dynasty, vi, 3  
 Kings and heroes of Túrán, i, 92  
 Íránian heroes, ii, 4
- Genealogies, fictitious, v, 282, 290, 293; vi, 199, 211

- Genealogies, of Pápak in Tabarí,  
vi, 200  
Mas'údí, vi, 200
- Geography, Firdausí's, ii, 28  
Darmesteter on, ii, 79, 80
- Geometrician, vi, 377
- Geopothros (Gotarzes *q.v.*), iii, 9
- George, Armenian general, viii,  
195
- Germanus, vii, 218
- Germany, vi, 73
- Gharcha (Georgia), country be-  
tween the Caucasus and  
the Aras, iv, 14, 65  
king of, iv, 149
- Gharchís (Georgians), vii, 94
- Ghátakar, ruler of the Haitálíans,  
*q.v.*, 168; vii, 334, 335  
hears of, and destroys, the  
Khán's embassy to Nûsh-  
írwán, vii, 330  
prepares to oppose the Khán  
vii, 330  
defeated, vii, 332
- Ghaznín, city in Afghánistán,  
the capital of Sultán  
Mahmúd, i, 20, 257; iv,  
14; v, 173; vii, 173
- Ghee, clarified butter, vi, 105
- Ghúl, a sorceress, i, 42; v, 117,  
128  
referred to, v, 121  
described, v, 130  
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 131
- Ghundí, a dív, ii, 44, 54, 55,  
93; iii, 256; iv, 296;  
v, 204
- Ghúr, district in Afghánistán  
between Harát and Ghaz-  
nín, ii, 101
- Ghuz, a Turkish tribe and desert  
east of Gurgán, iv, 60
- Gíl, Gílán, district on the south-  
west coast of the Caspian,  
167, i, 230, 231; ii, 226,  
293; iv, 148, 265; v, 13;  
vi, 227; vii, 224, 340,  
362, ix, 93  
river of=Kizil Uzun, also  
called Safid Rúd, iv, 154  
waters of=Caspian, i, 230
- Gíl, Afrásiyáb's camp in, iv, 155  
Nûshírwán's dealings with,  
vii, 216, 242 *seq.*  
captives from, settled at  
Súrsán, vii, 328
- Gimírrá. *See* Kimmerians.
- Gipsies, the, 165, vii, 6  
Nóldeke on, vii, 6  
language of, vii, 6  
brought into Irán by Bah-  
rám Gúr, vii, 149
- Girámí (Garámik-kart), son of  
Jámásp, 155, v, 24 *seq.*, 58  
death of, foretold by Jám-  
ásp, v, 50  
worsts Námkhást, v, 59  
rescues Káwa's flag, v, 59  
slain, v, 59
- Giravgard, Túránian stronghold  
on the Oxus, iii, 73, 80  
occupied by the Iránians,  
iii, 78
- Girduni, Sirdarra, pass in the  
Alburz range, ii, 28; vi,  
32  
Sawachi, pass in the Alburz  
range, ii, 28
- Girdkuh, fortress, v, 30
- Girih (Jirrah), place south of  
Shíráz, vi, 199
- Gív, Iránian hero, son of Gúdarz,  
and father of Bízhan, 146-  
151, 154, ii, 4, 25, 33, 35,  
38, 62, 70, 73, 85, 91, 127,  
138 *seq.*, 148, 151, 158,  
160, 188, 193, 197, 271,  
318, 319, 338, 340, 349,  
351, 362, 388 *seq.*; iii, 11,  
13, 18, 19, 27, 33, 45, 48,  
*seq.* 57, 67, 75, 76, 81, 85,  
86, 89 *seq.*, 96, 101 *seq.*,  
108, 111, 114 *seq.*, 121 *seq.*,  
127, 129, 130, 133, 139  
*seq.*, 143, 154, 155, 157,  
159, 161, 169, 170, 182,  
183, 187, 206, 211, 227,  
231, 238, 244, 245, 247,  
248, 253, 255, 259, 264,  
268, 273, 289, 291, 292,  
294, 296 *seq.*, 302, 305,

Giv—*cont.*

307 *seq.*, 311 *seq.*, 330 *seq.*,  
 337 *seq.*, 350, 353 *seq.*;  
 iv, 7, 8, 11, 13, 15, 16, 19  
*seq.*, 26 *seq.*, 39 *seq.*, 52,  
 54, 56, 59, 69, 82 *seq.*, 90,  
 99, 102, 136, 147, 157, 223,  
 226, 227, 233 *seq.*, 292,  
 296, 306 *seq.*; v, 207,  
 208; vi, 194; viii, 168  
 meaning of, ii, 335  
 historical character, iii, 9  
 relationship of, to Rustam,  
 ii, 155, 365, 384; iii, 323  
 son of Gúdarz, ii, 158  
 wife of, ii, 365, 384; iii, 323  
 sister of, ii, 384; iii, 323  
 father of Bizhan, ii, 366  
 and *note*  
 solicitude of, for Bizhan,  
 iii, 15  
 harries Mázandarán, ii, 39  
 taken prisoner in Mázan-  
 darán, ii, 40  
 released by Rustam, ii, 58  
 taken prisoner in Hámá-  
 várán, ii, 90  
 released by Rustam, ii, 97  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś,  
 ii, 104  
 takes part in the Fight of  
 the Seven Warriors, ii,  
 107 *seq.*  
 bears letter from Káuś to  
 Rustam, ii, 139  
 encampment of, described,  
 ii, 155  
 helps to saddle Rakhsh for  
 the fight with Suhráb, ii,  
 160  
 Suhráb described by, ii, 166  
 quarrels with Tús over the  
 future mother of Siyá-  
 wush, iii, 194  
 sent by Gúdarz to seek Kai  
 Khusrau, ii, 364 *seq.*  
 finds Kai Khusrau, ii, 370  
 receives the mail of Siyá-  
 wush, ii, 377  
 exploits of, in defence of  
 Kai Khusrau, ii, 378 *seq.*

Giv, tells how he captured  
 Pirán's wife and sister, ii,  
 383  
 overthrows Pirán and his  
 host, ii, 385  
 releases Pirán, ii, 387  
 at the Jihún, ii, 391 *seq.*  
 announces Kai Khusrau's  
 arrival in Irán, ii, 394  
 accompanies Kai Khusrau  
 to Ispahán, ii, 396  
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, ii,  
 399  
 goes on an embassy to Tús, ii,  
 400  
 bears Kai Khusrau's letter  
 to the castle of Bahman,  
 ii, 408  
 undertakes to slay Tazháv,  
 iii, 28  
 burn the barricade at the  
 Kása rúd, iii, 29  
 horse of, wounded by Farúd,  
 iii, 58  
 lends Bizhan the mail of  
 Siyáwush, iii, 60, 69  
 sees Paláshán approaching,  
 iii, 69  
 burns the barricade at the  
 Kása rúd, iii, 73  
 parleys with Tazháv, iii, 75  
 rouses the Iránians, iii, 81  
 rallies the host, iii, 91  
 many kindred of, slain, iii, 94  
 urges Bahrám not to return  
 to the battlefield, iii, 96  
 goes in quest of Bahrám, iii,  
 102  
 takes Tazháv captive, iii,  
 102  
 buries Bahrám, iii, 104  
 made adviser to Tús, iii, 116  
 interrupts Tús' parley with  
 Húmán, iii, 122  
 raids Khutan, iii, 247  
 steed of, iii, 257  
 worsted by Púládward, iii,  
 258  
 interferes in the fight  
 between Rustam and  
 Púládward, iii, 263

Glv, opposes Bízhan's expedition to Irmán, iii, 291  
 questions Gurgín about Bízhan, iii, 311  
 wroth with Gurgín, iii, 314  
 appeals to Kai Khusrau, iii, 315  
 comforted by Kai Khusrau, iii, 315, 318  
 sent to summon Rustam, iii, 319  
 met by Zál, iii, 321  
 tells Bízhan's case to Rustam, iii, 322  
 announces Rustam's approach to Kai Khusrau, iii, 326  
 goes to welcome Rustam, iii, 353  
 holds parley with Pirán, iv, 20  
 overtures of, rejected and returns to Gúdarz, iv, 21  
 commands the rear, iv, 24  
 referred to, iv, 39  
 tries to stop Bízhan from fighting Húmán, iv, 40, 43  
 over-ruled by Gúdarz, iv, 43  
 refuses to lend Bízhan the mail of Siyáwush, iv, 43  
 repents of his refusal, iv, 44  
 son of=Bízhan, iv, 76  
 ordered to dispatch troops to oppose Lahhák and Farshídwad, iv, 82  
 sends Zanga and Gurgín, iv, 83  
 leaves Farhád in command and attacks with Bízhan Pirán's centre, iv, 83  
 defeats Rúín, iv, 84  
 fights with Pirán, iv, 84  
 attacked by Lahhák and Farshídwad, iv, 85  
 superseded *pro tem.* by Shídúsh, iv, 92  
 chosen to fight with Gurwí, iv, 97

Glv, takes Gurwí prisoner, iv, 100  
 opposes Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 119  
 consents to Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 120  
 brings Gurwí before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127  
 given a command, iv, 149  
 commands the rear, iv, 191  
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199  
 goes with the captives to Kai Káuś, iv, 233  
 gives Kai Káuś tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234  
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, iv, 236  
 returns to Gang-bihisht with letter for Kai Khusrau, iv, 238  
 made governor of the country between the sea and Gang-dizh, iv, 246  
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 250  
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 252  
 Gúdarz and, meet Húm, iv, 263  
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275  
 sent by Gúdarz to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278  
 bidden with other chiefs by Kai Khusrau to make an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295  
 receives grant of Kum and Ispahán, iv, 298  
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307

- Gív, Kai Khusrav farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308  
disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308  
end of, iv, 309  
grief of Gúdarz for, iv, 310, 312
- Gívgán, Íránian hero, ii, 109, 155; iii, 34; iv, 24
- Gloom, the (Land of Darkness), 160, v, 30; vi, 79  
conception of, vi, 73  
visited by Asfandiyár, v, 76  
Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 74 *seq.*  
account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*  
Sikandar hears of, vi, 158  
enters, vi, 159 *seq.*  
emerges from, vi, 162  
jewels of, vi, 162
- Glory, the divine. *See* Grace.
- Glove, The, Browning's poem of, referred to, vi, 384 *note*
- Go-between, old woman as, i, 280 *seq.*
- Gog and Magog (Yájúj and Májúj, *q.v.*), the barbarous nomads of northern Asia, i, 16; vi, 78
- Golden, Age, i, 129, 134  
boot, iv, 34, 180, 243, 282, 300, 359  
Fleece, land of the, i, 57
- Gomer. *See* Kimmerians.
- Good Thoughts, Words, and Deeds, Zoroastrian formula, 169, vii, 317, 318  
symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
- Gordyene, kingdom, south of Armenia, vi, 198
- Gotarzes, Parthian king and Íránian hero (Gúdarz, *q.v.*), iii, 109  
memorial tablet of, iii, 9  
Geopothros, iii, 9  
coin of, iii, 9
- Gotarzes, war of, with Vardanes, iii, 10, 11  
Meherdates, iii, 10 *seq.*  
character of, in history, iii, 10
- Grace or Glory, the divine, i, 113, 114, 116, 123, 130 *seq.*, and *passim*  
account of, i, 82  
visible appearances of, i, 82, 130, 374, 385; vi, 221 *seq.*
- Granicus, river in Asia Minor flowing into the Propontis (Sea of Marmara), vi, 30  
battle of the, vi, 30, 31
- Grapes, bunch of, Kubád and the, vii, 183 *note*
- Greece, vi, 30
- Greed and Need, personification of, vi, 146; vii, 71, 205, 206, 368, 369
- Greek, Greeks, i, 10; v, 282; vi, 82  
relations of, with the Íránians, i, 14  
history and legend in relation to Persian dto, ii, 9  
conception of India, vi, 68  
captives, mutilation of, by the Persians, vi, 373  
philosophers entertained by Núshírwán, vii, 280
- Green, Prophet, the, *See* Al Khidr.  
sea, the, vi, 174 *note*, viii, 46 and *note*
- Gretna Green, vi, 323 *note*
- Griffon, fabulous bird, i, 235 and *note*
- Gúdarz, son of Kishwád, Íránian hero, and father of Gív, a reminiscence of the Parthian king Gotarzes, *q.v.*, 146, 148, 151-153, i, 42; ii, 4, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 83, 91, 127, 138, 142, 157, 177, 178, 193, 250, 286, 290, 316, 318, 335, 338, 340, 349, 371 *seq.*, 384.

Gudarz—*cont.*

388, 394, 406; iii, 8, 11,  
15, 18, 19, 24, 28, 33, 38,  
40, 45 *seq.*, 50, 51, 67, 81  
*seq.*, 85, 88 *seq.*, 100, 111,  
112, 115, 117, 118, 120,  
123, 126, 127, 129 *seq.*,  
134, 136, 137, 139, 143,  
145, 149 *seq.*, 154 *seq.*,  
164, 169, 172, 177, 187,  
205, 206, 211 *seq.*, 220,  
225, 232, 236, 246, 253,  
254, 255, 258, 264, 268,  
273, 277, 289, 298, 302,  
305, 308, 322, 327, 329  
*seq.*, 337 *seq.*, 354, 357  
iv, 7, 13, 79, 80, 85, 88  
*seq.*, 102, 103, 106 *seq.*,  
113 *seq.*, 136, 145 *seq.*,  
149, 157, 162, 171, 180,  
191, 206, 226, 227, 292,  
299; v, 207, 208; vi,  
194; viii, 104, 168; ix,  
23  
taken prisoner in Mázan-  
darán, ii, 40  
released by Rustam, ii, 58  
receives Ispahán from Kai  
Káuś, ii, 78  
taken prisoner in Hámá-  
varán, ii, 90  
released by Rustam, ii, 97  
censures Kai Káuś, ii, 105  
takes part in the Fight of  
the Seven Warriors, ii, 107  
mediates between Kai Káuś  
and Rustam, ii, 144 *seq.*  
encampment of, described,  
ii, 153  
sons and grandsons of, ii,  
158; iii, 33; ix, 25  
loss of, iii, 83 *note*, 94,  
131; iv, 310, 312  
survivors of, iv, 298  
consoles Siyáwush for his  
mother's death, ii, 199  
appointed ruler of Sughd  
and Sipanjáb, ii, 358  
returns to Irán, ii, 362  
sees Surúsh in a dream, ii,  
363

Gúdarz, sends Gív to seek for  
Kai Khusrau, ii, 364  
hears of Kai Khusrau's  
arrival in Irán, ii, 395  
welcomes Kai Khusrau and  
Gív, ii, 396  
accompanies them to Is-  
takhr, ii, 399  
dispute of, with Tús, ii, 400  
*seq.*  
goes with Kai Khusrau to  
the castle of Bahman, ii,  
407  
advises Tús to avoid  
Kalát, iii, 41  
supersedes Tús, iii, 83  
informs Kai Khusrau about  
Farúd and the defeat of  
the Iránians, iii, 83  
sends Bizhan for Káwa's  
standard, iii, 92  
Iránian watchman and, iii,  
156 *seq.*  
meets Fariburz, iii, 163  
Rustam, iii, 171  
warns Rustam not to trust  
Pirán, iii, 212  
sends Ruhhám to help Rus-  
tam, iii, 227  
praises Rustam, iii, 248  
steed of, iii, 313  
goes to welcome Rustam,  
iii, 353  
sent to invade Túrán by Kai  
Khusrau, iv, 15  
ordered to negotiate with  
Pirán, iv, 15  
negotiations failing, marches  
from Raibad to meet  
Pirán, iv, 22  
arrays his host, iv, 24  
gives the right wing to  
Fariburz, iv, 24  
baggage to Hajír, iv, 24  
left wing to Ruhhám, iv,  
24  
rear to Gív, iv, 24  
posts a watchman on the  
mountain-top, iv, 25  
takes his station at the cen-  
tre, iv, 24

- Gúdarz, counsels Bízhan as to his fight with Húmán, iv, 41  
 over-rules Gív's objections, iv, 43  
 rewards Bízhan, iv, 52  
 prepares to resist a night-attack, iv, 53  
 gives a force to Bízhan, iv, 54  
 joins battle with Pírán, iv, 55  
 writes to Kai Khusrau, iv, 56  
 sends Hajír with the letter, iv, 57  
 receives Kai Khusrau's reply, iv, 62  
 prepares to renew the fight, iv, 63  
 receives Rúín with a letter from Pírán, iv, 67  
 entertains Rúín, iv, 68  
 dismisses Rúín with presents and the reply to Pírán's letter, iv, 74  
 prepares for the flank-attack of Lahhák and Farshí-dward, iv, 82  
 sends Hajír with orders to Gív, iv, 82  
 harangues the host, iv, 89  
 resolves to fight in person, iv, 90, 92, 96  
 gives the left wing to Farhád, iv, 92  
 right wing to Katmára, iv, 92  
 rear to Shídušh, iv, 92  
 chief command to Gustaham, iv, 92  
 instructs Gustaham, iv, 92  
 holds a parley with Pírán and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*  
 slays Pírán's steed, iv, 107  
 pursues Pírán, iv, 108  
 calls on Pírán to surrender, iv, 108  
 Pírán wounds, iv, 108
- Gúdarz, slays Pírán, iv, 109  
 drinks Pírán's blood, iv, 109  
 sends Ruhhám to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110  
 harangues the host, iv, 110  
 resumes his command, iv, 111  
 calls for volunteers to pursue Lahhák and Farsh'dward, iv, 116  
 sends Gustaham, iv, 117  
 Bízhan to help Gustaham, iv, 119  
 comes before Kai Khusrau with the other champions, iv, 126  
 receives Ispahán, iv, 129  
 commands the left wing, iv, 147  
 takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208  
 left in command at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219  
 Gív and, meet Húm, iv, 263  
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263  
 gives Kai Khusrau and Kai Káuš tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 264  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275  
 takes counsel with other nobles, iv, 277  
 sends Gív to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278  
 goes with other chiefs to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282  
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's charge to, iv, 294  
 gift to, iv, 295  
 asks Kai Khusrau for a patent for Gív, iv, 298

- Gúdarz, goes with Kai Khusráu on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusráu, iv, 307  
laments the loss of the paladins, iv, 310, 312  
returns to Írán, iv, 310  
promises fealty to Luhrásp, iv, 312  
grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
- Gúdarz, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
- Gúdarzians, descendants of Gúdarz son of Kishwád, iii, 108, 115, 200, 214
- Gulár, place, vi, 206
- Gulgún (bright-bay), steed of Gúdarz, iii, 366  
steed of Luhrásp, v, 64  
steed of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 57
- Gulshahr, wife of Pírán, ii, 269, 276, 288, 387, 390  
prepares Jaríra's wedding outfit, ii, 270  
presents gifts to Farangís, ii, 275  
announces the birth of Kai Khusráu to Pírán, ii, 326  
referred to, ii, 383
- Gulzaryún, river in Turkistán (Jaxartes), ii, 358, 381; iv, 187, 189, 190, 218, 219; vii, 329, 340, 360
- Gulnár, slave-girl of Ardawán, vi, 217  
meaning of, vi, 217 *note*  
intrigue of, with Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 217 *seq.*  
reports the presage of the astrologers to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 219  
flees with Ardshír Pápakán to Párs, vi, 220
- Gumbadán, mount and stronghold, v, 29, 86, 152, 171, 177, 206; ix, 93  
situation of, v, 30  
Asfandiyár wardened at, v, 84
- Gund-i-Shápúr (Shápúr Gird, Rás Shápúr, Kand-i-Shápúr, Jund-i-Shápúr), city in Khúzistán, north-west of Shúshtar and now represented by the ruins of Sháhábád, vi, 295; vii, 219, 276  
built for Roman captives, vi, 295  
Máni-gate of, vi, 327  
Núshzád imprisoned at, vii, 264 and *note*
- Gúr (Júr, Zúr, Fírúzábád), city in Párs, south of Shiráz, vi, 199, 205, 229 *note*, 230, 245
- Gúr, nickname of Bahrám son of Yazdagird, vii, 6  
Nöldeke on, vii, 6
- Gúrán, king of Kirmán, iv, 146
- Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín *q.v.*), general of Khusráu Parwíz and Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 194, 408, 409 *seq.*; ix, 44  
conspires with Farrukhzád, viii, 408  
invites Cæsar to take Írán, viii, 408  
rebels, viii, 411; ix, 45  
letters of, ix, 45, 46  
letter of Pírúz to, ix, 47  
account of, ix, 50  
meaning of, ix, 50  
dual personality of, ix, 50  
marches on Taisafún, ix, 51  
confers with Íránian magnates, ix, 51  
misrule of, ix, 53  
conspiracy against, ix, 54  
goes hunting, ix, 55  
end of, ix, 55
- Guráz, son of Máhwí, referred to, ix, 107, 115  
governor of Marv, ix, 120  
put to death with his sons, ix, 120

- Guráza, Íránian hero, 151, ii, 73, 340; iii, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 92, 129, 141, 253; iv, 15, 24, 34  
 takes king of Barbar prisoner, ii, 97  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*  
 encampment of, described, ii, 155  
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334  
 fights with Farshídwad, iv, 87  
 chosen to fight with Siyámak, iv, 97  
 slays Siyámak, iv, 100  
 Gurazm (Kavárazem), a relative of Gushtásp, 155, v, 12, 22, 53, 99, 101, 102, 104 *seq.*, 171, 205, 261  
 envies Asfandiyár, v, 78  
 death of, referred to, v, 97  
 Asfandiyár addresses the corpse of, v, 105  
 Gurdáfríd, daughter of Gazhdaham, 144, ii, 119, 138  
 referred to, ii, 131  
 encounter of, with Suhráb, ii, 132 *seq.*  
 beguiles Suhráb, ii, 133 *seq.*  
 Gurdgir, son of Afrásiyáb, ii, 92  
 commands the troops from Tartary, Khallukh, and Balkh, iv, 156  
 Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 173, 174, viii, 74, 202, 205, 206, 231, 293, 295, 296, 298, 342, 349, 354, 358; ix, 6  
 a legitimist, viii, 74  
 Gustaham and, persuade Khusrau Parwíz not to make a night-attack, viii, 224  
 takes charge of baggage, viii, 228  
 Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285  
 Gurdwí, fights with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 294  
 receives province, viii, 313  
 informs Khusrau Parwíz of Gurdyá's doings, viii, 356  
 writes to, and sends Khusrau Parwíz' letter to, Gurdyá, viii, 360  
 wife of, goes with letters to Gurdyá, viii, 360  
 hears of the plight of Rai and informs Gurdyá, viii, 367  
 Gurdyá, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 171, 173, 174, ii, 119; viii, 74, 104 *note*, 187, 191, 347, *seq.*, 358, 365; ix, 6  
 a legitimist, viii, 74  
 present at council, viii, 164  
 speech of, viii, 165, 167, 171  
 referred to, viii, 221  
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 221  
 laments Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340  
 resident at Marv, viii, 346 *seq.*  
 informs her followers of the Khán's offer of marriage, viii, 349  
 starts for Írán, viii, 351  
 parleys with Tuwurg, viii, 352  
 arrives at Ámwí, viii, 354  
 doings of reported to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 356, 358  
 met by Gustaham, viii, 356  
 asked in marriage by Gustaham, viii, 357  
 receives letters from Khusrau Parwíz and Gurdwí, viii, 360  
 plots murder of Gustaham, viii, 360  
 justifies murder of Gustaham, viii, 361  
 reports death of Gustaham to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 361

- Gurđya, dresses up as a warrior to please Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 363  
 prowess of, in drinking, viii, 364  
 appointed overseer of royal bower, viii, 364  
 diverts Khusrau Parwiz and saves Rai, viii, 368
- Gurgán (Hyrcania), province watered by the Atrak and Gurgán rivers on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 168, iv, 61; vi, 373; vii, 89, 237, 337, 338, 357, 358, 361; viii, 15, 355; ix, 89  
 Abú'l Kásim of. *See* Abú'l Kásim.
- Gurganj, one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Kát (Káth) being the other), situated on the Persian side of the Oxus, iv, 60
- Gurgín, son of Milád, Íránian hero, 150, 151, ii, 33, 35, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 127, 138, 144, 316, 340, 394; iii, 11, 12, 19, 20, 25, 48, 108, 115, 126, 145, 182, 211, 253, 264, 268, 273, 285, 289, 292, 294 *seq.*, 300, 305, 310 *seq.*, 322, 323, 331 *seq.*, 345, 346, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 24, 147, 191, 292; viii, 72, 211, 216  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*  
 undertakes embassy to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29  
 goes with letter from Kai Khusrau to Rustam, iii, 274  
 accompanies Bízhan to Irmán, iii, 292  
 refuses to help Bízhan against the wild boars, iii, 293  
 envies and beguiles Bízhan, iii, 294
- Gurgín, goes with Bízhan in quest of Manízha, iii, 296  
 searches for Bízhan, iii, 310  
 finds Bízhan's steed, iii, 311  
 questioned by Giv about Bízhan, iii, 312  
 false account of, about Bízhan's disappearance, iii, 313  
 Giv's wrath with, iii, 314  
 appears before Kai Khusrau, iii, 316  
 imprisoned, iii, 317  
 appeals to Rustam, iii, 331  
 released, iii, 333  
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334  
 pardoned by Bízhan, iii, 346  
 opposes Lahhák, iv, 83  
 chosen to fight Andarimán, iv, 97  
 slays Andarimán, iv, 104  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
- Gurgsár, tribe, v, 43 and *note*  
 Gurgsár, Túránian hero, 156, v, 117, 131 *seq.*, 146, 233 *note*  
 made captain of the host by Arjásp, v, 46  
 given command of one wing, v, 56  
 persuades Arjásp to remain and fight Asfandiyár, v, 108, 109  
 made leader of the host, v, 109  
 taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 111  
 offers to guide Asfandiyár to the Brazen Hold, v, 113  
 goes as guide with Asfandiyár to Túrán, v, 120  
 offered the kingdom of the Turkmans by Asfandiyár in return for faithful service, v, 120

- Gurgsár, describes the route to the Brazen Hold, and the Seven Stages, v, 120 *seq.*, 124 *seq.*, 128, 132, 134  
 chagrin of, at Asfandiyár's successes, v, 124, 128, 131, 133  
 reproached by Asfandiyár for giving false information, v, 139, 140  
 offered the captainship of the Brazen Hold by Asfandiyár in return for trusty guidance, v, 140  
 shows the Íránians a ford, v, 140  
 questioned by Asfandiyár for the last time, v, 141  
 curses Asfandiyár, v, 141  
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 141  
 Gúrkán (Júzján), city and district between Marvrúd and Balkh, iv, 65  
 Gurkúls, tribe (?), viii, 15  
 Gurúkhán, Íránian hero, iv, 149  
 Gurwí, Túránian hero, 145, 151, 152, ii, 296, 314, 319, 338, 340; iii, 197, 199, 237; iv, 7, 99, 111, 252; v, 272  
 challenges and is overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295  
 advocates the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317  
 carries out the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 320  
 chosen to fight with Gív, iv, 97  
 taken prisoner by Gív, iv, 100  
 brought by Gív before Kai Khusráu, iv, 127  
 executed, iv, 129  
 Gurzbán, vi, 394. *See* Gurkán.  
 Gushasp, sacred Fire, vi, 201  
 Gushasp, chief scribe, *temp.*  
 Bahráin Gúr, vii, 11  
 bidden to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11  
 Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahráin Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.*  
 Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahráin Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.*  
 Gúsh-bistár, a savage, vi, 80, 177  
 meaning of, vi, 177 *note*  
 interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 177  
 Gushtásp (Vistáspa, Vishtásp, Hystaspes'), son of Luhrásp, father of Asfandiyár, and Sháh, 154-157, i, 42, 61; ii, 3, 9; iii, 109; iv, 314 *seq.*, 334 *seq.*, v, 24 *seq.*, 61, 68, 90, 92 *seq.*, 103 *seq.*, 119, 130, 148, 154, 155, 159, 166 *seq.*, 180, 181, 183, 205, 206, 208 *seq.*, 213, 216, 220, 221, 233 *note*, 243, 248 *seq.*, 281, 289, 293; vi, 20, 49, 55, 200, 213, 251, 252, 258; vii, 359; viii, 41, 68, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392, 393; ix, 25  
 son of Luhrásp, iv, 318  
 jealousy of, respecting the grandsons of Kai Káu's, iv, 318  
 asks Luhrásp to appoint him heir to the crown, iv, 318  
 departs in wrath for Hind, iv, 319  
 arrives at Kábul, iv, 320  
 overtaken by Zarfr, iv, 320  
 takes counsel with the chiefs, iv, 321  
 returns to Luhrásp, iv, 322  
 pardoned by Luhrásp, iv, 322  
 determines to quit Írán, iv, 323  
 takes a steed of Luhrásp's, iv, 323  
 story of, in Rúm, ii, 10; iii, 285; iv, 324 *seq.*  
 interview of with Hishwí, iv, 324

<sup>1</sup> The Hystaspes of legend not necessarily the father of Darius I. *See* Vol. iv, p 314 *seq.*

Gushtásp, vainly seeks work in  
 Rûm as a scribe, iv, 325  
 herdsman, iv, 326  
 camel-driver, iv, 326  
 blacksmith, iv, 327  
 dreamed of by Katáyûn, iv,  
 329  
 goes to Cæsar's palace, iv,  
 330  
 chosen for her husband by  
 Katáyûn, iv, 330  
 marries Katáyûn, iv, 331  
 spends his time in the chase,  
 iv, 332  
 makes friends with Hîshwî,  
 iv, 332 and *note*  
 asked by Hîshwî to under-  
 take the adventure of the  
 wolf of Fâskûn, iv, 335  
 undertakes to slay the wolf  
 of Fâskûn, iv, 336  
 provided with steed and  
 arms by Mîrîn, iv, 336  
 goes with Mîrîn and Hîshwî  
 to the forest of Fâskûn,  
 iv, 337  
 prays for help, iv, 337  
 gives thanks for his victory,  
 iv, 338  
 takes the wolf's tusks, iv,  
 338  
 welcomed by Hîshwî and  
 Mîrîn on his return, iv,  
 339  
 discovers to Katáyûn his  
 royal race, iv, 340  
 referred to, iv, 343 *seq.*  
 asked by Hîshwî to under-  
 take the adventure of the  
 dragon of Mount Sakîla,  
 iv, 345  
 bids Ahran provide a steed,  
 sword, and other arms,  
 iv, 345  
 goes with Ahran and Hîsh-  
 wî to Mount Sakîla, iv,  
 346  
 takes two of the dragon's  
 teeth, iv, 346  
 gives thanks for his victory,  
 iv, 347

Gushtásp, welcomed by Hîshwî  
 and Ahran on his return,  
 iv, 347  
 accepts gifts from Ahran  
 and bestows part upon  
 Hîshwî, iv, 347  
 returns to Katáyûn, iv, 348  
 goes to the sports on  
 Cæsar's riding-ground, iv,  
 349  
 prowess of, at polo and  
 archery, iv, 350  
 questioned by Cæsar, iv, 350  
 reproaches Cæsar for his  
 treatment of Katáyûn, iv,  
 350  
 claim of, to have slain the  
 wolf and the dragon, iv,  
 351  
 confirmed by Hîshwî, iv,  
 351  
 reconciled to Cæsar, iv, 351  
 goes to court and is received  
 with honour by Cæsar,  
 iv, 351  
 consulted about Ilyás by  
 Cæsar, iv, 353  
 leads forth the host, iv, 354  
 refuses the overtures of  
 Ilyás, iv, 354  
 brings the body of Ilyás to  
 Cæsar, iv, 356  
 routs the host of Ilyás, iv,  
 356  
 returns in triumph to Cæsar,  
 iv, 356  
 recognised by Zarîr, iv, 360  
 goes to Zarîr's camp, iv, 361  
 hears of Luhrâsp's abdi-  
 cation in his favour, iv,  
 362  
 saluted as Sháh by the  
 chiefs, iv, 362  
 invites Cæsar to a feast, iv,  
 362  
 sets out for Írán with Katá-  
 yûn, iv, 364  
 parts in good will from  
 Cæsar, iv, 364  
 welcomed and crowned by  
 Luhrâsp, iv, 364

Gushtásp, Reign of, 154, v, 9 *seq.*  
 Notes on, v, 9 *seq.*, 116 *seq.*,  
 166 *seq.*, 260 *seq.*  
 division of, v, 9  
 points of interest in, v, 9  
 compared with that of  
 Darius Hystaspis, v, 10  
 diagram to illustrate, v, 27  
 legend of Zarduhsht and, v,  
 18  
 black horse of, v, 18, 28  
 sees his place in Paradise, v,  
 19  
 Ridge of, v, 29  
 succeeds Luhrásp as Sháh,  
 v, 31  
 sons of, v, 32  
 pays yearly tribute to Ar-  
 jásp, v, 32  
 converted by Zarduhsht, v,  
 33  
 helps to spread the Faith,  
 v, 34  
 establishes Mihr Barzín and  
 other Fire-fanes, v, 34  
 conversion of, recorded on  
 Cypress of Kishmar, v, 34  
 advised by Zarduhsht not  
 to pay tribute to Arjásp,  
 v, 35  
 receives embassy from  
 Arjásp and takes counsel  
 with his chiefs, v, 41  
 sends answer to Arjásp, v, 43  
 summons the host, v, 47  
 marches against Arjásp, v,  
 48  
 bids Jámásp foretell the  
 issue of the fight, v, 48  
 distress of, at Jámásp's  
 prophecy, v, 53  
 encouraged to fight by  
 Jámásp, v, 54  
 gives Zarír the standard and  
 the command of the cen-  
 tre, v, 55  
 one wing to Asfandiyár,  
 v, 55  
 other wing to Shídas, v,  
 55  
 the rear to Nastúr, v, 55

Gushtásp, takes up his position  
 on a height, v, 55, 56, 63  
 referred to, v, 60, 64 *seq.*,  
 89  
 hears of the death of Zarír,  
 v, 64  
 wishes to avenge Zarír, v,  
 64, 68  
 dissuaded by Jámásp, v, 64,  
 69  
 offers his daughter Humái  
 to the avenger of Zarír,  
 v, 64  
 crown and throne to the  
 avenger of Zarír, v, 66  
 gives his steed and arms to  
 Nastúr, v, 69  
 sees and laments over Zarír's  
 corpse, v, 73  
 bids Nastúr lead the host  
 home, v, 74  
 marries Humái to Asfandi-  
 yár, v, 74  
 gives Nastúr a command  
 and bids him invade  
 Túrán, v, 74  
 rewards the host, v, 75  
 builds a Fire-fane and makes  
 Jámásp its archmage, v,  
 75  
 Mansion of, v, 75  
 writes to his governors to  
 announce the defeat of  
 Arjásp, v, 75  
 receives embassies and tri-  
 bute from Cæsar and from  
 the kings of Barbaristán,  
 Hind, and Sind, v, 75  
 makes Asfandiyár chief  
 ruler of Írán and sends  
 him to convert the world,  
 v, 76  
 sends the Zandavasta to  
 each clime, v, 77  
 Gurazm slanders Asfandiyár  
 to, v, 78  
 sends Jámásp to recall As-  
 fandiyár to court, v, 80  
 convokes an assembly and  
 arraigns Asfandiyár, v,  
 82 *seq.*

Gushtâsp, puts Asfandiyâr in bonds, v, 84  
 sends Asfandiyâr to Gumbadân, v, 84  
 takes the Zandavasta to Sîstân, v, 85  
 welcomed by Rustam and Zâl, v, 85  
 kings revolt from, v, 85  
 while in Sîstân hears from his wife of the sack of Balkh and the captivity of his daughters, v, 93  
 calls together his chiefs and summons the host, v, 94  
 marches from Sîstân toward Balkh, v, 94  
 takes command of the centre, v, 94  
 thirty-eight sons of, slain, and defeat of, in fight with Arjâsp, v, 95, 96  
 takes refuge on a mountain, v, 96, 100  
 consults Jâmâsp, v, 96  
 sends Jâmâsp to Asfandiyâr with the offer of the crown in return for help, v, 97  
 interview of, with, and promise to resign the crown to, Asfandiyâr, v, 106  
 commands the centre, v, 109  
 makes thanksgiving for victory, v, 113  
 promises to resign the crown to Asfandiyâr when he has delivered his sisters from captivity, v, 114  
 summons troops, rewards Asfandiyâr, and sends him to invade Tûrân, v, 115  
 hears of Asfandiyâr's success and writes to him, v, 160  
 gives a banquet on Asfandiyâr's return, v, 164  
 consults Jâmâsp and the astrologers on Asfandiyâr's future, v, 168

Gushtâsp, Asfandiyâr recounts his deeds to, v, 170 *seq.*  
 promises to resign the throne to Asfandiyâr when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174  
 Asfandiyâr sends the corpses of Nûsh Âzar and Mihr-i-Nûsh, and a message to, v, 232  
 Asfandiyâr's last message to, v, 249  
 hears of Asfandiyâr's death and laments for him, v, 252  
 wrath of the nobles with, v, 252  
 reproached by Bishûtan, v, 253  
 Humâi and Bih Âfrîd, v, 254  
 Rustam's overtures to, v, 256  
 Bishûtan testifies in Rustam's favour to, v, 257  
 reconciled, and writes, to Rustam, v, 257  
 advised by Jâmâsp to write to Bahman, v, 258  
 writes to Rustam and Bahman to recall the latter, v, 258  
 welcomes and gives Bahman the name Ardshîr, v, 259  
 tells Jâmâsp of his wishes as to the succession, v, 279  
 dies, v, 280  
 Gustaham, son of Naudar and brother of Tûs, i, 90; ii, 127, 336; iv, 194  
 Tûs and, sent by Naudar to conduct the Persian women to Alburz, i, 351, 353  
 hear of Naudar's death, i, 364  
 passed over in the succession, i, 369, 370  
 Kai Khusrau sends troops to succour, iv, 157

- Gustaham, son of Naudar, attacks the Túránians, iv, 178  
sent to Chách with troops, iv, 188  
reports his defeat of Khurákhán, iv, 193  
takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208  
left in command of Gang-bihisht, iv, 238  
goes to welcome Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 252  
left behind as viceroy on Kai Khusrau's return to Írán, iv, 254
- Gustaham, son of Gazhdaham,<sup>1</sup>  
Íránian hero, 152, i, 369;  
ii, 12, 58, 107; iii, 19, 25,  
33, 45, 48, 59, 92, 93, 127,  
129, 139, 141, 211, 247,  
248, 253, 273, 289, 294,  
322, 350; iv, 7, 13, 15,  
24, 33, 93, 132 *seq.*, 149,  
191, 292  
takes part in the Fight of  
the Seven Warriors, ii,  
107 *seq.*  
friendship of, for Bízhan,  
iii, 15  
lends Bízhan a steed, iii, 60  
mounts behind Bízhan, iii,  
95  
attacks Bídád, iii, 244  
sends Bízhan to summon  
Rustam, iii, 245  
goes with Rustam to rescue  
Bízhan, iii, 334  
fights with Andarímán, iv,  
87  
made commander in chief  
*pro tem. vice* Gúdarz, iv,  
92  
Gúdarz instructs, iv, 92  
resigns his command to  
Gúdarz, iv, 111  
volunteers to pursue Lahháak  
and Farshídwár, iv, 116  
wounded, iv, 123
- Gustaham, son of Gazhdaham,  
rescued by Bízhan, iv,  
124 *seq.*  
healed by Kai Khusrau, iv,  
133  
Kai Khusrau remonstrated  
with by, and other nobles  
for refusing audience, iv,  
275  
audience of, with Kai Khusrau,  
iv, 283 *seq.*  
Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv,  
295  
sets out with Kai Khusrau  
on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
refuses to turn back when  
bidden by Kai Khusrau,  
iv, 307  
Kai Khusrau farewells and  
warns, and his comrades,  
iv, 308  
disappears and is sought  
in vain by, and his  
comrades, iv, 308  
end of, iv, 309
- Gustaham, Íránian warrior, *temp.*  
Yazdagird son of Shápúr,  
vi, 394  
lions of, slain by Bahrám  
Gúr, vi, 410  
Bahrám Gúr's commander-  
in-chief, vii, 85
- Gustaham (Bistám *q.v.*),  
maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 171-174, viii,  
199, 200, 202, 204 *seq.*,  
227, 228, 231, 255, 257,  
259, 269, 282, 289, 293,  
295, 298; ix, 4, 6  
imprisonment of, viii, 77, 170  
Bandwi and, escape and  
revolt, viii, 182  
informs Khusrau Parwíz of  
the blinding of Hurmuzd,  
viii, 184  
referred to, viii, 189  
revolt of, viii, 191, 355  
saves Khusrau Parwíz from  
Turk, viii, 220

<sup>1</sup>This is assumed in all cases where it is doubtful which Gustaham is meant.  
*Cf.* Vol. i, p. 369.

- Gustaham (Bistām), Gurdwī and, dissuade Khusrau Parwiz from making a night-attack, viii, 224  
 treasurer, viii, 229 and *note*  
 accompanies Khusrau Parwiz in his flight, viii, 231  
 turns back and murders Hurmuzd, viii, 232  
 rejoins Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 233  
 Khusrau Parwiz warned against, viii, 255, 256  
 deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 272  
 praised by Caesar, viii, 279  
 Bahram Chūbīna writes to, viii, 285  
 chooses comrades for Khusrau Parwiz in battle, viii, 296  
 receives Khurāsān viii, 313  
 summoned to court, viii, 355  
 hears of execution of Bandwī, viii, 355  
 hears of Gurdyā's doings, viii, 356  
 goes to meet Gurdyā, viii, 356  
 asks Gurdyā in marriage, viii, 357  
 Gurdyā plots murder of, viii, 360  
 intimates of, beheaded, viii, 370  
 assassination of, referred to, ix, 16, 104  
 Gutschmid, Alfred von, on the Cyrus legend in Ctesias, vi, 195  
 Gūzihr, Tribal King, vi, 198, 199

## H

- HABASH (Ethiopia), 160, vi, 149  
 people of, encountered by Sikandar, vi, 149  
 Haftānbūkht. *See* Haftwād.  
 Haft Khān, ii, 29

- Haft Khwān, ii, 29; v, 117 and *note*  
 of Rustam and Asfandiyār compared, v, 117  
 Mān, ii, 29  
 Haftwād (Haftānbūkht, Astawadh), Tribal King, 161, vi, 199  
 account of, in Tabarī, vi, 205  
 daughter of, vi, 205, 206, 233, 234  
 becomes guardian of the Worm, vi, 236  
 Nöldeke and Darmesteter on, vi, 206  
 son of, vi, 206  
 helps his father against Ardshīr Pāpakān, vi, 236  
 Story of, 161, vi, 232 *seq.*  
 seven sons of, vi, 233, 235  
 rise to power of, vi, 235  
 builds, and migrates to, a stronghold, vi, 235  
 Ardshīr Pāpakān and, vi, 236 *seq.*  
 slain by Ardshīr Pāpakān, vi, 245  
 Haitāl, Haitālīans, country and people (White Huns), dwelling north of the Oxus, 166, 168, vii, 6, 153, 161, 164, 171, 174, 181, 187, 197, 340, 342, 390; viii, 45, 242, 329, 370, 377  
 origin and seat of, i, 19, 20  
 confused with the Turks, vii, 4  
 Bahram Gūr's defeat of, vii, 4  
 help Pīrūz, vii, 156, 157  
 Pīrūz's expedition against, vii, 159, 164 *seq.*  
 tradition of, vii, 160  
 king of, vii, 160, 184  
 helps Kubād, vii, 198  
 Kubād's flight to, vii, 170, 184, 198

- Haitál Haitálans, Núshírwán's alliance with the Khán against, vii, 317  
 Khán's war with, vii, 328 *seq.*  
 Khán's embassy to Núshírwán destroyed by, vii, 330  
 host of, levied to oppose the Khán, vii, 331  
 defeated, vii, 332  
 Núshírwán's help sought by, vii, 332  
 Faghánish made king by, vii, 333  
 Núshírwán takes counsel concerning, vii, 333 334.  
 make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
- Ha'iy, son of Kutíba, governor of Tús and a patron of Firdausi, i, 35, 39
- Hajír, Íránian hero, 144, 151, ii, 134, 136, 140, 349; iv, 103, 147, 191  
 taken prisoner by Suhráb, ii, 131  
 misleads Suhráb, ii, 152 *seq.*  
 life of, attempted by Rustam, ii, 176  
 attacks Bidad, iii, 244  
 put in charge of the baggage, iv, 24  
 bears letters from Gúdarz to Kai Khusrau, iv, 57  
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 58  
 bears Kai Khusrau's reply to Gúdarz, iv, 61, 62  
 goes with orders to Gív, iv, 82, 83  
 slays Andarímán's horse, iv, 87  
 chosen to fight with Sipahram, iv, 97  
 slays Sipahram, iv, 104
- Halab (Chalybon - Beroea, Aleppo), city in northern Syria, iv, 359, 360; viii, 41, 46, 47
- Halai (Olympia (?), Náhid), daughter, in legend, of Philip II of Macedon, vi, 19
- Halai, reason for her repudiation by Dáráb and her naming her son Iskandar (Sikandar), vi, 19
- Halai-Sandarús. *See* Halai.
- Hamadán (Ekbatana), city in 'Irak-i-'Ajami, vi, 31; vii, 6; viii, 178, 189; ix, 68
- Hámavarán (Yaman), south-western Arabia, 143, ii, 25, 78 *seq.*, 94, 96 *seq.*, 139, 143 *seq.*, 213, 215, 218, 250; iv, 296, 299; v, 174, 207, 208, 220; viii, 104, 168  
 king of, 143, i, 338; ii, 85 *seq.*, 93, 207 and *note*; v, 176  
 asks quarter of Rustam, ii, 97  
 releases Kai Káuś, ii, 97
- Hamáwan, mountain, 148, iii, 135, 137, 138, 142, 144, 153, 154, 158, 161, 164, 167, 169, 172, 177; iv, 299; v, 116  
 occupied by the fránians, iii, 132
- Hamdán Gashasp, fránian chief, viii, 122, 163, 204  
 speech of, viii, 166
- Hamza, of Ispahán, tenth century Arabic historian, vi, 257
- Handgrip, as test of strength, ii, 64, 66, 67; v, 208
- Háni bin Mas'úd, Arab chief, viii, 190
- Haoma. *See* Homa.  
 = Húm, *q.v.*
- Haraiti Bareza (Alburz, *q.v.*), mountain, iv, 137
- Harám, the environs of Mecca, vi, 65, 120 and *note*, 121
- Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 4, 5
- Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, ii, 101; iii, 222; viii, 71, 92, 110, 116, 117, 130, 173

- Harát, early seat of Aryan civiliza-  
tion, i, 7  
battle of, i, 21  
Firdausi flees to, from Mah-  
múd, i, 39  
desert of, ii, 228; viii, 114  
marchlord of. *See* Mákh.  
bestowed by Máhwí on his  
son, ix, 115
- Háris, father of Kais, viii, 250
- Háarith, father of Nadr, *q.v.*, v,  
166
- Háarith bin Jabala, prince of the  
Ghassánians, vii, 217  
protected by Justinian, vii,  
217  
war of, with Munzir, vii, 217
- Harpagus, Persian noble, *temp.*  
Astyages, ii, 190  
= Pirán in legend, ii, 191
- Harárum (City of Women), 160, vi,  
73, 153 *seq.*  
visited by Sikandar, vi, 153  
*seq.*  
Sikandar's correspondence  
with the ruler of, vi, 153  
*seq.*
- Hárunu'r-Rashíd, Khalifa (A.D.  
786-809), i, 14
- Hárút, angel, iii, 286, 288
- 'Harvest of Bahrám,' viii, 292
- Hasan Sabbáh (The Old Man of  
the Mountain), v, 30
- Háshim, Arab general, ix, 68  
sent by 'Umar in pursuit of  
Yazdagird, ix, 68  
wins battle of Jalúla, ix, 68  
takes Hulwán, ix, 68
- Háshimí, a descendant of Háshim  
the great grandfather of  
Muhammad, i, 25; vi, 362  
and *note*
- Háshimite = Muhammad, ix, 81  
and *note*
- Háshish, murderer of Darius  
Codomanus, vi, 32
- Hatra (Al Hadr), city, vi, 321  
*seq.*  
account of, vi, 322  
besieged, vi, 322  
fall of, legend of, vi, 322
- Hatra, king of, vi, 323
- Haug, his theory of the origin of  
Zoroastrianism, ii, 8
- Hauz, tank or pool, i, 203 and  
*note*, vii, 50 and *note*
- Hawk, hawks, domestication of,  
by Tahmúras, i, 126  
two white, Kai Kubád's  
dream of, i, 385
- Hawking. *See* Falconry.
- Hay, sack of, Bahrám Chúbína  
and the, viii, 109
- Hazár, Hazárán, Túránian hero,  
v, 24, 56, 59
- Hazára, father of Kút, viii, 291
- Hecataeus, Greek historian (6th-  
5th centuries B.C.), vi, 13
- Helenopolis, city in Bithynia, vi,  
61
- Heraclius, Eastern Roman Em-  
peror (A.D. 610-642), v,  
306 *note*; viii, 187, 191;  
ix, 5, 7  
attempts of, for peace with  
Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 194,  
195  
takes Dastagird, viii, 194  
retreat of, viii, 195, 196
- Shírwí's letter to, ix, 7  
alliance of, with Shahrbaráz,  
ix, 43, 44
- Hermit, Khusrau Parwiz and the  
172, viii, 254
- Herodotus, Greek historian (B.C.  
484-425), ii, 9; iii, 191;  
vi, 13, 16, 68, 72, 73; viii,  
193  
legend of Cyrus the Great in,  
ii, 190; vi, 195
- Heroes, chief, of mixed descent,  
i, 55  
Vale of, vii, 6
- Hesperides, Garden of the, vi,  
74
- Hierapolis. *See* Árayish-i-Rúm.
- High priest, *temp.* Shápúr son of  
Urmuzd, vi, 343 *seq.*  
hears of Shápúr's return, vi,  
344  
informs the captain of the  
host, vi, 345

- Hijáz, north-western Arabia,  
viii, 24 and *note*, 66, 67
- Hilál, Arab, ix, 69
- slayer of Rustam son of  
Farrukh-Hurmuzd, ix, 70
- Himálaya (Himavat), mountain-  
range dividing India from  
Thibet, vi, 74, 81
- Himavat. *See above*.
- Himyar—Hámávarán (Yaman),  
ii, 79
- Hind, Hindústán, 147, 159, 161,  
165, 169, i, 231, 261; ii,  
92, 228, 287, 289; iii, 30,  
152, 164, 165, 177, 204,  
221, 222, 235, 237, 238,  
242; iv, 14, 60, 65, 133,  
196, 208, 272, 317, 320;  
v, 76, 188, 257, 262, 265,  
277; vi, 80, 81, 91, 98  
and *passim*
- land of sorcerers, i, 163
- Mai of, i, 252
- king of (Shangul) *temp.* Kai  
Khusrau, iii, 162, 210,  
218, 251
- temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii,  
113, 119, 126, 128
- temp.* Núshírwán, viii, 52
- lord of=Shangul, iii, 187
- man of=Shangul, iii, 216
- prince of, iv, 71
- lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142
- monarch of, iv, 319, 321
- kings of, send tribute to  
Gushtásp, iv, 75
- ambassadors from, come  
to Dáráb, vi, 21
- Dáráb, vi, 35
- ruler of=Fúr, vi, 51
- Sikandar invades, vi, 98
- silk of, vi, 99
- king of=Kaid, vi, 103
- Sikandar becomes king of,  
vi, 118
- people of, help the Sindians  
against Sikandar, vi, 175
- Rája of, 169. *See Rájá*.
- Bahrám Gúr's visit to, vii,  
5, 110 *seq.*
- motive of, vii, 5
- Hind, Bahrám Gúr's visit to,  
fabulous, vii, 6
- king of, entertained by  
Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140  
*seq.*
- Núshírwán goes to, vii, 241
- Hindíyá (Amida?), city in  
Roman Armenia, vii, 200
- taken by Kubád, vii, 200
- Hindu Kush, mountain-range in  
Afghánistán, ii, 80
- Hindústání, vii, 6
- Gipsy language a debased  
form of, vii, 6
- Hiong-Nu, probably the Huns, v,  
13
- Híra, city west of the Euphrates  
near Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef),  
vi, 372; vii, 217; viii,  
188, 191; ix, 5, 66
- seat of the dynasty of Al  
Munzir, i, 55
- kingdom of, ix, 65
- abolished by Khusrau  
Parwiz, ix, 66
- attacked by Persians, ix, 67
- Hirá (Jebel Núr), mountain  
north of Mecca, viii, 42
- Hírbad, keeper of the women's  
house of Kai Káuś, ii, 202,  
206
- Hírmund (Helmund), river in  
Sístán in eastern Irán, i,  
358, 359; iii, 321; v, 178,  
182, 186, 191, 196, 219,  
285
- referred to, v, 198, 231
- Hishám ibn Muhammad ibn  
Al-Kalbí, Arabic historian  
(8th-9th centuries A.D.),  
vi, 30; viii, 73
- Híshwí, Rúman toll-collector,  
iv, 334 *seq.*
- interview of, with Gushtásp,  
iv, 324
- becomes friends with Gush-  
tásp, iv, 332
- asks Gushtásp, on behalf of  
Mírín, to undertake the  
adventure of the wolf of  
Fáskún, iv, 335

- Hishwī, goes with Gushtāsp and Mīrīn to the forest of Fāskūn, iv, 337
- Mīrīn and, welcome Gushtāsp on his return, iv, 339
- asks Gushtāsp, on behalf of Ahran, to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 344
- goes with Gushtāsp and Ahran to Mount Sakila, iv, 346
- Ahnan and, welcome Gushtāsp on his return, iv, 347
- receives gifts from Gushtāsp, iv, 348
- confirms Gushtāsp's claim to have slain the wolf and dragon, and produces their teeth to Cæsar, iv, 351
- Hittite, Hittites, vi, 71
- empire, vi, 71
- Hiuen Tsiang, Chinese traveller (A.D. 603-668), vi, 63
- quoted, vi, 63, 73
- Hoibarās, Persian slave, *temp.* Astyages, vi, 195
- Hold, The Brazen. *See* Brazen Hold.
- Holy Ghost, the, vi, 138 and *note*
- Holy Questions, Mountain of the, i, 62
- Homa (Soma), a plant held sacred by the Zoroastrians, i, 8 and *note*, ii, 8
- juice of, ii, 8
- referred to, iv, 138
- Homer, vi, 13, 72
- epic method of contrasted with Firdausī's, i, 47
- quoted, vi, 68, 73
- Hormisdas I. *See* Urmuzd son of Shāpūr.
- Hormisdas II. *See* Urmuzd son of Narsī.
- Hormisdas (Urmuzd son of Urmuzd son of Narsī), Persian prince, takes refuge with the Romans, vi, 318, 325
- Hormisdas, goes with Julian to the East, vi, 325
- Horoscope, i, 152
- of the sons of Faridūn, i, 188
- Zāl, i, 251, 278
- Rustam, i, 278, 307
- Siyāwush, ii, 196, 205, 234
- Mīrīn, iv, 334
- Shaghād, v, 264
- Ardawān, vi, 218
- Bahrām Gūr, vi, 376
- Yazdagird son of Shāpūr, vi, 390
- Shīrwī, vii, 372; ix, 16, 17
- Horse, of Persian royalty, how distinguished, ii, 410 *note*
- Gushtāsp's black. *See* Black horse.
- (steed, knight), piece in chess, vii, 285, 423
- position of, vii, 388, 422
- move of, vii, 422
- Houri, maid of Paradise, i, 272; ix, 81
- House of Darkness, ix, 7
- Crystal, ix, 25 and *note*
- Houses, the Twelve, of the sky, i, 103, 188
- good influence of, i, 52
- Hrazdān, river in Armenia, v, 13
- Hulwān (Arash), town, vii, 187, 201
- situation of, vii, 187
- Yazdagird retires to, ix, 67
- taken by Hāshim, ix, 68
- Húm (Haoma, *q.v.*), hermit, 153, iv, 135 *seq.*, 259 *seq.*
- hears Afrāsiyāb lamenting in the cave, iv, 260
- capture of Afrāsiyāb by, iv, 261
- Darmesteter on, iv, 136
- pities and unbinds Afrāsiyāb, iv, 262
- tells his adventure with Afrāsiyāb to Gúdarz and Giv, iv, 363
- Kai Kāús and Kai Khusrau, iv, 264
- suggests how Afrāsiyāb may be recaptured, iv, 265

- Húm, recaptures Afrásiyáb, iv, 266
- Huma. See below.
- Humái (Huma), daughter of Gushtásp, ii, 3; v, 12, 25
- marriage of, with Asfandi-yár, v, 22, 74
- ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
- offered in marriage to the avenger of Zarír, v, 64
- taken captive by the Turkmans, v, 93, 100
- goes with Bih Áfríd to draw water and meets Asfandi-yár, v, 147
- escapes from Arjásp's palace, v, 153
- bewails Asfandi-yár, v, 252
- reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
- Humái (Chihrzád, *q.v.*), daughter and wife of Bahman, and mother of Dáráb, Sháh, 157, 158, ii, 3, 9, 10; v, 281, 290 *seq.*; vi, 20, 22, 199
- married to Bahman, v, 290
- Bahman appoints, and her issue, to succeed him, v, 291
- Semiramis (?), v, 293
- genealogies of, v, 293
- Reign of, 158, v, 292 *seq.*
- Note on, v, 292 *seq.*
- accession of, v, 294
- Dáráb born of, v, 294
- referred to, v, 296
- hears of Rúman invasion and bids Rashnawád lead forth the host, v, 301
- reviews the host, v, 302
- affected on seeing Dáráb, v, 302
- hears from Rashnawád about Dáráb, v, 308
- recognises that Dáráb is her son, v, 308
- thanksgiving largess of, v, 309
- Rashnawád and Dáráb appear before, v, 309 *seq.*
- Humái, crowns, and excuses herself to, Dáráb, v, 310
- proclaims Dáráb, v, 311
- Humái, Íránian chief, *temp.* Bahráám Gúr, vii, 88
- goes as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
- Húmán, son of Wisa and brother of Pírán, Túránian hero, 144, 148, 149, 151, i, 92; ii, 129, 130, 132, 148, 150, 264, 390; iii, 90, 91, 93, 108, 120 *seq.*, 133 *seq.*, 142, 149, 152, 153, 158, 166, 169, 177, 182, 192, 202, 205, 210, 217, 227, 232, 234, 252, 259, 350; iv, 7, 8, 10, 29 *seq.*, 44, 55, 56, 61, 75, 76, 91, 118, 152
- Bármán and, join Suhráb with troops, ii, 129
- Afrásiyáb's instructions to, ii, 129
- misleads Suhráb as to Rustam, ii, 165, 169
- reproaches Suhráb for sparing Rustam, ii, 171
- throws the blame for Suhráb's death on Hajír, ii, 176
- withdraws from Írán under safe conduct, ii, 176, 181, 182, 184
- rescues Afrásiyáb from Rustam, ii, 354, 355
- persuades Afrásiyáb to abandon the pursuit of Kai Khusrau, ii, 394
- parleys with Tús, iii, 121
- leads the host against Tús, iii, 127
- counsels Pírán, iii, 134
- pursues the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
- rallies the Túránians, iii, 139
- reconnoitres the Íránians, iii, 174
- informs Pírán of the arrival of Rustam, iii, 174

- Húmán, parleys disguised with Rustam, iii, 196  
 commands the centre, iv, 25  
 dissuaded from fighting by Pírán, iv, 30  
 parleys with Bízhan, iv, 45  
 armour of, donned by Bízhan, iv, 51  
 Túránians' grief at death of, iv, 51
- Huns, the, i, 10; v, 13; vi, 15; vii, 153  
 settlement of, at Samarkand, i, 19  
 White. *See* Haitál.
- Húr, father of Bihrúz, vii, 72
- Hurmuz (Urmuzd), Ashkánian king, vi, 197
- Hurmuz (Ormus), city and island on the south-eastern shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
- Hurmuz (Hormisdas III), Sháh, 166, vii, 153, 186  
 appointed by Yazdagird to succeed him, vii, 155  
 Reign of, vii, 156  
 Note on, vii, 156  
 defeated by Pírúz, vii, 157  
 pardoned by Pírúz, vii, 156, 158  
 leads the van in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálans), vii, 164  
 perishes in battle, vii, 168
- Hurmuz, minister of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 26
- Hurmuzd (Hormisdas IV), son of Núshirwán, Sháh, 169-172, vii, 279; viii, 56 *seq.*, 69 *seq.*, 74 *seq.*, 78, 87, 147, 169, 170, 174, 198, 209, 212, 213, 222, 232, 265, 270, 304, 312, 332, 355, 370, 376; ix, 4, 15, 104  
 son of the Khán's daughter, vii, 317  
 sent against the Turks, vii, 317  
 examination of, viii, 3, 57
- Hurmuzd (Sháh), counselled by Núshirwán, viii, 25 *seq.*  
 Núshirwán's testament in favour of, and last counsels to, viii, 61 *seq.*  
 Reign of, 170, viii, 70  
 Note on, viii, 70  
 character of, viii, 70  
 system of administration of, viii, 71  
 justice of, viii, 71  
 instances of, viii, 90 *seq.*  
 scribes executed by, viii, 71  
 insult of, to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 76  
 Lazic war renewed by, viii, 76  
 Bahrám Chúbína's gift of swords to, viii, 76  
 accession of, viii, 78  
 turns to evil courses, viii, 81  
 puts to death Ízid Gas-hasp, viii, 83  
 poisons Zarduhsht, viii, 83 *seq.*  
 schemes against and puts to death Símáh Parzín, viii, 85 *seq.*  
 attempts to suborn Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 85 *seq.*, gives audience, viii, 86  
 hears state-secret from Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 88  
 puts to death Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 89  
 repentance of, viii, 90, 93  
 places of residence of, viii, 90  
 wars of, viii, 92  
 attacked by Sáva, viii, 92  
 Sáva's letter to, viii, 93  
 attacked by Cæsar, viii, 93  
 Khazars, viii, 93  
 Arabs, viii, 93  
 consults the Íránians, viii, 94  
 counselled by his wazír, viii, 94  
 makes peace with Cæsar, viii, 95

- Hurmuzd (Sháh), attacks and defeats the Khazars, viii, 95  
 sends for Mihrán Sitád, viii, 97  
 hears prophecy about Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 98  
 orders search to be made for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 99  
 discovers and sends for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100  
 consults Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100  
 gives chief command to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 102  
 questions Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 103  
 gives Rustam's banner to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 105  
 sends Mihrán with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 106  
 intelligencer after Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 107  
 to recall Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 108  
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110  
 hears of Bahrám Chúbína's victory, viii, 132  
 makes thanksgiving, viii, 132  
 rewards Bahrám Chúbína and the troops, viii, 133  
 surveys spoils sent by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 150  
 grows suspicious of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 151  
 dismisses the Khán with gifts, viii, 152  
 hears from Kharrád of Bahrám Chúbína's disaffection, viii, 160  
 consults with high priest, viii, 161  
 Áyín Gashasp, viii, 174, 177  
 plans to make away with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 174  
 hears of Khusrau Parwíz' flight, viii, 176  
 imprisons Bandwí and Gustaham, viii, 176
- Hurmuzd (Sháh), hears of the murder of Áyín Gashasp, viii, 182  
 dethroned and blinded, viii, 183, 200  
 visited in prison by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 185, 198, 230  
 requests of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 199  
 referred to, viii, 211  
 counsels Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 230  
 murdered, viii, 232
- Hurmuzd Garábzín *or* Galábzín (Kharrád son of Barzín *q.v.*), viii, 190
- Hurmuzd, priest, vii, 188  
 assists Núshírwán in his disputation with Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
- Hurmuzd, Iránian general, vii, 251  
 commands the outposts in Núshírwán's army, vii, 251
- Hurmuzd (Hurmuzdsháh, Farukh-Hurmuzd *q.v.*), father of Rustam, ix, 72, 78, 85, 89, 96
- Hurmuzd Shahránguráz (Shahránguráz *q.v.*), ix, 54
- Hurmuzd, devotee, ix, 102  
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102
- Hurmuzdagán, vi, 193, 199, 202, 256
- Husain, friend of Firdausí, ix, 121
- Húshang, son of Siyámak, minister of Gaiúmart, and Sháh, 139, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 126; ii, 204; iv, 133, 286, 292, 302; v, 180, 245; vii, 37, 273; viii, 376; ix, 25, 41
- Firdausí's etymology of, i, 121
- goes with Gaiúmart to fight the Black Div, i, 121  
 slays the Black Div, i, 121  
 Reign of, 140, i, 122

- Húshang, Reign of, Note on, i, 122  
 succeeds Gaiúmart, i, 122  
 culture-hero, i, 123  
 discovers fire, i, 123  
 institutes Fire-worship, i, 123  
 founds the Feast of Sada, i, 124  
 domesticates animals, i, 124  
 dies, i, 124  
 Firdausi's reflections on, i, 124  
 rites of, vii, 53  
 Faith of, viii, 380
- Húshdiv, Túránian hero, v, 46  
 put in charge of the rear, v, 46
- Húshyár, astrologer, vi, 372, 375  
 takes Bahráam Gúr's horoscope, vi, 176
- Hushravah (Kai Khusrav, *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
- Hutaosa, wife of Gushtásp, v, 11  
 = Atossa (?), v, 11
- Hvyaonas (Khyons, Chionitae ?), people, v, 13
- Hyapatés, son of Semiramis, v, 292
- Hydaspes, *id.*
- Hydaspes (Jhílám), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 62, 63
- Hydraotes (Rávi), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Hyperboreans, the, vi, 74  
 Elysium of, vi, 74
- Hyphasis (Beas), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Hyrcania (Gurgán, *q.v.*), ii, 27;  
 iii, 10; vi, 373
- Glv, prince of, iii, 9
- Hystaspes (Gushtásp, *q.v.*), iv, 314 *seq.*
- Hystaspes, father of Darius I, v, 10  
 governor of Parthia, v, 10
- I
- IBLís, the Muhammadan Devil, 140, 143, iv, 206, 282; v, 174, 218
- Iblís, occasional substitution of for Áhriman in the Sháh-náma, i, 50, 70; ii, 82, 110  
 tempts Zakhák, i, 136 *seq.*  
 turns cook, i, 137 *seq.*  
 causes serpents to grow out of Zakhák's shoulders, i, 139  
 counsels, garbed as a leech, Zakhák, i, 139
- Ibn Mukaffá', Persian scholar and Arabic writer, vi, 373;  
 vii, 161  
 account of, vi, 17  
 translator of the Bástán-náma into Arabic, vi, 17  
 Fables of Bidpai (the Book of Kalíla and Dimna) into Arabic, vii, 383
- Ibráhím, Abraham the patriarch, vi, 119, 120  
 house of = the Kaaba, vi, 119
- Ichthyophagi, vi, 81  
 Sikandar and, vi, 69, 147  
 Arrian on, vi, 69  
 modern accounts of, vi, 70  
 city of, described, vi, 177  
 go to meet, and are visited by, Sikandar, vi, 178  
 hand over the treasures of Kai Khusrav to Sikandar, vi, 178
- Íd-i-Kurdí, Feast of, i, 143
- Ighrírás (Aghraératha, Aghré-rad, Aghrírás), brother of Afrásiyáb and Túránian hero, 142, i, 92, 337, 342 *seq.*; ii, 18, 20, 303, 304;  
 iii, 8; iv, 136, 206, 262  
 characterised, i, 55, 338  
 opposes war with Írán, i, 343  
 Bármán's single combat, i, 347  
 over-ruled by Pashang, i, 344  
 Afrásiyáb, i, 347  
 Íránian captives saved by, i, 363  
 released by, i, 365 *seq.*

- Ighrîras, upbraided and slain by Afrâsiyâb, i, 367  
 Pashang's grief for, i, 374  
 revival of, in legend, iv, 135  
 given a command, iv, 156  
 head of, sent by Kai Khusrâu to Kai Kâûs, iv, 185  
 referred to, iv, 267
- Ijâs bin Kabîsa, viii, 188  
 governor of Hîra, viii, 190
- Îlâ, Tûrânian king, iv, 182  
 fights with Kai Khusrâu, iv, 182
- Ilyâs, ruler of Khazar *q.v.*, 154, iv, 361  
 tribute demanded of, by Cæsar, iv, 352  
 refuses tribute and declares war, iv, 352  
 makes overtures to Gush-tâsp, iv, 354  
 corpse of, brought by Gush-tâsp to Cæsar, iv, 355
- Imagery, of Shâhnâma. *See* Shâhnâma.
- Imaus, Greek form of Himâlâya *q.v.*, vi, 12
- 'Inânian, 'Inânians, Arab tribe, vi, 324, 330, 331, 333
- Ind. *See* Hind.
- India, iv, 316; vi, 17, 64, 81, 83, 204  
 Irânians and Aryans of, i, 15  
 Palladius on, vi, 61  
*Ancient*, M'Crinde's, quoted, vi, 68  
 =Ethiopia, vi, 68
- Indian, Indians, 172, vi, 81, 375, 397; vii, 135, 146; viii, 377  
 =Ethiopians, vi, 13, 68  
 sages, vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 143 *seq.*, 266  
 bells and gongs, vi, 175; viii, 46, 120  
 bane, vi, 259  
 king of =Shangul, vii, 118  
 tongue, vii, 117, 143  
 sword, falchion, scimitar, viii, 127, 145, 417; ix, 17  
 Garden of the, viii, 196
- Indian, Indians, Faith of, 172, viii, 275  
 script, ix, 17  
 scribe, ix, 17
- Indies, Greek idea of two, vi, 13  
 duplicate races in, vi, 68
- Indo-European race, i, 7  
 Asiatic branch of, i, 7  
 Aryans, i, 7  
 early seats of, i, 7  
 religion of, i, 7
- Indra, Indian god, ii, 25; vi, 203  
 Vritra and, ii, 25; vi, 203
- Indus, river, i, 71, 252; ii, 21; iii, 177, 204, 237, 251; v, 293; vi, 62, 67, 70; vii, 241  
 mistaken for the Nile, vi, 68
- Introduction, to Shâhnâma, i, 3 *seq.*
- Iollas, Alexander the Great's cup-bearer, vi, 82
- Îraj, youngest son of Farîdûn *q.v.* and the protagonist of the Irânian race, 140, i, 54, 90, 91, 211; ii, 8, 16, 19, 20, 237, 297, 302; iii, 8; iv, 146; v, 42, 44, 261; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 376 and *note*, 392; ix, 103  
 etymology of, i, 174  
 naming of, i, 188  
 horoscope of, i, 188  
 receives Irân and Arabia as his portion, i, 189  
 abdication of, demanded by Salm and Tûr, i, 192  
 offers to go to his brothers, i, 196  
 visits Salm and Tûr, i, 198  
 reception of, by Salm and Tûr, i, 198  
 offers to resign his kingship to his brothers, i, 200  
 slain by Tûr and Salm, i, 201  
 head of, sent to Farîdûn, i, 202  
 mourning for, i, 203 *seq.*  
 daughter of, 140, i, 205  
 married to Pashang, i, 205

- Íraj, daughter of, gives birth to  
Minúchíhr, i, 206  
vengeance for, i, 215 *seq.*  
referred to, i, 335, 349
- Íraj, king of Kábul, iv, 146
- Írák, ix, 66  
= 'Írák 'Arabí (Babylonia),  
vii, 214, 224
- Iram, gardens of, i, 100, 113;  
ii, 78; vii, 235 and  
*note*
- Írán, 142-144, 146, 148, 150, 152-  
155, 157, 158, 162, 163,  
165, 167, 172, 173, 175,  
176, i, 3, 113, 152, 153  
and *passim*  
boundaries of, i, 3  
physical features of, i, 3  
gradual desiccation of, i, 3  
and *see* Drought.  
climate of, i, 4  
flora of, i, 4  
fauna of, i, 5  
land of contrasts, i, 5, 58,  
60  
cosmogony of, i, 5  
people of, i, 6  
-vej, region, i, 9  
situation of, i, 9  
Zoroaster's (Zarduhsht's)  
birth-place, i, 62  
Arab conquest of, i, 12  
Arabia and, Íraj's portion,  
i, 189  
-Shahr, ii, 81  
fought for by Afrásiyáb and  
the Arabs, ii, 92  
invaded by Suhráb, ii, 130  
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142  
monarch of = Dáráb, vi, 21,  
26  
and Sháhnáma compared,  
vi, 193  
invaded by Munzir and  
Nu'mán, vi, 397  
Rúm's tribute to explained,  
vii, 187
- Íránian, Íránians, 144, 147-151,  
153, 155, 163-167, 171,  
176, i, 9 and *passim*  
neighbours of, i, 9
- Íránians, historical relations of,  
with Semites, i, 10  
Assyrians, i, 10  
Arabs, i, 11; vi, 17; ix,  
65 *seq.*  
Greeks and Romans, i, 14  
Aryans of India, i, 15  
Túránians, i, 16 *seq.*  
Kimmerians, i, 17  
Scythians, i, 17  
Parthians, i, 18  
Alani, i, 19  
Huns, i, 19  
Turks, i, 20  
traditional relations of, with  
other Indo - Europeans,  
Semites, and Túránians, i,  
54, 55, 56  
revolt against Jamshíd and  
summon Zakhák to Írán,  
i, 139  
chiefs of, imprisoned at  
Sarl, i, 363  
plot for release with Igh-  
ríras, i, 363  
inform Zál, i, 366  
released by Kishwád, i,  
367  
provided for by Zál, i,  
367  
bemoan Naudar, i, 364  
wish to withdraw from the  
Seven Stages, v, 135  
encouraged to persevere by  
Asfandiyár, v, 136  
provoked to combat by  
Zawára, v, 225  
Sikandar's proclamation to,  
vi, 44  
bemoan themselves, vi, 48  
counsel Dára to come to  
terms with Sikandar, vi,  
48  
ask quarter of Sikandar, vi,  
51  
hail Sikandar as ruler, vi, 56  
after Yazdagird son of  
Shápúr's death meet for  
counsel in Párs, vi, 394  
Jawanwí sent by, to Mun-  
zir, vi, 397

- Iránians, offer prayer at the Fire-fane of Barzin, vi, 400  
 loyal, support Bahrám Gúr, vi, 402  
 procedure of, to elect a Sháh, vi, 403  
 decide to reject Bahrám Gúr, vi, 403  
 remonstrated with by Munzir, vi, 403  
 object-lesson of, to Munzir, vi, 404  
 accept Bahrám Gúr's proposal for settling the question of kingship by ordeal, vi, 406  
 ask Munzir to intercede with Bahrám Gúr for them, vii, 9  
 arrears of taxes of, cancelled, vii, 11  
 levied by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 86  
 resolve to submit to the Khán, vii, 87  
 send Humái as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87  
 letter of, to the Khán, vii, 87  
 ask for Narsí's good offices with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 93  
 lament for the death of Píruz, vii, 169  
 revolt against Kubád, vii, 195  
 put Kubád in fetters, vii, 195  
 ask pardon of Kubád, vii, 200  
 pardoned by Kubád, vii, 200  
 take Sakla, viii, 47  
 chiefs received in audience by Hurmuzd, viii, 86  
 consulted by Hurmuzd, viii, 94  
 defeat the Khazars, viii, 96  
 advise Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 102, 121, 239 *seq.*, 287  
 Sáva employs sorcery against, viii, 123  
 encouraged by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 124
- Iránian, Iránians, defeat the Turks, viii, 126  
 revolt against Hurmuzd, viii, 156  
 elect Bahrám Chúbína Sháh, viii, 243  
 homage Shírwí, ix, 8  
 choose two chiefs to visit Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 9  
 plot against Guráz, ix, 54  
 go hunting with Guráz, ix, 55  
 race, ix, 65  
 enmity of, with Semite, i, 54; ix, 65  
 announces arrival of Shu'ba Mughfira to Rustam, ix, 82  
 defeat of, at Kádisiya, ix, 84  
 retreat to Yazdagird, ix, 85  
 -born, ix, 99  
 defeat of, at Marv, ix, 116  
 ambushed, ix, 118  
 Irmá'il and Karmá'il, Zakhák's cooks, 140, i, 146  
 Irmán, (Arman *q.v.*), i, 345, 358; iii, 12, 285, 292, 296, 311  
 devastated by wild boars, iii, 290  
 Irmánians (Armenians *q.v.*), 150, iii, 286  
 complain to Kai Khusrau of the wild boars, iii, 290  
 Iron steeds, Sikandar's, vi, 115  
 Ísá (Jesus), viii, 276 *note*  
 Isdigird I (Yazdagird son of Shápúr), Sásanian king, vi, 371  
 Isdigird II (Yazdagird son of Bahrám Gúr), Sásanian king, vii, 153  
 Ishmael, vi, 65, 120, 121  
 Iskandar. *See* Sikandar.  
 Iskandar, herb, vi, 26  
 Iskandariya (Alexandria), 160, vi, 185  
 Sikandar buried at, vi, 185  
 Island, the=Meroc, vi, 65  
 Islands, Male and Female, vi, 72  
 origin of legend of, vi, 72

- Ismá'íl. *See* Ishmael.
- Ismá'íl, brother of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
- Ispanwí. *See* Ispanwí.
- Ispahán, city in 'Irak-i-'Ajámí, 146, i, 351; ii, 394, 399; iii, 109; vi, 57, 86, 87, 199, 201, 202, 210; vii, 6, 84, 214, 224; viii, 90 given to Gúdarz, ii, 78; iv, 129
- arrival of Kai Khusrau at, ii, 396
- bestowed on Gíy by Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
- Ispanwí, slave-girl of Tazháv, iii, 14, 27, 77
- taken captive by Bízhan, iii, 78
- Ispurúz, mountain in the neighbourhood of Mázan-darán, ii, 38, 56, 57, iv, 136, 230
- Israffíl, archangel, 160, vi, 78
- Sikandar's interview with, vi, 83, 161
- Issedones, tribe situated on the Tarim basin in eastern Turkistán, iii, 192
- Issus, town, plain, and gulf in Cilicia, vi, 30
- battle of, vi, 30, 31
- Dárius' family taken prisoners at, vi, 31
- Istakhr (Persepolis), city in Párs, 142, 165, ii, 11, 22, 28, 339; vi, 57, 198, 199, 202, 211, 223, 225, 231, 326, 356, 386; vii, 83, 95, 188; viii, 90, 313; ix, 50, 54
- buildings at, attributed to Humái, v, 293
- Dará marches from, to encounter Sikandar, vi, 37, 46
- returns to, vi, 44
- Sikandar crowned Sháh at, vi, 59
- taken by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
- Istakhr, Ardshír Pápakán marches from, against the Kurds, vi, 230
- returns victorious to, vi, 232
- Yazdagird taken to, ix, 64
- made Sháh at, ix, 65
- Istuvegu. *See* Astyages.
- Italy, vii, 218
- Alexander of Epirus' expedition to, vi, 12
- Alexander the Great's legendary expedition to, vi, 12, 30
- Íwán-i-Kerkh, vi, 327
- Izads (Yazatas), the, iii, 286
- Ízid, viii, 75
- Ízid Gashasp, archscribe, 170, viii, 74
- confusion in name of, viii, 75, 76
- put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 75, 83
- malicious speech of, viii, 77
- and *note*, 150 and *note*
- imprisoned, viii, 81
- sends for high priest, viii, 81
- Ízid Gashasp, Íránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 136, 138, 149, 350, 353, 356
- conducts spoil to Írán, viii, 148
- goes hunting with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 156
- speech of, viii, 165

## J

- JABALA BIN SÁLIM, viii, 73
- Jacob of Sarúg, Syriac poet. Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander the Great versified by, vi, 15, 74, 78, 84
- Jádústán, vi, 109 and *note*
- Jagatai, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 29
- Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; ii, 264, 268; iv, 156, 162, 200 *seq.*, 214

- Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, sent to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155  
 advances to the attack and is defeated by Kárán, iv, 178  
 stationed at the centre with Afrásiyáb, iv, 179  
 sent to the left with troops, iv, 180  
 Garsiwaz and, compel Afrásiyáb to quit the field, iv, 182  
 commands the right, iv, 190  
 helps to defend Gang-bihisht, iv, 209  
 taken prisoner by Rustam, iv, 210  
 sent to Kai Káuś, iv, 233  
 interned by Kai Káuś, iv, 235  
 spurious passage about, iv, 272 *note*  
 Jahn, architect of throne of Tákhdiś, viii, 391  
 Jahram (Chahram), 161, 163, city in Párs, vi, 44, 119, 202, 225, 237, 241, 268, 400; vii, 185; ix, 29, 61  
 Dára goes to, vi, 44  
 desert of, vi, 401  
 Jáj (? Chách *q.v.*), iv, 150  
 Jalálpúr, city in the northern Punjab, vi, 18  
 Jalúla, town north-east of Baghdád, i, 12, ix, 68  
 battle of, i, 12, ix, 68  
 Jam, son of Kubád and brother of Núshírwán, vii, 316  
 conspires against Núshírwán, vii, 316  
 Jámásp, chief minister of Sháh Gushtásp, 155, i, 42; ii, 9; v, 12, 22, 24 *seq.*, 58, 206, 216, 248; viii, 171, 393; ix, 26  
 omniscience of, v, 19, 48  
 answers, in conjunction with Zarír and Asfandiyár, Ar-jásp's letter, v, 42  
 Jámásp, foretells the death in battle of Ardshír, v, 49  
 Shídaśp, v, 50  
 Girámí, v, 50  
 exploits of Nastúr, v, 50  
 death of Nívzár, v, 51  
 Zarír, v, 52, 70 *note*  
 triumph of Asfandiyár, v, 52  
 defeat of Arjásp, v, 52  
 encourages Gushtásp to fight, v, 54  
 referred to, v, 59, 102  
 dissuades Gushtásp from avenging Zarír, v, 64, 68  
 made archmage of Fire-temple built by Gushtásp, v, 75  
 sent to recall Asfandiyár to court, v, 80 *seq.*  
 advises Gushtásp, when beleaguered by Arjásp, to release Asfandiyár, v, 97  
 volunteers to go to Asfandiyár, v, 97  
 reaches Gumbadán in disguise, v, 98  
 interview of, with Asfandiyár, v, 99 *seq.*  
 sends for blacksmiths to unchain Asfandiyár, v, 101  
 sets off with Asfandiyár, Bahman, and Núsh Ázar, v, 103  
 foretells Asfandiyár's fate, v, 169  
 reproached by Bishútan, v, 254  
 advises Gushtásp to write to Bahman, v, 257  
 writes by Gushtásp's orders to recall Bahman, v, 258  
 Gushtásp tells his intention as to the succession to, v, 279  
 prophecy of, viii, 68  
 additions of, to throne of Tákhdiś, viii, 392  
 Jámásp, son of Pirúz, 166, vi, 3  
 supersedes Kubád temporarily, vii, 184, 195

- Jámásp, son of Píruz, title of, vii, 186  
 fate of, vii, 186, 200
- James, St., bishop of Edessa, i, 374
- James V of Scotland, vii, 3  
 Bahráam Gúr's resemblance to, vii, 3
- Jamhúr, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 398, 399, 401, 403
- Jamshíd, son of Tahmúras, Sháh and culture-hero, 140, 164, i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 4, 33, 37, 168, 204, 358, 399; iii, 7, 57, 257, 273; iv, 63, 133, 149, 203, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 32, 34, 38, 47, 180, 202, 215, 216, 245, 271, 284; vi, 45 and *note*, 172, 209; vii, 36 *seq.*, 107, 162, 173, 211; viii, 22, 242, 269, 310, 332, 341, 387; ix, 25, 39, 103
- Reign of, 140, i, 129 *seq.*  
 Note on, i, 129 *seq.*  
 the Iránian Noah, i, 129  
 meaning of, i, 130  
 ascends the throne, i, 131  
 greatness of, i, 131  
 culture-hero, i, 132  
 makes armour, i, 132  
 raiment, i, 132  
 institutes castes, i, 132  
 great builder, i, 133  
 introduces jewelry and perfumes, i, 133  
 leechcraft, i, 133  
 ship-building, i, 133  
 carried by the dís into the air, i, 133  
 feast held in memorial of, i, 134  
 fall of, i, 130, 134, 139  
 Iránians revolt against, i, 139  
 flight and death of, i, 139  
 sisters of, married to Zahák, i, 146  
 found by Farídún, 140, i, 162  
 referred to, iv, 304
- Jamshíd, treasure of, found by Bahráam Gúr, 164, vii, 36  
 described, vii, 36
- Jandal, envoy of Farídún, 140, i, 177  
 asks Sarv's daughters in marriage for Farídún's sons, i, 178  
 informs Farídún of the outcome of his mission, i, 182
- Jandal, city in Hind, vii, 140  
 monarch of, entertained by Bahráam Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Jánfurúz, Iránian general, viii, 297
- Jánúsiyár, minister of Dárá, vi, 52, 88  
 murders Dárá, vi, 52  
 informs Sikandar of Dárá's murder, vi, 52  
 arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53  
 executed, vi, 56, 88
- Jaranjás, Túránian hero, iv, 156
- Jaríra, daughter of Pírán, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Farúd, 147, i, 92; ii, 3; iii, 43  
 married to Siyáwush, ii, 268 *seq.*  
 birth of her son Farúd, ii, 291  
 referred to, iii, 39  
 advises Farúd, iii, 42  
 dream of, iii, 63  
 kills herself, iii, 66
- Jarmana, place, ix, 93
- Jasha, king, i, 67, 68
- Játakas, vii, 383
- Jats, people of north-western India, vii, 6  
 fabulous origin of, vii, 6
- Jawánwí, Iránian magnate, vi, 373; vii, 8, 10  
 goes as ambassador to Munzir, vi, 398  
 interview of, with Munzir, vi, 398 *seq.*  
 recognises the divine Grace in Bahráam Gúr, vi, 398 *seq.*

- Jawánwi, suggests a course of action to Munzir, vi, 400  
 returns to Írán, vi, 400  
 bidden by Bahráw Gúr to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
- Jaz (Gaz), town north-west of Ispahán, vi, 337; vii, 76, 79, 80  
 tribute of, remitted, vii, 82
- Jerusalem, v, 306 *note*, vi, 81; viii, 191, 196  
 Elevation of the True Cross at, ix, 43
- Jesus, i, 42; viii, 191; ix, 10  
 sayings of, viii, 276 and *note*  
 Cross of, viii, 380  
 laughter of, viii, 191, 380
- Jew, Jews, 168, vi, 356; vii, 13, 273; viii, 21, 67, 276  
 Faith of, vi, 95  
 Bahráw Gúr's adventure with a, vii, 16 *seq.*  
 persecution of, vii, 153  
 Zúrán's plot with a, against Mahbád, vii, 320 *seq.*  
 bewitches Núshírwán's food, vii, 321  
 makes confession to Núshírwán, vii, 325  
 Fables of Bidpai, vogue of largely due to, vii, 383
- Jewelled tree, Kai Khusrau's, iii, 329
- Jeweller, a, 164. *See* Máhiyár.  
 daughter of, 164
- Jewels, discovery of, i, 133  
 Palace of, 160
- Jhílám (Hydaspes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 63
- Jihún (Oxus *q.v.*) river, 146, 152, i, 215, 219, 345, 375; ii, 15, 19 *seq.*, 99, 229, 237, 248, 258, 311, 340, 390, 394, 399, 404; iii, 58, 159; iv, 10, 12, 20, 53, 60, 79, 153, 154, 157, 181, 184, 187, 194, 255, 304; v, 12, 29, 40, 45, 48, 203; vii, 92, 165, 166, 180, 329, 338, 340; viii, 94, 99.
- Jihún—*cont.*  
 134, 174, 332; ix, 77, 115, 118  
 boundary between Írán and Túrán i, 71, 370, 371  
 confused with the Aras, i, 370  
 fords of, viii, 331
- Jins, ix, 81
- Johari Das, Babu, quoted, vi, 81
- Joktan, vi, 65  
 = Kahtán, vi, 65
- Joshua, vi, 77  
 Moses and, Muhammadan legend of, vi, 77
- Jovian (Bazánúsh), Roman Emperor (A.D. 363-4), vi, 324 *seq.*; viii, 41  
 confused with Valerian, vi, 324
- Judaism, vi, 327
- Judda, the port of Mecca, 159, vi, 121  
 Sikandar arrives at, vi, 121
- Julian (Yánús), Roman Emperor (A.D. 361-363), i, 12; vi, 325  
 confused with Valerian, vi, 324  
 not an emperor in the Sháh-náma, vi, 324, 326  
 expedition of, against Persia, vi, 324 *seq.*
- Julius Valerius, early Latin translator of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 61, 66 *seq.*, 71, 74, 78, 79, 81
- Jund-i-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*), city, vi, 256  
 = Rás-Shápúr, vi, 256  
 foundation of attributed to Ardashír Pápakán, vi, 266
- Jupiter, planet, i, 72, 161, 188, 281; ii, 115; iii, 318; iv, 143, 295; v, 256; vi, 138, 172, 292; vii, 49, 248, 357; viii, 28, 152, 157, 395
- Justin I, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 316

- Justin II, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 41  
 Justinian, Eastern Roman Emperor, i, 16; vii, 212, 219, 317; viii, 41  
 silkworm introduced into the West during reign of, vi, 204  
 bargains of, with Nûshîrwân, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*  
 protection of Hârith bin Jabala by, leads to war with Nûshîrwân, vii, 217  
 successes of, in the West, vii, 217  
 closes the schools of Athens, vii, 280  
 Juyâ, a div, ii, 71  
 slain by Rustam, ii, 72

## K

- KAABA, the, 159, vi, 65  
 account of, vi, 65  
 Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 67, 83, 119  
 Kabâb, small pieces of meat skewered together for roasting, ii, 103; iii, 69; iv, 121; v, 152; viii, 250  
 Kabîsa, viii, 188  
 Kabtûn, king of Misr and the progenitor of the Copts, vi, 121  
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121  
 praises Kaidâfa to Sikandar, vi, 122  
 Kabûda, 147, one of Afrâsiyâb's herdsmen, iii, 73  
 slain by Bahrâm, iii, 74  
 Kâbul, Kâbulistân (Afghânistân), city and country, 141, 157, i, 57, 252, 264, 268, 277, 282, 283, 286, 294, 298, 299 *note*, 300, 302 *seq.*, 316, 357, 378; ii, 12, 18, 21, 92, 228, 260, 271, 341; iii, 17, 35, 145, 153, 165, 174, 186, 190, 202, 206, 321; iv, 14, 65, Kâbul—*cont.*  
 146, 278, 283, 292; v, 126, 170, 173, 224, 242, 251, 260, 263 *seq.*, 271, 273 *seq.*, 284, 287; vi, 207; vii, 173  
 Buddhism in, i, 15  
 superseded by Brahmanism, i, 16  
 dagger of, i, 219; vi, 320  
 Zâl visits, i, 256  
 Beauty of = Rûdâba, i, 262, 316  
 monarch of = Mihrâb, i, 294, 365  
 rejoicings at, over Zâl's successful embassy to Minûchihr, i, 314  
 preparations at, to welcome Sâm and Zâl, i, 315  
 falchion of, i, 376; ix, 98  
 Shaghâd sent to be brought up at, v, 264  
 king of, 157, v, 264, 271  
 daughter of, marries Shaghâd, v, 264  
 Shaghâd and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*  
 gives a feast, v, 266  
 pretends to quarrel with Shaghâd, v, 266  
 treachery of, v, 268 *seq.*  
 abases himself before Rustam, v, 269  
 entertains Rustam and invites him to hunt, v, 269  
 hypocrisy of, v, 271  
 Farâmarz sent against, v, 274, 276  
 defeated and put to death with all his kin, v, 277  
 tribute of, question about, v, 265  
 Farâmarz makes a Zâbuli king of, v, 277  
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 140 *seq.*  
 Kâchâr Bâshî, city in Tûrân, ii, 258, 360, 361; vii, 330, 358; ix, 117

- Kádísí, Kádísíya, town on one of the canals west of the Euphrates and south of Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef), vi, 119, 330; ix, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78  
 battle of, i, 12, 143; ix, 5, 67, 69  
 date of, ix, 67  
 canal of, ix, 69  
 Rustam advances to, ix, 73  
 Kačkásta (Urumiah *q.v.*), lake, iv, 137  
 Káf, mythical Mount Alburz *q.v.*, ii, 83, 404; iv, 65, 149; viii, 66 and *note*  
 Káfúr, king of Bidád, 149, iii, 191  
 worsts the Íránians, iii, 244  
 slain by Rustam, iii, 245  
 Kahtán, desert of, i, 287  
 Kahtán, the Arabic form of Joktan, the progenitor of the southern Arabs, vi, 65, 120  
 Kai, meaning of, ii, 8  
 Kaian, Kaiánian (*see* Kai), ii, 8, 9, 22, 404; iii, 5 *seq.*, 9, 14, 43, 67, 112, 147, 307, 318, 320, 328, 342; iv, 5 *seq.*, 24, 33, 35, 65, 110, 127, 150, 166, 175, 234, 260, 262, 269, 273, 279, 285, 286, 289, 293, 308, 319, 324; v, 7 *seq.*, 10, 47, 49, 52, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67 *seq.*, 73 *seq.*, 79, 86, 91, 97, 122, 168, 203, 210, 223, 253, 254, 282, 288, 289, 291, 311; vi, 9 *seq.*, 17, 34, 48, 55, 57, 59, 81, 112, 125, 141, 179, 180, 194, 199, 200, 202, 210, 223, 237 *note*; viii, 65, 216  
 dynasty, i, 49, 373; ii, 7 *seq.*; iii, 5 *seq.*; iv, 5 *seq.*; v, 7 *seq.*; vi, 9 *seq.*  
 genealogical table, ii, 3  
 birth-mark, ii, 372  
 stature, ii, 375  
 saying, iv, 33  
 Kaian, throne, viii, 214  
 race, viii, 217  
 crown, ix, 11, 105  
 Kaiánúsh (Katáíún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91, 158  
 v, 261  
 referred to, i, 147, 165  
 Purmáya and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158  
 go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159  
 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160  
 Kai Árash, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; vi, 197, 210, 228; viii, 216  
 Kai Armín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23  
 Kaid, Indian king, 159, 161, i, 55; vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 112  
 identical with Mandanes (Dandamis), vi, 62  
 consults Mihrán about his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*  
 dreams of, interpreted by Mihrán, vi, 94, *seq.*  
 Four Wonders of, 159, vi, 94, 97 and *note*, 99 *seq.*  
 daughter, 159, vi, 94, 100, 102, 104  
 described, vi, 100, 102, 104  
 married to Sikandar, vi, 104  
 reference in Sikandar's Will to, vi, 182  
 cup, described, vi, 94, 100  
 principle of, explained, vi, 109  
 leech, vi, 94, 101  
 prescribes for Sikandar, vi, 107  
 sage, vi, 94, 101  
 = Calanus, vi, 62  
 Sikandar's encounter of wits with, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*  
 explains the principle of the cup, vi, 109

- Kaid, sends his Four Wonders and other gifts to Sikandar, vi, 103  
 revival of, in legend, vi, 256, 266  
 prophecy of, vi, 256, 257, 267  
 consulted by Ardshir Pápakán, vi, 266  
 advice of, to Ardshir Pápakán, vi, 267, 273
- Kaidáfa (Cilicia), vi, 294, 297
- Kaidáfa (Kandake, Candace *q.v.*), 159, vi, 83, 121 *seq.*, 325  
 obtains Sikandar's portrait, vi, 122  
 praised by Kabtún to Sikandar, vi, 122  
 receives a letter from Sikandar, vi, 123  
 answers Sikandar's letter, vi, 123  
 welcomes Kaidrúsh on his return from captivity, vi, 127  
 receives Naitkún (Sikandar) graciously, vi, 128  
 state of, described, vi, 128, 130, 133  
 gives audiences to Naitkún (Sikandar), vi, 128 *seq.*  
 recognises Sikandar, vi, 129 *seq.*  
 hears Sikandar's embassy, vi, 129  
 covenants of, with Sikandar, vi, 132, 138  
 warns Sikandar against Tainúsh, vi, 133  
 chides Tainúsh, vi, 135  
 takes counsel with Sikandar about Tainúsh, vi, 135  
 approves of Sikandar's scheme, vi, 137  
 takes counsel with her nobles, vi, 139  
 gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 140  
 Sikandar's final message to, vi, 143
- Kaidrúsh (Kandaros, Candaules), son of Kaidáfa (Candace), vi, 134, 135
- Kaidrúsh, wife of, vi, 66  
 taken with his wife, by Sikandar, vi, 125  
 brought with his wife before Naitkún, vi, 126  
 sentenced with his wife to death, vi, 126  
 pardoned with his wife, vi, 126  
 gratitude of, vi, 127  
 returns to Kaidáfa, vi, 127  
 presents Naitkún (Sikandar) to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
- Kaihan. *See* Kaid.
- Kai Káuś, son of Kai Kubád and Sháh, 143-147, 152, 153, i, 42, 338; ii, 3, 8 *seq.*, 23 *seq.*, 33 *seq.*, 54 *seq.*, 61 *seq.*, 109, 110, 127, 130, 233, 243 *seq.*, 264, 269 *seq.*, 273, 284, 286, 290, 296, 301, 316, 318, 319, 335, 347, 361, 364, 371, 372, 383, 401; iii, 7, 9, 13, 14, 20 *seq.*, 24, 30, 45, 51, 84, 85, 88, 90, 93, 96, 113, 145, 147, 166, 174, 236, 238, 239, 289, 307, 327; iv, 13, 61, 129, 135, 136, 162, 167 *seq.*, 185, 191, 199, 201, 203, 217, 218, 232 *seq.*, 254, 256 *seq.*, 269 *seq.*, 278, 287, 289, 290, 292, 295 *seq.*, 306, 310, 314, 321 *seq.*; v, 29, 30, 116, 173, 174, 190, 203, 207, 208, 210, 215, 216; vii, 74, 107, 115; viii, 22, 104, 168, 270, 341; ix, 25
- Reign of, 143, ii, 25 *seq.*  
 Notes on, ii, 25 *seq.*, 79 *seq.*, 118, 188 *seq.*, 335  
 visits Rustam, ii, 83  
 tempted by divs, ii, 30 *seq.*, 82, 102 *seq.*  
 goes to Mount Káf, ii, 83  
 defeats Afrásiyáb and regains Írán, ii, 100  
 makes Rustam paladin of paladins, ii, 101

Kai KÁús, buildings of, on Mount Alburz, ii, 81, 101  
 flying-machine of, ii, 103  
 fall of, from the sky, ii, 104 :  
     v, 174  
 repentance of, ii, 105  
 hears of Suhráb and summons his chiefs, ii, 136 *seq.*  
 bids Tús hang Rustam and Gív, ii, 143  
 apology of, to Rustam, ii, 147  
 encampment of, described, ii, 153  
     overthrown by Suhráb, ii, 160  
 refuses to cure Suhráb, ii, 178  
 attempts to console Rustam, ii, 181  
 marries the future mother of Siyáwush, ii, 194  
 receives Siyáwush at court, ii, 198  
 bestows Kuhistán upon Siyáwush, ii, 199  
 conduct of, in the case of Siyáwush and Súdábá, ii, 200 *seq.*  
 sends Siyáwush to fight Afrásiyáb, ii, 225  
 rejects terms of peace and quarrels with Rustam, ii, 244 *seq.*  
 hears of the defection of Siyáwush, ii, 258  
 grief of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 337  
 hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Írán, ii, 395  
 receives Kai Khusrau, ii, 397  
 rewards Gív, ii, 399  
 provides for Farangis, ii, 399  
 arbitrates between Tús and Gúdarz, ii, 403 *seq.*  
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from the castle of Bahman, ii, 410

Kai KÁús, requires Kai Khusrau to swear vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21  
 welcomes Gív and hears his tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234  
 gives a feast, iv, 234  
 deals with the captives, iv, 235  
 proclaims the conquest of Túrán and Chín, iv, 236  
 rewards Gív, iv, 236  
 sends Gív back with letter to Kai Khusrau, iv, 238  
 hears that Kai Khusrau is returning and goes with the nobles to welcome him, iv, 256  
 receives gifts from, and hears the adventures of, Kai Khusrau, iv, 257  
 gives a feast in honour of Kai Khusrau, iv, 257  
 counsels a pilgrimage to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 258  
 Kai Khusrau and, hear from Gúdarz of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264  
     send for Garsíwaz and put him to the torture, iv, 265  
     make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269  
     go in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270  
     prays that he may die, iv, 270  
 obsequies of, iv, 271  
 treasure of, called "The Bride" bestowed by Kai Khusrau on Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295  
 favour shown by Luhrásp to the grandsons of, iv, 318, 321 *seq.*  
 grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362

- Kai Káús, Rustam's patent from, v, 203
- Kai Khusrau, son of Siyáwush and Farangis, Sháh, 146-154, 160, i, 42, 369; ii, 3, 9, 25, 104, 189, 190, 334 *seq.*, 386 *seq.*; iii, 13 *seq.*, 47, 55, 57, 66, 106, 108, 111 *seq.*, 132, 134, 166, 173, 175, 186, 191, 197, 198, 202, 205, 211, 226, 228, 238 *seq.*, 249, 250, 271, 277, 285, 286, 289, 294 *seq.*, 326 *seq.*, 338, 353 *seq.*; iv, 7 *seq.*, 19, 21, 30, 31, 36, 56 *seq.*, 65, 66, 71, 72, 76 *seq.*, 90, 99, 115, 144 *seq.*, 152, 153, 237 *seq.*, 262, 267 *seq.*, 317 *seq.*, 319, 321; v, 10, 12, 21, 39, 173, 188, 203, 204, 208, 215, 284, 289; vi, 79, 177; vii, 120, 173, 359; viii, 148, 219, 270, 332, 392; ix, 25, 103
- fravashi of, ii, 82
- identical with Cyrus the Great in legend, ii, 9, 190
- prophecies respecting, ii, 310, 372, 390
- birth of, ii, 325 *seq.*
- account of youth of, ii, 328 *seq.*
- questioned by Afrásiyáb, ii, 332
- dwells at Siyáwushgird, ii, 333
- sent to Khutan, ii, 356
- Máchín, ii, 357 *note*
- described by Surúsh, ii, 363
- Gúdarz sends Gív to seek, ii, 364 *seq.*
- recalled, ii, 370
- found by Gív, ii, 370
- birth-mark of, ii, 372, iii, 49 *note*
- saves Pirán's life, ii, 387
- at the Jihún, ii, 391 *seq.*
- arrives at Zam, ii, 394
- visits Gúdarz at Ispahán, ii, 396
- Kai Khusrau, tells his story to Kai Káús, ii, 397
- praises Gív to Kai Káús, ii, 398
- goes to Istakhr, ii, 399
- enthroned as Sháh, ii, 400, 411
- supported by Gúdarz and opposed by Tús, ii, 400 *seq.*
- letter of, to the defenders of the castle of Bahman, ii, 407
- establishes Fire-worship at the castle of Bahman, ii, 409
- pardons Tús, ii, 410
- Reign of, 147, iii, 7 *seq.*
- Notes on, iii, 7 *seq.*, 108, 191, 271, 285 *seq.*; iv, 7, 135 *seq.*
- last link with the Vedas, iii, 7
- longest in respect of subject-matter in the poem, iii, 7
- divisions of, iii, 7
- episodes of, iii, 7
- warlike character of, iii, 8
- subject-matter of, iii, 8
- accession of, iii, 17
- goes on a hunting expedition, iii, 19
- to the temple of Ázar-gashasp, iii, 20
- swears to take vengeance on Afrásiyab, iii, 21
- prepares for war, iii, 23 *seq.*
- offers reward for the head of Paláshán, iii, 26
- crown of Tazháv, iii, 27
- slave of Tazháv, iii, 27
- head of Tazháv, iii, 28
- burning the barricade at the Kása rúd, iii, 28
- going on an embassy to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29
- warns Tús to avoid Kalát, iii, 39

Kai Khusrau, hears of the death of Farúd and of the defeat of the Íránians, iii, 84  
 wrath of, with Tús, iii, 84 *seq.*, 111  
 writes to Fariburz, iii, 84  
 disgraces Tús, iii, 86  
 imprisons Tús, iii, 87  
 pardons Tús and the Íránians, iii, 114  
 hears of the peril of the Íránians on Mount Hamáwan and summons Rustam, iii, 142 *seq.*  
 sends Rustam to succour the Íránians, iii, 145  
 furthers the suit of Fariburz to Farangís, iii, 147  
 hears of Rustam's victory, iii, 239  
 disposes of the captives and spoil, iii, 240  
 sends gifts to Rustam and the host, iii, 241  
 goes to meet Rustam on his return in triumph, iii, 267  
 gives a feast to the chiefs, iii, 268  
 rewards Rustam, iii, 269  
 holds a court and hears of the doings of the dív Akwán, iii, 273  
 writes to summon Rustam, iii, 274  
 goes to welcome Rustam on his return from slaying the dív Akwán, iii, 282  
 rewards Rustam, iii, 283  
 hears at a feast of the case of the Irmánians, iii, 289  
 calls for volunteers, iii, 291  
 sends Bizhan and Gurgín to Irmán, iii, 292  
 comforts Gív for the loss of Bizhan, iii, 315, 318  
 imprisons Gurgín, iii, 317  
 promises Gív to consult the divining-cup about Bizhan, iii, 317

Kai Khusrau sends Gív to summon Rustam, iii, 319  
 sends the host to meet Rustam, iii, 327  
 welcomes Rustam, iii, 328  
 jewelled tree of, iii, 329  
 requests Rustam to rescue Bizhan, iii, 330  
 releases Gurgín at Rustam's request, iii, 333  
 equips Rustam for his quest of Bizhan, iii, 333  
 welcomes Rustam on his return, iii, 354  
 rewards Rustam and his comrades, iii, 356  
 holds converse with Bizhan, iii, 356  
 gives gifts to Manízha, iii, 356  
 hears that the Túránians are invading Írán, iv, 12  
 summons his paladins, iv, 13  
 host, iv, 14  
 sends Rustam to Hindústán, iv, 14  
 Luhrásp to the Aláns, iv, 14  
 Ashkash to Khárazm, iv, 15  
 Gúdarz to Túrán, iv, 15  
 orders Gúdarz to negotiate with Pírán, iv, 15  
 receives letter from Gúdarz, iv, 58  
 rewards Hajír, the bearer, iv, 58  
 prays for victory, iv, 58  
 sends Hajír with answer, iv, 61  
 leads a host to aid Gúdarz, iv, 62  
 referred to, iv, 85  
 presage of, that Pírán would be slain by Gúdarz, iv, 85, 88  
 reaches Gúdarz, iv, 111, 126  
 receives Gúdarz and the other champions, iv, 126  
 Gurwí brought by Gív before, iv, 127

- Kai Khusrau, laments over  
 Pirán, iv, 127  
 buries Pirán and the Túr-  
 ánian champions, iv, 128  
 puts Gurwí to death, iv, 129  
 rewards the host, iv, 129  
 gives Ispahán to Gúdarz,  
 iv, 129  
 pardons the Túránian host,  
 iv, 131  
 amulet of, iv, 133  
 heals Gustaham, iv, 133  
 summons reinforcements,  
 iv, 134, 145  
 Great War of, with Afrásiyáb,  
 152, iv, 135 *seq.*  
 exemption of, from death,  
 iv, 138  
 recalls the troops under  
 Luhrásp, Rustam, and  
 Ashkash, iv, 145  
 stations Túš on his right  
 with Káwa's standard, iv,  
 146  
 gives the right wing to Rus-  
 tam, iv, 147  
 left wing to Gúdarz, iv,  
 147  
 commands to various  
 chiefs, iv, 148, 149  
 hears of Afrásiyáb's passage  
 of the Jíhún, iv, 157  
 sends troops to the aid of  
 Gustaham, son of Nau-  
 dar, at Balkh, iv, 157  
 Ashkash with a host to  
 Zam, iv, 157  
 marches to Khárazm, iv, 157  
 surveys the seat of war and  
 entrenches the host, iv,  
 157  
 Shída's embassy to, iv, 161  
 sends Káran to welcome  
 Shída, iv, 165  
 proposes to fight in single  
 combat, iv, 166  
 rejects the Iránians' sug-  
 gestions of a peace, iv,  
 167  
 accepts Shída's challenge,  
 iv, 168, 169
- Kai Khusrau, sends Káran with  
 a reply to Shída, iv, 168  
 arms to fight with Shída,  
 iv, 171  
 makes Ruhhám his stand-  
 ard-bearer, iv, 171  
 sends instructions to the  
 host, iv, 171  
 parley of, with Shída, iv,  
 172  
 accepts Shída's challenge  
 to a wrestling-bout, iv,  
 175  
 gives Ruhhám charge of his  
 steed, iv, 175  
 wrestles and overthrows  
 Shída, iv, 175  
 instructs Ruhhám to bury  
 Shída, iv, 176  
 spares the life of Shída's  
 interpreter and bids him  
 return to Afrásiyáb with  
 tidings, iv, 176  
 prays for vengeance on, and  
 attacks Afrásiyáb, iv, 178  
 bids Shammákh attack, iv,  
 180  
 attacks with Rustam from  
 the centre, iv, 180  
 fights with Ustuklá, Ílá and  
 Burzúyalá, iv, 182  
 returns to camp, iv, 183  
 hears of Afrásiyáb's retreat,  
 iv, 184  
 offers praise to God, iv, 184  
 pursues Afrásiyáb, iv, 185  
*seq.*  
 marches to Sughd, iv, 188  
 hears tidings of Afrásiyáb,  
 iv, 188  
 sends Gustaham, son of  
 Naudar, to Chách, iv, 188  
 Rustam to encounter  
 Tawurg, iv, 188  
 marches from Sughd and  
 reduces the Turkman  
 strongholds, iv, 189  
 to the Gulzaryún, iv, 189  
 commands the centre, iv,  
 191  
 prays for victory, iv, 191

Kai Khusrau, hears of the defeat of Kurákhán by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 193  
 hears of Rustam's defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193  
 warns Rustam to beware of Afrásiyáb, iv, 194  
 plunders the camp of, and pursues, Afrásiyáb, iv, 195  
 besieges Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*  
 converses with Rustam, iv, 198, 199, 222  
 receives Jahn in audience, iv, 200  
 declines Afrásiyáb's proposals for peace, iv, 207  
 with Rustam, Gustaham son of Naudar, and Gúdarz, assails Gang-bihisht on all sides, iv, 208 *seq.*  
 prays for victory, iv, 208  
 takes Gang-bihisht by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*  
 searches vainly for Afrásiyáb, iv, 212  
 gives the spoil of Gang-bihisht to the troops, iv, 217  
 grants quarter to the Turkmans and assumes the government of Túrán, iv, 217  
 dwells for a while at Gang-bihisht, iv, 218  
 leaves Gúdarz and Farhád at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219  
 marches against Afrásiyáb, iv, 220  
 rejects Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 223  
 fight a general engagement against Afrásiyáb, iv, 223, 226  
 entrenches his troops and prepares with Túš and Rustam for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224

Kai Khusrau, repulses Afrásiyáb's night-attack, iv, 225  
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iv, 227  
 receives the submission of Afrásiyáb's army, iv, 228  
 gives a feast, iv, 228  
 offers praise to God, iv, 228  
 returns to Gang-bihisht, iv, 228  
 accepts the submission of the Khán and Faghfúr, iv, 229  
 resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231  
 plan of, opposed by the host, iv, 231  
 supported by Rustam, iv, 231  
 agreed to by the host, iv, 232  
 sends Gív with Afrásiyáb's captive kindred to Kai Káuš, iv, 232 *seq.*  
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, in command at Gang-bihisht and marches to Chín, iv, 238  
 demands facilities from the Khán, the Faghfúr, and the king of Makrán, iv, 238  
 marches through Khutan, iv, 240  
 welcomed by the Faghfúr and the Khán of Chín, iv, 240  
 stays three months in Chín, iv, 241  
 leaves Rustam in Chín and marches to Makrán, iv, 241  
 sends an embassy to the king of Makrán, iv, 241  
 gives honourable burial to the king of Makrán, iv, 243  
 stops the pillage of Makrán, iv, 243  
 stays a year in Makrán, iv, 244  
 makes ready a fleet, iv, 244

Kai Khusrau, leaves Ashkash as governor and marches to the desert, iv, 244  
 voyage of, iv, 245  
 wonders of, iv, 245  
 lands, iv, 246  
 appoints Giv governor, iv, 246  
 receives the submission of the chiefs, iv, 247  
 seeks for tidings of Gang-dizh and of Afrásiyáb, iv, 247  
 marches to Gang-dizh, iv, 247  
 forbids his troops to injure Gang-dizh, iv, 247  
 enters Gang-dizh, iv, 248  
 searches for Afrásiyáb, iv, 248  
 remains a year at Gang-dizh, iv, 249  
 urged by his paladins to return to Irán, iv, 249  
 appoints a governor for Gang-dizh, iv, 249  
 distributes treasures at Gang-dizh, iv, 250  
 marches seaward from Gang-dizh, iv, 250  
 welcomed by Giv, iv, 250  
 crosses the sea to Makrán, iv, 251  
 welcomed in Makrán by Ashkash and the chiefs, iv, 251  
 appoints a governor for Makrán, iv, 251  
 marches to Chín, iv, 251  
 welcomed by Rustam, iv, 251  
 confirms the Faghfúr and Khán in the possession of Máchín and Chín, iv, 252  
 goes with Rustam to Siyá-wushgird, iv, 252  
 rewards Rustam and Giv, iv, 252  
 welcomed by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 252  
 goes to Gang-bihisht, iv, 253

Kai Khusrau, prays for satisfaction on Afrásiyáb, iv, 253  
 dwells for a year in Gang-bihisht, iv, 254  
 desires to return to Kai Káuś, iv, 254  
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, as viceroy, iv, 254  
 carries off treasure from Chín and Makrán, iv, 254  
 arrives at Chách, iv, 255  
 Sughd, iv, 255  
 met by Khúzan and Tali-mán, iv, 255  
 makes offerings to the Fire-temple at Bukhára, iv, 255  
 crosses the Jihún, iv, 255  
 arrives at Balkh, iv, 255  
 welcomed everywhere by the people, iv, 255  
 goes by Tálikán, the Marv-rúd, Nishápúr, and Dám-aghán to Rai, iv, 255  
 stays two weeks at Rai, iv, 256  
 announces his approach to Kai Káuś, iv, 256  
 goes to Baghdád and thence to Párs, iv, 256  
 reception of, by Kai Káuś, iv, 256  
 presents gifts, and tells his adventures, to Kai Káuś, iv, 257  
 has a feast given in his honour by Kai Káuś, iv, 257  
 rewards the troops, iv, 258  
 takes counsel with Kai Káuś concerning Afrásiyáb, iv, 258  
 goes with Kai Káuś on a pilgrimage to the temple of Azargashasp, iv, 258  
 Kai Káuś and, hear from Gúdarz of Hüm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264

Kai Khusrau, and Kai Káuś, send for Garswaz, and put him to the torture, iv, 265  
 slays Afrasiyáb, iv, 268  
 Garswaz, iv, 269  
 Kai Káuś and, make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269  
 treasurer of, makes gifts to Ázargashasp, iv, 269  
 sends letters announcing his triumph to all the chiefs, iv, 270  
 holds festival and bestows treasure, iv, 270  
 goes with Kai Káuś in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270  
 performs the obsequies of Kai Káuś, iv, 271  
 assumes the crown as sole Sháh, iv, 272  
 becomes world-weary, iv, 272  
 closes his court and withdraws to his oratory, iv, 274  
 prays that he may be taken from the world, iv, 274  
 passes a week in prayer, iv, 274, 279  
 remonstrated with by the nobles, iv, 275, 279  
 replies to the nobles, iv, 276, 279  
 passes five weeks in prayer, iv, 280  
 hears from Surúsh that his prayer is granted, iv, 280  
 bidden to appoint Luhrásp as his successor, iv, 281  
 puts off his royal robes, iv, 281  
 receives Zál, Rustam, and others in audience, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 pardons Zál, iv, 291  
 orders an assembly to be held on the plain, iv, 291

Kai Khusrau, treasure of, disposal of, iv, 294  
 found by Sikandar, 160, vi, 176  
 charge of, to Gúdarz, iv, 294  
 gifts of, to Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295  
 Gustaham, iv, 295  
 Gúdarz, iv, 295  
 Fariburz, iv, 295  
 Bizhan, iv, 295  
 Zál's companions, iv, 297  
 confirms Rustam in possession of Nímruz, iv, 297; v, 203  
 bestows Kum and Ispahán on Gív, iv, 298  
 confirms the charge of Káwa's flag, and gives Khurásán, to Tús, iv, 300  
 summons and crowns Luhrásp, iv, 300  
 Zál's protest to, against Luhrásp's succession to, iv, 301  
 justifies his choice of Luhrásp, iv, 301  
 takes leave of the Íránians, iv, 303  
 women of, lament for him, iv, 304  
 commends his women to the honour of Luhrásp, iv, 305  
 dismisses the Íránians, iv, 305  
 counsels Luhrásp, iv, 305  
 bids Luhrásp farewell, iv, 306  
 sets forth on his pilgrimage with some of his chiefs, iv, 306  
 Indian parallel, iv, 138  
 again appealed to by the Íránians, iv, 306  
 reply of, iv, 307  
 bids his chiefs return, iv, 307  
 rests with his remaining chiefs by a spring, iv, 307  
 prepares for his passing, iv, 308  
 farewells his chiefs, iv, 308

- Kai Khusrau, warns his chiefs of the coming of the snow, iv, 308  
disappears, iv, 308
- Kai Kubád, Sháh and founder of the Kaiánian dynasty, 142, i, 42, 373, 374; ii, 3, 8, 12, 14, 16, 18 *seq.*, 26, 33, 34, 36, 37, 87, 143, 144, 249, 260, 270, 274, 327, 336, 363, 390, 394; iii, 34, 49, 51, 57, 144; iv, 35, 70, 149, 168, 201, 283, 298, 302; v, 174, 180, 188, 189, 202, 205, 210, 221, 272; vi, 197, 210; vii, 37, 74, 115, 120, 173; viii, 89, 170, 260, 270, 310, 332; ix, 25  
brought by Rustam from Mount Alburz, i, 382 *seq.*  
tells his dream to Rustam, i, 385  
accepted by Zál and the other chiefs as Sháh, i, 387  
Reign of, 142, ii, 11  
Note on, ii, 11  
origin of, ii, 11 and *note*  
makes peace with Afrá-siyáb, ii, 20  
gifts of, to Zál and Rustam, ii, 21  
descendants of, commanded by Diláfrúz, stationed on Kai Khusrau's left hand, iv, 147
- Kai Manush, vi, 200
- Kai Pashín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; iv, 302
- Kais, Arab chief, entertains Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 250
- Kaiser Friedrich Museum, viii, 192
- Kait. *See* Kaid.
- Kai Ugí, vi, 200
- Kaiwán, Iránian statistician, vii, 11
- Kaiwán, calculates the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
- Kákula, Túránian hero, iv, 188  
reinforces Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
- Kákwi (*cf.* Karkwi), grandson of Zakhák, 141, i, 226  
attacks the Iránians, i, 225  
defeated and slain by Minú-chihr, i, 227
- Kaláhúr, warrior of Mázandarán, ii, 67  
tries a handgrip with Rustam, ii, 67
- Kalát, stronghold, iii, 39; ix, 91  
home of Farúd, iii, 39  
Kai Khusrau bids Tús to avoid, iii, 39  
Tús marches to, iii, 40  
captured by the Iránians, iii, 66
- Kalát-i-Nádirí, stronghold, ii, 189; iii, 14  
described, iii, 14
- Kalé (Nereis), daughter of Alexander in the Pseudo-Cal-listhenes, vi, 77  
Andreas, the cook, and, legend of, vi, 77
- Kalíla and Dimna, Book of, 169.  
*See* Fables of Bidpai.
- Kálfniyús (Nicephorium, Callinicus, Warigh *q.v.*, Rakka), city situated at the junction of the Belikh and the Euphrates, 167, viii, 188  
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 218, 257
- Kalú, mountain in Túrán, ii, 328<sup>1</sup>  
Pírán sends Kai Khusrau to be brought up on, ii, 328  
goes to see Kai Khusrau at, ii, 329
- Kálús, Rúman chief, iv, 356  
sent as envoy to Ilyás, iv, 352, 358  
Luhrásp, iv, 357  
entertained by Luhrásp, iv, 357

<sup>1</sup> Misprinted "Kalár"

- Kálús, describes Gushtásp to Luhrásp, iv, 358  
dismissed with honour, iv, 359
- Kámús, Túránian hero, 148, 149, iii, 107, 151, 152, 161, 162, 164 *seq.*, 168 *seq.*, 172, 176, 178, 181 *seq.*, 200, 207, 209, 213, 216, 224, 229, 232, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 269; iv, 297; v, 167, 199, 220  
Story of, of Kashán, 148, iii, 108 *seq.*  
Firdausí on, iii, 269  
comes to the aid of Pírán, iii, 151  
plan of campaign of, adopted, iii, 162  
leads the attack, iii, 168  
hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175  
Rustam described by Pírán to, iii, 183  
challenges Rustam, iii, 187  
parleys with Rustam, iii, 188  
fights, and is taken prisoner by, Rustam, iii, 189  
end of, iii, 190
- Kanábad, mountain, part of the Binalúd range north of Nishápúr in Khurásán.  
The name may be preserved in the modern Gunabad, a village to the north of that range, iv, 23, 37, 47, 48, 51, 55, 56, 76, 88, 112  
occupied by Pírán, iv, 22
- Kand. *See* Kaid.
- Kandá Gashasp, Íránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 163  
speech of, viii, 166
- Kandahár, city in southern Afghánistán, i, 286; iv, 65; v, 233 *note*
- Kandake (Candace *q.v.*, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), vi, 66
- Kandáros. *See* Kaidrúsh.
- Kandaules. *See* Kaidrúsh.
- Kand-i-Shápúr. *See* Gund-i-Shápúr.
- Kangha (Khárazm *q.v.*), country, ii, 189, 190
- Kangder (Gang-dizh *q.v.*), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
- Kanfr. *See* Tainúsh.
- Kannúj (Kanauj), city near the west bank of the Ganges in the division of Agra in the United Provinces of British India, i, 261, 357; iii, 35; iv, 278, 283, 284; v, 257; vi, 64, 207, 352; vii, 115, 119, 123, 128, 129, 134, 137, 385, 386, 390, 393, 425  
conquest of, by Mahmúd, i, 99, 100 and *note*, 113  
Sikandar reaches, vi, 110  
river of, vii, 112 and *note*, 390  
monarch of = Shangul, vii, 140  
Bahráam Gúr appointed heir to, vii, 143
- Karabagh (Arrán), district north of the Aras, i, 9  
seat of primitive Fire-worship, i, 56
- Karakh-Maishán, town built on the lower Tigris by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 199, 291 *note*
- Káran, son of Káwa, Íránian hero and the mythical progenitor of a family famous in Ashkánian times, 141, i, 207, 211, 214 *seq.*, 344, 345, 365; ii, 11 *seq.*, 18, 22, 119; iii, 9; iv, 146; vi, 194; viii, 168; ix, 85  
takes the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 *seq.*  
reports his success to Minú-chihr, i, 225  
commands Naudar's host, i, 345  
tells of his encounter with Afrásiyáb, i, 350  
counsels Naudar, i, 353

- Káran, son of Káwa, with Shídúsh and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354  
 defeats and slays Bármán, i, 354  
 defeats Wisa, i, 357  
 meets and defeats Shamásás, i, 361  
 bears to Zav the news of his election as Sháh, i, 370  
 re-appearance of, in legend, iv, 135, 146  
 made champion of the host, iv, 149  
 sent by Kai Khusrau to welcome Shída, iv, 165  
 bears Kai Khusrau's answer to Shída, iv, 168  
 opposes and defeats Jahn, iv, 178  
 family, of, vii, 171  
 glorification of, vii, 170  
 origin of, vii, 185  
 rivalry of, with Mihrán, vii, 185
- Káran, mountain, the name given from the above hero to part of the Alburz range which lies between Mount Damíwand and Ámul and formed his principality, and that of his descendants as late as and after the Muhammadan conquest, v, 112
- Káran, Iránian chief, *temp.* Yazdagird, son of Shápúr and Bahrán Gúr, vi, 394; vii, 86, 90
- Káran, mountain-chief, viii, 189
- Karap (Karpan), v, 17  
 meaning of, v, 14
- Karásu, river, v, 14
- Karáz, viii, 252 and *note*.
- Kargasárs, a wild tribe, i, 253  
 and *note*, 277, 279, 286, 290, 294, 298, 319, 340; ii, 98; iii, 318
- Karímán, Iránian hero and great-great-grandfather of Rustam, ii, 4, 125 and *note*, v, 202
- Karistán, viii, 188
- Karkh, suburb of Baghdád, iv, 147; ix, 85  
 Arab defeat at, ix, 85
- Karkh = Khurram Ábád (?), vi, 327
- Karkwí (*cf.* Kákwi), a descendant of Zahhák, i, 290  
 attacks Sám, i, 290  
 slain by Sám, i, 291
- Karmá'il and Irmá'il, Zahhák's cooks, 140  
 device of, i, 146
- Kárnámak - i - Ardshír - i - Pápakán, Pahlaví text, vi, 14 *note*, 61, 198, 301, 325; vii, 380  
 account of, vi, 195  
 resembles Yátkár-i-Zarírán, vi, 196  
 purport of, vi, 196  
 portion of Sháhnáma corresponding with, vi, 196  
 compared with, vi, 200  
*seq.*, 205 *seq.*, 255 *seq.*
- Firdausí and, vi, 196  
 polo episode in, vi, 196
- Karnaprívaramís, vi, 80
- Karpan (Karap *q.v.*), v, 14
- Kársán, viii, 188, 252  
 gates of, shut against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252  
 walls of, fall down, viii, 253  
 Khusrau Parwíz stays at, viii, 253
- Karshipta, mythical bird, i, 235
- Karsiyún, Túránian hero, iv, 10
- Kárun, mountain. *See* Káran.
- Kárun, river joining the Shat al Arab at its delta, vi, 199  
*note*  
 dam on, vi, 295
- Kása rúd (Kashaf *q.v.*), river, 147, iii, 28, 68, 69, 71, 72, 82, 105; iv, 90  
 barricade at the, iii, 29  
 burnt by Giv, iii, 73

- Kashaf (Kása rúd *q.v.*), river in north-eastern Khurásán, i, 235, 296  
 story of the dragon of, i, 296 *seq.*
- Kashán (Kásán, town in Farghána, north of the Jaxartes ?), iii, 108, 151, 170, 177, 180, 181, 188, 192, 204, 207, 224, 237, 242; iv, 189; v, 39; vii, 331, 334  
 Kámús of, Story of, 148, iii 108 *seq.*  
 in Túrán, iii, 108  
 in Írán, iii, 109  
 man of = Kámús, iii, 189
- Kashán, city between Ispahán and Kum, iii, 109
- Kashmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Kashmígán, son of Farrukhzád, ix, 92
- Kashmíhan, place north-east of Marv, vii, 89  
 Bahrám Gúr's victory at, vii, 90  
 Súfarai's victory at, vii, 170 *note*, 176
- Kashmír, country, i, 113; ii, 271, 338; iii, 35, 152, 237, 251; iv, 14, 60, 65; v, 263; vii, 395, 396, 421  
 king of, vi, 31  
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Kastantaniya (Constantinople), viii, 265
- Kastarit. *See* Kyaxares.
- Kaswín. *See* Kazwín.
- Kát (Káth), one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Gurganj being the other) situated on the right bank of the Oxus, iii, 152
- Katáyún (Náhid), daughter of Caesar, wife of Gushtásp, and mother of Asfandiyár, 154, 156, ii, 3; iv, 348; v, 11, 253  
 referred to, i, 55; v, 205, 249, 252
- Katáyún, eldest daughter of Caesar, iv, 348  
 Story of, 154, iv, 329. *seq.*  
 marriage of, iv, 329. *seq.*  
 dreams of Gushtásp, iv, 329  
 sees and chooses Gushtásp for her husband, iv, 330  
 marries Gushtásp, iv, 331  
 sells a jewel, iv, 332  
 discovers that Gushtásp is of royal race, iv, 340  
 persuades Gushtásp to go to the Sports on Caesar's riding-ground, iv, 349  
 Caesar reproached by Gushtásp for his unkindness to, iv, 350  
 reconciled to Caesar, iv, 351  
 referred to, iv, 358  
 receives gifts from Caesar, iv, 363  
 goes to Írán with Gushtásp, iv, 364  
 sons of, v, 32  
 counsels Asfandiyár, v, 168, 175  
 ancestry of, v, 205  
 Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249  
 laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252  
 consoled by Bishútan, v, 255
- Katib, Arab chief, vi, 21, 65, 120
- Katmára, Íranian hero, iv, 92  
 put in command of the right wing, iv, 92
- Káuś, Sháh. *See* Kai Káuś.  
 brand-mark of, iii, 291
- Káuś, son of Sháh Kubád, vii, 316
- Kavárazem (Gurazm *q.v.*), v, 12
- Kavi (Kai), ii, 8  
 Usa, ii, 25
- Kavi (Kavíg), v, 14
- Kavíg (Kavi), v, 17  
 meaning of, v, 14
- Kavi Husravah (Kai Khusrav *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
- Kávya Ushaná (Kai Káuś, *q.v.*) ii, 25
- Kávyan (Kaian), ii, 8

- Káwa, the smith, 140, i, 155 *seq.*, 207, 214; iv, 165, 178; vii, 185; viii, 72; ix, 30  
 Zakhák and, Story of, 140, i, 154 *seq.*  
 revolts and goes to Farídún, i, 157  
 leads Farídún's van, i, 160  
 flag of, i, 143, 160, 211, 217, 218, 237, 332; ii, 12, 227, 341, 349, 354, 400, 402, 405, 406, 410; iii, 25, 38, 39, 48, 84, 85, 116, 121, 126, 129, 135 *seq.*, 149, 161; iv, 24, 25, 34, 55, 59, 92, 112, 146, 180, 226, 243, 282, 292, 359; vi, 347; vii, 250; viii, 385; ix, 30, 67  
 origin of, i, 157  
 Bizhan's prowess with, iii, 93  
 half of, taken by Pírán, iii, 94  
 staff of, cloven by Púlád-wand, iii, 258  
 Tús confirmed in charge of, by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300  
 rescued by Girámí, v, 59, 69  
 Káwian, standard, i, 211  
 Kázirún, town west of Shíráz, vi, 199  
 Kazwin, city north-west of Tih-rán, v, 30  
 Kerátor. *See* Tainúsh.  
 Keresásp, Keresáspa, Iránian hero, i, 234, 235, 373; ii, 4  
 account of, in the Zanda-vasta, i, 172  
 later development of, i, 174  
 Keresavada (Garsíwaz *q.v.*), ii, 189; iv, 137  
 Khalaj (Kharlíkh), a Turkish tribe dwelling north of the Jaxartes and east of Táshkand, vii, 92  
 Khálid, famous Arab general *temp.* Muhammad, v, 12  
 begins hostilities against Persian Empire, ix, 66  
 Khálid, recalled to lead Syrian campaign, iv, 66  
 Khallukh (*cf.* Khalaj), iv, 10, 156; v, 42, 44, 55, 61, 74, 90, 107, 112, 157, 242, 255  
 Khán of Chín, the, *temp.* Kai Káuś, ii, 383  
*temp.* Kai Khusrau, 148, 149, iii, 108, 160 *seq.*, 164 *seq.*, 172, 175 *seq.*, 181, 184, 187, 190 *seq.*, 196, 198 *seq.*, 205, 207 *seq.*, 215, 217, 221, 222, 226 *seq.*, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 320; iv, 60, 135, 238 *seq.*; v, 199, 220  
 Khán of Chín = Arjásp, v, 47, 51, 72  
*temp.* Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35  
*temp.* Bahrán Gúr, 165, vii, 49, 91, 93, 97, 101, 111  
 invades Írán, vii, 84  
 responds graciously to the Írániáns' embassy, vii, 88  
 gives himself up to pleasure at Marv, vii, 88  
 fate of, in war with Bahrán Gúr, vii, 5, 90  
 crown of, placed in a Fire-temple, vii, 95  
 Khúshnawáz, son of, vii, 165  
*temp.* Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 328 *seq.*; viii, 43, 52, 87, 89, 97 *seq.*  
 daughter of, married to Núshírwán, 168, vii, 213, 357  
 historically ruler of the Turks, vii, 317  
 relations of, with Núshírwán, vii, 88  
 the Haitáliáns, vii, 317, 328 *seq.*  
 embassy of, to Núshírwán, vii, 329  
 hears of the destruction of his embassy by the Haitáliáns, vii, 330

Khán of Chín, leads forth his troops, vii, 330  
 defeats the Haitálans, vii, 332  
 Núshírwán takes counsel about, vii, 333, 334  
 descent of, from Afrásiyáb and Arjásp, vii, 334.  
 Núshírwán writes to, vii, 337  
 purposes to invade Írán, vii, 337  
 hears of Núshírwán's advance, vii, 338  
 takes counsel, vii, 338  
 sends embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 339  
 hears his envoy's account of Núshírwán, vii, 344  
 offers to make affinity with Núshírwán, vii, 345  
 attempts to outwit Núshírwán, vii, 351  
 gives audience to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 351  
 invites Míhrán Sitád to choose a wife for Núshírwán, vii, 352  
 consults the astrologers, vii, 354  
 entrusts his daughter to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 354  
 gives presents to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 356  
 parts with his daughter at the Jíhún, vii, 356  
 daughter of, 168  
   described, vii, 352, 357  
   evacuates territory, vii, 358  
 Khán of Chín (*see too* Parmúda), *temp.* Hurmuzd, Khusrau Parwíz, and Yazdagird, 171, 173, viii, 141 *seq.*, 190, 191, 204, 215, 220, 263 *seq.*, 306, 316 *seq.*, 342 *seq.*, 346 *seq.*, 351, 352, 356, 357, 363; ix, 87, 102  
 supposed war of, with Hurmuzd, viii, 72

Khán of Chín, marriage of daughter of, with Núshírwán referred to, viii, 72  
 letter of, viii, 77  
 dismissed by Hurmuzd with gifts, viii, 152  
 refuses advances of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 153  
 becomes friends with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 172  
 brother of, 173, viii, 190, 191  
 reports flight of Gurdaya, viii, 351  
 ordered to go in pursuit, viii, 351  
 parley of, with Gurdaya, viii, 352  
 daughter of, viii, 190  
 killed by lion-ape, 173, viii, 322, 324  
 queen of, viii, 190  
 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324  
 disgraced, viii, 344  
 welcomes Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 316  
 swears friendship with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 317  
 dominated by Makátúra, viii, 317  
 advised by Bahrám Chúbína to slight Makátúra, viii, 318  
 views fight between Bahrám Chúbína and Makátúra, viii, 320  
 sends gifts to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 321  
 refuses to give up Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 329  
 distrust Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 334  
 impress of seal of, obtained by Kharrád, viii, 338  
 burns Kulún's kindred, viii, 334  
 seeks in vain for Kharrád, viii, 344  
 mourns for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 344

- Khán of Chín, brother of, 173  
= Bízhan, ix, 97
- Khánagí, Rúman noble, viii, 375, 378  
leads Cæsar's embassy to  
Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 374  
Khusrau Parwiz' gifts to,  
viii, 382  
returns to Rúm, viii, 382
- Khán-i-Irmán (Arman *q.v.*), iii, 290
- Khanjast (Chijast, Urumiah),  
lake in Ázarbáiján, iv,  
136, 264; viii, 282
- Khár (Khuvár) of Rai, district  
and town (now Aradún),  
so called to distinguish  
it from a town of the same  
name in Párs, situated  
south-east of Tihrán, i,  
368, 374, 381
- Khárazm (Khiva), country, ii,  
189, 190; iv, 11, 12, 15,  
60, 61, 72, 137, 173, 186,  
287; vi, 72; vii, 238,  
359
- Kharazmians, people, ii, 190;  
vi, 72
- Kharijites, Muhammadan sect, i,  
13
- Kharrád, Íránian hero, i, 365;  
ii, 11, 22, 33, 73, 340;  
iii, 115, 127, 139, 211,  
273, 289; iv, 15
- Kharrád, nonce name assumed  
by Asfandiyár, v, 146,  
149
- Kharrád, *temp.* Ardshír Pápa-  
kán, Íránian warrior, 161,  
vi, 284  
takes Ardawán prisoner, vi,  
228
- temp.* Bahrám Gúr, Íránian  
chief, vii, 85
- temp.* Kubád son of Píruz,  
archimage, vii, 207
- temp.* Núshírwán=(?) the  
above, vii, 251
- Kharrád, sacred Fire, vi, 212  
and *note*, 226, 391
- Kharrád, bower of, vii, 83
- Kharrád, son of Barzín (Hur-  
muzd Garábzín or Galáb-  
zín), 171-173, viii, 74, 76,  
158 *seq.*, 205, 225, 257 *seq.*,  
269, 270, 331 *seq.*, 381;  
ix, 4, 11, 12, 24  
sent by Hurmuzd as envoy  
to Sáwa, viii, 110  
beguiles Sáwa and flees, viii,  
111  
flight of, reported to Sáwa,  
viii, 112  
counsels Bahrám Chúbína,  
viii, 121  
seeks, refuge, viii, 123  
counts Íránian slain, viii,  
127  
blames and counsels Bahrám  
Chúbína for his behaviour  
to Parmúda, viii, 144,  
146  
questions Bahrám Chúbína  
on his adventure with the  
onager, viii, 158  
flees from Balkh with arch-  
scribe, viii, 159  
makes report of Bahrám  
Chúbína to Hurmuzd, viii,  
160  
real name of, viii, 190  
waits on Khusrau Parwiz,  
viii, 252  
speech of, to Cæsar, viii, 259,  
275  
masters Cæsar's talismans,  
viii, 274, 275  
Cæsar's gift to, viii, 278  
praised by Cæsar, viii, 279  
made chief minister, viii, 314  
speech of, to Khán, viii, 332  
attempts to prejudice Bah-  
rám Chúbína to the Khán,  
viii, 333  
intrigues against Bahrám  
Chúbína, viii, 334 *seq.*  
cures daughter of queen of  
Chín, viii, 336  
incites Kulún to kill Bahrám  
Chúbína, viii, 337  
asks boon of queen of Chín,  
viii, 338

- Kharrád, returns to Írán and is rewarded, viii, 345  
 reads out Caesar's letter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 376  
 end of, ix, 4  
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9  
 Ashtád and, parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11  
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12  
 report to Shírwí, ix, 27  
 Kharrád, Íránian general, defeats Khazars, viii, 96  
 Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, ix, 102  
 Khashásh, Túránian hero, v, 47  
 made leader of the van, v, 46  
 Khatá (Cathay), northern China, ii, 357  
 Khatlán (Khuttal), a general name for the non-Muhammadan regions to the north and east of Khurásán (=Haitál), more specifically a district on the right bank of the upper Oxus west of, or forming part of, Badakhshán, iii, 218, 228; iv, 65; vii, 94, 331, 359  
 Khátún, consort of the Khán of Chín, vii, 5  
 fate of, in war with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5  
 Kháwar, the West or Khurásán (?), perhaps=Khár *q.v.*, iv, 147, 148. *Cf.* Káran (mountain).  
 Khazar, Khazars, region and people north of the Caucasus, i, 17; ii, 285; iv, 71, 316, 352 *seq.*, 358, 361; vii, 83, 214, 224; viii, 94, 377, 379  
 invasion of, viii, 72, 93  
 defeated, viii, 96  
 Khazarwán, Túránian hero, 142  
 Shamásás and, invade Zábulistán, i, 345, 358  
 Khazarwán parleyed with by Míhráb to gain time, i, 358  
 slain by Zál, i, 360; ii, 18  
 Khazarwán, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, king of Gílán, vii, 85  
 takes the Khán prisoner, vii, 90  
 Khazarwán, Íránian noble, *temp.* Khusrau Parwíz, speech of, viii, 241  
 Khazrá, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*  
 Khiláfat, the, i, 12 *seq.*  
 Khil'at, robe of honour, i, 82  
 Khír, place on the south-western shore of Lake Niris in Párs, vi, 198  
 Khisr (Al Khidr, *q.v.*), chief and prophet, vi, 159  
 goes with Sikandar to the Gloom, vi, 159  
 parts company with Sikandar, vi, 160  
 finds the Fount of Life, vi, 160  
 Khíva (Kharazm), country, ii, 190  
 Khorasan. *See* Khurásán.  
 Khshathró-saoka (Gang-dizh ?), stronghold, ii, 189, 190  
 Khudai-náma (Bástán-Náma), i, 66; v, 24  
 Khurásán, province in north-eastern Írán, 176, ii, 399; iv, 148, 203; v, 28, 77; vi, 242, 301; vii, 100, 214, 224, 237, 335; viii, 78, 94, 241, 313, 355, 369; ix, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92  
 Narsí made ruler of, vii, 99  
 governor of, viii, 75  
 prince of, viii, 173  
 Máhwí becomes master of, ix, 114  
 Khurásán, chieftain, viii, 241  
 speech of, viii, 240  
 Khurásání. *See* Mákh.  
 Khurdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328

- Khurdád, month and day, i, 88,  
159; vii, 112, 225, 351;  
viii, 25, 173
- Khurm, seat of an oracle, vi, 82  
oracle of, consulted, vi, 184
- Khurra-i-Ardshír. *See* Ardshír  
Khurra.
- Khurram Ábád (Karkh?), city,  
vi, 327, 357 and *note*
- Khurshíd, genius and day, i, 88;  
v, 92 *note*
- Khurshíd, Íránian chief, viii,  
270, 296
- Khúshnawáz, ruler of the Haitá-  
lians, 166, vii, 194, 198,  
359; viii, 75, 168, 242,  
245, 267
- Pirúz advances against, vii,  
164
- writes to Pirúz, vii, 165
- appeals to Bahrám Gúr's  
treaty, vii, 166
- prayer of, to God, vii, 167
- digs a trench, vii, 67
- defeats Pirúz by a feint, vii,  
168
- correspondence of, with  
Súfarai, vii, 174 *seq.*
- defeated by Súfarai, vii,  
177
- takes refuge in Kuhandizh,  
vii, 177
- sues for peace, vii, 178
- releases Kubád, Ardshír, and  
other captives, and gives  
up the spoil, vii, 180
- Khusrau, Sháh. *See* Kai Khus-  
rau.
- Khusrau, Íránian noble, 163,  
164, vi, 408
- elected Sháh in succession  
to Yazdagird son of Shá-  
púr, vi, 395; vii, 11
- proposes that Bahrám Gúr  
shall begin the ordeal, vi,  
409
- does homage to Bahrám Gúr,  
vi, 410
- honoured by Bahrám Gúr,  
vii, 10
- Khusrau, father of Khazarwán,  
viii, 241, 296 (?)
- Khusrau Parwiz, son of Hur-  
muzd, Sháh, 171-175, v,  
294, 306 *note*; vi, 3; viii,  
71, 74, 170, 173, 174, 181,  
182, 191 *seq.*, 216, 304,  
306, 316, 334, 335, 342,  
358, 367 *seq.*, 395 *note*,  
413 *note*; ix, 4 *seq.*, 11,  
12, 25, 26 *note*, 30, 31, 33  
*seq.*, 38 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*
- horse of, story of, viii, 91
- Hurmuzd plots to kill, viii,  
174
- flees, viii, 175
- adherents gather round,  
viii, 175
- swear fealty to, viii, 176
- goes to Baghdád, viii, 184
- visits Hurmuzd in prison,  
viii, 185, 198, 230
- extensive historical con-  
quests of, viii, 187
- materials for reign of, in  
Sháhnáma, viii, 187
- flight of, historical, from  
Ctesiphon, viii, 188
- affects Christianity in exile,  
viii, 188
- helped on terms by Emperor  
Maurice, viii, 188
- historical campaign of,  
against Bahrám Chúbina,  
viii, 189
- visits of, to Fire-temple at  
Shíz, viii, 190, 283, 307,  
312
- Nu'man bin Munzir exe-  
cuted by, viii, 190
- triumphal arch of, viii,  
192
- Assurbanipal and, reigns of,  
compared, viii, 193
- fall of, historical account of,  
viii, 193 *seq.*
- attempts of Heraclius to  
make peace with, viii, 194,  
195
- treatment of defeated gen-  
erals by, viii, 194

Khusrau Parwiz, prediction concerning, viii, 194  
 Reign of, 196, viii, 186 *seq.*  
 Note on, viii, 186 *seq.*  
 Hurmuzd's requests to, viii, 199  
 spies' report of Bahrám Chúbína to, viii, 201  
 takes counsel, viii, 202  
 marches to meet Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 203  
 interview of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 204 *seq.*  
 attacked by Turk and saved by Gustaham, viii, 220  
 dissuaded from making a night-attack, viii, 224  
 troops of, tampered with by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 226  
 sends away his baggage, viii, 228  
 combat of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 228, 229  
 retreats to, and holds, the bridge of Nahrawán, viii, 228  
 worsts Yalán-sína, viii, 229  
 flees to Taisáfún, viii, 229  
 counselled by Hurmuzd, viii, 230  
 prepares to flee, viii, 231  
 takes refuge in a shrine, viii, 233  
 arrives at Bábil, viii, 249  
 entertained by Kais, viii, 250  
 Mihrán Sitád, viii, 251  
 town of Kársán and, viii, 252  
 interview of, with Hermit, viii, 254  
 warned against Gustaham, viii, 255, 256  
 welcomed by Cæsar, viii, 257  
 takes up his abode at Warigh, viii, 257  
 instructs his embassy to Cæsar, viii, 257  
 Cæsar offers daughter to, viii, 266

Khusrau Parwiz, accepts Cæsar's offer, viii, 269, 270  
 welcomes Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 280  
 marches to Dúk, viii, 282  
 Mausil and, viii, 283  
 returns to Dúk, viii, 284  
 Dará Panáh goes over to, viii, 286  
 forges letter to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286  
 sends corpse of Kút to Cæsar, viii, 291  
 decides to fight without Ruman help, viii, 292, 293  
 arrays his host, viii, 293  
 resolves to fight in person, viii, 295  
 bodyguard of, viii, 296  
 leaves Bahrám in charge of host, viii, 296  
 flees from Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 298  
 saved by Surúsh, viii, 299  
 returns to Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 299  
 suspected of Christian tendencies, viii, 308  
 gives banquet to Niyátús and Rúmáns, viii, 309  
 restores captured cities to Rúm, viii, 312  
 makes Kharrád, son of Barzín, chief minister, viii, 314  
 proclamation of, viii, 314  
 demands extradition of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 328  
 advised to send envoy to Khán, viii, 329  
 resolves to put Bandwí to death, viii, 354  
 summons Gustaham, viii, 355  
 hears of Gurdyá's doings, viii, 356, 358  
 writes to Gurdyá viii, 359  
 hears of the death of Gustaham, viii, 362  
 welcomes Gurdyá to court, viii, 362

Khusrau Parwiz, Gurdy dresses up to please, viii, 363  
 warned by Shírin against Gurdy, viii, 364  
 makes Gurdy overseer of royal bower, viii, 364  
 oppresses Rai, viii, 365  
 relieves Rai, viii, 368  
 organizes the realm, viii, 369 *seq.*  
 puts to death adherents of Bandwí and Gustaham, viii, 370  
 consults astrologers on birth of Shírwí, viii, 372  
 grieved at Shírwí's horoscope, viii, 372  
 consults the high priest, viii, 372  
 writes to Caesar, viii, 373  
 Caesar's embassy to, viii, 374  
 gives Caesar's gifts to Shírwí, viii, 381  
 presents to Khánagí, viii, 382  
 and Shírin, ix, 7  
   Story of, 174, viii, 382 *seq.*  
 equipage of, for the chase, viii, 384  
 married to Shírin, viii, 386  
 justifies his marriage, viii, 388  
 gives gilded chamber to Shírin, viii, 389  
 displeased with Shírwí, viii, 390  
 and throne of Tákdís, viii, 391 *seq.*  
 palace of, story of, viii, 400 *seq.*  
 Farghán and, viii, 401 *seq.*  
 imprisons Rúman artificers, viii, 402  
 releases Rúman artificers, viii, 403  
 treasures of, viii, 406  
 Guráz intrigues against, viii, 408  
 device of, against Guráz and Caesar, viii, 409

Khusrau Parwiz, sends Farrukhzád to the host, viii, 412  
 hears Kubád proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416  
 arms and hides in garden, viii, 417  
 palace of, plundered, viii, 418  
 discovered, viii, 419  
 holds talk with Farrukhzád, viii, 420  
 recalls former presage, viii, 420  
 imprisoned, viii, 421  
 duration of reign of, viii, 421  
 charges against, ix, 4, 5, 9, 10  
 reply of, to charges, ix, 5, 14 *seq.*  
 Haram of, ix, 4, 5  
 last days of, Theophanes' account of, ix, 6  
 Shírwí's treatment of, ix, 7  
 sons of, executed, ix, 7, 35  
 imprisoned at Taisafún, ix, 9  
 companioned by Shírin, ix, 29  
 Bárbad visits, ix, 29  
   laments over, ix, 30  
   steed of, ix, 30  
 son of, ix, 31  
 referred to, ix, 33 and *note*  
 kingdom of Híra abolished by, ix, 66  
 Muhammad's letter to, ix, 66  
 Khusrau and Shírin, Persian poem, viii, 192  
 Khusrau, father of Pírúz, 175, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57  
 Khusrau, a miller, 176, ix, 99.  
   *See* Miller.  
 Khutan, town and district in eastern Turkistán, 146, 150, ii, 277, 288, 325, 357, 383; iii, 107, 242, 247; iv, 26, 219; vii, 84, 115, 330, 334, 359

- Khutan, raided by Gfv, iii, 247  
 monarch of, iv, 11  
 Afrásiyáb, iv, 230  
 Kai Khusráu marches through, iv, 240  
 people of, make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360  
 Khuzá' Arab tribe, vi, 65  
 rule of, ended by Sikandar, vi, 120  
 Khúzán, a king of Párs, iv, 146, 191  
 meets Kai Khusráu in Sughd, iv, 255  
 Khúzians, people of Khúzistán, *q.v.*, iv, 146  
 Khúzistán (Susiana, 'Arabistán'), province at the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 290 and *note*, 298, 327, 357; viii, 109 and *note*, 193  
 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68  
 Khuzrá, treasure, ix, 20  
 Khvátúk-das, i, 60  
 Catullus on, i, 60  
 Khyóns (Hvyaonas), v, 13, 25  
 Kibchák, region east of the Jaxartes and north of Táshkand, iv, 254; ix, 93  
 Kibtís, vi, 397 and *note*  
 Kímák, a river in Kibchák, iv, 203, 231  
 Kimmerians, the, i, 17  
 Kinám-i-Asírán, near to, or identical with, the ruins of Shús (Sús, Susa), vi, 327, 357 and *note*  
 King, the ideal, iii, 16  
 of kings, title of, vi, 193, 197  
 meaning of, in Achæmenian and Parthian times, vi, 198  
 assumed by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273  
 of the Commons, vii, 3  
 piece in chess, vii, 382, 385  
 position of, vii, 388, 422  
 check to, vii, 422  
 mate to, vii, 423  
 piece in nard, vii, 382, 389  
 Kings, Book of, Firdausi's, i, 43  
 Persian, viii, 73  
 Tribal. *See* Tribal.  
 Kirmán, region in southern Írán, 158, iv, 146; vi, 31, 47, 57, 59, 199, 202, 205, 245, 252; vii, 214; viii, 313  
 Dára retires to, vi, 46  
 etymology of, vi, 204, 236  
 Ardshír Pápakán's invasion of, vi, 205, 245  
 Kirmánsháh, title, vi, 313, 368  
 Kirmánsháh, city between Baghdád and Hamadán, vii, 187; viii, 192  
 Kirmánsháhán, city in Kirmán, south of Yazd, vi, 368  
 Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes?), ix, 93  
 Kírwí, Íránian noble, vii, 23  
 story of, vii, 22  
 Kishmar, place south of Nishápúr in the Kuhistán district of Khurásán, v, 35  
 Cypress of, v, 27  
 account of, v, 28, 34  
 Gushtásp and, v, 34  
 Kishwád, Íránian hero, father of Gúdarz, 151, i, 207, 344, 305; ii, 4, 11, 12, 18, 22, 33, 70, 73, 107, 112, 138, 318, 384, 399, 404, 409; iii, 19, 24, 33, 45, 100, 121, 123, 126, 143, 154, 187, 215, 289, 302, 305, 308, 311, 327, 339; iv, 20, 32, 35, 63, 147, 174, 180, 263, 294, 310, 360, viii, 104  
 Káran, Shídúsh, and, pursue Kurúkhán, i, 354  
 sent by Zál to release the Íránian captives, i, 367  
 Kishwaristán, Íránian hero, iv, 148  
 commands the troops from Barbaristán and Rúm, iv, 148  
 Kisrá, Sháh, 166. *See* Núshírwán.  
 Kitradád, Nask, i, 373

- Knathaiti, Pairika, female personification of idolatry, i, 172
- Kobad, Sháh. *See* Kubád.
- Ktesias, Greek historian (5th century B.C.), vi, 13, 68  
 legend of Cyrus in, ii, 9; vi, 195  
 Gutschmid on, vi, 195  
 account of Semiramis in, v, 293  
*Persica* of, v, 293
- Kubád, Iránian hero, brother of Káran, 142, i, 207  
 acts as Minúchíhr's scout, i, 217  
 parleys with Túr, i, 217  
 accepts Bárman's challenge to single combat, i, 347  
 dissuaded by Káran, i, 347  
 reply of, i, 347  
 fights and is slain, i, 348
- Kubád, Sháh. *See* Kai Kubád.
- Kubád, son of Pirúz and father of Núshírwán, Sháh (Kobad), 166, vi, 3, 208; vii, 179 *seq.* and *note*, 226, 247; viii, 25, 46, 72, 168, 169, 245, 265, 285, 312, 369; ix, 22, 25  
 captivity of, among the Haitálíans, vii, 160  
 leads the rearguard in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálíans), vii, 164  
 taken prisoner, vii, 168  
 released, vii, 180  
 made Sháh instead of Bal-áh, vii, 182, 188  
 Reign of, 166, vii, 183 *seq.*  
 Note on, vii, 183 *seq.*  
 historical sketch of, vii, 183  
 title of, viii, 183 and *note*  
 reform of taxation by, vii, 183 *note*, 215  
 with the help of Shápúr of Rai overthrows and puts Súfarai to death, vii, 191 *seq.*  
 dethroned, vii, 184, 195
- Kubád, imprisoned, vii, 184  
 escapes, vii, 184, 197  
 marriage of, vii, 184, 186, 198  
 gives his wife a signet-ring, vii, 198  
 cedes Chaghán to the Haitálíans in return for their help, vii, 198  
 goes to Ahwáz, vii, 198  
 hears of the birth of Núshírwán, vii, 199  
 marches on Taisafún, vii, 199  
 pardons the Iránians and Jámásp, vii, 200  
 makes Rizmíhr chief minister, vii, 200  
 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 187, 200  
 takes cities from Rúm, vii, 200  
 makes his capital at Madá'in, vii, 201  
 builds a city and hospital, vii, 201  
 drought in reign of, vii, 201  
 Mazdak and, vii, 184, 201 *seq.*  
 Mazdak's parable to, vii, 201  
 converted by Mazdak, vii, 184, 204  
 presides over the disputation between Núshírwán and Mazdak, vii, 207  
 gives judgment against Mazdak, vii, 208  
 hands over Mazdak and his followers to Núshírwán, vii, 208  
 repentance of, vii, 209  
 testament of, vii, 210, 316  
 age of, vii, 210  
 death of, vii, 210  
 sons of, vii, 316
- Kubád (Shírwí *q.v.*), son of Khusrau Parwíz and Maryam, Sháh, 175, viii, 190, 196; ix, 3 *seq.*, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64

- Kubád (Shírwí), secret and public names of, viii, 371, 416  
 proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416  
 imprisons Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 421  
 accedes to throne, viii, 421  
 Reign of, 175, ix, 3  
 Note on, ix, 3  
 tragic, ix, 3  
 pestilence during, ix, 3  
 boorishness of, ix, 3  
 difficult situation of, ix, 3  
 reproached by his sisters, ix, 7
- Kubád, son of Jam son of Kubád, vii, 316  
 plot to make, Sháh, vii, 316
- Kubard, Túránian hero, iv, 190  
 commands the left, iv, 190
- Kúch, tribe or town (Kúk?) in Kirmán, ii, 226
- Kúfa, city west of the Euphrates and in the neighbourhood of Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef), viii, 190; ix, 68, 69  
 wood of, vi, 381  
 founded by Sa'ad, ix, 67
- Kúh, nonce name assumed by Húmán, iii, 198
- Kuhandizh (Baigand *q.v.*), vii, 177  
 Khúshnawáz takes refuge in, vii, 177
- Kuhla, Túránian hero, iv, 181  
 slain by Minúchíhr, iv, 181
- Kuhistán, generally a mountainous region, particularly that of northern Írán, Parthia, or of the high ranges further south, but in the Sháhnáma=Má wara'u'n-Nahr (Transoxania), ii, 199
- Kuhram, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 349  
 chosen to fight with Barta, iv, 97; v, 29  
 slain by Barta, iv, 105
- Kuhram, brother or son of Arjasp, 156, v, 29, 58, 89  
*seq.*, 106 *seq.*, 112, 141, 159
- Kuhram, commands one wing of the host, v, 46  
 in chief, v, 56  
 sent by Arjasp to attack Balkh, v, 90  
 troops of, storm Balkh, burn the Fire-temple, and slay Zarduhsht and the priests, v, 92  
 stationed on the left, v, 95  
 mortally wounds Farshidward, v, 95  
 appointed by Arjasp to send away the spoil of Balkh in the charge of his younger brothers, v, 108  
 commands the right, v, 110  
 defeated by Asfandiyár, v, 110  
 bidden to prepare for war, v, 151  
 retreats to the Brazen Hold, v, 152  
 mistakes Bishútan for Asfandiyár, v, 152  
 hears the cries of the Íránian watch from the Brazen Hold and takes counsel with Andarímán, v, 155  
 makes for the Brazen Hold with his troops, v, 156  
 pursued by Asfandiyár, v, 156  
 encountered and taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 157  
 executed, v, 158 and *note*
- Kujarán, city and province on the Persian Gulf, vi, 205, 206, 232  
 Haftwád migrates from, to stronghold, vi, 235
- Kulbád, Túránian hero, brother of Pírán, 146, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 264, 388; iii, 166, 177, 198, 199, 205, 210, 222, 231, 234, 252; iv, 10, 26  
 wounded by Zál, i, 361  
 death and revival of, in legend, ii, 119

- Kulbád, pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 377 *seq.*  
 chosen to fight with Fariburz, iv, 97  
 slain by Fariburz, iv, 99
- Kulún, Túránian hero, i, 382, 387  
 sent by Afrásiyáb to intercept Rustam, i, 383  
 slain by Rustam, i, 386
- Kulún, Turk in league with Kharrád against Bahrám Chúbína, 173, viii, 335  
 incited by Kharrád to kill Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 337  
 arrives at Marv by help of Khán's seal, viii, 339  
 seeks interview with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 339  
 stabs Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340  
 maltreated, viii, 340  
 kindred of, burnt, viii, 344
- Kum, city in 'Irák 'Ajami, between Tihrán and Káshán, ii, 399  
 bestowed on Giv by Kai Káús, ii, 399  
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
- Kumár, city or cape in India, ii, 103 and *note*
- Kundrav, minister of Zahhák, 140  
 mythological origin of, i, 143  
 Faridún and, Story of, 140, i, 164  
 goes to Zahhák with tidings of Faridún, i, 165
- Kundur, Túránian hero, iii, 152, 185, 210, 215, 251; v, 112,  
 worsted by Rustam, iii, 224  
 stationed on the right, v, 94
- Kunduz (Kuhandizh, Baigand *q.v.*), iv, 151  
 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151  
 marches from, iv, 154
- Kur (Cyrus), river in Transcaucasia flowing into the Caspian sea, v, 13
- Kuraish, Arab tribe, vi, 65
- Kurákhán, son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92; iv, 10  
 counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 301  
 summoned and sent with troops to Bukhárá by Afrásiyáb, iv, 154  
 joined by Afrásiyáb, iv, 186  
 defeated by Gustaham son of Naudar, iv, 193  
 defeat of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
- Kurákhán, governor of Balkh, viii, 22
- Kurán, vi, 65; viii, 277 *note*;  
 ix, 81 and *note*  
 quoted, i, 99; v, 166; viii, 42, 192; ix, 81 and *note*  
 references to Alexander the Great in, vi, 15, 78, 84  
 legend of Moses and the salt fish in, vi, 77  
 Gog and Magog in, vi, 78
- Kurd, Kurds, the people of Kurdistán *q.v.*, 161, i, 9;  
 vi, 193, 203, 257  
 language, i, 64  
 legend of the origin of the, i, 146  
 Ardshír Pápakán's war with, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 206, 256  
 Sháhnáma, vi, 230 *seq.*
- Kurdistán, mountainous region north of Mesopotamia, vi, 330
- Kurdzád, daughter of Mihrak *q.v.*
- Kuria Muria Islands, off the southern coast of Arabia, vi, 72
- Kurúkhán, Túránian warrior, i, 353  
 sent by Afrásiyáb to attack Párs, i, 353
- Kurus, Indian tribal race, iv, 388
- Kús, i, 177. *See* Tammísha.
- Kút, Rúman warrior, 172, viii, 281, 289, 291  
 slain by Bahrám Chúbína viii, 290

- Kút, corpse of, sent back to Rûmans, viii, 291  
 Kutch (*read Kûch q.v.*), iii, 34  
 Kutib, father of Husain (or Ha'iy) one of Firdausi's patrons, i, 35; ix, 121  
 Kyaxares (Kastarit), king or chief and leader in the confederacy that overthrew Nineveh, i, 18

## L

- Labarum, the, v, 306 *note*  
 Lâdan (Pashan), battle of, iii, 13 *seq.*, 80 *seq.*, 89 *seq.*, 123; iv, 27, 37, 90, 120, 299  
 Lagus, Ptolemy son of. *See* Ptolemy.  
 Lahhâk, Tûrânian hero, brother of Pîrân, 152, i, 92; ii, 323 *note*; iii, 90, 166, 198; iv, 7, 71, 122, 125, 133, 160, 162  
     summons Pîrân to save Farangis, ii, 322  
     pursues the Irânians to Mount Hamâwan, iii, 135  
     commands with Farshîdward the right wing, iv, 26  
     attacks the Irânians in flank, iv, 82  
     opposed by Gurgîn, iv, 83  
     goes to help Pîrân and attacks Gîv, iv, 85  
     prowess of, iv, 86  
     put in chief command with Farshîdward, iv, 94  
     Pîrân's instructions to, iv, 95  
     Farshîdward and, hear of the death of Pîrân and the coming of Kai Khusrau, iv, 112  
     lament for Pîrân, iv, 112  
     take counsel with the host, iv, 113  
     fight, and escape from, Irânian outpost, iv, 116  
 Lahhâk, Farshîdward and, referred to, iv, 118, 120, 126  
     repose themselves, iv, 121  
     corpses of, brought back by Bîzhan, iv, 126, 132  
     deaths of, announced to Afrâsiyâb, iv, 152  
 Lambak, a water-carrier, 164  
     entertains Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 13 *seq.*  
     rewarded by Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 20  
 Land of Darkness. *See* Gloom.  
 Land-tax, Mahmûd's remission of, vi, 196, 208  
     Nûshîrwân's reform of, vii, 215, 225  
 Latin version, early, of Pseudo-Callisthenes. *See* Julius Valerius.  
 Launderer, a, foster-father of Dârâb, 158, v, 292  
     finds Dârâb in the Farât, v, 296  
     Dârâb adopted by, and his wife, v, 297  
     quits his home with wife and Dârâb and settles elsewhere, v, 298  
     becomes wealthy but sticks to trade, v, 298  
     perturbed at Dârâb's youthful escapades, v, 298  
     brings up Dârâb to be a cavalier, v, 299  
     Dârâb's lack of natural affection for, v, 300  
     wife of, informs Dârâb of his case, v, 300  
     Rashnawâd sends for, and his wife, v, 304  
     informed by, of the case of Dârâb, v, 308  
     visits, with his wife, Dârâb at his accession, v, 311  
     dismissed with gifts, v, 312  
 Lâzhawardî, fort, ix, 93  
 Lazica, region on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215; viii, 194

- Lazic war, renewed by Hurmuzd, viii, 76
- Bahrám Chúbína defeated in, viii, 76
- Leech of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.
- Legend, Syriac Christian, of Alexander. *See* Syriac.
- Leo, constellation, ii, 405; iii, 81, 318; vi, 172, 180; vii, 410; viii, 122, 394
- Libra, constellation, i, 310; vi, 97
- Life, Fount of. *See* Fount.
- Water of, 160 *Id.*
- Plutarch's, of Alexander the Great, vi, 67
- Lion, lions, slain by Rakhsh, 143, ii, 45
- Asfandiyár, 156, v, 125
- Bahrám Gúr, 163-165, vii, 55, 77
- ape, 173, viii, 322 *seq.*
- Lion's House, constellation of Leo, i, 188
- Lion's Mouth, the, place, iv, 245
- Loadstone, chamber of, viii, 275
- suspended cavalier in, viii, 275
- Longimanus (Dirázdast), title of Artaxerxes I, son of Xerxes, v, 281
- Lucerne (*Medicago sativa*), tax on, vii, 215
- Lúch, perhaps = Kúch *q.v.*, vii, 362
- captives from, settled at Súrśán, vii, 328
- Luhrásp, Sháh, 154, 155, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; iv, 57, 65, 135, 337, 347, 356 *seq.*; v, 10, 20, 21 and *note*, 26, 29, 36, 38, 64, 68, 80, 86, 87, 90 *seq.*, 98 *seq.*, 104, 114, 141, 154, 155, 157, 159, 160, 167, 171, 180, 183, 205, 208, 243, 255, 281, 284; vi, 55, 200; viii, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392; ix, 104
- sent to the Aláns by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
- Luhrásp, successes of, iv, 60, 71
- troops of, recalled, iv, 145
- nominated by Surúsh to be Kai Khusrau's successor, iv, 281
- crowned by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
- Zál's protest against the succession of, iv, 301
- succession of, justified by Kai Khusrau, iv, 301
- acknowledged by Zál, iv, 302
- the chiefs, iv, 303
- undertakes to respect Kai Khusrau's wives, iv, 305
- counselled and farewelled by Kai Khusrau, iv, 306
- addresses the chiefs, iv, 311
- receives the fealty of Zál and other chiefs, iv, 312
- praises and rewards Zál, iv, 312
- coronation of, iv, 312
- Reign of, 154, iv, 314 *seq.*
- Note on, iv, 314 *seq.*
- harangues the chiefs, iv, 316
- makes Balkh his capital, iv, 317
- builds the Fire-temple of Barzín, iv, 318
- shows favour to the grandsons of Kai Káuś, iv, 318, 321 *seq.*
- refuses to appoint Gush-tásp his heir, iv, 319
- sends Zarír in pursuit of Gushtásp, iv, 320
- pardons Gushtásp, iv, 322
- hears of Gushtásp's flight, iv, 323
- consults Zarír and the sages, iv, 323
- searches in vain for Gush-tásp, iv, 324
- receives Kálús, Caesar's envoy, in audience, iv, 357
- entertains Kálús, iv, 357
- consults Zarír, iv, 358
- questions Kálús, iv, 358

Luhrásp, dismisses Kálús with honour, iv, 359  
 sends Zarír with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359  
 message of, to Caesar, iv, 361,  
 welcomes and crowns Gush-  
 tásp on his return to  
 Írán, iv, 364  
 resigns the throne to Gush-  
 tásp and becomes a de-  
 votee, v, 31  
 converted by Zarduhsht, v,  
 33  
 advises Gushtásp to resign  
 the kingship to Asfan-  
 diyár, v, 66  
 opposes Kuhram, v, 91  
 slain, v, 91, 93, 99  
 Asfandiyár's vow to avenge,  
 v, 103  
 Lumsden, his edition of the  
 Sháhnáma, i, 76  
 Luna. *See* Moon.

## M

MA, Hittite goddess, vi, 71  
 =Cybele, vi, 71  
 priestesses of = Amazons, vii,  
 71  
 Macan, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76; vi, 60  
 Mace, Faridún's, i, 161, 163, 165,  
 168  
 the making of, i, 158  
 Macedonia, vi, 81, 82  
 Macedonian invasion of the East,  
 vi, 68, 69  
 Máchin (China), ii, 357 *note*, 370,  
 394; iii, 46, 253, 265;  
 iv, 151, 203, 229, 231, 234,  
 252; v, 142, 145; viii,  
 417; ix, 107  
 Machine, flying, of Kai Káús, ii,  
 103  
 Macrianus, Prætorian prefect, vi,  
 294  
 treachery of, to Valerian,  
 vi, 294  
 M'Crindle, *Ancient India* of,  
 quoted, vi, 68, 80  
 Madá. *See* Medes.  
 Madá'in, Ctesiphon (Taisafún),  
 and the neighbouring  
 cities, 167, 174, vii, 201,  
 244; 266, 272, 337, 363;  
 viii, 4, 46, 192, 193  
 Núshírwán sends his Rúman  
 captives to, vii, 259  
 palace of Khusráu Parwíz  
 at, story of, viii, 400  
 Mádik, king of the Kurds, mean-  
 ing of, vi, 203, 256  
 Madófrýat, mountain, part of  
 the Alburz range, south-  
 east of the Caspian, v, 30  
 Magi, priests of the Medes  
 (Madá), i, 9; ii, 190; vi,  
 372, 373; vii, 171, 184  
 preservers of tradition, i, 56,  
 60  
 meaning of name, i, 56 and  
*note*  
 rise to power of, i, 58  
 influence of, declines after  
 the Greek conquest, i, 59  
 principal seats of, i, 60  
 literature of, i, 61  
 language of, i, 64  
 compile the prose Sháhnáma for Abú Mansúr, i,  
 69  
 advocates of next-of-kin  
 marriage, ii, 189  
 Magian, Magians, vii, 60  
 chant, vii, 60  
 fire, vii, 409  
 Magic, i, 51  
 derivation of, i, 56  
 sympathetic, i, 8  
 Magism, v, 11  
 Magog. *See* Gog.  
 Magophonia, import of, i, 59  
 Magus. *See* Magi.  
 Mahábháratá, Indian Epic, iii,  
 8; iv, 316; vi, 31, 80  
 the passing of the five Pán-  
 davs in, compared with  
 that of Kai Khusráu, iv,  
 138

- Máh Áfríd, grandmother of  
Minúchihir, i, 205
- Máh Áfríd, daughter of Túr, iv,  
304
- Máh Áfríd, daughter of Barzín,  
vii, 53  
married to Bahrám Gúr,  
vii, 53
- Máh Ázar, scribe, viii, 81
- Máhán, Iránian noble, v, 260, 263
- Mahbúd (Mebodes), minister of  
Kubád and Núshírwán,  
168; vii, 213  
instrumental in making  
Núshírwán Sháh, vii, 316  
Núshírwán's treasurer, vii,  
319  
sons of, vii, 319  
serve Núshírwán's meals,  
vii, 319, 321  
wife of, prepares Núshírwán's food, vii, 321, 322  
envied by Zúrán, vii, 319  
fall of, vii, 317, 322  
Núshírwán's repentance  
with regard to, vii, 317,  
325
- Máh i-Azáda Khú, wife of Túr, i,  
188  
meaning of, i, 188 *note*
- Máhiyár, minister of Dárá,  
murders Dárá, vi, 52  
tells Sikandar of the murder, vi, 52  
arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53  
executed, vi, 56, 88
- Máhiyár, Iránian noble, vii, 38  
praises Bahrám Gúr, vii, 38
- Máhiyár, a jeweller, 164, vii, 55  
*seq.*  
daughter of. *See* Árzú.  
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii,  
59 *seq.*
- Mahmúd, Sultán (A.D. 999-1030), i, 100; iii, 15;  
viii, 24  
account of, i, 21  
brothers of, i, 21, 114  
Firdausi's praise of, 139,  
152, 155, 156, 160, 161;  
i, 29 *seq.*, 112 *seq.*; iv,  
Mahmúd—*cont.*  
135 *seq.*, 139; v, 30, 89,  
118, 262; vi, 20, 107, 279,  
292, 370; vii, 277; ix,  
122  
Firdausi's feeling against,  
i, 33; vi, 62, 92 *seq.* and *note*  
Satire on, i, 23, 40 *seq.*  
alleged ill treatment by,  
i, 33, 36 *seq.*; vii, 431  
alleged repentance of, i, 45;  
iv, 8  
occasion of, iv, 8  
approves of Firdausi's version of the fight between  
Rustam and Ashkabús,  
iii, 109  
remission of the land-tax by,  
vi, 186, 208
- Mahraspand, father of Ádarbád,  
v, 16 *note*
- Mahrwí, viii, 248
- Máhwí (=Sháhwí ?), one of  
Firdausi's authorities, i,  
67; vii, 382
- Máhwí, Persian chief, 176, ix,  
70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 *seq.*,  
118  
described, ix, 87  
Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird to, ix, 95  
accepts charge of Yazdagird, ix, 96  
becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, ix, 96  
writes to Bízhan, ix, 96, 116  
betrays Yazdagird, ix, 97,  
98, 116, 117  
quest of, for Yazdagird, ix,  
100  
has tidings of Yazdagird, ix,  
101  
consults his warriors, ix, 106  
son of, counsels, ix, 107  
receives Balkh and Harát,  
ix, 115  
governor of Marv, ix, 120  
put to death with his  
sons, ix, 120  
sends miller to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107, 116

- Máhwí, sends troops after miller with instructions, ix, 107  
troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 108  
hears of death of Yazdagird, ix, 108  
bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, ix, 108  
slays monks, ix, 113  
consults his intimates and minister, ix, 113  
advised by his minister, ix, 113  
claims the throne on false pretences, ix, 114  
becomes master of Khurásán, ix, 114  
evil rule of, ix, 114  
makes war on Bízhan, ix, 115  
conduct of, to Barsám, ix, 117  
crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, ix, 118  
flees, ix, 118  
overtaken by Barsám, ix, 118  
captured by Barsám, ix, 119  
put to death by Bízhan, ix, 120
- Mai, city in Turkistán, i, 252, 256, 261; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 385, 421
- Mai, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 399, 401, 403, 404
- Maidán, riding-ground, i, 83
- Maidhyó-maungha, cousin and first convert to Zarduhsht, v, 17
- Mail of Siyáwush, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81; iv, 40, 41, 44, 45, 51  
referred to, iv, 42, 43
- Maishán (Mesene), a small state on the lower Tigris, vi, 199
- Májúj (Magog), 160. See Yájúj.
- Makátúra, Turkman chief, 173, viii, 317  
dominates the Khán, viii, 318
- Makátúra, slighted by the Khán, viii, 318  
challenges Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 319  
fight of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 320
- Mákh, viii, 71, 78
- Makhzúm, place, 93
- Makná Bád, city, iii, 109
- Makrán (Gedrosia, Balúchistán), country on the shore of the Arabian Sea, ii, 80, 82; iv, 136, 203, 231, 234, 237 *seq.*, 254; vi, 182, 202, 397; vii, 390; viii, 393, 417  
king of, 153, iv, 238 *seq.*  
refuses facilities to Kai Khusrau, iv, 239, 242  
buried by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243
- Kai Khusrau marches upon, iv, 241  
stops pillage of, iv, 243, 244  
prepares a fleet in, iv, 244  
sails for Gang-dizh from, iv, 245  
returns to, iv, 251  
goes to Chín from, iv, 251  
Alexander the Great's return by, productive of marvels, vi, 69  
etymology of, vi, 69
- Malcolm, Sir John, identification and description of Mount Sipand by, i, 236; v, 30  
version of Suhráb by, ii, 118  
on the scene of the death of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 6
- Málika, daughter of Táir, vi, 3, 324  
legend of, vi, 323, 330 *seq.*  
offers to betray her father's stronghold to Shápúr, vi, 331  
makes the garrison drunk, vi, 333  
opens the gate to Shápúr, vi, 333

- Málíka, goes to Shápúr's camp, vi, 333
- Mamigonian, Armenian family, viii, 188
- Mámún, Khalífa, i, 14; vii, 382, 430
- Man, the First (Gaiúmart *q.v.*), i, 5  
on the nature of, 139, i, 104  
of Sigz (Rustam), ii, 100 and *note*
- Man, weight, i, 290 and *note*; viii, 148 and *note*, 314, 399
- Manáchihr, i, 206 *note*
- Manda, nomads, i, 18  
confused with the Madá (Medes), i, 18; vi, 194  
empire of the = empire of the Medes, ii, 191
- Mandane, daughter of Astyages, ii, 190  
= Farangís in legend, ii, 191
- Mandanes (Dandamis, Kait, Kaihan, Kand, Kaid *q.v.*), vi, 61  
Onesicritus and, vi, 61  
identical with Kaid, vi, 62
- Máni, heresiarch, 163, ii, 19 *note*; v, 118 and *note*; vi, 307; vii, 188  
account of, vi, 327  
-gate, vi, 327, 359  
teaching of, vi, 328  
disputation of, with the high priest, vi, 358  
executed, vi, 359
- Manicheism, ii, 19 *note*
- Manízza, daughter of Afrásiyáb, 150, iii, 285, 295 *seq.*, 304, 308 *seq.*, 348, 349  
Bízhan and, Story of, 150, iii, 7, 12  
historical basis of, iii, 11  
Mohl on, iii, 285  
Firdausí on, iii, 287  
referred to, viii, 72  
sends her nurse to Bízhan, iii, 297  
invites Bízhan to visit her, iii, 298  
drugs Bízhan, iii, 299
- Manízza, wakes Bízhan in Afrásiyáb's palace, iii, 300  
holds revel with Bízhan, iii, 300  
disgraced, iii, 309  
made Bízhan's attendant, iii, 310  
referred to, iii, 318, 319  
hears of the arrival of Rustam's caravan, iii, 337  
interviews of, with Rustam, iii, 337, 342  
bears Rustam's ring to Bízhan, iii, 340  
kindles signal fire for Rustam, iii, 344  
receives gifts from Kai Khusráu, iii, 356
- Manshúr, Túránian hero, iii, 161, 165, 172, 182, 185, 199, 205, 210, 213, 226, 231, 241, 251, 256  
comes to the aid of Pírán, iii, 151  
hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
- Mansion of Gushtásp, Fire-temple, v, 75
- Mansúr bin Núh, Sámánid prince (A.D. 961—976), i, 20, 21 v, 21; vii, 5
- Manúshán, a king in Párs, iv, 146, 180, 191
- Mánúshfhar (Minúchihr), i, 338
- Mánwí, viii, 253
- Marathi, Scythian people, iv, 315
- Marchlord, ill-disposed, oppresses Rai, 174, viii, 366  
destroys gutters and cats, viii, 366  
recalled, viii, 368
- Marcian (Bátarún *q.v.*), viii, 41
- Marco Polo, Venetian traveller (A.D. 1254—1324), vi, 74
- Mardánsháh, (Yalán-sina *q.v.*), viii, 74, 76; ix, 5, 6  
son of, ix, 5, 6  
conspires against Khusráu Parwíz, ix, 6  
mutilation and execution of, ix, 6

- Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírfn, viii, 189, 191, 193, 196; ix, 39  
 execution of, ix, 7
- Mardás, father of Zakhák, Story of, 140, i, 135 *seq.*  
 murdered by Zakhák, i, 137
- Mardásas. *See* Mardánsháh.
- Mardwí, Túránian hero, iii, 77
- Mardwí, Persian official, viii, 21
- Mardwí, gardener, viii, 397
- Margh, city in Turkistán, i, 256; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 412, 421
- Mark, birth. *See* Birthmark.
- Marriage, next of kin (Khvaitúkdas), i, 60; ii, 189; v, 17
- Mars, planet, i, 72, 276, 332, 339; ii, 247, 407; iii, 110, 159, 178, 318, 332; vii, 92, 252, 418; viii, 395; ix, 73, 89
- Martyropolis, ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
- Márúspand, palace, ix, 11
- Márút, angel, iii, 286
- Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistán, 173, i, 45; ii, 101; v, 29, 260, 261, 263; vii, 174, 357; viii, 20, 93, 173, 336, 337, 346 *seq.*, 352, 356; ix, 70, 89, 116, 117
- early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
- as rhyme-word, vii, 88 *note*
- Khán reaches, vii, 88
- Bahrám Gúr marches on, vii, 89
- Ázád Sarv finds Búzurjmíhr at, vii, 283
- traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, ix, 70
- Yazdagird at, ix, 97, 116
- sage of, ix, 110
- apothegm of, ix, 110
- conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, ix, 117
- Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, ix, 120
- Marvell, quoted, viii, 399 *note*
- Marvrúd (Murgháb), river in Khurásán flowing into and forming the Marv oasis, ii, 228; iv, 255; viii, 92
- Mary, Maryam, mother of Jesus, viii, 276 *note*, 277 *note*
- Maryam, daughter of Caesar, 173, 174, viii, 188, 192, 276 *note*, 278, 279, 373, 374, 380,  
 murder of, viii, 193, 389  
 referred to, viii, 255, 266, 269, 270, 371, 381, 389  
 counselled by Caesar, viii, 279, 280
- Niyátús put in charge of, viii, 280
- as peace-maker, viii, 310
- Mashad, city in Khurásán, ii, 189
- Máshya and Máshyói, the offspring of Gaiúmart, the first man, i, 117, 131
- Masius, Mount, viii, 41
- Massagetae, tribe, iii, 192
- Mas'údí, Arabic historian (died A.D. 956), v, 293; vi, 62, 63, 82, 193, 257, 313, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 280
- version of the death of Rustam by, v, 261
- genealogies of Pápak according to, vi, 200
- 'Book of Indication and Revision' by, vi, 252
- apologue of the owls by, vi, 310
- parentage of Yazdagird son of Shápúr according to, vi, 371
- account of the fortifications at Darband by, vii, 215
- origin of the game of nard according to, vii, 382
- origin of the game of chess according to, vii, 382  
 on Búzurjmíhr, viii, 71
- Maundeville, Sir John, vi, 13, 72
- Maurice, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 188

- Maurice, helps Khusrau Parwiz on terms, viii, 188  
murder of, viii, 193
- Mausil, Armenian prince, viii, 188, 189, 248, 282, 295  
entertains Bandwi, viii, 249  
Khusrau Parwiz and, viii, 283  
referred to, viii, 293 and *note*
- Má wara 'u'n-Nahr (Kuhistán *q.v.*, Transoxania), ii, 19, 199; iii, 151
- Maximian, Roman Emperor, viii, 188
- Mayam, place, iii, 40, 41, 53, 111
- Mayors of the palace, Oriental, i, 14
- Mazaga, Indian city, vi, 65  
taken by Alexander the Great, vi, 65
- Mázana (Mázandarán, *q.v.*), ii, 28
- Mázandarán, region lying between the Alburz range and the Caspian, 143, i, 4, 5, 12, 253, 279, 290, 294, 296, 298, 319, 323, 339, 378; ii, 25 *seq.*, 33, 34, 36 *seq.*, 45, 55, 60 *seq.*, 66 *seq.*, 75, 76, 78, 81, 93, 105, 139, 143 *seq.*, 293; iii, 144, 167, 207, 215; 232, 243, 256, 260, 324, 330; iv, 86, 136, 296, 299; v, 116, 117, 203, 207, 220; vi, 373; vii, 215; viii, 48; ix, 74  
approach to, from Irán, ii, 28  
description of, ii, 27  
king of, 143, ii, 39, 43, 54, 62 *seq.*  
interview of, with Rustam, ii, 67  
fight of, with Rustam, ii, 73  
transforms himself into a rock, ii, 74  
death of, ii, 75
- Mázandaránian, a native of, or pertaining to, Mázandarán, iii, 320
- Mazda, Ahura. *See* Ahura.
- Mazdak, heresiarch, 166, i, 63; vii, 184, 185  
disputation of, with Núshírwán, vii, 188, 206 *seq.*  
account of, vii, 188, 201  
becomes chief minister to Kubád, vii, 201  
influence of, over Kubád, vii, 201  
parable of, to Kubád in time of drought, vii, 201  
practical application of Kubád's reply by, vii, 202  
converts Kubád, vii, 204  
preaching and practice of, vii, 204  
attempt of, to convert Núshírwán, vii, 205  
Kubád decides against, vii, 208  
executed with his followers by Núshírwán, vii, 208
- Mazdakism, vii, 184
- Mazdakites, vii, 184  
great assembly of, vii, 205  
massacre of, vii, 185, 208
- Mebodes. *See* Mahbúd.
- Mecca, city, v, 31, 166; vi, 120; ix, 69  
Sikandar's visit to, vi, 64, 119 *seq.*  
account of, vi, 64
- Medea, land of, i, 57
- Mede, Medes (Madá), Aryan people, i, 7, 10, 17, 56, 58, 72; vi, 194, 203  
account of, i, 9  
confused with the Manda (nomads), i, 18; vi, 194  
empire of the=empire of the Manda, i, 17; ii, 191
- Media, iv, 315; vi, 31; vii, 6; Magna, vi, 201, 203, 256  
vii, 214
- Median, vi, 195
- Median, language (Zend), i, 64 *seq.*  
empire, ii, 9; vi, 194
- Mediterranean, the, vi, 294

- Megara, city in Greece, vi, 323  
*note*  
 legend concerning, vi, 323  
*note*
- Megasthenes, Greek writer,  
*temp.* Alexander the  
 Great, vi, 68
- Meherdates (Mílád), Parthian  
 prince, iii, 10 *seq.*
- Memphis, Egyptian city, vi, 82  
 corpse of Alexander the  
 Great taken to, vi, 82
- Merchant, a, 164  
 entertains and displeases  
 Bahrám Gúr, vii, 39  
 made the slave of his own  
 apprentice, vii, 42
- Merchants, Iránian, made acces-  
 sories to Bahrám Gúr's  
 flight from Hind, vii, 133,  
 134
- Mercury, planet, i, 72; iii, 159,  
 318; v, 243; vi, 171, 224;  
 viii, 299, 395; ix, 73
- Meroe, island and city of, vi, 13,  
 65
- Meru, mythical mountain, iv, 139
- Mesopotamia, vi, 30, 294, 321  
 Arab invasions of, iii, 14  
 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
- Mesopotamian desert, vi, 322
- Messiah, the, viii, 267
- Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of  
 Ardashír, son of Shírwí, in  
 Arabic Tabarí, ix, 43  
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr, month and day, i, 88, 89,  
 174, 175, 232; vi, 24, 33,  
 55
- Mihr, feast, ix, 40
- Mihr, sacred Fire. *See* Mihr  
 Barzín.
- Mihr Ázar, priest, vii, 188, 206  
 assists Núshírwán in his  
 disputation with Mazdak,  
 vii, 206
- Mihr Barzín, sacred Fire and  
 Fire-temple, vi, 201, 212  
 and *note*  
 established by Gushtásp, v,  
 34
- Mihr Barzín, Iránian warrior,  
*temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihr Bídád, Iránian magnate,  
 vii, 21  
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii,  
 22
- Mihr 'Hasis, minister of Ardashír,  
 son of Shírwí, in Persian  
 Tabarí, ix, 43  
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr Hurmuzd, Iránian noble,  
 175, viii, 196; ix, 34  
 account of, ix, 5  
 referred to, ix, 6, 33  
 conspires against Khusrau  
 Parwíz, ix, 6  
 put to death, ix, 7  
 described, ix, 33
- Mihr-i-Núsh, second son of  
 Asfandiyár, ii, 3; v, 80,  
 283  
 slain by Farámarz, v, 227  
 death of, reported to Asfan-  
 diyár by Bahman, v, 227  
 corpse of, sent to Gush-  
 tásp, v, 232
- Mihr-i-Núsh, Persian sage, vii,  
 270  
 quoted, vii, 270
- Mihr-i-Núsh, ix, 103  
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-  
 dagird, ix, 103
- Mihr Narsí, chief minister of  
 Bahrám Gúr and of his  
 son Yazdagird, vii, 4, 153  
 sons of, vii, 4
- Mihr Pírúz, Iránian warrior,  
*temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihráb, king of Kábul, 141, 142,  
 i, 234, 361; ii, 12, 14, 18, 21  
 visited by Zál, i, 256  
 tributary to Sám, i, 256  
 daughter of (Rúdába), i, 257,  
 v, 203  
 praises Zál to Síndukht, i,  
 260  
 hears from Síndukht of the  
 loves of Zál and Rúdába,  
 i, 284  
 reproaches Rúdába, i, 289  
 Sám sent against, i, 292

- Mihráb, hears of Sám's coming, i, 292, 299  
 Minúchihr's assent to Zál's marriage, i, 314  
 felicitates Sindukht, i, 315  
 Sindukht and, prepare to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 314  
 entertain Sám and Zál, i, 317  
 visit Sám, i, 319  
 hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323  
 goes with Zál and Rustam to meet Sám, i, 324  
 parleys with Shamásás and Khazarwán to gain time, i, 358  
 writes to summon Zál, i, 359
- Mihrak, Tribal King, 161, vi, 3, 199, 237, 238, 257, 267, 268, 270, 272, 273; vii, 185, 192  
 =Mithrak, vi, 206  
 slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 241  
 daughter of, 161, vi, 3, 241, 256, 257, 268 *seq.*, 272  
 escapes, vi, 241, 256, 268  
 referred to in Kaid's prophecy, vi, 267  
 discovered by Shápúr, vi, 268 *seq.*  
 informs Shápúr of her birth, vi, 270  
 marries Shápúr, vi, 270  
 birth of her son Urmuzd, vi, 271  
 =Mithrak=Mádik=Arda-wán (?), vi, 256  
 importance of, in legend, vi, 257, 267; viii, 72, 73
- Mihrak, servant of Núshírwán, viii, 18 19
- Mihrán, Indian sage, 159, vi, 91, 97  
 consulted by Kaid about his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*  
 interprets Kaid's dreams, vi, 94 *seq.*
- Mihrán, family, vii, 156  
 importance of, viii, 72, 73  
 proverb on, vii, 185  
 account of, vii, 185  
 rivalry of, with family of Káran, vii, 185  
 men of mark among the, vii, 186, 187; viii, 74
- Mihrán, treasurer to Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 387
- Mihrán, Íránian general, vii, 251  
 commands the centre of Núshírwán's host, vii, 251
- Mihrán, archscribe, viii, 76  
 sent with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 106  
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 122 and *note*  
 seeks refuge, viii, 123  
 congratulates Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 129  
 takes counsel with Kharrád, viii, 159  
 flees from Balkh and is retaken, viii, 159  
 pardoned by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 160  
 referred to, viii, 163  
 speech of, viii, 166
- Mihrán Sitád, Íránian high priest and envoy, *temp.* Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 350, 361, 363; viii, 96, 100  
 attempt of the Khán to outwit, vii, 352  
 takes charge of the Khán's daughter, vii, 354  
 receives gifts from the Khán, vii, 356  
 welcomed on his return, vii, 357  
 embassy of, referred to, viii, 72, 97  
 sent for by Hurmuzd, viii, 97  
 tells of prophecy about Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 98, 216  
 death of, viii, 99
- Mihrán Sitád, merchant, entertains Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 251

- Mihrás, father of Ilyás ruler of Khazar, iv, 352
- Mihrás, Caesar's envoy, vii, 261  
negotiates peace with Núsh-irwán, vii, 261
- Mihrdát. *See* Meherdates.
- Mihrgán, feast, i, 175 and *note*, iv, 313; vi, 230 and *note*, 245
- Mihrmās, vi, 200
- Mil as rhyme word, i, 75
- Milád, Íránian hero, iii, 11, 12, 25, 29, 145, 274, 289, 293, 345; iv, 83, 147, 191; vi, 394; viii, 72, 211  
import of word, viii, 73  
customs of, viii, 216
- Milád (Taxila), Indian city, vi, 102, 109, 110  
situation of, vi, 62  
Sikandar approaches, vi, 98
- Military obsequies, *temp.* Núshirwán, vii, 252
- Milk, bane of, vii, 125 and *note*, 324  
easily "turned," vii, 317  
poisoned by the Evil Eye, vii, 320 *seq.*, 324, 325
- Mill, 176, ix, 89, 116
- Miller, a, daughters of, 164  
becomes Bahrám Gúr's father-in-law, vii, 34  
dignified by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 34
- Miller, a, 176, ix, 70  
Yazdagird and, ix, 99  
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, ix, 100  
informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, ix, 101  
bidden to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107  
fling corpse into stream, ix, 108
- Mingrelia, province on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215
- Minister, piece in chess. *See* Wazír.
- Minos, king of Crete, vi, 323 *note*  
legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Minú, viii, 253 and *note*
- Minúchihir, Sháh, 140-142, i, 42, 90, 91, 209 *seq.*, 274, 275, 319, 337, 339 *seq.*, 348, 363; ii, 19, 29, 33, 36, 37, 302, 318, 400; iii, 9, 30, 87, 115; iv, 10, 65, 69, 70, 76, 136, 206, 283, 285, 298; v, 12, 174, 252, 284; vi, 200, 353; viii, 219, 223, 392; ix, 103  
birth of, i, 206  
etymology of, i, 206 and *note*, 234 and *note*  
Faridún's gifts to, i, 207  
goes to fight Salm and Túr, i, 216  
makes proclamation to the host, i, 218  
contends against Salm and Túr, i, 219  
prepares for a night-surprise, i, 220  
sends Túr's head to Faridún, i, 222  
sends Káran to take the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 *seq.*  
hears of Káran's success, i, 225  
defeats and slays Karkwí, i, 225 *seq.*  
pursues and slays Salm, i, 227  
pardons Salm's troops, i, 229  
sends Salm's head and a letter to Faridún, i, 229  
return of, in triumph, i, 230  
welcomed by Faridún, i, 230  
confided to Sám by Faridún, i, 231  
enthroned by Faridún, i, 232  
mourning of, for, and burial of, Faridún, i, 233  
Reign of, 141, i, 234 *seq.*  
Note on, i, 234 *seq.*  
accession and inaugural address of, i, 237  
Sám's address to, i, 238

Minúchihr, hears of Sám's finding of Zál, i, 248  
 sons of, i, 248  
 sends Naudar to congratulate Sám, i, 248  
 summons Sám and Zál to court, i, 249  
 Sám tells the story of his quest to, i, 250  
 Zál's horoscope taken by order of, i, 251  
 gifts of, to Sám, i, 251  
 hears of the case of Zál and Rúdába, i, 288  
 advises with the archimages, i, 288  
 welcomes Sám, i, 289  
 hears of Sám's campaign, i, 290  
 bids Sám destroy Mihráb and his belongings, i, 292  
 receives Zál well, i, 306  
 consults the astrologers as to Zál, i, 307  
 Zál proved by hard questions by order of, i, 308  
 Zál displays his accomplishment before, i, 311  
 gracious reply of, to Sám, i, 314  
 warned of his death by the astrologers, i, 335  
 counsels, and gives the throne to, Naudar, i, 335  
 dies, i, 336  
 Minúchihr, son of Árash, iv, 149  
 commands the troops from Khurásán, iv, 148  
 slays Kuhlá, iv, 181  
 commands the left, iv, 191  
 Mírin, Rúman chief, 154  
 asks Caesar's second daughter, Dilánjám, in marriage, iv, 333  
 bidden by Caesar to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 333  
 casts a horoscope, iv, 334  
 asks Híshwí to interest Gushtásp in his behalf, iv, 334

Mírin, provides Gushtásp with a steed and arms, iv, 336  
 goes with Gushtásp and Híshwí to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337  
 Híshwí and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339  
 informs Caesar that he has slain the wolf, iv, 341  
 marries Caesar's daughter, iv, 341  
 consulted by Ahran, iv, 342  
 refers Ahran to Híshwí, iv, 344  
 letter of, to Híshwí, iv, 344  
 Ahran and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349  
 Caesar's wrath with, iv, 351  
 sends a scornful message to Caesar, iv, 353  
 set to guard the baggage, iv, 355  
 Mír Khánd (Mirkhond), Persian historian (A.D. 1433-1498), v, 30; vi, 62, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 156, 159, 171, 183, 186; viii, 192  
 distich of, quoted, ix, 56  
 Miskál, measure of weight, vi, 24  
 and *note*, viii, 394  
 Misr (Egypt), 159, ii, 79, 80, 84, 94, 96, 143, 286; vi, 114, 115, 122, 181; viii, 381  
 king of *temp.* Kai Káuś, ii, 94, 95, 98  
 king of, defeated by Sikan-dar, vi, 37  
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121  
 invaded by Sikandar, vi, 37, 121  
 sea of, vi, 120  
 Sikandar stays a year in, vi, 121  
 Mithra, Mitra, god, i, 7  
 Mithradát. *See* Meherdates.  
 Mithrak, vi, 206  
 = Mihrak, vi, 206  
 = Mihrak = Mádík = Arda-wán (?), vi, 256

- Mithrates. *See* Meherdates.  
 Mithradates I, Parthian king, ii, 80  
 Modes of speech, viii, 30  
 Mohl, Jules, his edition and translation of the *Sháhnáma*, i, 76, 77; vi, 60  
   on the Story of Bízhan and Manízha, iii, 285, 286  
   the Worm, vi, 203  
   Wisdom-literature, vii, 280  
 Mong, Indian city, vi, 18  
 Monks, ix, 109  
   find and recover corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 109  
   lament over and entomb Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*  
   sentences of, over Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*  
   slain by Máhwí, ix, 113  
 Monophysite, viii, 195  
 Moola Firooz, i, 201 *note*  
 Moon, one of the seven planets, i, 72, viii, 395  
   on the nature of the, 139, i, 205  
   = *Túr*, i, 223  
   divided by Muhammad, viii, 42, 67  
 Moses, Hebrew law-giver, v, 294  
   Salt Fish and, legend of, vi, 77  
   Faith of, vi, 95  
 Moses of Chorene, Armenian historian (5th century A.D.), i, 72  
   account of *Zahhák* by, i, 144  
   *Rustam* by, i, 236  
 Mosul, city in Mesopotamia, vi, 322  
 Mountain, mountains, sanctity of, i, 118  
   of the Holy Questions, i, 62  
   —skirt (*Dáman-i-Kuh*), iii, 15, 91, 95  
   = *Rakhsh*, iii, 221, 251  
   Old man of the, v, 30  
   —sheep, personification of the divine Grace, vi, 201, 221. *See* *Ram*.  
 Mu'áwiya, Khalífa (A.D. 661-679), i, 12, 13  
 Múbid, i, 83  
 Mughíra, son of *Shu'ba*. *See* *Shu'ba Mughíra*, ix, 69  
 Muhammad, the Prophet (about A.D. 571-632), i, 13, 40, 41; ii, 337 *note*; vi, 65, 190, 292; viii, 42, 191; ix, 69, 81 *seq.*  
   on 'Alí, i, 12, 106  
   praise of, i, 106  
   quoted, i, 106, v, 166  
   reference of, to Alexander the Great in the *Kurán*, vi, 15, 77  
 Muhammad, birth of, vii, 213  
   *Núshírwán* and, 170, viii, 68  
   divides the Moon, viii, 42, 67  
   letter of, to *Khusrau Parwíz*, ix, 66  
   Flight of, referred to, ix, 122  
 Muhammad Kásim, Arab general, vi, 325  
 Muhammad Laskarí, friend of *Firdausí*, i, 99; iii, 286  
 Muhammad Mahdí, his edition of the *Sháhnáma*, i, 76  
 Muhammad, son of *Abdú'r-Razak*, i, 68, 99  
 Muhammadan, Muhammadans, vi, 78; viii, 73  
   elements in *Sháhnáma*, viii, 42  
   ethics respected, viii, 74  
 Mukaffá'. *See* *Ibn Mukaffá'*.  
 Múltán, city in the *Punjab*, vii, 140  
   monarch of, entertained by *Bahrám Gúr*, vii, 140  
 Mumasenni, tribe, i, 237  
 Munzir, al, dynasty of, i, 55  
 Munzir, prince of *Híra*, *temp.* Yazdagird son of *Shápúr* and *Bahrám Gúr*, 163, 164, vi, 372, 394, 406, 408; vii, 9  
   visits Yazdagird, vi, 377  
   monarch of *Yaman*, vi, 378

- Munzir, returns to Yaman with Bahrám, vi, 378  
 chooses nurses for Bahrám, vi, 378  
 dismisses Bahrám's tutors, vi, 380  
 provides Bahrám Gúr with steeds, vi, 380  
 provides Bahrám Gúr with slave-girls, vi, 381  
 goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384  
 sends a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting to Yazdagird, vi, 385  
 sends Bahrám Gúr with Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386  
 receives a letter from Yazdagird, vi, 387  
 counsels and sends Bahrám Gúr a slave-girl and presents, vi, 388  
 welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his return, vi, 390  
 supports Bahrám Gúr's claim to the throne, vi, 396 *seq.*  
 invades Írán, vi, 397  
 interview of, with Jawánwí, vi, 398 *seq.*  
 refers Jawánwí to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 398  
 advises Bahrám Gúr to negotiate with the Íránians, vi, 401, 404  
 intercedes with Bahrám Gúr for the Íránians, vii, 10  
 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
- Munzir, son of Nu'mán, prince of Híra, *temp.* Núshírwán, 167, vii, 244 *seq.*  
 protected by Núshírwán, vii, 217  
 war of, with Hárith bin Jabala, vii, 217  
 sent by Núshírwán to invade Róm, vii, 246
- Murdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328
- Músh, town west of Lake Ván, viii, 188
- Mushkináb, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*  
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
- Mushkinak, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*  
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
- Muslim, ix, 85
- Mutawakkil, Khalífa (A.D. 847-861), i, 14  
 Cypress of Kishmar destroyed by, v, 28
- Mutilation, instances of, vi, 261, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
- Mytilene, Chares of, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, ii, 10; vi, 61  
 quoted, iv, 314

## N

- NABARZANES, Persian general, vi, 32  
 pardoned by Alexander the Great, vi, 32
- Nádir, Sháh, iii, 14
- Nadr son of Hárith, v, 166  
 recites the story of Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 166  
 fate of, v, 166
- Nahávand, city, south of Hamadán, i, 12; ix, 68, 69  
 Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, ix, 68
- Battle of, i, 12; ix, 69
- Náhid (Katáyún, *q.v.*)
- Náhid (Halai, Olympias?), daughter of Failakús and mother of Sikandar, 159, vi, 24 *seq.*, and *note*  
 married to Dáráb, vi, 25  
 troubled by offensive breath, vi, 26  
 cured, but repudiated by Dáráb, vi, 26  
 returns to Failakús and gives birth to Sikandar, vi, 26

- Náhid, visits Dilárái and Rúshanak, vi, 89  
 referred to, vi, 187
- Náhid, the planet Venus, vi, 214
- Nahrawán, city near Baghdád, east of the Tigris; also a canal on the eastern bank of that river, quitting it about 100 miles above, and rejoining it about 100 miles below, Baghdád, vii, 141; viii, 187, 204, 206, 231  
 bridge of, viii, 223, 228 *seq.*  
 broken down by Khusráw Parwiz, viii, 229
- Naishapur. *See* Nishápúr.
- Naitkún (Antigonos), minister of Sikandar, name of, assumed by Sikandar, vi, 66, 125 *seq.*  
 personates Sikandar, vi, 125 *seq.*
- Kaidrúsh and his wife brought before, -vi, 126  
 sentenced to death by, vi, 126  
 pardoned by, vi, 126  
 = Sikandar, vi, 131, 133, 134, 141
- Nakula, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138  
 referred to, iv, 139
- Names, use of, in sympathetic magic, i, 8, 177, 179  
 secret and public, viii, 372 and *note*
- Námkhást, Túránian hero, v, 24, 26  
 goes as envoy to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40  
 returns with Gushtásp's answer, v, 44  
 given command of the centre, v, 56  
 worsted by Girámí, v, 59
- Napata, city in Nubia, vi, 65
- Naphtha, 159, i, 56  
 black, iv, 208, 209  
 use of, in sieges, iv, 208, 209
- Naphtha, Sikandar's iron steeds filled with, 159, vi, 115  
 Fúr's elephants and troops routed by the use of, vi, 116  
 used to vitrify Sikandar's barrier, vi, 165
- Nard, game of, 169, viii, 371  
 invention of, vii, 280, 381, 382, 389  
 sent by Núshirwán to the Rája of Hind, vii, 5, 381  
 meaning of, vii, 381  
 symbolism of, vii, 381  
 Mas'údi on, vii, 382  
 described, vii, 389
- Narimán, Iránian hero, father of Sám and great-grandfather of Rustam, i, 42, 174, 207, 212, 239, 299, 333, 344; ii, 4, 49, 115, 119, 125, 126, 162, 354; iii, 17, 35; v, 196, 199, 202, 242, 262, 264, 266, 289  
 death of, described, i, 329
- Narimanau, epithet of Keresáspa, i, 172, 174
- Narmpái, name of a tribe, 160, ii, 55 and *note*, 63, 64; vi, 71 and *note*  
 Sikandar and, vi, 150
- Narses (Narsí, son of Bahrám, *q.v.*), Sásánian king
- Narses, Exarch, treatment of, by Empress Sophia, viii, 76
- Narses, general, viii, 189
- Narsí, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
- Narsí, son of Bahrám, Sháh (Narses), 162, vi, 3, 313, 316, 325, 330, 331, 337; vii, 359  
 Reign of, vi, 315 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 315  
 title of, vi, 315  
 inaugural address of, vi, 315  
 daughter of, 162. *See* Núsha.
- Narsí, brother of Bahrám Gúr, 165, vi, 3; vii, 4, 95, 100

- Narsí, made captain of the host,  
vii, 11  
regent, vii, 86  
fails to persuade the Írán-  
ians to resist the Khán,  
vii, 87  
Bahráh Gúr's letter to, vii,  
92  
writes to Bahráh Gúr on  
behalf of the Íránians, vii,  
94  
goes with the chiefs to wel-  
come Bahráh Gúr, vii, 96  
made ruler of Khurásán,  
vii, 99  
welcomes his brother on his  
return from Hind, vii, 137  
Nárwan, forest of, near Tammísha  
*q.v.* i, 217, 218; ii, 341;  
viii, 356, 360, 377; ix, 86  
Nasíbín (Nisibis, *q.v.*), vi, 326  
cession of, vi, 355  
inhabitants of, refuse to  
submit to Shápúr, vi, 356  
taken by Shápúr, vi, 356  
Násiru'd-Dín, title of Subuk-  
tigin, *q.v.*, i, 21, 100, 114  
Nasr, Amír, brother of Sultán  
Mahmúd, i, 21; vi, 196  
account of, i, 100  
referred to, i, 114  
praise of, i, 114; vi, 207  
Nasr, Arab chief, vi, 65  
appeals to Sikandar for  
help, vi, 120  
made ruler of Mecca, vi, 121  
Nasr, son of Ahmad, Sámánid,  
vii, 340  
patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383  
Nastár, Cæsar's master of the  
herds, iv, 325  
refuses to employ Gushtásp,  
iv, 326  
Nastíhan, Túránian hero, son of  
Wísa and brother of  
Pírán, 146, 151, i, 92; ii,  
264; iii, 79, 198, 210, 231,  
252; iv, 53 *seq.*, 61, 75,  
77  
pursues Kai Khusrau, ii,  
377 *seq.*  
Nastíhan, slain by Bízhan, iv,  
54  
Nastúh, Íránian hero, ii, 4; iii,  
46; iv, 148  
Nastúh, Túránian hero, iv, 156  
Nastúh, son of Míhrán Sitád, 173,  
viii, 225, 303  
advises Hurmuzd, viii, 96  
released by Bahráh Chú-  
bína, viii, 306  
Nastúr (Basta-vairi, Bastvár),  
son of Zarír, 155, v, 12,  
25, 26  
exploits of, foretold by  
Jámásp, v, 50  
given command of the rear,  
v, 55  
fights victoriously, v, 60  
goes in search of Zarír, v, 67  
finds Zarír's corpse and  
laments over it, v, 67  
exhorts Gushtásp to avenge  
Zarír, v, 68  
goes forth with Gushtásp's  
steed and armour, v, 69  
challenges Bídírafsh, v, 69  
fights with Bídírafsh, v, 70  
attacks, with Asfandiyár and  
Núsh Ázar, the Túrán-  
ians, v, 71  
leads the host home, is  
given a command, and  
invades Túrán, v, 74  
stationed on the Íránian  
left, v, 94  
commands the right, v, 109  
Nastúr, son of Shírín and  
Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 39  
Nature-worship, of the Aryans,  
i, 7, 51  
Nau-Ardshír = Nard, vii, 381  
Naubahár, Fire-temple at Balkh,  
31  
Luhrásp retires to, v, 31  
Naudar, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91,  
369; ii, 20, 36, 70, 153,  
336, 400, 404; iii, 8, 24,  
39, 50, 57, 67, 86, 112,  
123, 132, 177, 187, 215,  
257, 289, 294, 327; iv,  
13, 61, 70, 157, 167, 178,

Naudar—*cont.*

- 191, 193, 206, 237, 254,  
262, 267; vii, 37, 171;  
viii, 223, 242  
embassies of, to Sâm, i, 248,  
288  
returns with Sâm to court, i,  
289  
counselled by Minúchihr and  
appointed his successor, i,  
335  
laments for Minúchihr, i,  
336  
Reign of, 142, i, 337 *seq.*  
  Note on, i, 337  
  accession of, i, 339  
  evil rule of, i, 339  
  revolts against, i, 339  
  appeals to Sâm, i, 339  
  the chiefs reconciled to,  
    by Sâm, i, 341  
  rewards Sâm, i, 342  
  marches against Afrásiyáb  
    to Dahistán, i, 345  
  battles of, with Afrásiyáb,  
    i, 348 *seq.*  
  takes counsel with Káran,  
    i, 349  
  defeated, i, 350, 353  
  sends Tús and Gustaham  
    to conduct the Persian  
    women to Alburz, i, 351  
  beleaguered in Dahistán, i,  
    353  
  escapes from Dahistán, i,  
    355  
  pursued and taken by Afrá-  
    siyáb, i, 355  
  slain, i, 363  
  the Iránians bewail, i, 364  
Naurúz, Persian New-year's day  
  when the sun enters Aries,  
  vi, 33, 55, 273, 389; viii,  
  216  
Nawand, place in Khurásán on  
  the Binalúd Kuh (?), ii,  
  107  
Náztáb, a miller's daughter, vii,  
  32 and *note*  
  taken to wife by Bahrám  
  Gúr, vii, 33

- Nearchus, admiral of Alexander  
  the Great, vi, 12, 61, 70  
  Ichthyophagi, account of  
  by, quoted by Arrian, vi,  
  69, 70  
Nectanebus II (Nekht-neb-f),  
  the last Pharaoh  
  personates Amen-Ra and  
  becomes the legendary  
  father of Alexander the  
  Great, vi, 16  
  story of, vi, 18 and *note*  
Need, personification of. *See*  
  Greed.  
Negroes, the, described, vi, 73,  
  157  
  cause frost and snow to  
  harm Sikandar, vi, 156,  
  157  
Nekht-neb-f. *See* Nectanebus.  
Nereis. *See* Kalé.  
Nero, Roman emperor (A.D. 54-  
  68), vii, 279  
Néryósang, ii, 82  
Nestorian, Nestorians, viii, 195  
  Metropolitan, vii, 219  
  Patriarch, vii, 219  
New Year, Persian, beginning of,  
  i, 74, 88  
  Feast of (Naurúz, New  
  Year's Day), i, 74, 274;  
  vii, 94, 200  
  origin of, i, 133  
Nicaea, Indian city, vi, 18  
Nicephorium (Callinicus, Kálni-  
  yús *q.v.*, Warigh, Rakka),  
  viii, 188  
Nicolaus of Damascus, Greek  
  historian *temp.* Augustus,  
  vi, 195  
Nil, as rhyme-word, i, 75  
Nile, i, 40, 71, 114, 297; ii, 96,  
  153, 217, 310, 402; iii,  
  38, 41, 58, 208, 224, 225;  
  iv, 145 *seq.*, 180, 333; v,  
  176, 188, 191, 245; vi, 42,  
  169, 171, 269; vii, 48,  
  250, 344, 416; viii, 126,  
  284, 293, 294; ix, 98  
Blue, vi, 65  
mistaken for Indus, vi, 68

- Nímruz = Sístán = Zábulistán, <sup>1</sup> i, 252, 264, 346, 357; ii, 21, 34, 69, 77, 80, 84, 338, 395; iii, 17, 35, 319; iv, 156, 188; v, 85, 248, 288; vii, 327; viii, 196, 284; ix, 5, 6  
 confirmed to Rustam by Kai Khusrau, iv, 297  
 Zál by Luhrásp, iv, 312  
 Sikandar marches to, vi, 175  
 satrapy of, ix, 69
- Nineveh, viii, 193  
 fall of, i, 10  
 kings of, that attacked Írán, i, 10  
 battle near, viii, 194
- Ninus, mythical founder of Nineveh, v, 292, 293
- Ninyas, son of Ninus, v, 293
- Niris, salt lake in Párs, vi, 17  
 referred to, vi, 21
- Nisá, city (Muhammadábád?) in Khurásán or town in Kirmán, vii, 89; viii, 19
- Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, <sup>2</sup> i, 36, 45; ii, 101; iv, 255; v, 28 *seq.*, 291; vi, 298; viii, 173; ix, 95
- Nisibis (Nasibín q.v.), city in northern Mesopotamia, i, 374  
 sieges of, i, 374, viii, 41  
 peace of, vi, 254  
 cession of, by Jovian, vi, 326  
 by Khusrau Parwíz (?), viii, 188
- Nisus and Scylla, story of, vi, 323 *note*
- Nitetis, vi, 16
- Nívzár, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26  
 death of, foretold by Jám-ásp, v, 50  
 slain, v, 60
- Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 173, viii, 189, 281, 289; ix, 23  
 brother of Caesar, viii, 280, 310  
 put in charge of Maryam, viii, 280  
 welcomed by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 280  
 wroth with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 290  
 watches fight between Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 297  
 entertained at banquet by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 309  
 quarrel of, with Bandwí, viii, 309  
 threat of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 310  
 reconciled to Bandwí, viii, 311  
 returns to Rúm, viii, 312
- Nizámi, Persian poet, viii, 192
- Nizámi-i-'Arúdí, Persian writer (12th century A.D.), i, 23  
 account of Firdausí by, i, 38 *seq.*, 45, 46
- Nöldeke, Professor, v, 20, 21, 282; vi, 198 *note*, 199 and *note*, 253, 313, 372; viii, 71, 188  
 on the dív Akwán, iii, 271  
 quoted, v, 118  
 treatise of, on the Alexander Romance, *etc.*, vi, 14 and *note*  
 on the Story of the Worm, vi, 203, 205, 206  
 on Haftwád, vi, 206  
 on the Gipsies, vii, 6  
 on Súfarai, vii, 171, 185  
 on Wisdom-literature, vii, 281

<sup>1</sup> Properly speaking, Zábulistán is the name of the hilly country about the upper waters of the Helmund, while Nímruz and Sístán are synonymous names for the low lying lands into which its waters descend, but Firdausí does not seem to make any such distinction.

<sup>2</sup> The city has suffered much in the past from the ravages of war and earthquake and has been rebuilt several times on slightly varying sites.

- Nöldeke, on Romance of Bahráman Chúbina, viii, 73
- North, Sir Thomas (A.D. 1535-1603 ?), vii, 383  
version of the Fables of Bidpai by, vii, 383
- Northman, the, vi, 19  
found the Russian empire, vi, 19
- Note on Pronunciation, preceding text in each volume
- Nubia, vi, 65
- Núh bin Nasr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 942-954), vii, 5
- Núh II. bin Mansúr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 976-997), i, 21, 36; v, 21
- Nu'mán, prince of Híra, 163, 164, vi, 372, 396, 404  
visits Yazdagird, vi, 377  
goes to the chase with Bahráman Gúr, vi, 384  
goes to the Persian court with Bahráman Gúr, vi, 386  
returns to Yaman with letters and presents, vi, 387  
welcomes Bahráman Gúr on his revisiting Yaman, vi, 390  
invades Írán, vi, 397  
rewarded by Bahráman Gúr, vii, 10
- Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, viii, 188; ix, 5  
put to death, viii, 190
- Nu'mán, Arab general, ix, 68  
sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68  
defeats Pírózán at Nahávand, ix, 68  
slain, ix, 69
- Nurse, Maníza's, iii, 297  
interview of, with Bizhan, iii, 297
- Núsha (Dukhtnúsh), daughter of Narsí, 162, vi, 3, 324, 331  
carried off by the Arabs, vi, 323, 330
- Núsh Ázar, Fire-temple at Balkh, v, 92 *note*, 173, 241, 255  
burnt by the Turkmans, v, 93
- Núsh Ázar, youngest son of Asfandiyár, ii, 3, v, 166, 283, 285  
attacks, with Nastúr and Asfandiyár, the Túránian host, v, 71  
builder of a Fire-temple, v, 81  
with Asfandiyár at Gumbadán, v, 98  
informs Asfandiyár of Jámásp's arrival, v, 98, 99  
accompanies Asfandiyár from Gumbadán, v, 103  
slays Turkhán, v, 151  
wrangles with Zawára, v, 226  
slays Alwá, v, 226  
slain by Zawára, v, 227  
death of, reported to Asfandiyár by Bahman, v, 227  
corpse of, sent to Gushtásp, v, 232
- Núshírwán (Kisrá, Chosroes I), Sháh, 166-170, i, 27, 42; v, 260; vi, 3, 201; vii, 4, 199, 220, 273 *seq.*, 279 *seq.*, 320; viii, 3 *seq.*, 71, 72, 86 *seq.*, 98, 129, 169, 198, 200, 205, 209, 300, 312, 313, 377; ix, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119  
collector of Íránian tradition, i, 67  
quoted, vi, 208, 209 and *note*  
origin of name, vii, 185, 211 and *note*  
birth of, stories of, vii, 186, 197 *seq.*  
assistants of, against Mazdak, vii, 188, 206  
upbringing of, vii, 200  
Mazdak's attempt to convert, vii, 205  
disputation of, with Mazdak, vii, 206 *seq.*

Núshírwán, Kubád decides in favour of, vii, 208  
 executes Mazdak and his followers, vii, 208  
 Kubád's testament in favour of vii, 210, 316  
 Reign of, 167, vii, 212 *seq.*  
 Notes on, vii, 212 *seq.*, 279  
*seq.*, 316 *seq.*, 380 *seq.*, viii, 3 *seq.*, 41 *seq.*  
 Roman Emperors contemporary with, vii, 212  
 historical events of reign of, in the Sháhnáma, vii, 213  
 marriage of, with the daughter of the Khán vii, 347, *seq.*  
 referred to, viii, 72, 97 *seq.*  
 wars of, with Róm, vii, 213, 217  
 first campaign of, vii, 218, 249  
 conspiracy against, vii, 214, 316  
 division of empire by, vii, 214, 224; ix, 69  
 bargains of, with Justinian, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*  
 taxation reformed by, vii, 215, 224  
 wall of, in the Caucasus, 167, i, 16; vii, 215, 239  
 Mas'údf's account of, vii, 215  
 dealings of, with the Aláns, vii, 216  
 Glán, vii, 216  
 Balúchís, vii, 217  
 Munzir supported by, vii, 217, 244  
 and consequent war with Róm, vii, 217, 244  
 jealous of Justinian's successes in the West, vii, 217  
 promises to rule justly, vii, 221 *seq.*  
 attends muster at the insistence of Bábak, vii, 231  
 approves of Bábak's conduct, vii, 232

Núshírwán, method of, in levying troops, vii, 233  
 writes to Caesar on Munzir's behalf, vii, 245  
 supplies Munzir with troops for the invasion of Róm, vii, 246  
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, vii, 250  
 disposition of host by, vii, 251  
 addresses his troops, vii, 251  
 proclamations of, vii, 252, 365  
 burial of dead soldiers by, vii, 252  
 policy of, with enemies, vii, 253  
 takes Shúráb, vii, 254  
 Áráyish-i-Róm, vii, 255  
 Caesar's treasures, vii, 255, 258  
 defeats Farfúriús, vii, 256  
 takes Antákiya, vii, 258  
 disposes of the Róman captives, vii, 259, 327  
 Róman cordwainer and, vii, 260  
 envoy from Caesar comes to, vii, 261  
 grants peace to Caesar, vii, 262  
 appoints Shírwí to receive the Róman tribute, vii, 262  
 Christian wife of, vii, 263  
 mother of Núshzád, vii, 263, 274 *seq.*  
 helps Núshzád, vii, 266  
 laments for Núshzád, vii, 276  
 imprisons Núshzád, vii, 264  
 illness and reported death of, vii, 264, 265  
 hears of Núshzád's revolt, vii, 266  
 instructs Rám Barzín how to act, vii, 267 *seq.*  
 Seven Banquets of 168, vii, 280, 287 *seq.*  
 possible origin of, vii, 289

Núshírwán, Seven Banquets of, Búzurjmíhr's discourses at, vii, 287 *seq.*  
 dream of, vii, 282  
 consults the archmagi, vii, 282  
 seeks for a dream-interpreter, vii, 282  
 dream of, interpreted by Búzurjmíhr, vii, 284  
 rewards and honours Búzurjmíhr, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315  
 relations of, with Singibú, vii, 317  
 the Haitálíans, vii, 317  
 with Mahbúd and his sons, vii, 319 *seq.*  
 suspects Zúrán, vii, 324  
 greatness of, vii, 327  
 buildings of, vii, 327  
 embassy of Khán to, vii, 329  
 consults the chiefs as to Faghánísh, the Khán, and the Haitálíans, vii, 333  
 reply of chiefs to, vii, 334  
 rejoinder of, to chiefs, vii, 336  
 prepares for war with the Khán, vii, 337  
 writes to his chiefs, the Khán, and Faghánísh, vii, 337  
 marches from Madá'in, vii, 337  
 goes to Gurgán, vii, 337  
 receives embassy from the Khán, vii, 339  
 holds a court, vii, 340  
 displays his prowess before the assembly, vii, 341  
 dismisses the Khán's envoy with a letter, vii, 344  
 Khán's offer of affinity to, vii, 347  
 reply of, vii, 349  
 occupies territory evacuated by the Khán, vii, 358  
 Haitálíans and others bring gifts to, vii, 360, 362  
 gives praise to God, vii, 361

Núshírwán, receives the tribute from Rúm, vii, 362  
 goes to the temple of Ázar-gashasp, vii, 363  
 greatness of, vii, 364  
 questions Búzurjmíhr, vii, 367 *seq.*  
 receives the game of chess from Hind, vii, 380, 385  
 Rája of Hind's embassy to, vii, 384  
 rewards Búzurjmíhr for discovering how to play chess, vii, 388  
 sends Búzurjmíhr with presents and the game of nard to Hind, vii, 390  
 proposes wager with the Rája, vii, 391  
 welcomes Búzurjmíhr on his return from Hind, vii, 393  
 acquires the Book of Kalíla and Dimna, vii, 423 *seq.*  
 sends gifts to the Rája, vii, 425  
 rewards Barzwí, vii, 429  
 precautions of, as to successor, viii, 3  
 goes hunting with Búzurjmíhr, viii, 4  
 suspects and disgraces Búzurjmíhr, viii, 5  
 treats Búzurjmíhr with increasing vigour, viii, 7, 8  
 reconciled to Búzurjmíhr, viii, 9  
 questioned by archimages, viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*  
 gives judgment against his own son, viii, 16  
 chief cook of, aggrieved, viii, 18  
 counsels Hurmuzd, viii, 25 *seq.*  
 writes to console Caesar's son and successor, viii, 43  
 wroth at answer received, viii, 45  
 invades Rúm, viii, 46

Núshírwán, success of, viii, 47  
 checked, viii, 47  
 in want of money, viii, 47  
 takes counsel with Búzurj-  
 mihr, viii, 47  
 refuses advances from a  
 shoemaker, viii, 50, 71  
 high esteem of, for scribes,  
 viii, 50  
 grants peace to, and takes  
 tribute from, the Rûmans,  
 viii, 52  
 returns to Taisafûn, viii, 53  
 sons of, viii, 56, 63  
 instructs Búzurjmihr to  
 prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56  
*seq.*  
 testament of, in favour of,  
 and last counsels to,  
 Hurmuzd, viii, 61 *seq.*; ix,  
 22  
 directions of, as to inter-  
 ment, viii, 65  
 hall of, shattered, viii, 68  
 death of, viii, 69, 71  
 system of administration of,  
 viii, 71  
 ministers of, put to death by  
 Hurmuzd, viii, 81 *seq.*  
 choice of Hurmuzd by, story  
 of, viii, 87  
 palace of, viii, 193  
 dream of, ix, 92  
 Núsh Zád=Míhr-i-Núsh, *q.v.*,  
 v. 285 and *note*  
 Núshzád, father of Míhrak,  
 vi, 237, 241, 267, 270,  
 273  
 Núshzád, son of Núshírwán,  
 167, vii, 213, 265, *seq.*  
 historical account of, vii, 219  
 Firdausi's account of, vii,  
 263 *seq.*  
 education of, vii, 263  
 imprisonment of, vii, 264  
 hears report of Núshírwán's  
 death, vii, 265  
 revolts, vii, 266  
 helped by his mother, vii,  
 266  
 writes to Caesar, vii, 266

Núshzád, goes to fight with Rám  
 Barzín, vii, 272  
 exhorted to yield by Pírúz,  
 vii, 273  
 reply of, to Pírúz, vii, 274  
 wounded, vii, 275  
 repents, vii, 275  
 sends message to his mother,  
 vii, 275  
 dies, vii, 275  
 lamentation for, vii, 276  
 Firdausi's reflections on, vii,  
 276

## O

OASIS OF AMMON, vi, 65  
 Alexander the Great's visit  
 to, vi, 65  
 Oblivion, Castle of, vii, 184  
 Obsequies, military, in the time  
 of Núshírwán, vii, 252  
 Oceanus, Homeric and Oriental,  
 i, 71  
 Odatis, Scythian princess, iv, 315  
 legend of, iv, 315  
 Odenathus, Arab chief, vi, 222  
 Shápúr son of Ardshífr and,  
 vi, 294, 325  
 confused with Valerian, vi,  
 324 *seq.*  
 Odorico, Minorite Friar and tra-  
 veller (A.D. 1286-1331),  
 vi, 13  
 Old Man of the Mountain, the, v,  
 30  
 Olives, taxes on, vii, 215, 225  
 Olympias (Náhd, Halai?), wife  
 of Philip of Macedon and  
 mother of Alexander the  
 Great  
 legendary relations of, with  
 Nectanebus, vi, 16, 18  
 choice by, of name for her  
 son, vi, 19  
 intrigues of, vi, 82  
 Omartes, Scythian chief, iv, 315  
 legend of, iv, 315  
 Omen, ii, 192, v, 177  
 of the quince, ix, 13, 14

## Y

- Ompbis, Indian king, vi, 62  
 Onager, the div Akwán as, iii, 273 *seq.*  
     Bahráw Chúbína guided by, viii, 156, 158  
 Onesicritus, chief pilot of Alexander the Great and writer, vi, 67  
     untrustworthy, vi, 12, 61, 67  
     Fakrs and, vi, 61  
     Calanus and, vi, 61  
     Mandanes and, vi, 61  
 Onnes, minister of Ninus, v, 292, 293  
 Ordeal by fire, ii, 218 *seq.*  
 Ormus (Hurmuz), city on the Persian Gulf, vi, 204  
 Osrhoene, kingdom in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 198  
 Othello, play of, quoted, vi, 324  
 Owls, Mas'úd's apologue of the, vi, 310  
     and Crows, story of, viii, 263 and *note*  
 Ox, the first, i, 5  
     legend of the, i, 117, 236  
 Ox of Kai Káús, ii, 26  
 Ox-hide, or skin, filled with gold as tribute, v, 265 and *note*; vii, 262, 363; viii, 46, 52, 53  
 Oxus (Jihún, *q.v.*), river, i, 57; ii, 190; v, 12, 29; vii, 156, 317; viii, 72  
     ancient trade-route, i, 57  
     confused with Aras, i, 71, 370  
     change in course of, i, 57  
     *note*, iii, 10  
     referred to, ix, 117 and *note*, 118  
 Oxyartes, father of Roxana (Rúshanak), wife of Alexander the Great, vi, 32

## P

- Padashkvár, a mountain or section of the Alburz range, i, 338

- Page, of Núshírwán, viii, 5 *seq.*  
     relative of Búzurjmíhr, viii, 5  
     instructed by Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6  
     takes messages between Núshírwán and Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6 *seq.*  
 Pahlav, region, ii, 77, 102; iii, 222  
 Pahlaván, i, 83; vi, 194  
 Pahlavi, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, vii, 6, 113, 188, 380 *seq.*; viii, 73, 74; ix, 50  
     meaning of, i, 64, 83  
     Firdausi's use of the word, i, 69  
     Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 382  
     language (middle Persian), v, 24, 26, vi, 194  
     texts, ii, 27; v, 13, 14, 24, 30; vi, 195, 196, 257  
     version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 84  
     writing and reading, confusion in, vi, 14, 62, 205, 206  
 Paidáwasi, Persian coin=five dinárs, vii, 95 and *note*, viii, 381 and *note*; ix, 19  
 Paighú=Túránian, v, 13, 21  
     *note*, 38 *note*, 41 *note*, 44 *note*; viii, 190  
 Paikár-i-Gurd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*  
 Pairika. *See* Parí.  
 Palace of Jewels, 160  
 Paladins, 154  
 Paláshán, Túránian hero, 147, iii, 26, 79  
     surveys the Íránian host, iii, 69  
     slain by Bízhan, iii, 70  
 Pálawína (Cappadocia), vi, 294, 297, 298  
 Palestine, vi, 30

- Palladius, bishop, vi, 61, 62  
treatise of, on the Brah-  
mans, vi, 61  
interpolated into the  
Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi,  
61
- Palmyra, city in Syrian desert,  
vi, 294, 322, 324; vii, 217
- Palus Macotis (Sea of Azoff), vi,  
73
- Pándavas, the five, iv, 138, 139  
pilgrimage of, compared  
with that of Kai Khusrau  
and his paladins, iv, 138
- Pand Námah, of Moola Firooz, i,  
201 *note*
- Pandnámak-i Vadshórg-Mitró-i  
Búhtakán, Pahlávi text,  
vii, 279
- Pándu, Indian king, iv, 316
- Pápak, Tribal King, 160, vi, 3,  
194, 195, 198 *seq.*, 211  
*note* and *seq.*, 227, 252,  
254, 256; viii, 214, 219  
and *note*, 285
- Sásán and, vi, 212
- daughter of, marries Sásán,  
160, vi, 213  
mother of Ardshír Pápa-  
kán, viii, 214
- Ardawán's letter to, vi, 214  
dies, vi, 218  
kindred of, support Ardshír  
Pápakán, vi, 223 *seq.*
- Pápakán Ardshír. *See* Ardshír  
Pápakán.
- Parable, Mazdak's, vii, 201
- Paradise Lost referred to, vi, 71
- Pari, i, 83, 172
- Paris, city, MSS. of the Pseudo-  
Callisthenes in National  
Library at, vi, 14
- Parmúda (*see too* Khán of Chín),  
170, 171, viii, 75, 117, 130,  
136 *seq.*, 146, 149 *seq.*, 164,  
174  
hears of Bahrám Chúbína's  
victory and takes counsel,  
viii, 131  
marches toward Jihún, viii,  
131
- Parmúda, approaches Balkh,  
viii, 134  
attacks and is defeated by  
Bahrám Chúbína, viii,  
134 *seq.*  
escapes to Áwáza, viii, 138  
besieged by Bahrám Chú-  
bína, viii, 138 *seq.*  
negotiates surrender of  
Áwáza with Bahrám Chú-  
bína, viii, 139 *seq.*  
surrenders Áwáza and sets  
out for Írán, viii, 143  
insulted by Bahrám Chú-  
bína, viii, 144  
Bahrám Chúbína tries to  
placate, viii, 145
- Párs (Persis, Fársistán), country  
on the eastern shores of  
the Persian Gulf, 142, 153,  
160, i, 351, 353, *seq.*, 357,  
368, 371; ii, 23, 28, 76,  
101, 226, 275, 286, 362,  
410; iv, 146, 256, 269,  
270, 318; v, 293; vi, 17,  
25, 32 *note*, 37, 45, 115,  
119, 194 and *passim*; vii,  
86, 90, 95, 190, 194, 201,  
206, 214, 224; viii, 109  
*note*, 112, 216, 241, 393,  
395; ix, 68  
corpse of Darius Codomanus  
sent to, vi, 33  
Ardshír Pápakán flees to, vi,  
220  
marches from, against Ar-  
dawán, vi, 227  
returns to, vi, 229  
Íránians, after the death of  
Yazdagird son of Shápúr,  
meet to consult in, vi, 394
- Parsis, ix, 64
- Part Kings. *See* Tribal Kings.
- Parthia, kingdom, v, 10  
Hystaspes governor of, v,  
10
- Parthian, Parthians, i 10, 60, 64;  
vi, 203, 256, 322; vii, 156;  
viii, 73  
conquest of Írán by, i, 19  
Zoroastrianism under, i, 63

- Parthian, dynasty, iii, 9, 11; v, 281; vi, 194, 201  
uses the title of King of kings, vi, 197  
Great King, vi, 198  
history, events of, reproduced in distorted form in Shāhnāma, iii, 11  
kingdom, ii, 80  
Parwīz, Irānian chief, vi, 394  
Parwīz, meaning of, viii, 187.  
*See too* Khusrau Parwīz.
- Pashan (Lādan), battle of, iii, 15, 80, 89; iv, 27, 36, 42, 90, 206; viii, 397 and *note*
- Pashang, father of Minūchihr, i, 90; iii, 25 (?); iv, 136, marries daughter of Iraj; i, 205
- Pashang, ruler of Tūrān and father of Afrāsiyāb, 142; i, 92, 336, 337; ii, 11, 13, 18, 20, 21, 297, 401; iii, 15; iv, 78, 136, 151, 174, 222, 266, 289  
consults his chiefs as to war with Irān, i, 342  
bids Afrāsiyāb invade Irān, i, 343, 375  
advised by Ighrīras not to make war, i, 344  
overrules Ighrīras, i, 344  
Afrāsiyāb's letter to, i, 346  
wroth with Afrāsiyāb, i, 374
- Pashang (Shīda, *q.v.*), son of Afrāsiyāb, i, 92; iii, 15
- Pashīn, son of Kai Kubād. *See* Kai Pashīn.
- Pashīn, Irānian noble, vi, 408
- Patashwārgar, region, vi, 202 and *note*
- Pāt-khusrau, brother of Gush-tāsp, v, 26
- Patrician, iv, 348
- Patrons of Firdausi, i, 29
- Pauravas, Indian race and dynasty, vi, 31
- Paurūshasp. *See* Pourushaspa.
- Perfumes, invention of, i, 133
- Periods, mythic and historic, of Shāhnāma, i, 49, 53
- Perozes (Pīrūz), Sāsānian king, vii, 159
- Persepolis (Istakhr), city in Pārs, vi, 31, 32 *note*, 373; ix, 65  
buildings at, attributed to Humāi, v, 293  
Zoroastrian scriptures said to have been burnt at, i, 63
- Persia, i, 308; ii, 191; iii, 109, 128; iv, 8; v, 306 *note*; vi, 61, 278; vii, 118, 129, 381; viii, 195; ix, 66  
Chess brought to, vi, 201; vii, 280, 284 *seq.*
- Fables of Bidpai brought to, vii, 213, 423 *seq.*
- Persian, Persians, i, 6, 8 *seq.*, 73, 74; ii, 190; v, 74; vi, 30, 44, 45, 81, 143, 148, 157, 170, 201 and *passim*  
bard, quoted, vii, 265  
dispute with the Rūmans over Sikandar's burial, vi, 184  
empire, ii, 9; vi, 197, ix, 65  
war of, with Rūm, viii, 41  
history and legend in relation to Greek history and legend, ii, 9  
language, vi, 147, 205; vii, 134, 140, 143, 430; ix, 12, 65  
monks introduce the silk-worm into Europe, vi, 204  
mutilation of captives, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404  
sea or gulf, vi, 204, 205, ix, 66, 68  
swords, vii, 135  
wisdom-literature, vii, 278 *seq.*, viii, 3  
verse, vii, 383  
Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 383  
conquest of Yaman, viii, 24 *note*  
raid Syria, viii, 41

- Persian, Persians, defeat by  
Romans referred to, viii,  
72  
war with Turks, viii, 72  
Book of Kings, viii, 73  
Tabarí. *See* Tabarí.  
= Bahrá́m Chúbína, viii, 113  
= Hurmuzd, viii, 116, 117  
prince = Bahrá́m Chúbína,  
viii, 319  
ideas on marriage, ix, 7  
= Ashtád and Kharrádf, ix,  
24  
exonerate Shírfn, ix, 38  
win 'The Battle of the  
Bridge,' ix, 67  
fall in attack on Híra, ix, 67  
defeat of, at Kádisiya, ix,  
67, 84  
Jalúla, ix, 68  
Nahávand, ix, 69  
Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy  
to, ix, 69  
robes, ix, 94  
transcribe Sháhnáma for  
Firdausí, ix, 121  
*Persica*, of Ktesías, v, 293  
Persis (Párs, Fársistán), vi, 195  
Peshó-tanu (Bishútan *q.v.*), v,  
12  
Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, ix,  
3, 7  
Petroleum, in ancient cult and  
modern industry, i, 56 *seq.*  
Pharasmanes, King of Khárazm,  
vi, 72  
Philip II of Macedon, (Faiakús,  
B.C. 382-336), father of  
Alexander the Great, i,  
55 *note*, vi, 16, 29  
Nectanebus and, story of,  
vi, 18  
names his son Alexander,  
vi, 19  
Philon, Macedonian noble, vi, 76  
Philosophers, Greek, enter-  
tained by Núshírwán, vii,  
280  
Phocas, Eastern Roman Em-  
peror, viii, 187, 189, 193,  
194  
Phosphor, morning star, ii, 123  
Photius, quoted, viii, 191  
Phraates II, Parthian king,  
(B.C. 138-127), ii, 80, 81  
Phraates = Farhád, iii, 11  
Phrygians, the, vi, 71  
Píl, as rhyme-word, i, 75  
Pillar, Bahrá́m Gú's, vii, 92, 160,  
161, 164  
Pilsam, Túránian hero, 144, 146,  
ii, 112 *seq.*, 320, 323 *note*,  
350 *seq.*; iii, 204  
pleads for Siyáwush, ii, 315  
summons Píran to save Far-  
angís, ii, 322  
Píran, son of Wisa, Túránian  
hero, cousin, commander-  
in-chief, and counsellor of  
Afrásiyáb, 145, 146, 148-  
152, i, 92; ii, 3, 112, 188,  
257 *seq.*, 264, 277, 291,  
311, 315, 316, 335, 350,  
370, 377, 379 *seq.*, 397,  
398; iii, 13, 26 *note*, 39,  
42, 58, 90, 91, 98 *seq.*, 102,  
108, 120, 122, 123, 125,  
142, 149 *seq.*, 158, 160,  
161, 169, 181 *seq.*, 192, 193,  
199 *seq.*, 216 *seq.*, 222,  
227, 232, 234, 242, 252,  
253, 259, 305 *seq.*, 335 *seq.*,  
349, 350, 357; iv, 7, 10  
*seq.*, 15 *seq.*, 29 *seq.*, 36,  
38, 41, 47, 59 *seq.*, 88 *seq.*,  
93 *seq.*, 103, 106 *seq.*, 117,  
118, 129, 134, 145, 159,  
160, 162, 205, 206; viii,  
414  
character of, i, 55  
identical with Harpagus in  
legend, ii, 191  
advises Afrásiyáb to receive  
Siyáwush, ii, 253 *note* and  
*seq.*  
goes to welcome Siyáwush,  
ii, 258 *seq.*  
daughter of, 145. *See* Jaríra.  
arranges marriages for  
Siyáwush, 145, ii, 268  
*seq.*  
entertains Siyáwush, ii, 278

Pirán, offers to help Siyáwush to build Gang-dizh, ii, 278  
 prophecy of Siyáwush to, ii, 282 *seq.*  
 goes to collect tribute, ii, 285  
 visits Siyáwush, ii, 287  
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 288  
 summoned to save Farangís, ii, 322 *seq.*  
 pleads for Farangís, ii, 324  
 takes charge of Farangís, ii, 325  
 dreams of Siyáwush, ii, 325  
 protects the infant Kai Khusrau, ii, 326 *seq.*  
 advises Afrásiyáb respecting Kai Khusrau, ii, 356  
 sends Kulbád and Nastíhan to pursue Kai Khusrau, ii, 377  
 overthrown with his host by Gív, ii, 385  
 appeals to Kai Khusrau, ii, 386  
 released, ii, 387  
 descibes Gív's prowess to Afrásiyáb, ii, 389  
 disgraced, ii, 390  
 retires to Khutan, ii, 390  
 appointed to oppose the Íránians, iii, 71, 79  
 marches on Giravgard to surprise the Íránians, iii, 80  
 captures the Íránians' herds, iii, 81  
 defeats the Íránians, iii, 82, 94  
 Ruhhám's embassy to, iii, 87  
 grants a month's armistice to Fariburz, iii, 88  
 losses of, in battle, iii, 94  
 takes half of Káwa's standard, iii, 94  
 sends Rúm to attack Bahráh, iii, 98  
 goes to see Bahráh, iii, 99  
 hears of the Íránians' retreat, iii, 105  
 informs Afrásiyáb and returns in triumph, iii, 106

Pirán, goes to Khutan, iii, 107  
 goes to oppose Tús, iii, 117  
 informs Afrásiyáb of the Íránian invasion, iii, 118  
 reinforced, iii, 118  
 joins battle with Tús, iii, 118  
 sends a warlock to bring a snowstorm on the Íránians, iii, 128  
 defeats the Íránians, iii, 131  
 takes counsel with his chiefs, iii, 133  
 pursues the Íránians, iii, 134  
 sends Lahhák and Húmán on in advance, iii, 135  
 reaches Mount Hamáwan, iii, 137  
 beleaguers the Íránians, iii, 138  
 attacked by Tús, iii, 139  
 hears of the approach of reinforcements, iii, 151  
 harangues his host, iii, 151  
 goes to meet his allies, iii, 153  
 plan of campaign of, rejected, iii, 162  
 hears of the arrival of Íránian succours, iii, 164 *seq.*  
 Rustam, iii, 174  
 takes counsel with Kámús and the chiefs, iii, 175, 182  
 attacks the Íránians, iii, 176  
 describes Rustam to Kámús, iii, 183  
 parleys with Rustam, iii, 202  
 reports to his kindred his interview with Rustam, iii, 206  
 declines Rustam's terms, iii, 217  
 retreats, iii, 231  
 counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 253  
 urges Afrásiyáb to withdraw to Chín, iii, 265  
 city of, iii, 335  
 entertains Rustam in disguise, iii, 335  
 pursues Rustam, iii, 349  
 sent by Afrásiyáb to invade Írán, iv, 11

Pírán, holds parley with Gív, iv, 20  
 informs Afrásiyáb, iv, 20  
 receives reinforcements, iv, 20  
 rejects Gív's overtures, iv, 21  
 occupies Kanábad, iv, 22  
 arrays his host, iv, 25  
 gives the centre to Húmán iv, 25  
 left to Burjásp, iv, 26  
 right to Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 26  
 sets scouts on the mountain-top, iv, 26  
 dissuades Húmán from fighting, iv, 30  
 hears of Húmán's death, iv, 51  
 sends Nastíhan to make a night-attack, iv, 53  
 hears of Nastíhan's death, iv, 55  
 attacks Gúdarz, iv, 55  
 proposes terms to Gúdarz, iv, 63  
 sends Rúm with letter to Gúdarz, iv, 67  
 receives Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74  
 harangues his troops and prepares for battle, iv, 75  
 sends messenger to Afrásiyáb, iv, 75  
 receives Afrásiyáb's reply, iv, 80  
 becomes despondent, iv, 81, 98  
 sends Lahhák and Farshíward to take the Íránians in flank, iv, 82  
 fights with Gív, iv, 84  
 appeals to Lahhák and Farshíward for help, iv, 85  
 announces the proposed Battle of Eleven Rukhs, iv, 94  
 gives the chief command to Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 94

Pírán, instructs them, iv, 95  
 holds a parley with Gúdarz and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*  
 steed of, slain by Gúdarz, iv, 107  
 falls under his steed and is injured, iv, 107  
 flees from Gúdarz, iv, 107  
 refuses to surrender, iv, 108  
 wounds Gúdarz, iv, 108  
 slain by Gúdarz, iv, 109  
 lamented for by Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 112  
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 127  
 buried with the Túránian champions by Kai Khusrau, iv, 128  
 death of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 151  
 treasures of, taken possession of by Afrásiyáb, iv, 219  
 Pírúz (Perozes), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 153, 178 *seq.*, 335, 359; viii, 73, 75, 168, 242, 245, 267, 285  
 passed over in the succession by Yazdagird, vii, 155  
 helped by the Haitálíans, vii, 156, 157  
 defeats Hurmuz, vii, 157  
 Hurmuz pardoned by, vii, 156, 158  
 Reign of, 166, vii, 159 *seq.*  
 Note on, vii, 159 *seq.*  
 calamities of, vii, 159  
 title of, vii, 159  
 relic of, vii, 159  
 measures of, against drought vii, 159, 162  
 cities of, vii, 159, 163  
 expedition of, against the Haitálíans, vii, 159, 164 *seq.*  
 tradition of, vii, 160  
 in mythical story, vii, 161

- Pírúz (Perozes), Bahrá́m Gúr's pillar said to have been moved by, vii, 161  
 daughter of, taken prisoner, vii, 161  
 child of, the wife of Kubád, vii, 161, 184  
 accession of, vii, 161  
 advances against Khúshnawáz, vii, 164  
 gives the van to Hurmuz, vii, 164  
 gives the rear to Kubád, vii, 164  
 gives the regency to Balásh, vii, 164  
 makes Súfarai (Sarkhán) minister to Balásh, vii, 164 and *note*  
 replies to the appeal of Khúshnawáz, vii, 165, 167  
 defeated by Khúshnawáz, vii, 168  
 death of, vii, 168  
 Íránian tradition of the revenge for, vii, 170  
 Súfarai determines to avenge, vii, 173  
 Pírúz, Íránian chief, vii, 85  
 Pírúz, Íránian general, vii, 187  
 Pírúz, Íránian warrior, vii, 219, 273 *seq.*  
 exhorts Núshzád to yield, vii, 273  
 Pírúz, father of Ustád, viii, 296  
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírwí, 175  
 appointed general, ix, 44  
 letter of Guráz to, ix, 46  
 takes counsel, ix, 46  
 writes to Guráz, ix, 47  
 Guráz marches against, ix, 48  
 appeals to Tukhár, ix, 48  
 feasts with Ardshír, ix, 48  
 informs Guráz of the death of Ardshír, ix, 51  
 put to death, ix, 57  
 Pírúz, Íránian prince, ix, 59  
 Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Íránian noble, takes Rustam's letter to Sa'ad, ix, 80, 81  
 Pírúzá́n, Persian general, commands Persian forces at Nahávand, ix, 68  
 slain, ix, 69  
 Pírúz-Rám (Rám-Pírúz), city built by Pírúz, 166, vii, 159, 163  
 Pírúz Shápúr (Ambar *q.v.*), vi, 327, 357  
 Pisces, constellation, i, 310 and *note*; ii, 407; iii, 26, 159, 318; iv, 364; vi, 395; vii, 245; viii, 51, 342; ix, 71  
 Pishdádian, Pishdádians, i, 116, 373; vii, 161, 171  
 Dynasty, i, 49, 115 *seq.*, 122; ii, 9, 336; iii, 9, 13; vi, 194  
 Plague. *See* Pestilence.  
 Planets, the seven, vi, 206; vii, 408  
 created by Áhriman, i, 52  
 evil influence of, i, 52  
 symbolized in the game of nard, vii, 382  
 Plato (Falátún), Greek philosopher (B.C. 427-347), vii, 100 *note*  
 Planisphere, ii, 215, 216  
 Pleiads, Pleiades, i, 114, 205, 244, 245, 267, 332; ii, 148, 282, 394, 408; iv, 183, 245, 329; v, 110, 131; vi, 169, 401; vii, 365; viii, 53, 158  
 Plutarch, Greek writer (A.D. 46-120), vi, 67  
 Poll-tax, vii, 215, 225  
 Polo, game of, 145, ii, 263 *seq.*, 292; iv, 349, 350; vi, 329, 379, 382; vii, 57, 118, 143, 235; viii, 246, 247, 258, 371; ix, 16  
 episode in Kárnámak and Sháhnáma, vi, 196, 257, 263, 271  
 -stick, ii, 292; iv, 350; vi, 271, 272; vii, 118; viii, 247

- Porus (*Fúr q.v.*), Indian king,  
vi, 17, 62 *seq.*, 66, 76, 83  
son of, vi, 18, 63  
Darius' letter to, vi, 31  
origin of name of, vi, 31  
kingdom of, vi, 31  
Alexander and, historical  
account of, vi, 63  
in the Pseudo-Callisthe-  
nes, vi, 64, 67  
statue of, vi, 64  
nephew of, vi, 80
- Pourushaspa, father of Zar-  
duhsht (*Zoroaster*), ii, 9;  
v, 14, 15, 17
- Prefatory Note, vii, v
- Prelate, *or* bishop *q.v.*, iv, 341,  
348; vi, 184  
as militarist, iv, 197; v,  
306; vi, 124; viii, 47  
and *note*
- Prelude, to Sháhnáma, i, 99 *seq.*
- Kai Káús, ii, 29
- Suhráb, ii, 119
- Siyáwush, ii, 191
- Kai Khusráu, iii, 15
- Farád, iii, 37
- Kámús, iii, 110
- Akwán, iii, 272
- Bízhan and Manízha, iii, 287
- Battle of the Twelve Rukhs,  
iv, 9
- Rustam and Shaghád, v, 261
- Núshírwán, vii, 220
- Hurmuzd, viii, 77
- Presbyter, iv, 348
- Prithá, Indian princess, iv, 316
- Procopius, Byzantine historian  
(6th century A.D.), vii, 187
- Prometheus, i, 57
- Pronunciation, Note on, preced-  
ing text in each volume.
- Property-tax, remission of, 165
- Prophet, the, Praise of, 139
- Proverb, i, 194, 195, 197; vii,  
185; viii, 187
- Pseudo - Callisthenes, Greek  
Romance of Alexander  
the Great, ii, 9; vi,  
30 *seq.*, 62 *seq.*, 71, 72,  
74 *seq.*
- Pseudo-Calisthenes, account and  
versions of, vi, 13 *seq.*,  
17  
vogue of, vi, 17  
treatise of Palladius inter-  
polated in, vi, 61  
Alexander and Porus in, vi,  
64  
historic elements in, vi, 83  
Egyptian elements in, vi, 83  
Persian elements in, vi, 83  
Arabic elements in, vi, 83  
diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Ptolemy, son of Lagus, one of  
Alexander the Great's  
generals, king of Egypt  
(B.C. 323-283), and his-  
torian, vi, 12, 13, 66
- Púlád, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 64,  
93; iii, 256; iv, 296 and  
*note*; v, 204
- Púlád, Íránian hero, ii, 22
- Púlád, Túránian hero, ii, 264;  
iii, 199, 234
- Púládward, Túránian hero *or*  
div, 149; iii, 191, 268,  
270  
summoned by Afrásiyáb, iii,  
254  
goes to help Afrásiyáb, iii,  
255  
takes counsel with Afrá-  
siyáb, iii, 256  
worsts Tús, iii, 257  
Gív, Ruhhám, and Bíz-  
han, iii, 258  
cleaves in twain Káwa's  
standard, iii, 258  
challenged by Rustam, iii,  
259  
overthrown by Rustam, iii,  
264  
withdraws with his army  
from the field, iii, 265
- Pun-t (*Berbera q.v.*), ii, 79
- Púrándukht, Sháh, 175, v, 294;  
vi, 3; ix, 56  
reproaches Kubád, ix, 17  
makes Shahránguráz prime  
minister, ix, 56  
True Cross and, ix, 56

Purmayá (Barmaiún), brother of Faridún, i, 90, 91; v, 261 referred to, i, 147, 165  
 Kaiánúsh and, summon the smiths to Faridún, i, 158  
 go with Faridún against Zahhák, i, 159  
 attempt to kill Faridún, i, 160  
 Pusfarrukh, ix, 50  
 Python, Apollo and the, vi, 203

## Q

QUEEN OF CHÍN (wife of the Khán), viii, 190  
 daughter of, slain by lion-ape, viii, 322  
 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324  
 steward of, plots with Khar-rád against Bahrám Chúbína viii, 335  
 daughter of, cured by Khar-rád, viii, 336  
 grants boon to Khar-rád, viii, 338  
 disgraced, viii, 344  
 Questions, Mountain of the Holy, i, 62  
 hard, vii, 102 *seq.*  
 Quince, omen of the, ix, 13, 14  
 Quintus Curtius, Roman writer (1st century A.D.), vi, 65  
 on the Amazons, vi, 72

## R

RACES, duplicate in West and East, vi, 68  
 fair-haired, vi, 73  
 Rád, ruler of Zábulistán, vii, 86  
 Ráda, Mount, ix, 91, 94  
 Rádwi, archimage  
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-dagird, ix, 102

Rai, city and district near Tih-rán, 174, i, 363, 366 *seq.*;  
 ii, 23, 399; iii, 242; iv, 147, 255, 256; v, 14, 18;  
 vi, 32, 202, 219, 229; vii, 84, 160, 184; viii, 72, 155, 166, 171, 173, 174, 189, 214, 216, 240; ix, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96  
 seat of the Magi, i, 60  
 Khár of. *See* Khár. i, 368, 374, 381  
 Ardawán's capital, vi, 201  
 Shápúr of, vii, 184, 185, 191, 192  
 seat of Arsacid power, viii, 72  
 Bahrám Chúbína goes to, viii, 306  
 Khusrau Parwíz oppresses, viii, 365  
 misery of, viii, 367  
 Gurdaya delivers, viii, 368  
 Rái. *See* Rája.  
 Raibad, town, about twenty miles west of Nishápúr, and district east of the Jagatai range, in Khurásán,\*, iv, 17, 22, 23, 47, 55, 76, 88, 112, 134  
 occupied by Gúdarz, iv, 16  
 arrival of Kai Khusrau at, iv, 111, 126  
 Rája (Rái) of Hind, *temp.* Luh-rásp, iv, 321; ix, 17  
*temp.* Núshírwán, 169, vii, 140 and *note*, 143, 424  
 proposes wager to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 385, 387  
 receives game of nard from Núshírwán, vii, 5, 381, 389 *seq.*  
 fails to discover how to play the game, vii, 392  
 pays forfeit to Núshírwán, vii, 393  
 receives Núshírwán's gifts from Barzwí, vii, 425

\*The village of Riwad to the south of the range may perhaps indicate what was once the western boundary of the district.

- Rája, assists Barzví in his mission to Hind, vii, 428  
 letter of, ix, 17  
 put in charge of Shírin, ix, 17
- Rakhsh, Rustam's steed, 142, i, 386; ii, 13, 42 *seq.*, 67, 74, 94, 97, 110, 116, 139, 143, 311, 354; iii, 146, 177, 186, 189, 194, 195, 223, 224, 226, 227, 229, 259, 264, 275, 276, 278, 279, 313, 324, 326, 335, 342, 344, 346 *seq.*, 350, 352; iv, 295; v, 117, 184, 192, 198, 207, 208, 214, 219, 228 *seq.*, 234 *seq.*, 266, 275  
 caught by Rustam, i, 378 *seq.*  
 described, i, 379, 380  
 care taken of, i, 380  
 slays a lion, ii, 45  
 encounters a dragon, ii, 48  
 stolen by Turkmans, ii, 121 *seq.*  
 sire of Shuráb's charger, ii, 128  
 saddled by Gív, Ruhhám, and Tús for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160  
 referred to, iii, 184, 228, 253; v, 199  
 wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229  
 returns home without Rustam, v, 229  
 Rustam's thought of abandoning, v, 235  
 healed by the Símurgh, v, 237  
 tries to save Rustam, v, 270  
 falls into the pit, v, 270  
 body of, taken from pit by Farámarz, v, 275  
 tomb of, v, 276  
 lord of = Rustam, v, 306
- Rakhshasas, vi, 13
- Rakka (Callinicus, Kálíniyús *q.v.*, Nicephorium, Warigh), city, viii, 188
- Ram, personification of the Divine Grace, i, 374. *See* mountain-sheep.  
 Rustam's life saved by a, ii, 46  
 constellation, ii, 299; v, 129
- Rám, Fire-temple, vi, 202, 226
- Rám, Íránian warrior, viii, 291
- Rám Ardshír, city, vi, 202, 290 and *note*
- Rám Barzín, high priest and general, 167, vii, 275  
 Kubád's testament kept by, vii, 210  
 Núshírwán's instructions to, concerning Núshzád, vii, 267 *seq.*  
 goes to fight with Núshzád, vii, 272  
 hears of Núshzád's last wishes, vii, 276
- Rám Barzín, Persian official, viii, 313
- Rámbihisht, wife of Sásán, vi, 198
- Rám Hurmuz, city in Khúzistán, east of Ahwáz, vi, 199  
 plain of, vi, 199
- Rámishn - i - Ardshír, district, vi, 202
- Rám Kubád (Aragán), city, vii, 188
- Rám Píruz. *See* Píruz Rám.
- Rangwí, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
- Rasafa, viii, 188
- Rashnawád, captain of the host to Humái, 158  
 assembles troops, v, 301  
 Dáráb enlists under, v, 301  
 host of, reviewed by Húmái, v, 302  
 marches on Rúm, v, 302  
 and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303  
 gives presents to Dáráb, v, 304  
 questions Dáráb, v, 304  
 sends for the launderer and his wife, v, 304

- Rashnawád, Dáráb and, defeat the Rûmans, v, 305, 306  
 praises Dáráb, v, 305, 306  
 offers Dáráb the oil, v, 306  
 grants peace to Caesar, v, 307  
 returns to Írán, v, 307  
 hears from the launderer and his wife about the case of Dáráb, v, 308  
 writes to Humái about the case of Dáráb, v, 308  
 appears with Dáráb before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*
- Rás-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr, *q.v.*), city, vi, 255, 256
- Ratl, weight, vi, 156 and *note*
- Raven, Raven-head, ix, 91 and *note*, 95 *note*, 96
- Ravi (Hydraotes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Rawalpindi, town and district in the Punjáb, vi, 62
- Rawlinson, Sir Henry, his account of Gotarzes' inscription at Bihistún, iii, 9
- Rawlinson, Professor, vi, 253
- Red Sea, ii, 364
- Reeds (bamboos), vi, 71  
 gigantic, seen by Sikandar, vi, 148  
 used in house-building, vi, 71, 148
- Religion, War of the, v, 19, 26  
 two campaigns of, v, 29
- Remus, *See* Romulus.
- Reseph, viii, 188
- Responses, of Núshírwán, viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*
- Revellers, Rosary of, ix, 38, 40
- Rhyme-words, i, 74; ii, 228  
*note*; v, 261; vi, 372;  
 vii, 88 and *note*, 89 and  
*note*, 174 and *note*, 245 and  
*note*, 263 and *note*
- Firdausí and, viii, 397 *note*
- Ridge of Gushtásp, v, 29
- Rív-Ardshír, city east of the Jaráhi river near the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 202  
 referred to, vi, 224
- Rívníz, son-in-law of Tús, 147,  
 iii, 14, 25, 45, 57, 60, 71  
 prepares to attack Farúd,  
 iii, 51  
 referred to, iii, 55  
 burial of, iii, 68
- Rívníz, son of Kai Káuś, ii, 3;  
 iii, 14, 96, 113, 114, 232  
 slain, iii, 93  
 battle for crown of, iii, 94
- Rívníz, son of Zarasp, iv, 360  
 Zarir and, go to Rûm, iv, 360  
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
- Rízmihr (Zarmíhr), son of Súfa-rai, 166, vii, 207; viii, 169  
 identical with Súfaai, vii, 185
- Kubád and, go to the Hattáians, vii, 186  
 fate of, vii, 186  
 loyalty of, to Kubád, vii, 196  
 helps Kubád to escape from prison, vii, 197  
 negotiates a marriage for Kubád, vii, 197  
 made chief minister, vii, 200
- Rizwán, angel, ii, 39 and *note*, 288
- Roc, mythical bird, i, 51, 235
- Roman, Romans, i, 10; iii, 286;  
 vi, 254, 318, 325, 326; vii, 214; viii, 188, 189, 195;  
 ix, 50, 66  
 relations of, with the Íránians, i, 14  
 empire, Eastern, i, 373; vi, 253  
 war of, with Persian, viii, 41, 193  
 Alexander's legendary visit to, vi, 30  
 emperors, vi, 321, 371, 372  
 neglect the defences of the Caucasus, vii, 187  
 so-called tribute of, to Persia, vii, 187  
 treatment of Munzir by, vii, 217  
 leads to war with Núshírwán, vii, 217

- Romans, defeat Bahrán Chúbína, viii, 76
- Romance of Alexander the Great (Pseudo-Callisthenes, *q.v.*), vi, 11 *seq.*, 88
- incorporation of, in Sháhnáma, vi, 16
- vogue of, vi, 17
- sources of marvels in, vi, 12, 69
- diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Rome, vi, 194, 197, 203, 301, 324
- Shápúr son of Ardashír's wars with, vi, 294, 297
- Bahrán Gúr's war with, vi, 373
- Romulus and Remus, founding legend of, v, 293
- Rook, piece in chess. *See* Rukh.
- Rosary of Revellers, ix, 38, 40
- Roxana (Rúshanak, *q.v.*), vi, 33
- Alexander and, vi, 30
- account of, vi, 32
- Rúdába, daughter of Míhráb king of Kábul, wife of Zál, and mother of Rustam, 141, 157, i, 145, 299: ii, 44, 180; v, 182, 184, 190 *note*
- Story of Zál and, i, 256 *seq.* referred to, iii, 285
- Zál hears of, i, 257
- description of, i, 257, 259, 264, 266, 272
- hears of Zál, i, 260
- falls in love with Zál, i, 260
- handmaids of, go in quest of Zál, i, 263
- interview Zál, i, 266
- invite Zál to visit Rúdába, i, 267
- reproached by the porter, i, 267
- describe Zál, i, 268
- prepares to receive Zál, i, 269
- entertains, and plights her troth to, Zál, i, 272
- Zál consults the archimages on the matter of, i, 273
- Rúdába, go-between of, with Zál, i, 280
- Zál sends Sám's letter to, i, 280
- rewards her go-between, i, 281
- go between of, discovered by Síndukht, i, 281
- reproached by her parents, i, 282, 287
- congratulated by Síndukht, i, 315
- seen and admired by Sám, i, 318
- married to Zál, i, 318
- Zál and, go to Sístán, i, 319
- grievous travail of, i, 320
- saved by the Símurgh, i, 321
- Caesarean operation performed upon, i, 322
- gives birth to Rustam, i, 322
- fasts in sorrow for Rustam, v, 278
- frenzy of, v, 278
- regains her wits, v, 279
- referred to, v, 190, 289
- lamentation of, v, 289
- Rúdagí, Persian poet, versifies the Fables of Bidpai, vii, 383, 431
- Rúdbár, district, v, 30
- Rúdyáb, father of Pápak (in Sháhnáma), vi, 200, 212
- Rue, wild, as a prophylactic, i, 380
- Ruhhám, son of Gúdarz, Fránian hero, ii, 4, 62, 73, 144, 158, 340; iii, 19, 33, 48, 67, 115, 126 *seq.*, 139 *seq.*, 154, 157, 182, 187, 211, 248, 259, 264, 268, 273, 322, 350, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 31, 37, 147; vii, 156
- helps to saddle Rakhsh for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
- mortally wounds Farúd, iii, 64
- embassy of, to Pírán, iii, 87
- attacks Bázúr, iii, 128

- Ruhhám, worsted by Ashkabús, iii, 179  
 goes to the help of Rustam, iii, 227  
 worsted by Púládward, iii, 258  
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334  
 commands the left wing, iv, 24  
 superseded *pro tem*, by Farhád, iv, 92  
 chosen to fight with Bármán, iv, 97  
 slays Bármán, iv, 102  
 sent by Gúdarz to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110  
 acts as Kai Khusrau's standard-bearer in his combat with Shída, iv, 171  
 protests against Kai Khusrau's fighting on foot with Shída, iv, 174  
 holds Kai Khusrau's steed, iv, 175  
 instructed by Kai Khusrau to bury Shída, iv, 176  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
- Ruhhám, king of Rai, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Ruhhám, Íránian warrior, vii, 156  
 helps Pírúz to gain the throne, vii, 156, 186; viii, 73
- Rúín, son of Pírán, 151, i, 92; iii, 207, 234; iv, 10, 71, 90, 102, 152, 153, 162  
 summons Pírán to save Farangís, ii, 323 and *note*  
 sent by Pírán to attack Bahrám, iii, 98  
 wounded by Bahrám, iii, 99  
 put in command of ambush, iv, 26  
 bears letter from Pírán to Gúdarz, iv, 67
- Rúín, entertained by Gúdarz, iv, 68  
 returns to Pírán with Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74  
 goes to help Pírán against Gív and is defeated, iv, 84  
 chosen to fight with Bízhan, iv, 97  
 slain by Bízhan, iv, 103
- Rúína, place, ix, 91
- Rukh, piece in chess (castle), vii, 385, 423  
 position of, iv, 8; vii, 388, 422  
 move of, iv, 8; vii, 422
- Rukhs, Battle of the Twelve, 151; iv, 7 *seq.*  
 meaning of, iv, 7  
 Battle of the Eleven, 151, iv, 88  
 arranged by Gúdarz and Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*  
 Firdausí's reflections on, iv, 7, 98, 106  
 referred to, v, 29; vii, 156
- Rúm, the Eastern Roman Empire, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, i, 15, 229; ii, 143, 297, 307, 360; iii, 106, 151, 164, 296; iv, 14, 133, 148, 196, 197, 208, 272, 312, 314, 316, 317, 323 *seq.*, 330, 331, 333 *seq.*, 339, 341 *seq.*, 345, 348, 349, 352, 353, 355, 356, 359, 361, 364; v, 75, 76, 102, 180, 188, 262, 301, 305; vi, 40, 41, 45, 51, 53, 81, 94, 104, 113 *seq.*, and *passim*  
 king of = Mahmúd, i, 113  
 = Sikandar, vi, 172  
 West and, Salm's portion, i, 189  
 brocade of, i, 157, 183, 210, 252, 263, 316 and *passim*; iii, 26, 235, 291, 297, 355; iv, 128, 271, 364; v, 295; vi, 56, 89; vii, 64, 67, 276, 384; viii, 157, 173, 278, 337, 367, 374; ix, 99, 101

Rûm, helm of, iii, 114  
 sea of, iii, 177  
 city in, founded by Salm, iv, 325  
 ravaged by Rashnawâd and Dâráb, v, 307  
 ambassadors from, come to Dâráb, vi, 21  
 Dâráb wars with, vi, 22  
 prince of, vi, 22  
 chiefs of, vi, 23, 153  
   withdraw on Dâráb's approach, vi, 23  
 tribute of, to Írán, vi, 24  
   explained, vii, 187  
 ambassadors from, come to Dâráb, vi, 35  
 reed (pen) of, vi, 85  
 stuffs of, vi, 143  
 philosophers of, vi, 115, 154; viii, 279, 382  
 cavaliers of, vi, 167  
 Shâh of=Sikandar, vi, 170  
 Sikandar's policy to safeguard, vi, 178  
 Arastâls' advice to Sikandar concerning, vi, 179  
 invaded by Shâpûr, vi, 350  
 slave-girls of, chosen by Bahráb Gûi, vi, 382  
 Bahráb Gûr's war with, vii, 4, 5, 84  
 Núshîrwân's wars with, vii, 213  
 robes of, viii, 308  
 captured cities of, restored to, viii, 312  
 monks of, slain by Máhwi, ix, 113  
 Rúman, Rûmans, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, iii, 309; iv, 357, 360, 363; v, 173, 205, 292; vi, 44, 45, 101 *seq.*, 113, 114, 127, 142, 148, 168, 170, 179 *seq.*, and *passim*  
 slaves, i, 252; vi, 382; vii, 54, 259  
 invade Írán, v, 301  
 defeated by Rashnawâd and Dâráb, v, 305 *seq.*

Rúman, Rûmans, king of=Philip of Macedon, vi, 19  
 carry out works in Írán, vi, 21  
 =Sikandar, vi, 50, 52, 154  
 Íránians ask quarter of, vi, 51  
 tongue, vi, 160; vii, 256, 261  
 dispute with the Persians as to Sikandar's burial, vi, 184  
 sages, vi, 185  
   their sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, vi, 1, 85, *seq.*  
 silk, vi, 280; vii, 424  
 defeated by Shâpûr, son of Ardshîr, vi, 297  
 engineers build bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 299  
 astrologic tablets, vi, 376  
 eunuchs, vii, 67; viii, 279  
 pen, vii, 73  
 helmet, vii, 89, 272, 274  
 bishop, vii, 275, 276  
 envoy, viii, 8 *seq.*  
 surrender to Núshîrwân, viii, 47  
 entrench themselves, viii, 47  
 sue for peace and pay tribute viii, 51 *seq.*  
 architect, viii, 193, 401  
 marches, viii, 252  
 robes, viii, 253  
 helms, viii, 105, 276, 417  
 worsted by Bahráb Chûbîna, viii, 292  
 artificers imprisoned by Khusrau Parwîz, viii, 402  
 released by Khusrau Parwîz, viii, 403  
 Rúmiya (New Antioch, Sûrsân *q.v.*), a suburb of Ctesiphon (Taisafûn) on the east bank of the Tigris, vii, 218  
 Rús (Russia), vi, 19; viii, 406  
 king of, vi, 22

- Rúshanak (Roxana, *q.v.*), daughter of Dárá (in *Sháhnáma*) and wife of Sikandar, 158, 159, ii, 3; vi, 86 *seq.*, 188  
 account of, vi, 32  
 derivation of, vi, 33  
 bestowed by Dárá on Sikandar, vi, 55  
 son of, vi, 81, 181  
 visited by Náhíd, vi, 89  
 married to Sikandar, vi, 90  
 reference in Sikandar's Will, to, vi, 181
- Rúshan Pirúz, city, vii, 160
- Russia, vi, 19
- Russian, Russians, vi, 19  
 empire, vi, 19  
 foundation of, vi, 19  
 cloth, ix, 110
- Rustam, son of Zál, Íránian national hero, 141-150, 153, 154, 156, 157, i, 42, 68, 90, 174, 235 *seq.*, 376 *seq.*; ii, 4, 18, 25, 34, 35, 42 *seq.*, 79, 92 *seq.*, 188, 236, 237, 271, 286, 290, 311, 316, 318, 319, 335, 344 *seq.*, 349 *seq.*, 371, 372, 380, 394, 400; iii, 24, 35, 36, 40, 107 *seq.*, 121, 134, 138, 141 *seq.*, 155, 164 *seq.*, 182 *seq.*, 294, 307, 308; iv, 11, 13, 27, 30, 65, 157, 167, 172, 198, 226, 227, 277, 285, 289, 292, 319, 324; v, 9, 22, 30, 50, 73, 86, 165, 254 *seq.*, 278, 279, 281, *seq.*, 298; vi, 325, 395; vii, 151; viii, 106, 177, 219, 223, 332; ix, 25  
 Caesarean birth of, i, 236, 321 *seq.*  
 account of, in Moses of Chorene, i, 236  
 presage of, by the astrologers, i, 278, 307  
 Simurgh, i, 321  
 origin of name, i, 322 and *note*  
 effigy of, sent to Salm, i, 322  
 nurturing of, i, 324
- Rustam, goes with Zál and Mihráb to meet Sám, i, 325  
 slays the white elephant, i, 327, 377  
 bidden by Zál to take Mount Sipand, i, 329  
 takes Mount Sipand, i, 331, 377  
 sends the Spoil to Zál, i, 333  
 sets fire to Mount Sipand, i, 333  
 bidden by Zál to prepare for war, i, 376  
 reply of, i, 376  
 Zál gives Sám's mace to, i, 378  
 obtains Rakhsh, i, 378  
 goes in quest of Kai Kubád, i, 382 *seq.*  
 slays Kulún, i, 386  
 first campaign of, ii, 11 *seq.*  
 nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner, ii, 14, 116, 354  
 rewarded by Kai Kubád, ii, 21  
 Seven Courses of (Haft Khwán) 143, ii, 44 *seq.*  
 life of, saved by a ram, ii, 46  
 song of, ii, 51  
 rescues Kai Káuś in Mázarán, ii, 58  
 handgrip of, ii, 66, 67  
 encounter of, with Kaláhúr, ii, 67  
 Juyá, ii, 71  
 audience of, with the king of Mázarán, ii, 67 *seq.*  
 encounter of, with the king of Mázarán, ii, 73  
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, ii, 77  
 entertains Kai Káuś, ii, 83  
 takes the king of Shám prisoner, ii, 97  
 defeats Afrásiyáb, ii, 100  
 made paladin of paladins by Kai Káuś, ii, 101  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś, ii, 104  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*  
 slays Alkús, ii, 115

Rustam, and Suhráb, Story of, ii, 118 *seq.*  
 loses Rakhsh, ii, 121  
 Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129  
 holds a drinking-bout, ii, 141  
 quarrels with Kai Káuś, ii, 142  
 reconciled by Gúdarz, ii, 144 *seq.*  
 goes in disguise to see Suhráb, ii, 149  
 adventure of, with Zhanda Razm, ii, 149 *seq.*  
 Suhráb described by, ii, 151, 166  
 encampment of, described, ii, 154  
 armed by Tús, Gfv, and Ruhhám for his fight with Suhráb, ii, 160  
 challenges Suhráb, ii, 161  
 charge of, to Zawára, ii, 167  
 declines Suhráb's advances, ii, 169  
 saves his life by a ruse, ii, 170  
 prays that his strength may be restored, ii, 171  
 learns too late that Suhráb is his son, ii, 173  
 grief of, ii, 173 *seq.*  
 makes a truce with Húmán, ii, 176  
 tries to slay Hajr, ii, 176 himself, ii, 177  
 brings up Siyáwush, ii, 196  
 matches with him against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225, *seq.*  
 returns and quarrels with Kai Káuś, ii, 242 *seq.*  
 grief and wrath of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 338 *seq.*  
 puts Surkha to death, ii, 346  
 fights with the Túránians, ii, 349 *seq.*  
 appoints Tús ruler of Chách, ii, 358  
 Gúdarz ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, ii, 358

Rustam, daughter of, ii, 383, 384, iii, 323  
 wife of, ii, 384, iii, 323  
 hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Írán, ii, 395  
 Turkman occupation of Zábulistán, account of by, iii, 14  
 goes to do homage to Kai Khusrau, iii, 17  
 witnesses Kai Khusrau's oath to avenge Siyáwush, iii, 22  
 proposes to Kai Khusrau to expel Turkmans from Zábulistán, iii, 30  
 asks Kai Khusrau to pardon Tús and the Íránians in the matter of Farúd, iii, 113  
 summoned by Kai Khusrau, iii, 143  
 advocates the marriage of Fariburz and Farangís, iii, 146  
 marches to succour Tús, iii, 148  
 meets Gúdarz, iii, 171  
 takes counsel with Tús and the chiefs, iii, 172  
 arrays the host, ii, 177  
 fight of, with Ashkabús, legend about, iii, 109  
 referred to, viii, 75  
 parleys with Ashkabús, iii, 180  
 slays Ashkabús, iii, 181  
 described by Pírán, iii, 183  
 harangues the troops, iii, 186, 219, 223, 232, 235  
 challenged by Kámús, iii, 187  
 spear-bearer of, slain by Kámús, iii, 188  
 parleys with Kámús, iii, 188  
 takes Kámús prisoner, iii, 189  
 and the Khán of Chfn, Story of, 149, iii, 191 *seq.*  
 referred to, iii, 193  
 slays Chingish, iii, 195

- Rustam, parleys with Húmán, iii, 196  
 conditions of peace offered by, iii, 197, 205  
 parleys with Píráń, iii, 202  
 proposes peace on terms to the Íránians, iii, 211  
 warned by Gúdarz not to trust Píráń, iii, 212  
 wrath of, with Píráń, iii, 218  
 unhouses Shangul, iii, 221  
 prowess of, in battle, iii, 222 *seq.*  
 overthrows Kundur, iii, 224  
 slays Sáwa, iii, 224  
 Gahár, iii, 225  
 attacks the Khán of Chín, iii, 225, *seq.*  
 victorious, iii, 231, *seq.*  
 wroth with Túś and the Íránians, iii, 234  
 sends Fariburz to Kai Khusrau with tidings of victory, iii, 236, *seq.*  
 leads on the host, iii, 238  
 reaches Sughd, iii, 244  
 sends troops to attack Bídád, iii, 244  
 slays Káfúr, iii, 245  
 besieges and stoims Bídád, iii, 246  
 sends Gív to raid Khutan, iii, 247  
 praised by Gúdarz, iii, 248  
 described by Afrásiyáb, iii, 251  
 attacks the Túránians, iii, 257  
 challenges Púládward, iii, 259  
 overthrows Púládward, iii, 264  
 defeats the Túránians, iii, 266  
 divides the spoil, iii, 266  
 ravages Túrán, iii, 266  
 returns in triumph, iii, 267  
 asks Kai Khusrau's leave to return to Zál, iii, 269  
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 269
- Rustam, Story of fight of, with the dív Akwán, 149, iii, 271 *seq.*  
 summoned to court by Kai Khusrau, iii, 274  
 pursues the dív Akwán, iii, 275  
 foiled by Akwán, iii, 276  
 taken at a disadvantage by Akwán, iii, 276  
 offered a choice of deaths by Akwán, iii, 277  
 outwits Akwán, iii, 277  
 finds Rakhsh among Afrásiyáb's herds, iii, 278  
 encounters Afrásiyáb's herdsmen, iii, 279  
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 280  
 slays Akwán, iii, 281  
 carries off the spoil, iii, 281  
 welcomed by Kai Khusrau, iii, 282  
 tells his adventure with Akwán, iii, 282  
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 283  
 returns home, iii, 283  
 summoned to court in the matter of Bízhan, iii, 319 *seq.*  
 visited by Gív, iii, 322  
 promises to help Gív, iii, 324  
 goes with Gív to court, iii, 326  
 address of, to Kai Khusrau, iii, 327  
 undertakes the rescue of Bízhan, iii, 330  
 plan of, iii, 333  
 chooses his comrades, iii, 334  
 goes disguised to Túrán, iii, 335  
 gives presents to Píráń, iii, 336  
 welcomed by Píráń, iii, 336  
 opens a market, iii, 337  
 interviews of, with Manízha, iii, 337, 342

Rustam, sends food and his ring to Bizhan, iii, 340  
 removes boulder of Akwán from pit's mouth, iii, 345  
 makes conditions for release with Bizhan, iii, 345  
 releases Bizhan, iii, 346  
 arrays his troops against Afrásiyáb, iii, 350  
 mocks Afrásiyáb, iii, 351  
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 352  
 triumphant return of, iii, 353  
 presents Bizhan to Kai Khusrau, iii, 354  
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 356  
 goes to Sístán, iii, 356  
 sent to Hindústán by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14  
 successes of, iv, 60, 71  
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145  
 commands the right wing, iv, 147  
 attacks with Kai Khusrau from the centre, iv, 180  
 goes with Zawára to the right wing, iv, 180  
 sent to the desert to attack Tawurg, iv, 188  
 reports his defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193  
 advances, iv, 194  
 failure of Afrásiyáb's attempt to surprise, iv, 195  
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199, 208 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's converse with, iv, 198, 199  
 captures Jahn and Garsíwaz, iv, 210  
 advises Kai Khusrau to reject Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 222  
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224  
 supports Kai Khusrau's proposal to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231

Rustam, left by Kai Khusrau in Chín, iv, 241  
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 251  
 accompanies Kai Khusrau to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252  
 summoned by the Iránians to remonstrate with Kai Khusrau, iv, 278  
 with Zál and the sages, sets forth for Irán, iv, 279  
 met on arrival by Gúdarz and other chiefs, iv, 282  
 holds converse with the Iránians, iv, 282  
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295  
 confirmed by Kai Khusrau in possession of Nim-rúz, iv, 297  
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
 turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307  
 laments the loss of the paladins and returns to Irán, iv, 310  
 Zál and, welcome Gushtásp to Sístán, v, 85  
 rivalry in legend between Asfandiyár and, v, 116  
 Haft Khwán of, compared with that of Asfandiyár, v, 117  
 Asfandiyár's fight with, Story of, 156, v, 166 *seq.*  
 recited by Nadr, son of Hárith, at Mecca, v, 166  
 referred to, v, 169, 170, 306  
 Gushtásp bids Asfandiyár go against, v, 173  
 Asfandiyár's message to, v, 179

Rustam, life of, attempted by Bahman, v, 184  
 interview of, with Bahman v, 185  
 entertains Bahman, v, 186  
 great appetite of, v, 186, 210  
 jests with Bahman on his small appetite, v, 186  
 sends Zawára and Farámarz to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190  
 goes to the Hírmund, v, 191  
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 192, *seq.*  
 invites Asfandiyár to visit him, v, 193  
 accepts Asfandiyár's invitation to a feast, v, 195  
 tells Zál, of his interview with Asfandiyár, v, 196  
 indignation of, at not being summoned to the feast, v, 197  
 sets forth to reproach Asfandiyár, v, 198  
 wrangle of, with Asfandiyár, v, 198 *seq.*  
 demands his proper seat at the feast, v, 200  
 Zál and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201  
 details his ancestry, v, 202  
 recounts Sám's exploits, v, 202  
 his own exploits, v, 203, 207  
 patents of, from Kai Káuś and Kai Khusráu, v, 203  
 aged six hundred years, v, 204  
 tries a handgrip with Asfandiyár, v, 209  
 accepts Asfandiyár's challenge, v, 209  
 asks for neat wine, v, 211  
 makes fresh overtures to Asfandiyár, v, 211 *seq.*  
 addresses the royal tent-enclosure, v, 215

Rustam, bids Zawára bring him his arms, v, 218  
 rejects Zál's counsels, v, 220  
 arms for battle, v, 222  
 gives Zawára charge of the troops, v, 222  
 goes with Zawára to the Hírmund, v, 222  
 instructs Zawára, v, 222  
 crosses the Hírmund and summons Asfandiyár to the combat, v, 223  
 suggests a general engagement, v, 224  
 distress of, at the death of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 228  
 offers to surrender Zawára and Farámarz to Asfandiyár, v, 228  
 wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229  
 flees from Asfandiyár, v, 229  
 sends Zawára with a message to Zál, v, 230  
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 231  
 recrosses the Hírmund, v, 231  
 kin of, grieve over his wounds, v, 234  
 bids the leeches to attend to Rakhsh first, v, 234  
 despair of, v, 235  
 advised by Zál, v, 235  
 Zál summons the Símurgh to the aid of, v, 235  
 healed by the Símurgh, v, 237  
 instructed by the Símurgh how to overcome Asfandiyár, v, 237, *seq.*  
 cuts the fatal branch of tamarisk, v, 239  
 prepares the arrow, v, 240  
 summons Asfandiyár to renew the fight, v, 240  
 makes a final effort for peace with Asfandiyár, v, 241 *seq.*

- Rustam, bewails Asfandiyār to Bishūtan, v, 246
- Asfandiyār confides Bahman to, v, 248
- foretells an evil future for, v, 248
- laments Asfandiyār, v, 250
- warned by Zawāra against Bahman, v, 250
- sends Asfandiyār's corpse to Gushtāsp, v, 251
- Bahman remains with, v, 252, 256
- instructs Bahman, v, 256
- writes to Gushtāsp to excuse himself in the matter of Asfandiyār, v, 256
- overtures of, to Gushtāsp supported by Bishūtan, v, 257
- Gushtāsp accepts the excuses of, and writes to, v, 257
- requested by Gushtāsp to send back Bahman, v, 258
- equips Bahman for his journey, v, 258
- Story of, and Shaghād, 157, v, 260 *seq.*
- provenance of, v, 260 *seq.*
- death of, v, 261, 273, 289
- versions of, v, 261
- Kābul's tribute to, question of, v, 265
- Shaghād and the king of Kābul plot against, v, 265
- takes up Shaghād's cause, v, 267
- prepares to occupy Kābul with a host, v, 268
- persuaded by Shaghād to go with Zawāra and a small escort, v, 268
- pardons king of Kābul, v, 269
- entertained by king of Kābul, v, 269
- goes hunting with Zawāra, v, 270
- falls a victim to treachery, v, 270
- Rustam, Shaghād, glories over, v, 271
- slays Shaghād, v, 272
- last words of, v, 272
- corpse of, taken from the pit by Farāmarz, v, 274
- obsequies of, v, 274 *seq.*
- Artabanus and, v, 282
- burial place of, v, 287
- scene of the battle between Bahman and Farāmarz, v, 287
- personification of the Sacae, i, 68; vi, 194
- conduct of, in Hāmāvarān, viii, 104, 168
- banner of, bestowed on Bahrām Chūbīna, viii, 105, 217
- Rustam, Persian commander in chief under Yazdagird III, 176; ix, 66, 67, 69, 73, 81 *seq.*, 90, 95
- brother of Farrukhzād, viii, 413 and *note*
- revolt of, viii, 413
- overthrows Āzarmdukht, ix, 59
- advances to Kādīsīya, ix, 67, 73
- end of, ix, 69
- finds evil aspects in the stars ix, 73
- writes to his brother, ix, 73
- hears of Shu'ba Mughīra's arrival, ix, 82
- Rūzbih, Bahrām Gūr's high priest, 164, vii, 26 *seq.*, 54, 67
- bewails Bahrām Gūr's course of life, vii, 56
- reproached by Bahrām Gūr for his parsimony, vii, 83
- Rūzbih, scribe, viii, 252

## S

- SA'AD, son of Wakkās, Arab general, 176, ix, 67, 68, 82 *seq.*, 90

- Sa'ad, succeeds Abū 'Ubaida, ix, 67  
 at Kādisiya, ix, 67, 69  
 founds Kūfa, ix, 67  
 takes Ctesiphon, ix, 67  
 recalled, ix, 68  
 sent by 'Umar to invade  
 Írán, ix, 72  
 letter of Rustam to, ix, 78  
 taken by Pírúz, ix, 80, 81  
 Sabbákh, king of Yaman, iv, 146  
 Sabz dar sabz, melody, viii, 399  
 and *note*  
 Sacae (Scythians), i, 17, 19  
 Rustam a personification of,  
 i, 68; vi, 194  
 Sacaestán. *See* Sistán.  
 Sacrifice, human, and serpent-  
 worship, i, 143  
 Sada, feast of, 140, i, 23; iv,  
 317; v, 309; vi, 33, 55,  
 230 and *note*, 245, 273,  
 389; vii, 11, 94, 200;  
 viii, 68, 133, 216, 313;  
 ix, 40, 92  
 institution of, i, 124  
 Sāda, Irānian noble, vii, 312  
 Safid Rūd, river flowing through  
 Gllān into the Caspian,  
 v, 13, 16  
 Sagastán (Sistán *q.v.*), v, 13  
 Sage, sages, 159, vi, 101, 103  
 Indian, vi, 62  
 naked (Brahmans *q.v.*)  
 of Kaid. *See* Kaid.  
 saying of, viii, 155  
 Sagittarius, constellation, i, 188;  
 iv, 355  
 Sagsár, Sagsárs, district and  
 tribe, i, 279 and *note*, 290,  
 323, 339; ii, 143; iii, 152,  
 207  
 Sahadeva, one of the five Pán-  
 davas, iv, 138  
 referred to, iv, 139  
 Sahí, wife of Íraj, i, 188  
 referred to, i, 182 *seq.*  
 Sahl, son of Māhān, Irānian  
 noble, v, 260, 261, 263  
 Saifu'd-Daula, title of Sultān  
 Mahmūd, i, 21  
 Sakīl, son of Caesar, *temp.*  
 Luhrásp, iv, 355  
 commands the left wing,  
 iv, 355  
 Sakla, mountain, 169, iv, 342;  
 viii, 41  
 dragon of, 154, iv, 342 *seq.*  
 referred to, iv, 343, 351,  
 358  
 stronghold of, taken by  
 Rūmans, viii, 47  
 Sakláb (Slavonia), ii, 360; iii,  
 152, 164, 177, 185, 204,  
 218, 221 *seq.*, 235, 238,  
 243, 255; vi, 179; vii,  
 112, 115, 364; viii, 379  
 Salm, eldest son of Faridūn, 140,  
 141, i, 42, 90, 91, 183 *seq.*,  
 335, 342, 344, 362; ii,  
 19, 237, 318; iii, 37, 115,  
 iv, 66, 69, 269, 272; v,  
 205, 261, 284; vi, 353;  
 vii, 101; viii, 266, 270,  
 300, 376 *note*, 378, 381  
 racial significance of, i, 54  
 etymology of, Firdaus's, i,  
 174  
 naming of, i, 187  
 horoscope of, i, 188  
 receives Rūm and the West,  
 i, 189  
 envies Íraj, i, 190  
 plots with Tūr, i, 190  
 Tūr and, demand the abdi-  
 cation of Íraj, i, 191  
 Íraj visits, i, 198  
 Íraj not welcomed by,  
 i, 198 *seq.*  
 slay Íraj, i, 201  
 send Íraj's head to Faridūn,  
 i, 202  
 hear of Minúchihr, i, 208  
 send an embassy to Faridūn,  
 i, 208  
 receive Faridūn's reply, i,  
 213 *seq.*  
 prepare for war, i, 215  
 worsted by Minúchihr, i,  
 220  
 plan night-surprise, i, 220  
 worsted, i, 221

Salm, hears of Túr's defeat and death, i, 223  
 retreats on the castle of the Aláns, i, 223  
 prevented by Minúchihr, i, 223  
 flees from Minúchihr, i, 227  
 slain by Minúchihr, i, 228  
 troops of, ask quarter of Minúchihr, i, 228  
 head of, sent to Farídún, i, 229  
 Scimitar of, iv, 335 *seq.*  
 Salt, Rustam's caravan of, i, 330 *seq.*  
 desert, i, 3  
 fish, legend of the, vi, 76 *seq.*  
 Sám, son of Narimán, Iránian hero, father of Zál and grandfather of Rustam, I 41, I 42, i, 42, 207, 212, 231, 235, 238 *seq.*, 337, 344, 375; ii, 4, 16, 17, 33, 34, 49, 125, 126, 137, 140, 173, 182, 183; iii, 35, 121, 202, 215, 260, 279, 283; iv, 222, 251, 290, 301, 319; v, 14, 15, 58, 62, 63, 196, 198 *seq.*, 242, 262 *seq.*, 266, 267, 274, 285, 286, 289, 290; vii, 74; viii, 223  
 pronunciation of, i, 95 *note*  
 etymology of, i, 171 *seq.*  
 Minúchihr confided to, by Farídún, i, 231  
 mace of, i, 235, 290, 297, 328  
 given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378  
 speech of, to Minúchihr, i, 238  
 casts away his son Zál at birth, i, 241  
 hears rumours of Zál, i, 243  
 dreams of, concerning Zál, i, 243, 244  
 consults the archmagas and bidden to seek his son, i, 243  
 finds his son on Mount Alburz, i, 244 *seq.*

Sám, son of, restored to him by the Símurgh, i, 247  
 returns home with Zál, i, 248  
 congratulated by Minúchihr, i, 248  
 goes with Zál to court, i, 249  
 tells of his quest to Minúchihr, i, 250  
 Minúchihr's gifts to, i, 251  
 public rejoicings at his home-coming, i, 252  
 goes to the wars and leaves Zál to rule in Zábulistán, i, 253  
 Mihráb tributary to, i, 256  
 Zál writes to, about Rúdába, i, 275  
 receives Zál's letter, i, 277  
 consults the astrologers, i, 278  
 Rustam's birth foretold to, i, 278  
 replies to Zál's letter, i, 279  
 returns from the war, i, 280  
 summoned to court, i, 289  
 welcomed by Minúchihr, i, 289  
 tells of his campaign, i, 290  
 slays Karkwí, i, 291  
 bidden to destroy Mihráb and all his belongings, i, 292  
 welcomes and promises to help Zál, i, 293  
 writes to Minúchihr and pleads past services, i, 295  
 tells of the slaying of the dragon of the Kashaf, i, 296  
 "One blow," i, 297, 299  
 receives Sindukht in audience i, 302  
 invited by Sindukht to visit Kábul, i, 305  
 dismisses Sindukht with gifts, i, 305  
 hears of Zál's success with Minúchihr and informs Mihráb, i, 314  
 goes with Zál to Kábul, i, 317

- Sám, *see* Rúdába and felicitates  
 Zál, i, 318  
 returns to Sístán, i, 319  
 entertains Mihráb and Sindukht, i, 319  
 leaves Zál the regent of Sístán and goes on a campaign, i, 319  
 hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323  
 writes to congratulate Zál, i, 323  
 comes to see Rustam, i, 324  
 bids Zál and Rustam farewell, i, 327  
 hears of Rustam's success at Mount Sipand and writes to Zál, i, 334  
 Naudar's appeal to, i, 339  
 goes to court, i, 340  
 met and offered the crown by the Iránian chiefs, i, 340  
 refuses the crown, i, 340  
 reconciles the chiefs and Naudar, i, 341  
 counsels Naudar, i, 341  
 rewarded by Naudar, i, 341  
 departs, i, 341  
 death of, referred to, i, 345, 346, 349  
 obsequies of, 358  
 mace of, given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378  
 exploits of, recounted by Rustam, v, 202
- Sám, Iránian warrior, *temp.*  
 Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395
- Sáma Keresáspa Narimanau, Iránian hero, i, 171 *seq.*
- Samangán, city south-east of Balkh (?), 144 ii, 121 *seq.*, 130  
 king of, 144, ii, 118, 140, 184  
 entertains Rustam, ii, 122  
 father of Zhanda Razm, ii, 150
- Sámánid, Sámánids, i, 14, 20, 21, 67; vii, 5, 383  
 end of dynasty of, i, 21
- Samarkand (Sogdiana, Sughd), city and district in Turkistán, ii, 241; vii, 167, 358, 359; viii, 377; ix, 96, 115  
 early seat of Aryan civilization (?), i, 7  
 settlement of the Huns at, i, 19
- Sambáz, Iránian chief, speech of, viii, 242
- Samírán, king, vi, 405 and *note*
- Samkurán, Iránian hero, iv, 149
- Sandar, Sandarús, the Arar tree, vi, 19
- Sandal, Sandalí, city in Hind, vii, 395, 396, 401 *seq.*  
 king of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Sanja, a div, ii, 39, 40, 44, 55; iv, 296; v, 204
- Sanscrit, vii, 382
- Sapad, mountain. *See* Spentó-dáta.
- Sapandármad. *See* Sipandármad.
- Sapínúd, daughter of Shangul, vi, 3; vii, 144  
 married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 128  
 finds out who her husband is, vii, 131  
 plans Bahrám Gúr's flight from Hind, vii, 132  
 reproached by Shangul, vii, 135  
 converted to Zoroastrianism, vii, 139  
 visited by Shangul, vii, 142
- Sapor I (Shápúr son of Ardashir *q.v.*), Sásanian king, vi, 294, 321
- Sapor II (Shápúr son of Urmuzd *q.v.*), Sásanian king, i, 374; v, 13; vi, 294, 321; viii, 41
- Sapor III (Shápúr son of Shápúr *q.v.*), vi, 365
- Sarakhs, city in Khurásán, between Nishápúr and Marv, ii, 108

Saraparda, i, 84  
*Sarcostemma viminalis*. See  
 Homa.

Sargon I. of Agani, v, 293  
 founding legend of, v,  
 393

Satf, city in Mázandarán, i, 230,  
 289, 366; v, 174; vii,  
 237; viii, 168, 341, 355,  
 392; ix, 86

Iránian captives imprisoned  
 at, i, 363

released, i, 367

Sar-i-pul-i-Zohab, vii, 187

Sarkab, Rûman general, viii, 281,  
 292

Sarkash (Sergius), minstrel, 174,  
 viii, 193, 398 *seq.* 406

Story of, 174, viii, 396  
 disgrace of, viii, 399

Sarkhân. See Súfarai.

Sarûch, desert in Kirmân, ii, 226  
 vii, 362

Sarûg, Jacob of, Syriac poet.  
 See Jacob.

Sarv, king of Yaman, 140, i, 211,  
 286; v, 260; vi, 73

daughters of, asked in mar-  
 riage by Faridûn for his  
 sons, i, 178

consults his chiefs, i, 179  
 agrees, conditionally, to

Faridûn's request, i, 181  
 attempts to outwit Faridûn's sons, i, 183 *seq.*

gives his daughters in mar-  
 riage to Faridûn's sons, i,  
 185

Sarv=Ázad Sarv, *q.v.*

Sásán, eponym of Sásanian dyn-  
 asty, viii, 219, 220, 330,  
 341

Sásán, son of Bahman, ii 3; v,  
 290

disinherited and flees from  
 court, v, 291

account of, v, 291

Sásán, name of Dárâ's son and  
 several of his descendants,  
 ii 3; vi, 200, 211, 224,  
 255; ix, 105 and *note*

Sásán, descendants of, help Ard-  
 shír Pápakán, vi, 224

House of, vi, 251, 270 and  
*note*

lineage of, ix, 56, 105 and  
*note*

Sásán, father of Ardshír Pápa-  
 kán, 160, vi, 3, 193, 198,  
 200, 201, 240

legend of, vi, 211 *seq.*

marries daughter of Pápak,  
 vi, 213

Sásanian, Sásanians, i, 11, 374;

iii, 9; v, 13, 281; vi, 81,

209, 225, 253, 257; vii,

85, 185, 212, 237; viii, 65,

72, 73, 214, 262, 330, 413

*note*; ix, 4, 5, 46, 47, 50,

54, 65, 72, 73, 76, 77, 83,

105

dynasty, i, 49, 374; ii, 10;

v, 10, 282; vi, 249 *seq.*,

253, 257, 321; vii, 1 *seq.*,

381; viii, 73; ix, 4

Tabari on the rise of the,  
 vi, 198

characterised, vi, 249

Zoroastrianism under, vi,  
 251

Mas'ûdf on Church and  
 State under, vi, 251

duration of, vi, 257

empire, i, 11; vi, 193, 327;

viii, 193

conquered by the Arabs,  
 ix, 65 *seq.*

genealogical table of, vi, 3,  
 253

Tabari's history of, vi, 14  
*note*

fictitious genealogies of, v,  
 290; vi, 199, 211, 256

view of Sikandar, vi, 15, 224  
 and *note*, 240 and *note*

rivalry with Arsacids, viii,  
 73

usage, viii, 190

architecture, viii, 193

race viii, 285, 386, *note*

Satire, Firdausi's, on Sultán  
 Mahmûd, i, 40 *seq.*

- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's  
four ix, 69
- Saturn, planet, i, 72, 100, 161,  
204, 245, 295, 311; ii,  
183, 208, 215, 247, 263,  
310, 319, 394, 407; iii,  
32, 110, 178, 232, 237, 254,  
268, 318; iv, 31, 214;  
v, 68, 89, 136, 154, 159,  
220, 233; vi, 97, 115, 176,  
281, 318, 385; vii, 92,  
151, 252, 267, 346, 418;  
viii, 24, 66, 321, 392, 395;  
ix, 73  
sphere of, ix, 92
- Sav (the Sôvbar of the Pahlavi  
texts, now Chashmah-i-  
Sabz), a lake among the  
hills in the neighbourhood  
of Tûs and Mashad, 163,  
vi, 373, 392  
legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*
- Savalân, mountain in Ázarbâijân  
v, 14
- Sáwa, Túránian hero, 149, iii, 224  
slain by Rustam, iii, 224
- Sáwa, Íránian hero, v, 154  
left in charge of the Brazen  
Hold by Asfandiyâr, i,  
154
- Sáwa, ruler of the Turks, 170;  
viii, 74, 94 *seq.*, 100 *seq.*,  
107, 108, 110 *seq.*, 123, 129,  
132, 133, 135, 137, 139,  
164, 169, 174, 216, 219,  
222, 224, 240  
=Chao-wou, viii, 72  
attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 92  
letter of, to Hurmuzd, viii,  
93  
prophecy about, viii, 98
- Hurmuzd sends Kharrád,  
son of Barzîn, to, viii, 110  
hears of Bahrâm Chûbîna's  
army and blames Kharrád  
viii, 110  
offers of, to Bahrâm Chû-  
bîna, viii, 113 *seq.*, 117 *seq.*  
employs sorcery against the  
Íránians, viii, 123  
defeated and slain, viii, 126
- Sáwa, head of, set on lance, viii,  
130  
wealth of, sent to Hurmuzd,  
viii, 133
- Sawurg, Indian king, 159, vi, 64,  
118
- Sayce, Professor, on the Ama-  
zons, vi, 71
- Scandinavians, vi, 73  
found the Russian empire,  
vi, 19
- Scimitar of Salm, iv, 335 *seq.*
- Scotland, vi, 79  
vitrified forts in, vi, 79
- Scribe, scribes, office of, highly  
esteemed, i, 27 and *note*;  
vii, 311; viii, 50  
put to death by Hur-  
muzd, viii; 71, 81 *seq.*
- Scriptures, Zoroastrian. *See*  
Zandavasta.
- Scylla, Nisus and, story of, vi,  
323 *note*
- Scythia, iv, 316
- Scythians (Sacaë), their relations  
with the Íránians, i, 17  
wars of, with Darius Hys-  
tapsis, v, 11
- Seasons, confusion of the, ix, 77  
*note*
- Sects, Muhammadan, i, 99  
parable of, i, 107
- Seleucia (Bih Ardshír *q.v.*), city  
on the right bank of the  
Tigris, opposite to Ctesi-  
phon (Taisafûn), ii, 80;  
vi, 254, 291 *note*, 322; viii,  
189, 194, 196
- Semiramis, legendary queen of  
Assyria, historically Sam-  
muramat, wife (?) of  
Samsi Adad king of Assy-  
ria (B.C. 824-804), ii, 10;  
vi, 66, 405 *note*  
legend of, v, 292, 293  
Humái and, v, 292, 293
- Semites, the, i, 9  
relations of, with the Írán-  
ians, i, 9 *seq.*, ix, 65
- Seneca the younger, Nero's tutor  
(B.C. 3—A.D. 65), vii, 279

- Seoses (Súfarai ?), Persian commander-in-chief, *temp.*  
 Kubád, vii, 187
- Sergiopolis, viii, 188
- Sergius, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188  
 patron saint of Khusrau  
 Parwiz, viii, 188, 195  
 Roman leader in Tabarí, viii, 188
- Sergius (Sarkash), minstrel, viii, 193
- Serpent, serpents, on Zakhák's shoulders, i, 139  
 worship and human sacrifice, i, 143
- Seven, favourite number in Persian story, vii, 186, 280,  
 Banquets of Nushírwán. *See* Banquet.
- Climes. *See* Climes.
- Courses (Haft Khwán) of Rustam. *See* Rustam.
- Planets. *See* Planet.
- Persian nobles, legend of the vi, 207  
 transferred to Ardshír Pápákán (?), vi, 207
- Stages (Haft Khwán) of Asfandiyár. *See* Asfandiyár.
- Warriors, Fight of the, 143, ii, 25, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Founts, jewel, viii, 392  
 and forty Sháhs, viii, 395  
*and note*
- Severus, Roman Emperor (A.D. 146-211), vi, 322  
 Hatra besieged by, vi, 322
- Shabáhang, Farhád's steed, iii, 313; iv, 8  
 Bízhan's steed, iv, 47
- Shabdíz, Bahrám Gúr's steed, vii, 37, 80  
 Giv's steed, iii, 257
- Luhrásp's steed, iv, 323  
 taken by Gushtásp, iv, 323
- Míhráb's steed, i, 326
- Khusrau Parwiz' steed, viii, 407; ix, 30
- Shabrang, Bahrám Gúr's steed, vii, 37, 80  
 Bízhan's steed, iii, 296, 302, 313; iv, 8, 39, 50, 119, 124
- Shádán son of Barzín, one of Firdausi's authorities, i, 67, 69; vii, 382, 423
- Shaddád, son of 'Ad, legend of, i, 100
- Sháddard, treasure, viii, 406 *and note*
- Shaghád, son of Zál, 157, v, 261  
 Story of Rustam and, 157, v, 260 *seq.*  
 provenance of, v, 260  
 birth of, v, 263  
 astrologers' evil prognostic of, v, 264  
 sent to be brought up at Kábul, v, 264  
 marries the daughter of the king of Kábul, v, 264  
 king of Kábul and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*  
 pretended quarrel of, with the king of Kábul, v, 266  
 goes to Zábul, v, 267  
 cause of, taken up by Rustam, v, 267  
 persuades Rustam to go with Zawára and a small escort to Kábul, v, 268  
 warns the king of Kábul of Rustam's coming, v, 269  
 glories over Rustam, v, 271  
 outwitted and slain by Rustam, v, 272  
 corpse of, burnt, v, 277
- Sháh, accession of, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Sháhá, city in Hámávarán, ii, 89
- Sháhábád, the modern name for the ruins of Gund-i-Shápur in Khúzistán, vi, 295
- Shahd, river, ii, 108; iii, 11, 116, 118, 123, 152, 173, 230, 241; vi, 391, 392
- Shahd, mountain, iii, 237

- Sháhnáma (Bastán-náma, Khudai-náma), 139, i, 66; ix, 4 *seq.*, 43, 50, 61, 70  
 subject-matter of, how preserved, i, 56  
 origin of, i, 65 *seq.*  
 put into writing, i, 66  
 Prose, compilers of, referred to, viii, 71, 73  
 probably compiled by Magi, i, 69  
 referred to, by Firdausi, i, 108, 109; iv, 141 *seq.*; vi, 196  
 more than one, i, 29, 66, 67, 69  
 Dakíki and. *See* Dakíhi.  
 Sháhnáma, Firdausi's, 139, 176, 3, 23 *seq.*; iii, 7, 9, 11, 14, 271, 286; iv, 7, 8, 136 *seq.*, 316, v.9. *seq.*, 19, 20, 22 *seq.*, 27 *seq.*, 293, 294; vi, 3 and *note*, 30, 31, 66 *seq.*, 72, 79, 82 *seq.*, 194 *seq.*, 205 *seq.*, 249 *seq.*, 253, 256, 270 *note*, 294, 301, 307, 310, 325, 326; vii, 5, 156, 184, 185, 215, 217, 317, 381; viii, 3, 41, 42, 71, 72, 74 *seq.*, 187 *seq.*, 191, 192  
 scene of, i, 3  
 theme of, i, 8, 47  
 Baisinghar Khán's edition of, i, 23  
 completion of, Firdausi on, 176; ix, 121  
 date of completion of, i, 24; ix, 122  
 length, metre, and language of, i, 47; iv, 8; ix, 122  
 anomalies of, i, 48  
 explained, i, 48  
 divisions and chief characters of, i, 49  
 machinery of, i, 51  
 leading motives of, i, 53  
 cosmogony of, i, 71; iv, 136  
 imagery of, i, 72  
 editions of, i, 76  
 translations of, i, 77, 87
- Sháhnáma, principles of the present translation of, i, 77 *seq.*  
 certain terms used in, explained, i, 80 *seq.*  
 Firdausi on the compilation of, i, 108  
 historic element in mythical period of, iii, 8 *seq.*  
 Greek subject-matter in, vi, 11  
 derivation of *Sikandar* given in, vi, 19  
 historic period of, i, 49; vi, 29  
 Irán and, analogy between, vi, 193  
 portion of, corresponding to Kárnámak, vi, 196  
 Kárnámak and, compared, vi, 200 *seq.*, 255 *seq.*  
 Wisdom-literature in, vii, 278 *seq.*  
 Sháhnáma, of Abú-'Alí Muhammad, i, 69  
 Sháhra, chief, 165, vii, 92  
 made king of Túrán by Bahráam Gúr, vii, 92  
 Shahrám-Pirúz. *See* Bádán Pirúz.  
 Shahrán, ix, 102  
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102  
 Shahrán Guráz, Iránian warrior, speech of, viii, 239  
 Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, Guráz *q.v.*), 175; ix, 50  
 heads conspiracy against Guráz; ix, 54  
 Shahr-Bánú-Iram, sister of Gív and wife of Rustam, ii, 4, 384  
 Shahrbaráz (Guráz *q.v.*), Iránian general, viii, 194; ix, 43, 50  
 revolt of, viii, 195  
 sons of, viii, 196  
 rebellion of, ix, 43, 44  
 alliance of, with Heraclius, ix, 44  
 Shahr-Baiz. *See* Shahrbaráz.

- Shahrgîr, warrior in Sikandar's host, vi, 125, 126  
 takes Kaidâfa's son and daughter-in-law prisoners, vi, 125
- Shahrgîr, captain of the host to Ardshîr Pâpakân, vi, 241  
 Ardshîr's instructions to, vi, 241  
 goes to Ardshîr's help, vi, 244 and *note*
- Shahrgurâz (Shahrbarâz *q.v.*), ix, 50
- Shahrinâz, sister of Jamshîd, wife of Zahhâk and Farîdûn, and mother of Salm and Tûr, i, 90, 142, 164 *seq.*, 177  
 married to Zahhâk, i, 146  
 sons of, by Farîdûn, i, 177
- Shahrîr, Shahrîvar, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 286, 328  
 month and day, i, 88; v, 310; vii, 76
- Shahrwarâz (Shahrbarâz *q.v.*), ix, 50
- Shahrwî, archimage, vi, 329  
 minister during Shâpûr son of Urmuzd's minority, vi, 329
- Shahryâr, son of Shîrîn and Khusrau Parwîz, ix, 39  
 father of Yazdagird, ix, 64
- Shâhwî, eldest son of Haftwâd, vi, 237  
 referred to, vi, 206  
 helps his father against Ardshîr Pâpakân, vi, 236  
 executed, vi, 245
- Shâhwî (=Mâhwî?), one of Firdausî's authorities, vii, 382, 394
- Shakespeare, quoted, iii, 286; v, 156 *note*; vii, 383; viii, 187
- Shakn, region, iii, 152, 177, 185, 192, 204, 222, 223, 228, 237
- Shâm (Syria), ii, 80, 84; vi, 357; viii, 170
- Shâm, king of, taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 97
- Shamâsâs, Tûrânian hero, 142; i, 346; ii, 12, 18  
 Khazarwân and, invade Kâbulistân, i, 345, 358  
 parleyed with by Mihrâb to gain time, i, 358  
 flees from Zâl, i, 361  
 met and defeated by Kâran, i, 361
- Shambalîd, daughter of Barzîn, vii, 53  
 married to Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 53
- Shamîrân, Tûrânian hero, iii, 185  
 comes to aid Pîrân, iii, 152
- Shamîrân, stronghold north of Harât (?), ix, 91, 94
- Shammâkh, king of Sûr, iv, 57, 146
- Shammâs, legendary founder of Fire-worship, vi, 339 *note*
- Shammâs, Nûshzâd's general, vii, 219, 272
- Shamtâ, viii, 195, 196
- Shangul, king of Hind, *temp.* Kai Khusrau, 149, iii, 161, 172, 185, 198, 205, 210, 217, 251  
 comes to aid Pîrân, iii, 152  
 volunteers to fight Rustam, iii, 209, 216  
 challenges Rustam, iii, 221  
 worsted, iii, 221  
*temp.* Bahrâm Gûr, 165, vi, 325; vii, 109 *seq.*
- border-raids of, vii, 110  
 gives audience to the Irânian envoy (Bahrâm Gûr), vii, 112  
 state of, described, vii, 112  
 brother of, vii, 113  
 vaunts his own greatness, vii, 114  
 wife of, the daughter of the Faghfûr, vii, 115  
 son of, vii, 115  
 entertains Bahrâm Gûr, vii, 116

Shangul, Bahrám Gúr wrestles before, vii, 117  
 plays at polo, vii, 118  
 Bahrám Gúr displays his marksmanship before, vii, 118  
 tries to find out who the Persian envoy (Bahrám Gúr) is, vii, 118 *seq.*  
 takes counsel with his sages, vii, 126  
 offers a daughter and great advancement to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 127  
 marries Sapínúd to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 128 *seq.*  
 goes to a festival, vii, 134  
 hears of Bahrám Gúr's flight vii, 135  
 reproaches Sapínúd, vii, 135  
 makes a league with Bahrám Gúr, 137  
 bids farewell to Sapínúd, vii, 137  
 makes a new treaty with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140  
 entertained with seven other kings by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*  
 visits his daughter Sapínúd, vii, 142  
 farewells Sapínúd, vii, 143  
 makes Bahrám Gúr his heir, vii, 143  
 Bahrám Gúr's parting gifts to, vii, 144  
 sends Gipsies to Írán, vii, 149  
 Shapígán, treasury of, i, 61, 62  
 Shápúr, Pishdádian hero, i, 210, 211, 213  
 slain, i, 352  
 Shápúr, Kaiánian hero,<sup>1</sup> ii, 271, 338, 340; iii, 19, 289, 322, 331; iv, 292  
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362  
 Shápúr, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210

Shápúr, son of Pápak, vi, 199  
 Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, Sháh (Sapor I), 161, i, 42; vi, 3, 256, 303, 307, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, viii, 265  
 compilation of \*Zandavasta under, i, 62, 63  
 stories of, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 255  
 Tabarí, vi, 255, 257  
 crowned in his father's lifetime, vi, 257  
 secret birth of, vi, 261  
 origin of name, vi, 262  
*note*  
 recognised and acknowledged by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 264  
 discovers the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268 *seq.*  
 summoned and counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 286 *seq.*  
 confused with Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327  
 Reign of, 161, vi, 294 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 294  
 historical inaccuracies of, vi, 294  
 wars of, with Rome, vi, 294, 297  
 Odenathus and, vi, 294  
 defeats the Rûmans, vi, 297  
 receives tribute from Cæsar, vi, 298  
 builds cities, vi, 298  
 bids Bazánúsh build a bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 298  
 summons and counsels Urmuzd, vi, 299  
 Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Sháh (Sapor II), 162, 163, i, 374; v, 16 *note*; vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 371, 373, 405 (?); vii, 359; viii, 41  
 provides for uniformity of Zoroastrian doctrine, i, 62

<sup>1</sup> May be identical with the above in legend.

- Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Zoroastrian canon closed under, i, 63  
 referred to, vi, 318  
 Reign of, 162, vi, 321 *seq.*  
   Note on, vi, 321 *seq.*  
 bridge of, at Taisafún, vi, 321, 329  
 residences of, vi, 321, 330  
 confused with Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327  
 triumphant treaty of, with the Rómans, vi, 326, 355  
 cities of, vi, 327, 357  
 birth of, vi, 328  
 crowned as an infant, vi, 328  
 education of, vi, 329  
 Málíka offers to betray her father's hold to, vi, 331  
 opens the gate to, vi, 333  
 sends Málíka to his camp, vi, 333  
 treatment of Arab captives by, vi, 323, 334  
 receives the title of Zú'l Aktáf *q.v.*, vi, 335  
 returns to Párs and receives tribute, vi, 335  
 consults the astrologers, vi, 335  
 visits Cæsar in disguise, vi, 336  
 entertained by Cæsar, vi, 337  
 denounced by a Persian resident at Cæsar's court, vi, 337  
 arrested, vi, 337  
 sewed up in an ass's skin and imprisoned, vi, 338  
 pitied by an Iránian slave-girl, vi, 339  
 freed from ass's skin by slave-girl, vi, 340  
 entertained by a gardener, vi, 341 *seq.*  
 sends the gardener to the high priest, vi, 344  
 described by the gardener, vi, 344
- Shápúr, praises the slave-girl, vi, 346  
 prepares to attack Cæsar, vi, 346  
 sends spies to Taisafún, vi, 346  
 sends tidings of his victory over Cæsar to the provinces, vi, 348  
 treatment of Cæsar by, vi, 349  
 invades Rúm, vi, 350  
 defeats Yánuš, vi, 352  
 bids Bazánúsh come to him, vi, 354  
 dictates terms of peace, vi, 355  
 returns to Istakhr, vi, 356  
 takes Nasfín, vi, 356  
 names and honours the slave-girl, vi, 356  
 rewards the gardener, vi, 357  
 keeps Cæsar captive, vi, 357  
 sends Cæsar's corpse to Rúm, vi, 357  
 arranges a disputation between Mání and the high priest, vi, 358  
 Mání executed by, vi, 359  
 arranges for the succession with his brother Ardshír, vi, 360 *seq.*  
 dies, vi, 362
- Shápúr, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Sapor III), 163, vi, 3, 251, 360, 371; vii, 171, 186  
 Ardshír, son of Urmuzd, resigns the throne to, vi, 364  
 Reign of, 163, vi, 365 *seq.*  
   Note on, vi, 365  
 death of, vi, 366  
   Tabarí on, vi, 365
- Shápúr, son of Yazdagird, king of Armenia, vi, 373  
 Shápúr of Rai, Kubád's commander-in-chief, vii, 184, 185; viii, 72  
 summoned to overthrow Súfarai, vii, 191

- Shápúr of Rai, conference of,  
with Kubád, vii, 192 -  
goes to Shíráz and arrests  
Súfarai, vii, 193  
conveys Súfarai to Sháh  
Kubád, vii, 194
- Shápúr, Íránian noble, *temp.*  
Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333
- Shápúr, Íránian warrior, 172,  
viii, 202, 225, 257, 259,  
269, 293, 296  
deceived by Cæsar's talis-  
man, viii, 273  
praised by Cæsar, viii,  
279
- Bahrám Chúbína writes to,  
viii, 285  
receives Istakhr and Dáráb-  
gird, viii, 313
- Shápúr, father of Píróz, ix,  
80
- Shápúr Gird (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*)  
city, vi, 295, 298
- Shatt-al-Árab, the combined  
streams of the Tigris and  
Euphrates, ix, 67
- Sháwarán, Íránian hero, 151, ii,  
73, 90, 111, 228, 249, 250,  
255, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34,  
43, 45, 48, 67, 115, 334,  
iv, 97, 105, 147, 275
- Shawwál, the tenth Muham-  
madan month, vi, 208
- Sheep's heads, Bahrám Chúbína  
and the, viii, 74, 107  
omen of, reported to Hur-  
muzd, viii, 108
- Shem, patiararch, vi, 65
- Shepherds, Kai Khusrau brought  
up by, ii, 328 *seq.*
- Sher-kappí, viii, 322 *note*
- Shíbán, vi, 397
- Shída (Pashang), son of Afrá-  
siyáb, 152, i, 92; iii, 262,  
350; iv, 10 *seq.*, 15, 135,  
156, 158 *seq.*, 206, 222,  
287, 290  
consulted by his father, iii,  
250 *seq.*  
goes on embassy to Púlád-  
wand, iii, 255
- Shída, refuses to interfere in the  
fight between Rustam and  
Púládwand, iii, 363  
sent by Afrásiyáb to Khá-  
razm, iv, 11  
defeated by Ashkash, iv,  
60, 72  
commands the left wing, iv,  
155  
surname of, meaning of, iv,  
155 *note*  
urges Afrásiyáb to attack  
Kai Khusrau, iv, 159  
Afrásiyáb's reply to, iv,  
160  
wishes to meet Kai Khus-  
rau in single combat, iv,  
161  
goes on an embassy to  
Kai Khusrau, iv, 161  
skirmish of, with Íránian  
outposts, iv, 164  
welcomed by Káran, iv,  
165  
mail and steed of, iv, 168  
receives Kai Khusrau's reply,  
iv, 170  
returns to Afrásiyáb, iv, 170  
goes to fight Kai Khusrau,  
iv, 171  
parley of, with Kai Khus-  
rau, iv, 172  
challenges Kai Khusrau to  
a wrestling-bout, iv, 173  
urged by his interpreter to  
flee from Kai Khusrau, iv,  
174  
refuses, iv, 174  
wrestles and is overthrown,  
iv, 175  
Kai Khusrau instructs Ruh-  
hám to bury, iv, 176
- Shídásp, minister to Tahmúras,  
i, 127
- Shídásp, son of Gushtásp, 155,  
ii, 3; v, 26, 58  
death of, foretold by Jámásp  
v, 50  
given command of one wing,  
v, 55  
slain, v, 58

- Shidúsh, Íránian hero, i, 211; ii, 58, 85, 158, 340; iii, 33, 45, 48, 127, 129, 130, 139, 141, 157, 248, 253; iv, 13, 15, 25, 191  
 with Káran and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354  
 put in command of the rear, iv, 92  
 Kai\*Khusráu remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275  
 Shí'ite, Shí'ites, Muhammadan sect, i, 13  
 origin of, i, 13  
 Firdausí a, i, 24  
 Shikbán, Íránian warrior, vi, 395  
 Shiknán, place, vii, 359  
 Shingán, region, iii, 228, 238; iv, 65  
 Shíráz, city in Párs (Farsistán), 166, i, 236; vi, 198 *note*, 210; vii, 6, 173, 190, 193, 194  
 Shírin, wife of Khusráu Parwíz, 174, 175, viii, 187, 194, 363, 383, 407; ix, 28, 36  
 enmity of, to Shírwí, viii, 189, 191, 193  
 account of, viii, 192  
 Khusráu and, Persian poem, viii, 192  
 meaning of, viii, 193  
 Maryam murdered by, viii, 193, 389  
 a Christian, viii, 195  
 warns Khusráu Parwíz against Gurdaya, viii, 364  
 Khusráu Parwíz and, ix, 7  
 Story of, 174, viii, 382  
 married to, viii, 386  
 gilded chamber given to, viii, 389  
 hears Kubád proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416  
 informs Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 416  
 has charge of Shírwí's horoscope, ix, 16  
 Shírin, has charge of Rája's letter ix, 17  
 companions Khusráu Parwíz in prison, ix, 29  
 reproached and summoned by Shírwí, ix, 36  
 makes her Will, ix, 36  
 goes to Court, ix, 37  
 justifies herself, ix, 38, 40  
 exonerated, ix, 38, 41  
 sons of, ix, 39  
 unveils to the Court, ix, 39  
 Shírwí enamoured of, ix, 39  
 makes request of Shírwí, ix, 40, 41  
 goes home, ix, 40  
 distributes her wealth, ix, 40  
 frees her slaves, ix, 41  
 poisons herself, ix, 42  
 Shírkhán (Shírván, district and town west of the Caspian between the Kur river and Darband?), i, 169  
 Shírkhún, a Zabulí, v, 184  
 guides Bahman to Rustam, v, 184  
 Shíró, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26  
 slain, v, 57  
 Shíróya, son of Bízhan, iv, 360  
 goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360  
 Shírwán (Shírván?) iii, 216.  
*See* Shírkhán.  
 Shírwí, Íránian hero, i, 207, 215  
 helps to take the Castle of the Alans, i, 223 *seq.*  
 conveys the spoil to Farídún, i, 230, 232  
 Shírwí, Núshírwán's commander-in-chief, vii, 251  
 appointed to receive the Rúman tribute, vii, 262  
 Shírwí (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 188, 190, 371 *seq.*; ix, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64  
 Shírin's enmity to, viii, 189, 191, 193  
 internment of, viii, 194, 196, 391  
 released, viii, 196, 415

- Sh'rwí (Kubád), secret and public names of, viii, 372, 416  
 astrologers consulted at birth of, viii, 372  
 ill-omened horoscope of, viii, 372; ix, 16  
 referred to, viii, 373, 390  
 kept by Shírin, ix, 16  
 Khusrau Parwíz gives Caesar's gifts to, viii, 381  
 boorishness of, viii, 390  
 Khusrau Parwíz' displeasure with, viii, 390  
 sends to take Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 419  
 Reign of, 175, ix, 3  
 Note on, ix, 3  
 Length of, ix, 42  
 treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 7  
 writes to Heraclius, ix, 7  
 Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, ix, 27  
 reproaches and summons Shírin, ix, 36, 37  
 falls in love with Shírin, ix, 39  
 grants Shírin's requests, ix, 40, 42  
 poisoned, ix, 42  
 son of, ix, 42  
 Shírzád, herald in Núshírwán's host, vii, 252  
 Shírzíl, Iránian warrior, viii, 296  
 Shíz (Takht-i-Sulaimán), seat of the Magi in Ázarbáiján, i, 60; viii, 190  
 Fire-temple at, vii, 5  
 Khátún sent to, vii, 5  
 Shoemaker, Bahrám Gúr and the, 164, vii, 24  
 Núshírwán and the, 169, vii, 218, 260  
 offer of, to advance money to Núshírwán, viii, 48  
 rejected, viii, 50, 71  
 Shu'ba Mughíra, companion of the Prophet, ix, 69, 83  
 embassy of, ix, 69, 82  
 Shu'ib, Arab chief, 158, vi, 21  
 attacks Dáráb, vi, 21  
 defeated and slain, vi, 22  
 Shúlak, Gushtásp's steed (Dakíki), v, 73  
 Asfandiyár's steed (Firdausi), v, 126  
 Shúráb (Sura), city on the Euphrates, east of Antioch, vii, 217  
 place of Gushtásp's exile, vii, 254  
 taken by Núshírwán, vii, 217, 254  
 Shúrsán, vi, 379  
 Shús (Sús, Susa), city on the Karkhah river north west of Shúshtar in Khúzistán, vi, 327  
 Shúshtar, Shústár, city on the Dujayl (Kárún) river in Khúzistán, vi, 199, 295  
 and note, 299; viii, 381  
 dam and bridge at, vi, 298, 326  
 Sicily, vi, 30  
 Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30  
 Siege-operations, iii, 246; iv, 203  
*seq.*; vii, 254, 257  
 Signs, the Twelve (Zodiac), vii, 408  
 Sigz, man of (Rustam), ii, 100  
 and note; iii, 183, 209, 218, 221  
 Sigzian, a native of Sigz, v, 226  
 and note 228  
 = Rustam, iii, 209, 225, 227; v, 241  
 = Zawára, v, 226, 228  
 = Farámarz, v, 228  
 Sikandar (Iskandar, Alexander the Great, *q.v.*), Sháh, 158-160, i, 42, 49; ii, 3, 8 *seq.*; v, 30; vi, 11, 13, 16, 18, 29, 30, 33, 193, 210, 240  
 and note, 325, 353; viii, 52, 214, 217, 242, 262, 381, 387, 392; ix, 26  
 paternity of, i, 55 and note

Sikandar, derivation of, in Tābarī, vi, 19  
 derivation of, in Shāhnāma, vi, 19, 26  
 birth of, vi, 18, 26  
 adopted as his heir by Failakūs, vi, 27  
 counselled by Arastālīs, vi, 35  
 refuses tribute to Dārā, vi, 36  
 prepares for war with Dārā, vi, 37  
 invades, and defeats king of, Misr, vi, 30, 37  
 Írán, vi, 30, 37 *seq.*  
 visit of, to the camp of Dārā, vi, 38  
 invited to banquet with Dārā, vi, 40  
 takes the golden cups of Dārā, vi, 40  
 recognised, vi, 40  
 escapes, vi, 41  
 defeats Dārā, vi, 43, 44, 46  
 issues proclamation to the Íránians, vi, 44, 47  
 gives the spoil to his troops, vi, 44, 47  
 marches from 'Írák against Dārā, vi, 46  
 enters Istakhr, vi, 46  
 answers Dārā's letter, vi, 50  
 marches from Istakhr, vi, 51  
 hears of Dārā's murder, vi, 52  
 arrests Dārā's murderers, vi, 53  
 finds Dārā still living, vi, 53  
 promises to avenge Dārā, vi, 53  
 promises to carry out Dārā's last wishes, vi, 54  
 Dārā bestows Rúshanak upon, vi, 55, 86  
 laments for, and buries, Dārā, vi, 55, 56  
 executes Dārā's murderers, vi, 56  
 hailed as ruler by the Íránians, vi, 56

Sikandar, sends envoys to Ispahán and to the family of Dārā, and letters to the provinces, to announce his accession, vi, 57  
 crowned Sháh at Istakhr, vi, 59  
 Reign of, 158, vi, 60 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 60 *seq.*  
 diagram to illustrate Persian Romance of, vi, 84  
 inaugural address of, vi, 85  
 correspondence of, with the wife and daughter of Dārā, vi, 33, 86, *seq.*  
 marries Rúshanak, vi, 90  
 invades Hind, vi, 98  
 Kaid and, vi, 61, 98  
 approaches Millád, vi, 61, 98  
 inquires about the Four Wonders of Kaid, vi, 100  
 Four Wonders and other gifts sent by Kaid to, vi, 103  
 marries daughter of Kaid, vi, 104  
 sage of Kaid and, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*  
 principle of the cup explained to, vi, 109  
 conceals his treasures, vi, 110 and *note*  
 advances to Kannúj, vi, 110  
 troops of, protest, vi, 113  
 remonstrates with his troops, vi, 113  
 troops of, ask pardon, vi, 114  
 war of, with Fúr (Porus), vi, 67, 110 *seq.*  
 hears of Fúr's elephants, vi, 115  
 his device to overcome, vi, 115  
 challenges Fúr to single combat, vi, 116  
 slays Fúr, vi, 117  
 Fúr's troops submit to, vi, 118  
 becomes king of Hind, vi, 118

- Sikandar, bestows Hind on  
 Sawurg, vi, 118  
 visit of, to Mecca and the  
 Kaaba, vi, 64, 67, 119 *seq.*  
 ends the rule of the Khuzá'  
 in Arabia, vi, 120  
 sets up Nasr instead of the  
 Khuzá', vi, 120,  
 goes to Judda, vi, 121  
 marches to Misr, vi, 121  
 welcomed by king of, vi,  
 121  
 stays for a year in, vi, 121  
 Kaidáfa (Candace) and, vi,  
 vi, 65, 121 *seq.*  
 portrait of, obtained by  
 Kaidáfa, vi, 122  
 Kaidáfa praised by Kabtún  
 to, vi, 122  
 writes to Kaidáfa, vi, 123  
 Kaidáfa's answer to, vi, 123  
 assumes the name of Nait-  
 kún (Antigonus), vi, 66,  
 125 *seq.*  
 pleads (as Naitkún) for  
 Kaidrúsh and his wife, vi,  
 126  
 goes (as Naitkún) to Kai-  
 dáfa, vi, 127  
 graciously received by Kai-  
 dáfa, vi, 128  
 audiences of, with Kaidáfa,  
 vi, 128 *seq.*  
 recognised by Kaidáfa, vi,  
 129 *seq.*  
 delivers his message, as  
 envoy, to Kaidáfa, vi, 129,  
 134  
 covenant of, with Kaidáfa,  
 vi, 132, 138  
 warned by Kaidáfa against  
 Tainúsh, vi, 133  
 insulted by Tainúsh, vi, 134  
 counsels Kaidáfa about Tai-  
 núsh, vi, 135  
 covenant of, with Tainúsh,  
 vi, 136  
 Kaidáfa's gifts to, vi, 140  
 returns with Tainúsh, vi, 141  
 welcomed by his troops, vi,  
 141
- Sikandar, reveals himself to Tai-  
 núsh, vi, 142  
 entertains at a banquet,  
 gives gifts to, and dis-  
 misses, Tainúsh, vi, 143  
 final message of, to Kaidáfa,  
 vi, 143  
 Brahmans hear of the com-  
 ing of, and write to, vi,  
 143  
 interview of, with the Brah-  
 mans, vi, 67, 144 *seq.*  
 quits the Brahmans, vi, 147  
 Fish-eaters (Ichthyophagi,  
*q.v.*) and, vi, 69, *seq.*, 147,  
 177  
 adventure of, with a whale,  
 vi, 71, 147  
 sees gigantic reeds (bam-  
 boos), vi, 71, 148  
 attacked by snakes, scor-  
 pions, and boars, vi, 148  
 the people of Habash, vi,  
 149  
 the Narmpái, vi, 150  
 adventure of, with a dragon,  
 vi, 71, 151  
 visits the temple of Diony-  
 sus, vi, 71, 152, 166  
 warned of his death, vi, 152,  
 161, 166  
 marches toward Harúm, the  
 City of Women (Amazons  
*q.v.*), vi, 153 *seq.*  
 encounters snow and frost,  
 vi, 156  
 encounters great heat, vi,  
 157  
 encounters the negroes, vi,  
 157  
 reaches and inspects Harúm,  
 vi, 157  
 marches westward and finds  
 a fair-haired race, vi, 73,  
 158  
 hears of the Gloom, *q.v.*, and  
 of the Fount of Life, *q.v.*,  
 and prepares to visit them  
 vi, 158  
 sets forth with Khizr as  
 guide, vi, 159

- Sikandar, Khizr and, part company, vi, 160  
 fails to find the Fount of Life, vi, 160  
 interview of, with birds, vi, 160  
 interview of, with Isráfil, vi, 78, 161  
 emerges from the Gloom, vi, 162  
 marches eastward, vi, 163  
 hears of Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 163  
 barrier of, 160, i, 16; vi, 78, 164, 249  
 Speaking Tree visited by, vi, 167 *seq.* See Tree.  
 reaches "The World's End," vi, 168  
 receives gifts, vi, 169  
 expedition of, to Chín, vi, 80, 169 *seq.*  
 goes as his own ambassador to the Faghfúr, vi, 170  
 describes himself, vi, 171  
 Faghfúr's gifts to, vi, 173  
 departs with Faghfúr's envoy, vi, 173  
 identity of, discovered by the envoy, vi, 173  
 dismisses the envoy with gifts and a message to Faghfúr, vi, 174  
 arrives at Chaghwán, vi, 174  
 marches to Sind, vi, 175  
 defeats Bandáwa, chief of the Sindians, vi, 175  
 marches to Nímrúz, vi, 175  
 receives gifts from the king of Yaman, vi, 175  
 meets Gúsh-bistar, vi, 177  
 carries off the treasures of Kai Khusrau, vi, 178  
 policy of, for safeguarding Rúm after his decease, vi, 81, 178, 197  
 adopts the advice of Aras-tális, vi, 180
- Sikandar, arrives at Bábil, vi, 180  
 prodigious birth at, vi, 81, 180  
 consults the astrologers on, vi, 180  
 warned of his end, vi, 180  
 sickens, vi, 181  
 Will of, vi, 81, 181  
 grief of the troops for, vi, 183, 184  
 dies, vi, 183  
 dispute as to burial of, vi, 184  
 body of, taken to Iskandariya, vi, 185  
 sentences of sages over, vi, 82, 83, 185  
 cities of, vi, 83, 189  
 Zoroastrian and Sásanian view of, i, 59 and *note*, 61 *seq.*; vi, 15 and *note*, 224, 240; vii, 79 and *note*
- Silk, account of, vi, 204  
 introduction of, into the West, vi, 204  
 Silk-worm. See Silk.
- Silvia, vestal, v, 293
- Símáh Barzín, scribe, Hurmuzd plots against, 170, viii, 85, *seq.*
- Simmas, chief herdsman of Ninus, v, 292
- Símurgh, mythical bird, 156, 157, i, 51; iii, 158, 313, 330; v, 117, 132 *seq.*, 166, 246, 248, 255  
 described, i, 235 and *note*, 253, 276, 302, 326, v, 132  
 nest of, on Mount Alburz, i, 241, 244, 250  
 young of, i, 242, 250, v, 132, 133  
 finds and brings up the infant Zál, i, 242  
 informs Zál of his parentage, i, 245  
 gives Zál one of her feathers, i, 246, 321  
 their efficacy, i, 246, 320  
 restores Zál to Sám, i, 247

- Simurgh, referred to, i, 251  
 succours Rūdāba, i, 320 *seq.*  
 foretells Rustam's future  
 greatness, i, 321  
 slain by Asfandiyār, v, 133  
 summoned to Rustam's aid  
 by Zāl, v, 235 *seq.*  
 heals Rustam and Rakhsh,  
 v, 237  
 instructs Rustam how to  
 overcome Asfandiyār, v,  
 237
- Sind, the river Indus and the  
 parts adjacent, i, 113; ii,  
 285; iii, 10 *note*, 117, 185,  
 216, 238 iv, 65, 71; v,  
 75, 180, 203, 277; vi, 113;  
 vii, 110, 112, 390  
 king of, iii, 185; vi, 113,  
 entertained by Bahram  
 Gūr, vii, 140 *seq.*  
 kings of, send tribute to  
 Gushtāsp, v, 75  
 chiefs of, vi, 123  
 • warriors of, vi, 132, 137  
 Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
- Sindbad, the sailor, vi, 71  
 lands on a whale, vi, 71
- Sinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*
- Sindian, Sindians, 160, vii, 126  
 defeated by Sikandar, vi,  
 175
- Sindukht, wife of Mihrāb and  
 mother of Rūdāba, 141, i,  
 259, 299  
 Mihrāb praises Zāl to, i, 260  
 discovers the loves of Zāl  
 and Rūdāba, i, 281  
 reproaches Rūdāba, i, 282  
 informs Mihrāb about Zāl  
 and Rūdāba, i, 284  
 goes with gifts to Sām, i,  
 300 *seq.*  
 well received by Sām, i, 302  
 invites Sām to visit Kābul,  
 i, 305  
 returns to Kābul, i, 306  
 hears of Zāl's success with  
 Minūchihr, i, 315  
 felicitates Rūdāba, i, 315
- Sindukht, Mihrāb and, prepare  
 to welcome Sām and Zāl,  
 i, 315, 317  
 entertain Sām and Zāl, i,  
 317 *seq.*  
 visit Sām in Sīstān, i, 319
- Sinjibū, first historical Khān of  
 the Turks, vii, 317  
 relations of, with Nūshīr-  
 wān, vii, 317  
 Haitālians and, vii, 317
- Sipahram, Tūrānian hero, 151;  
 ii, 228, 229, 388; iv, 26,  
 103  
 chosen to fight with Hajr,  
 iv, 97  
 slain by Hajr, iv, 104
- Sipand (Spentō-dāta, *q.v.*, Spen-  
 dyad, Sapad, White  
 Castle), mountain north-  
 west of Nishāpūr, 142, i,  
 377; ii, 118; v, 30, 116,  
 117  
 Malcolm's identification and  
 description of, i, 236
- Zāl bids Rustam take, i, 329  
 described, i, 329  
 taken by Rustam, i, 331  
 treasures of, i, 331, 332  
 hold of, destroyed by Zāl's  
 orders, i, 333
- Sipandārmad, ameshaspenta,  
*q.v.*, iii, 287, 328; v, 18  
 month, i, 89; iv, 252; ix,  
 70, 122  
 day, i, 88, 89, viii, 331
- Sipanjāb (Farghāna?), region, i,  
 375; ii, 241, 342, 344, 345  
 358; iii, 151
- Sipansār, Irānian warrior, viii, 293
- Sīstān = Nīmrūz = Zābulistān,<sup>2</sup>  
 144, 149, 155, i, 319;  
 ii, 80, 335, 365; iii, 165,  
 166, 191, 207, 321, 356;  
 iv, 14, 278; v, 13, 17, 29,  
 85, 86, 89, 94, 173, 174,  
 201, 220, 248, 261, 264,  
 267; vi, 32, 198; vii, 214  
 former capital of, i, 4  
 lake of, i, 4; v, 239 *note*

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Vol. v., p. 30.<sup>2</sup> See p. 333 *note*.

Sístán, origin of name, i, 19  
 invaded by Shamásás and  
 Khazarwán, i, 358  
 mourning in, for Rustam, v,  
 278  
 invaded by Bahman, v, 284  
*seq.*  
 Sitr, Persian measure of weight,  
 iii, 184  
 Sitúh, Túránian hero, v, 86, 87  
 goes as a spy to Írán and  
 reports to Arjasp, v, 86,  
 87  
 Siyah Chasm, slave of Farrukh-  
 zád, ix, 62  
 handmaid of Farrukhzád  
 and, ix, 62  
 imprisoned, ix, 62  
 released, ix, 62  
 poisons Farrukhzád, ix, 63  
 Siyámak, son of Gaiúmart, 139,  
 i, 117, 119  
 slain by the Black Div, i, 120  
 lamentations over, i, 120  
 Siyámak, Túránian hero, 151, iv,  
 97  
 chosen to fight with Guráza,  
 iv, 97  
 slain by Guráza, iv, 100  
 Siyávaksh. *See* Siyáwush.  
 Siyáwashána. *See* Siyáwush.  
 Siyáwush, son of Kai Káuś, and  
 father of Farúd and Kai  
 Khusrau, 144-148; i, 55,  
 92; ii, 3, 25, 82, 104 *note*  
 187 *seq.*, 335, 338 *seq.*, 346  
*seq.*, 363, 371, 372, 374  
*seq.*, 383, 386, 388, 396,  
 403, 411; iii, 8, 13, 18, 19,  
 21, 22, 29, 39, 42, 43, 51,  
 52, 57, 66, 67, 71, 72, 87,  
 93, 99, 112, 117, 118, 137,  
 146, 148, 149, 156, 163,  
 183, 197, 199, 200, 201, 203  
*seq.*, 211, 214, 226, 237,  
 238, 256, 283, 289, 297,  
 307, 315, 324, 347; iv, 7,  
 17, 18, 34, 50, 51, 70 *seq.*,  
 89, 90, 95, 96, 102, 109,  
 120, 127, 129, 130, 137,  
 152, 159, 162, 167, 168,

Siyáwush—*cont.*

172, 201, 202, 204, 205,  
 214, 215, 221, 223, 231,  
 235, 249, 250, 252, 257,  
 267, 270, 271, 283, 285,  
 289, 299, 305, 307, 310;  
 v, 174, 176, 192, 208, 272;  
 viii, 104, 349, 395 *note*;  
 ix, 25 and *note*, 26 *note*,  
 103  
 mother of, 144, ii, 3  
 Story of, 144, ii, 188 *seq.*  
 Note on, ii, 188 *seq.*  
 good example of Fir-  
 dausi's method, ii, 188  
 Prelude to, ii, 191  
 identical with Cambyzes,  
 the father of Cyrus the  
 Great, in legend, ii, 191  
 adventure of the mother of,  
 ii, 193  
 destined to misfortune from  
 birth, ii, 196  
 brought up by Rustam, ii,  
 196  
 horoscope of, ii, 196, 205,  
 234  
 returns to court, ii, 197  
 made ruler of Kuhistán, ii,  
 199  
 mourns for his mother's  
 death, ii, 199  
 temptation of, by Súdába,  
 ii, 200 *seq.*  
 marches against Afrásiyáb,  
 ii, 225 *seq.*  
 demands hostages of Afrá-  
 siyáb, ii, 239 *seq.*  
 goes over to Afrásiyáb, ii,  
 258 *seq.*  
 plays at polo with Afrásiyáb  
 ii, 264  
 archery of, ii, 266, 293  
 marriage of, with Jaríra, ii,  
 268 *seq.*  
 marriage of, with Farangís,  
 ii, 270 *seq.*  
 entertained by Pirán, ii, 278  
 builds cities, ii, 278 *seq.*  
 consults the astrologers, ii,  
 282

- Siyáwush, foretells the future to  
 Pirán, ii, 282 *seq.*  
 entertains Pirán, ii, 287  
 entertains Garsíwaz, ii, 290  
*seq.*  
 plays at polo with Garsíwaz,  
 ii, 292  
 challenged by Garsíwaz, ii,  
 294  
 overthrows Gurwí and Dá-  
 múr, ii, 295  
 slandered by Garsíwaz to  
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 296 *seq.*  
 summoned to court by  
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 300 *seq.*  
 betrayed by Garsíwaz, ii,  
 301 *seq.*  
 excuses himself from going  
 to court, ii, 306  
 passion of, ii, 307 *seq.*  
 foretells the future to Faran-  
 gís, ii, 310 *seq.*  
 charges and turns loose  
 Bihzád, ii, 312  
 attacked and taken by  
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 314  
 execution of, ii, 320  
     referred to, iv, 268  
 Blood of (plant), ii, 321  
 birth-mark of, iii, 49  
 mail of, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81,  
 iv, 40 *seq.*, 51  
 murderer of = Afrásiyáb, iv,  
 198  
 garth of = Siyáwushgird, iv,  
 238  
 goods of, viii, 148, 151  
 Siyáwush, Iránian chief, 172;  
 viii, 128, 163, 187, 233  
     son of = Bahrám, viii, 247  
 Siyáwush, wild duck, ii, 104  
*note*  
 Siyáwushgird, city built by Siyá-  
 wush, 145, 146, 153; ii,  
 301, 314, 373; iv, 250,  
 252  
     building and description of,  
     ii, 285 *seq.*  
     becomes the home of Kai  
     Khusrau, ii, 333  
     referred to, iv, 238
- Skirts, binding together of, in  
 battle, iv, 85 and *note*, 177  
 and *note*, 209
- Slavs, viii, 194
- Smerdis, the false, v, 11; vi, 207
- Snakes = Arabs, ix, 91
- Snowstorm, iii, 108
- Iránian host distressed by,  
     iii, 71, 128; v, 137; vi, 156  
     paladins of Kai Khusrau  
     lost in, iv, 308 *seq.*
- Sohrab and Rustam, Matthew  
 Arnold's, ii, 118
- Sol, planet, viii, 395
- Soma. *See* Homa.
- Son of Firdausí, death of, viii,  
 190
- Song, of a dív, ii, 31  
     of Rustam, ii, 51  
     of Asfandiyár, v, 129  
     of the daughter of Barzín,  
     vii, 52  
     of the daughter of Máhiyár,  
     vii, 60, 61, 66
- Sophia, Empress, her treatment  
 of Narses, viii, 76
- Sorcerer, a Jewish, brings about  
 the death of Nushirwán's  
 minister, Mahbúd, vii, 320  
*seq.*
- Sorceress, Rustam and a, 143, ii,  
 50 *seq.*
- Súdába and a, 144, ii, 214  
*seq.*
- Asfandiyár and a, 156, v, 128  
*seq.*
- Sóshyans, the Zoroastrian Mes-  
 siah, i, 131
- Souterrain, ii, 137 iv, 212
- Spain (Andalus), vi, 66
- Spand-dát (Spento-dáta, Asfan-  
 diyár), v, 24 *seq.*
- Span-dát-náma (Asfandiyár—  
 náma), v, 26, 27
- Speaking Tree, the, 160. *See*  
 Tree.
- Speech, modes of, viii, 30
- Spendyád, mountain. *See*  
 Spento-dáta.
- Spento-dáta (Spand-dát, As-  
 fandiyár *q.v.*), v, 12

Spentó-dáta (*Spendyad*, *Sapad*, *Sipand q.v.*), mountain north-west of Nishápúr, ii, 118; v, 30, 116, 117

Sphinés. *See* Calanus.

Spica, star, i, 245, 271; viii, 379

Spitama, clan name of Zarduhsht (*Zoroaster*), i, 236; iv, 15

Spityura, brother of Yima (*Jamshíd*), i, 130

Spring, a, 143  
of Sav, *q.v.*, 163

Sróvbar, mythical serpent, i, 172

Stages, the Seven, 156. *See* Asfandiyár.

Stateira. *See* Barsine.

Steed, piece in chess. *See* Horse.

Steeds, iron, Sikandar's, 159, vi, 115  
filled with naphtha, vi, 115  
Fúr's elephants and troops routed by, vi, 116

Stone, the Black. *See* Black.

Strabo, Greek geographer (born c. 63 B.C.), vi, 68, 81

Strength, handgrip as test of. *See* Handgrip.

Subuktigin, father of Sultán Mahmúd, account of, i, 20  
title of, i, 21  
referred to by, i, 100, 114

Súdába, daughter of the king of Hámavarán and wife of Kai Káuś, 143-146, ii, 3, 79, 188, 189, 200, *seq.* 225, 249, 257, 335, 339  
description of, ii, 86  
marries Kai Káuś, ii, 88  
imprisoned with Kai Káuś by her father, ii, 91  
released by Rustam, ii, 97  
temptation of Siyáwush by, ii, 200 *seq.*  
slain by Rustam, ii, 340  
referred to, v, 174

Súfarai (*Sarkhán*, *Sukhrá*, *Seoses*?), 166, vii, 170  
and *note*, 171, 173 *seq.*: viii, 72, 75, 168, 285  
appointed minister to the regent Balásh, vii, 164

Súfarai, glorification of, in Iránian tradition, vii, 170  
account of, vii, 173, 184, 185  
resolves to avenge Pírúz, vii, 173  
writes to Balásh, vii, 173  
marches on Marv, vii, 174  
correspondence of, with Khúshnawáz, vii, 174  
defeats Khúshnawáz, vii, 177  
gives the spoil to the troops, vii, 177  
Khúshnawáz sues for peace to, vii, 178  
consults his troops, vii, 178  
resolves to make peace, vii, 179  
replies to Khúshnawáz, vii, 179  
returns to Írán in triumph, vii, 180  
welcomed by Balásh and the chiefs, vii, 181  
greatness of, vii, 181, 190  
dethrones Balásh and makes Kubád Sháh, vii, 182  
proverb concerning, vii, 185  
identical with Rizmihr, vii, 185  
fall of, vii, 190 *seq.*  
Kubád's letter to, vii, 193  
arrest of, vii, 193  
property of, confiscated, vii, 194  
conveyed to Sháh Kubád, vii, 194  
executed, vii, 195  
son of, (*Rizmihr*), vii, 196

Súffs, vi, 59 and *note*

Sughd (*Sughdiana*, *Samarkand*), district and city in Turkistán between the Oxus and Jaxartes, i, 19; ii, 230, 232, 237, 241, 249, 358; iii, 244; iv, 65, 188, 189, 255; vii, 331, 337, 358, 359  
Sughdiana, vi, 72. *See* Sughd.

- Sulhráb, son of Rustam and Tahmína daughter of the king of Samangán, 144, ii, 4, 25; iv, 296; v, 204; vi, 325
- Story of, 144, ii, 118 *seq.*
- Note on, ii, 118
- purely episodic, ii, 118
- Sir John Malcolm's version of, ii, 118
- Matthew Arnold's version of, ii, 118
- Prelude to, ii, 119
- lament of, for the loss of Gurdáfríd, ii, 119, *note*
- questions his mother as to his father, ii, 126
- charges of, sired by Rakhsh, ii, 128
- Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129
- gifts to, ii, 130
- invades Írán, ii, 130
- takes Hajír prisoner, ii, 131
- beguiled by Gurdáfríd, ii, 133
- described by Gazhdaham, ii, 136
- sees from White Castle the Íránian host advancing, ii, 148
- seen while feasting by Rustam, ii, 150
- hears of the death of Zhanda Razm, ii, 151
- misled by Hajír, ii, 152 *seq.*
- overthrows the camp-en closure of Káuś, ii, 160
- challenged by Rustam, ii, 161
- Rustam described by, ii, 154, 169
- advances of, to Rustam, ii, 169
- spares Rustam's life, ii, 170
- again encounters Rustam, ii, 172
- makes himself known to Rustam, ii, 173
- last requests of, to Rustam, ii, 175
- mourning for, ii, 182 *seq.*
- Súkhra. *See* Súfarai.
- Súkhta, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Sultán. *See* Mahmúd.
- Sumai, viii, 195
- Sun, on the Nature of the, 139, i, 105
- one of the seven planets, i, 72
- in astrology, i, 188, 310 and *note*
- total eclipse of, vii, 159
- Sunday, viii, 378, 380
- Sunnites, orthodox Muhammaddans, i, 13
- origin of, i, 13
- Súr, city near Ispahán, 176, iv, 146, 180; ix, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
- Sura. *See* Shúráb.
- Surkha, son of Afrásiyáb, 146, i, 92; ii, 344 *seq.*
- taken prisoner by Farámarz, ii, 345
- death of, ii, 347
- Súrsán (Zf̄b-i-Khusrau, Rómiya *q.v.*) city built by Núshirwán, 168, vii, 317, 327, 328
- Surúsh, angel, the messenger of Urmuzd, 153, 172, i, 51, 175, 182; ii, 288, 289, 364, 408; iii, 277; iv, 139, 203, 265, 285, 307; v, 170, 253; vi, 199 *note*, 372; vii, 38; viii, 173
- warns Gaiúmar against the Black Div, i, 119
- bids Gaiúmar avenge Siyámak, i, 120
- visits and instructs Farídún, i, 159
- counsels Farídún about Zahhák, i, 169
- appears to Gúdarz in a dream, ii, 363
- referred to, iv, 273
- informs Kai Khusrau that his prayer is granted, iv, 281

- Surúsh, angel, bids Kai Khusrau appoint Luhrásp as his successor, iv, 281  
 may be assumed to have accompanied Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 139, 303, 308  
 saves Khusrau Parwíz from Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 189, 299
- Surúsh, day, i, 88; vi, 411
- Surúsh, astrologer, vi, 372  
 takes Bahrám Gúr's horoscope, vi, 376
- Súsanak, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*  
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
- Susiana (Khúzistán *q.v.*), vi, 295, 321; vii, 184
- Sviatoi, island lying off western shore of the Caspian, i, 58  
*note*
- Swat, river in Northern India, vi, 65
- Swyamvara, Indian form of marriage, iv, 316
- Syávarshána (Siyáwush *q.v.*), ii, 189; iv, 137
- Syria (Shám), country, ii, 80; vi, 30; viii, 193  
 raided by Persians, viii, 41
- Syriac, version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 18, 30, 31 *seq.*, 61, 63, 65, 66, 68, 71, 72, 74, 78 *seq.*  
 Christian Legend of Alexander, vi, 14, 15, 74, 78, 84  
 quoted, vi, 15  
 metrical version of, vi, 15, 78, 84
- Syrian, ix, 66

## T

- TABÁK, Íránian chief, 161, vi, 202, 225  
 suspected by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 225
- Tabák, justifies himself, vi 226
- Ardshír Pápakán and, de-feat Bahman, vi, 226
- buries Ardawán, vi, 229
- advises Ardshír Pápakán to marry the daughter of Ardawán, vi, 229
- Tabarí, Arabic historian (A.D. 838-923), iii, 108; vi, 14  
*note*, 16, 19, 30, 198, 200, 291 *note*, 310, 313, 315, 321, 326; vii, 3 *seq.*, 156, 159, 160, 170, 171, 185, 186, 217; viii, 73, 75 *seq.*, 188; ix, 4, 56, 61, 64, 69
- account of death of Rustam by, v, 261
- etymology of Dáráb, v, 297 *note*
- Sásánians, vi, 14 *note*
- Alexander's battles with Darius, vi, 30
- Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 78
- rise of Sásánian dynasty, vi, 198
- Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198, 203
- genealogies of Pápak, vi, 200
- Worm, vi, 205, 206
- Haftwád, vi, 205, 206
- length of Ardshír Pápakán's reign, vi, 254
- Ardawán's daughter, vi, 255
- Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 255, 257
- death of Shápúr, son of Shápúr, vi, 365
- Bahrám, son of Shápúr, vi, 368
- Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371 *seq.*
- Kubád and Núshírwán's reform of taxation, vii, 183 *note*, 215
- Turks, vii, 317
- Persian, vii, 5; viii, 42, 73 *seq.*, 187 *seq.*; ix, 4, 5, 43, 70

- Tabari, Persian, story from, concerning Kubád, vii, 183  
*note*  
 Arabic, viii, 42, 73, 187, 190  
 195; ix, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50  
 Tabaristán (Mázandarán, *q.v.*), i, 39, 40; ix, 74  
 Firdausi's stay in, i, 39  
 chief of, i, 39, 40  
 patron of Firdausi, i, 39  
 Table of Contents, General, ix, 139  
 Tables, Genealogical. *See* Genealogical.  
 Tacitus, Roman historian (A.D. 55-120), iii, 10 and *note*, 15; vi, 73  
 Tahmásp, father of Zav, i, 90, 369, 370; ii, 11; iv, 283  
 Tahmína, daughter of the king of Samangán and mother of Suhráb, 144; ii, 4, 118  
 precautions of, for her son's safety, ii, 127, 140, 149  
 mourning of, for Suhráb, ii, 184 *seq.*  
 death of, ii, 186  
 Tahmúras, Sháh, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 214; ii, 168; iii, 293; iv, 133; vii, 9 and *note*, 273; viii, 277, 332, 376; ix, 25  
 Reign of, 140, i, 125 *seq.*  
 Note on, i, 125  
 Binder of the Dív (Áhriman), i, 125, 127, 214  
 Áhriman and, legend of, i, 125  
 culture hero, i, 125, 126  
 dívs rebel against, i, 127  
 conquers and enslaves the dívs, i, 127  
 taught writing by the dívs, i, 127  
 dies, i, 128  
 Firdausi's reflections on, i, 128  
 horn of, iii, 335  
 Tainúsh (Charogós, Kerátór, Kanír), son of Kaidáfa, 159; vi, 66, 67, 134 *seq.*  
 Kaidáfa warns Sikandar against, vi, 133  
 Tainúsh, Fúr's son in law, vi, 133  
 insults Sikandar, vi, 134  
 Kaidáfa chides, vi, 135  
 Kaidáfa and Sikandar consult about, vi, 135  
 makes a covenant with Sikandar, vi, 136  
 accompanies Sikandar on his return, vi, 141  
 Sikandar discovers himself to, vi, 142  
 asks grace of Sikandar, vi, 142  
 pardoned by Sikandar, vi, 142  
 entertained at a banquet, presented with gifts, and dismissed, by Sikandar, vi, 143  
 Tainúsh (Theodosius), 163, vi, 372, 389, 404  
 goes to Yazdagird as amlasador, vi, 389  
 asked by Bahrám Gúr to intercede with Yazdagird for him, vi, 389  
 obtains Bahrám Gúr's release, vi, 390, 404  
 Táír (Daizan, *q.v.*), Arab chief, 162; vi, 3, 322, 324, 330 *seq.*  
 Taisafún (Ctesiphon, *q.v.*), 168, 174; vi, 397; vii, 188, 194, 361, 363; viii, 53, 90, 109 *note*, 118, 173, 175, 180, 182, 229, 241; ix, 9, 10, 90  
 Ardshír Pápakán goes to, vi, 245  
 Shápúr's bridge at, vi, 321, 329  
 sacked by Táír, vi, 330  
 Shápúr sends spies to, vi, 346  
 Cæsar defeated and taken prisoner by Shápúr at, vi, 347  
 Núshirwán returns to, viii, 53  
 Bahrám Chúbína marches from province of, viii, 106

- Taisafún, Khusrau Parwíz imprisoned at viii, 421; ix, 9  
 Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwíz at, ix, 29
- Táj, viii, 71
- Tákdís, Throne of, 174, viii, 391  
 account of, viii, 391  
 added to by Jámásp, viii, 392
- Takht (*or* Ták)-i-Bústán, place some four miles north-east of Kirmánsháh in the Persian province of Arde-lan and famous for its Sásanian bas-reliefs, vi, 257; viii, 192  
 inscription at, vi, 257
- Takht-i-Khusrau. *See* Madá'in.
- Takht-i-Sulaimán (Shíz, *q.v.*), viii, 189
- Talhand, Indian prince, 169, vii, 394, 396 *seq.*  
 Story of Gav and, 169, vii, 394, *seq.*  
 mother of. *See* Gav.  
 birth of, vii, 396  
 tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 408, 410, 414  
 rivalry between Gav and, vii, 397 *seq.*  
 war between Gav and, vii, 404 *seq.*  
 rejects Gav's offer of accom-modation, vii, 406, 409  
 death of, foretold, vii, 408, 413, 418  
 defeated by Gav, vii, 412  
 accepts Gav's proposal for a decisive battle, vii, 415  
 defeat and death of, vii, 416
- Tálikán, city and stronghold east of Marv, ii, 228; iv, 65, 255  
 ceded by Pirúz to the Haitá-lians, vii, 156, 160  
 importance of, vii, 156
- Tálmán, Íránian hero, i, 211, 217 252  
 meets Kai Khusrau in Sughd vi, 255
- Talisman, Caesar's, 172  
 described, viii, 271, 275  
 deceives Persian envoys, viii, 272  
 mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274
- Tamarisk, plant, i, 4; v, 240, 243, 246, 247, 256  
 branch of, fatal to Asfandi-yár, v, 239 and *note*
- Tammísha (Kús), town in Eastern Mázarán, formerly a seat of Farídún's, between Sáriyah and Astarábád, i, 177, 216, 230
- Tamúz, viii, 77 *note*
- Tanais, river, iv, 315 and *note*
- Tarak, river (the Atrak, the boundary between Gur-gán and Dahistán, or the Turk flowing into the Jaxartes west of Tash-kand?), vii, 164, 165, 359
- Taráz, city now in ruins, north-east of Tashkand near the present town of Aulieh-Ata, i, 257, 266; v, 157; vi, 268; viii, 370; ix, 41  
 Cypress of=Rúddába, i, 269  
 Idols of, ii, 123, 206; iii, 248; iv, 218; viii, 370
- Tartary, iv, 156
- Taurus, constellation, iii, 168; iv, 177; vi, 151; vii, 282
- Tausar, high priest under Ard-shír Pápakán, i, 62  
 letter of, i, 63
- Tawába, Íránian hero, iii, 25
- Tawurg, Túránian hero, iv, 188  
 sent on an expedition by Afrásiyáb, iv, 188  
 defeated by Rustam, iv, 193
- Taxation, 167, vii, 224  
 Firdausi's exemption from, i, 35, 39; ix, 121  
 reform of, by Kubád, vii, 183  
*note*, 215, 225  
 Núshírwán, vii, 215, 225 *seq.*
- Taxila, Indian city, vi, 63  
 situation of, vi, 62

- Tazháv, an Íránian deserter to, and son-in-law of, Afrási-yáb, 148; iii, 27, 28  
sends Kabúda to spy out the Íránian host, iii, 73  
parleys with Gív, iii, 75  
defeated, iii, 77  
flees with Ispanwí, iii, 77  
pursued by Bízhan, iii, 77  
escapes to Afrásiyáb, iii, 78  
attacks Bahrám, iii, 100  
taken prisoner by Gív, iii, 102
- Temperaments, the four, vii, 381  
symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
- Tennyson, quoted, v, 281
- Tharthar, river in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 322
- Theodore, brother of Heraclius, viii, 194
- Theodosiopolis, city in Armenia, vii, 187
- Theodosius II. (Tainúsh, *q.v.*), Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 401-450), vi, 372; vii, 187
- Theodosius (Niyátús, *q.v.*), viii, 189
- Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 6
- Thermodon, river on the southern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72
- Thornbrake town, the world, i, 310
- Thraétaona, i, 171 *seq.*; ii, 81
- Thrita, i, 171 *seq.*
- Tiber, river, v, 294
- Tiberius II., Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 42
- Tigris (Arwand), river, vi, 294  
322; viii, 193, 194; ix, 67  
small, the, vi, 199 and *note*  
lower, vi, 291 *note*  
bridge over, vi, 321
- Tihrán, city, ii, 28; iii, 109; v, 14, 18  
edition of Sháhnáma, i, 76
- Tír, genius, iii, 287, 328  
month and day, i, 88, viii, 394
- Tírfí, eunuch of Gúzihr, vi, 198
- Tirmid, city and fortress north of the Oxus (Jíhún) where the route from Balkh to Samarkand crosses that river, ii, 229, 258; iv, 65; vii, 156, 157, 331
- Tírúdi, village in the neighbourhood of Istakhr (Persepolis), and the birth-place of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198
- Tishtar, Sirius, i, 235
- Tobit, Book of, iii, 272
- Toll-house and ford of Zark, ix, 100 and *note*, 116
- Tollman, Gív and the, 146; ii, 390  
Gushtásp and the, iv, 324, 332 and *note*, 334 *seq.*, 344 *seq.*, 351
- Trade-routes, ancient, i, 11, 57
- Traitana, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*
- Trajan, Roman Emperor (A.D. 98-117), vi, 322  
siege of Hatra by, vi, 322
- Translation, the principles adopted in the present, i, 76 *seq.*
- Translators of the Sháhnáma, list of previous, i, 87
- Treasure, of Jamshíd, 164, vii, 36  
Kai Khúsráu, 160, iv, 295; vi, 178  
Sikandar, vi, 110 and *note*  
Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 406
- Tree, the Speaking, 160, vi, 79  
described, vi, 167 *seq.*  
Sikandar visits, vi, 167, *seq.*  
warns Sikandar of his death, vi, 168, 169
- Triad of evil, Zoroastrian, i, 59  
and *note*
- Tribal, or Part, Kings, the, 160, vi, 180, 203, 204, 225, 252, 253  
origin of, vi, 179, 181, 210  
character of their rule vi, 197, 198  
number of, vi, 198

- Tribal, or Part Kings, Ardawán, the chief of, vi, 201  
 Firdausí on, vi, 210  
 Tribute, Rûm's to Íráu, vi, 24; vii, 214, 215, 248, 262, 333, 338, 362; viii, 52, 53  
 Trita, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*  
 Tshatrang-Námak, Pahlavi text, vii, 380, 381  
 Tughrál, a species of falcon, vii, 49  
   described, vii, 48  
   Bahráu Gúr's, vii, 48 *seq.*  
 Tukhár, Farúd's counsellor, 147, iii, 43 *seq.*  
   tells Farúd the blazons of the Íránian chiefs, iii, 44  
   counsels Farúd, iii, 47, 52 *seq.*  
 Tukhár, king of Dahistán, iv, 148  
   commands with Fariburz the troops from Kháwar, iv, 148  
   slays a scout from Makrán, iv, 242  
 Tukhár, Íránian chief, viii, 228  
   takes letter to Cæsar, viii, 263  
 Tukhár, Íránian general, conspires against Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 414  
   releases Shírwí, viii, 415  
   refuses to help Píruíz against Guráz, ix, 48  
 Tukhára, Íránian warrior, viii, 296  
   son of, viii, 314  
 Tûmâspa (Tahmâsp, *q.v.*), i, 369  
 Tûr, second son of Farídûn and ruler of Tûrán, 140, 141, i, 42, 90 *seq.*, 335, 337, 342, 344, 362; ii, 8, 17, 19, 99, 237, 262, 297, 302, 303, 318, 327, 363, 390; iii, 7, 30, 37, 115, 197, 245, 246; iv, 11, 34, 66, 69, 70, 78, 166, 167, 188, 201, 203, 206, 269, 272, 290; v, 42, 206, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 300, 376  
   *note*, 378; ix, 103  
   racial significance of, i, 54  
 Tûr, etymology of, i, 174  
   naming of, i, 187  
   horoscope of, i, 188  
   made ruler over the Turkmans and Çtîn, i, 189  
   plots with Salm, i, 190  
   Salm and, demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191  
   Íraj visits, i, 198  
   reception of Íraj by, i, 198, *seq.*  
   slay Íraj, i, 201  
   send Íraj's head to Farídûn, i, 202  
   hear of Minúchihr, i, 208  
   send an embassy to Farídûn, i, 208  
   receive Farídûn's reply, i, 213 *seq.*  
   prepare for war, i, 215  
   parley of, with Kubád, i, 217  
   Salm and, worsted by Minúchihr, i, 220  
   plan a night-surprise, i, 220  
   worsted, i, 221  
   slain by Minúchihr, i, 221  
   head of, sent to Farídûn, i, 222  
 Fire-temple at Bukhára built by, iv, 255  
 daughter of, iv, 304  
 =Tûrán, iv, 51, 164  
 chief of =Hûmán, iv, 51  
 prince of =Shída, iv, 164  
 Tûrán (Turkistân), the legendary patrimony of Tûr, *q.v.* and a general name for the non-Íránian regions north of the Oxus (Jihún), 142, 146, 148, 152, 153, 165, 167; i, 189, 229, 351, 371, ii, 9, 18, 25, 79, 82, 101, 112 and *passim*; iii, 8, 11, 15, 25, 29 and *passim*; iv, 10, 15, 17, 19, 20, and *passim*; v, 12, 20 *seq.*, 25, 32, 41, 43, 45, 53, 61, and *passim*; vi, 43, 182, 398; vii, 43, 92, 136, 156, 178; viii, 118, 123, 130, 242,

Túrán—*cont.*

- 329, 331, 349, 350, 376,  
405, 407; ix, 11, 89, 99  
monarch of Chín and = Afrá-  
siyáb, ii, 99  
host of, ii, 110  
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142  
Túránians (Turkmans), 143, 148,  
149, 151-153, 155, 165;  
i, 9, 10, 54; ii, 11, 81, 265;  
iii, 30, 115, 320, 322; iv,  
7, 81, 129, 223, 227; v,  
13, 20, 116; vii, 90; viii,  
123, 320  
historical relations of, with  
the Iránians, i, 16  
Turk, Turks, i, 10, 20; viii, 95,  
103, 121, 135, 136, 138  
*seq.*, 142, 164, 169, 170,  
189, 316, 320, 349, 352;  
ix, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114,  
117, 120  
confused with the Haitá-  
lians, vii, 4  
historical appearance of, vii,  
317  
Tabarl on, vii, 317  
defeat the Haitálians, vii,  
332  
described, vii, 332  
War of, with Persians, viii,  
72  
propheied, viii, 98  
= Sáwa, viii, 98  
defeated, viii, 126  
find Sáwa's corpse, viii, 127  
sorcerer, sends ill dream to  
Bahrám Chúbína, viii,  
121, 128  
put to death, viii, 129  
heads of chiefs of, sent to  
Hurmuzd, viii, 130  
retreat to Túrán, viii, 131  
three, the, viii, 187, 204  
one of, attacks Khusrau  
Parwíz, viii, 220  
reproved by Bahrám  
Chúbína, viii, 221  
lead night-attack on Khus-  
rau Parwíz, viii, 227  
= Makátúra, viii, 319

- Turk, Turks = Kulún, viii, 345  
defeated by Yalán-sína, viii,  
353  
Turkhán, Túránian hero, v, 151  
sent with troops to recon-  
noitre outside the Brazen  
Hold, v, 151  
Turkish, ix, 87  
Turkistán (Túrán), 147, ii, 19;  
iii, 109, 228; iv, 233; v,  
55; vi, 179, 278, 280, 397;  
vii, 84, 92, 118, 334, 365;  
viii, 324, 336, 363, 376,  
377, 407  
Turkman, Turkmans (Túrán-  
ians), 148, 155, i, 20, 189,  
263, 343, 352, 357; ii,  
12, 14, 15, 92, 100 and  
*passim*; iii, 30, 63, 81, 93,  
and *passim*; iv, 10, 13,  
15, 19, 20, 22, 29 and  
*passim*; v, 22, 25, 36, 39,  
40, 44, 47, 51, 52, 61, 72,  
90 *seq.*, 98 *seq.*, 104 *seq.*,  
108, 110, 113, 114, 116,  
135, 152, 157, 158, 171,  
173, 206, 254; vii, 48, 88,  
92, 97, 177, 179, 239, 344,  
364; viii, 377; ix, 25, 76,  
94  
slave-boy of Zál meets the  
damsels of Rúdába, i, 263  
*seq.*  
make peace with Zav, i, 371  
army of, surrenders to As-  
fandiyár, v, 72, 113  
monarch of = Arjásp, v, 74  
led by Kuhram, storm  
Balkh, burn the Fire-  
temple, and slay Zar-  
duhsht and the priests, v,  
92, 93  
take Gushtásp's daughters  
captive, v, 93  
kingdom of, offered by  
Asfandiyár to Gurgsár in  
return for faithful service,  
v, 120  
ordered by Arjásp to march  
out from the Brazen Hold  
in force to attack the in-

- Turkman, Turkmans—*cont.*  
 vaders under Bishútán, v,  
 152  
 hear the cries of the Írán-  
 ian watch in the Brazen  
 Hold, v, 155  
 refused quarter by Asfandi-  
 yár, v, 158  
 language, vi, 147  
 defeated by Bahrám Gúr,  
 vii, 90, 91  
 sue for peace, vii, 91  
 war of Píruz with, vii, 164  
*seq.*  
 inroads of, through the  
 Caucasus, vii, 238  
 make submission to Núshír-  
 wán, vii, 360  
 =Turk, viii, 87, 89, 94,  
 217  
 king=Afrásiyáb, ix, 25
- Tús, son of Naudar, Íránian hero,  
 146-149, 154, 176; i, 90  
 353, 370; ii, 33, 35, 38,  
 58, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 91,  
 127, 138, 142, 148, 177,  
 188, 193, 197, 199, 226,  
 257, 316, 319, 335, 338,  
 340, 349, 353 *seq.*, 371,  
 383, 394; iii, 11, 18, 19,  
 24, 25, 37 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*, 60,  
 62, 64, 66 *seq.*, 76, 78, 80,  
 82 *seq.*, 108, 111 *seq.*, 132  
*seq.*, 136 *seq.*, 145, 149  
*seq.*, 154, 155, 159, 161,  
 163, 166, 167, 169, 170,  
 172, 174, 177 *seq.*, 182,  
 183, 187, 206, 211, 213  
*seq.*, 225, 228, 230, 232,  
 234, 235, 238, 246, 248,  
 253, 254, 255, 257, 259,  
 268, 273, 277, 289, 294,  
 307, 322, 327, 329; iv, 13,  
 15, 62, 79, 91, 157, 180,  
 191, 224, 226, 227, 242,  
 292, 296, 306 *seq.*; v,  
 57, 116, 207, 208; viii,  
 168  
 Gustaham and, sent by Nau-  
 dar to conduct the Íránian  
 women to Alburz, i, 351
- Tús, Gustaham and, hear of  
 Naudar's death, i, 364  
 passed over in the succession  
 i, 369, 370  
 character of, i, 369  
 appointed captain of the  
 host, ii, 78  
 taken prisoner in Hámá-  
 varán, ii, 90  
 released by Rustam, ii, 97  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś,  
 ii, 104  
 engaged in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, ii, 107  
*seq.*  
 commanded by Kai Káuś to  
 hang Rustam and Gív,  
 ii, 143  
 encampment of, described,  
 ii, 153  
 summons Rustam to fight  
 Suhráb and helps to  
 saddle Rakhsh, ii, 160  
 quarrels with Gív over the  
 future mother of Siyá-  
 wush, ii, 194  
 supersedes Siyáwush, ii, 246  
*seq.*  
 leads the host home, ii, 258  
 intercedes for Surkha, ii,  
 347  
 worsted in fight by Afrási-  
 yáb, ii, 353  
 appointed ruler of Chách, ii,  
 358  
 returns to Írán, ii, 362  
 dispute of, with Gúdarz over  
 Kai Khusrau, ii, 400 *seq.*  
 advocates the claims of Farí-  
 burz, ii, 401  
 asks pardon of Khusrau, ii,  
 410  
 hostility of, to Farúd, iii, 13,  
 51, 62  
 marches on Kalát, iii, 40  
 sends chiefs to attack Farúd,  
 iii, 47 *seq.*  
 Bahrám's remonstrance  
 with, iii, 51  
 horse of, slain by Farúd, iii,  
 56

- Tús, resolves to attack Kalát, iii, 62  
 remorse of, for the death of Farúd, iii, 67  
 builds a charnel for Farúd, Rívníz, and Zarásp, iii, 68  
 marches from Kalát, iii, 68  
 defeats Tazháv, iii, 77  
 occupies Giravgard, iii, 78  
 defeated by the Turkmans, iii, 82  
 deprived of his command, iii, 83  
 Kai Khusrau's wrath with, iii, 84, 111, 112  
 superseded, iii, 86  
 returns to Kai Khusrau, iii, 86  
 disgraced, iii, 86  
 imprisoned, iii, 87  
 pardoned, iii, 114  
 challenges Pírán to battle, iii, 117  
 joins battle with Pírán, iii, 118, 126  
 parleys with Húmán, iii, 121  
 plays to be delivered from the snowstorm, iii, 128  
 retreats to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 132  
 makes a night-attack upon Pírán, iii, 139  
 harangues the host, iii, 141  
 hears of the approach of succours, iii, 159  
 takes counsel with the host, iii, 167  
 arrays the host, iii, 169  
 chiefs and, take counsel with Rustam, iii, 172  
 Rustam's wrath with, iii, 234  
 collects the spoil, iii, 235  
 worsted by Púládward, iii, 257  
 leads a host to Khárazm, iv, 61  
 son of = Zarásp, iv, 135  
 made overseer of the host, iv, 149
- Tús, posted on Khusrau's right, iv, 146  
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199  
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrá-siyáb, iv, 224  
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275  
 Gúdarz, and other nobles take counsel, iv, 277  
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 holds with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295, 300  
 asks for further recognition from Kai Khusrau, iv, 299  
 retains the charge of Káwa's flag and receives Khurásán, iv, 300  
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306  
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307  
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308  
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308  
 end of, iv, 309  
 Tús, city, now in ruins, north of Mashad in Khurásán, i, 39; v, 28; vi, 393; ix, 90, 95  
 birthplace of Firdausí, i, 38, 41, 45  
 governor of, i, 39  
 prince of, i, 100, 114  
 legendary origin of, iii, 14  
 legend concerning Firdausí's burial at, iii, 191

- Iús, city, treasure of "Kai Káuś called "The Bride" stored at, iv, 295  
 Sám and the dragon of, v, 202  
 local legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*  
 governor of, ix, 92  
 Tawurg, Túránian hero, ii, 253  
 Tawurg, brother of Khán, 173, viii, 364  
 reports flight of Gurđya, viii, 351  
 sent in pursuit, viii, 351  
 parleys with Gurđya, viii, 352  
 Twelve Rukhs (Champions), Battle of the. *See* Rukhs.  
 Signs (Zodiac), vii, 408  
 Tyre, city, vi, 30  
 siege of, vi, 30

## U

- Ulád, a div, 143, ii, 28, 59, 61; iv, 296 *note*; v, 204 *note*  
 Rustam and, ii, 52 *seq.*  
 made king of Mázandarán, ii, 76  
 'Umar, Khalifa (A.D. 634-643), i, 11 *seq.*, 67; ix, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121  
 founds Basra, ix, 69  
 sends Hášhim in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68  
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68  
 Sa'ad to invade Írán, ix, 72  
 'Umar Khayyám, Persian poet and scientist (died A.D. 1123), v, 30  
 Ummayyads, Muhammadan dynasty, i, 12, 13  
 Uné, daughter of Alexander the Great in the Pseudo-Cal-listhenes, vi, 77  
 Ural Mountains, iii, 192  
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, i, 5, 50, 116 *seq.*, 236, ii, 82, iii, 271, 286, 317, 327; iv, 139, 185; v, 15 *seq.*; vi, 55, 362, 372, 387; vii, 228, 406 and *note*; viii, 285; ix, 24  
 Unity of, symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381  
 day, i, 88; iii, 323; vi, 302 and *note*, 306, 375  
 Urmuzd, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210  
 Urmuzd, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Hormisdas I), 161, 162, vi, 3, 257, 273, 280, 313, 327  
 discovery of, by Ardshír Pá-pakán, vi, 257, 271  
 birth of, vi, 271  
 counselled by Ardshír Pá-pakán, vi, 280  
 Shápúr, vi, 299  
 Reign of, 162, vi, 301 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 301  
 title of, vi, 301  
 story about, vi, 301  
 Urmuzd, son of Narsí, Sháh (Hormisdas II), 162, vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 315, 316, 325; vii, 359; viii, 41  
 Reign of, vi, 318 *seq.*  
 Note on, vi, 318  
 sons of, vi, 318  
 inaugural address of, vi, 318  
 pregnant wife of, enthroned, vi, 320  
 Urmuzd (Hormisdas), son of Urmuzd, Persian Prince, vi, 318, 325  
 referred to (?), vi, 337  
 Urmuzd Ardshír (Ahwáz), city in Khúzistán, vi, 290 and *note*  
 Urmuzd, Íránian warrior, viii, 296  
 Uroscopy, vi, 101, 107, 108  
 Urumiah (Khanjast or Chjast), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136; viii, 195  
 Afrásiyáb escapes from Húm into, iv, 262 and *note*

- Ustád, Iránian general, vii, 251  
     commands Núshírwán's  
     right wing, vii, 251  
 Ustád, Iránian warrior, viii, 296  
 Ustuklá, Túránian hero, iv, 182  
     fights with Kai Khusrau, iv,  
     182  
 'Utbi, Al, secretary to Sultán  
     Mahmúd, i, 32  
 'Uthmán, Khalífa, i, 12  
 Utterakuri, a legendary people,  
     vi, 74  
 Uzava (Zav), Sháh, i, 369

## V

- VALE of heroes, vii, 6  
 Valerian (Bazánúsh), Roman  
     Emperor (A.D. 253-260),  
     vi, 323 *seq.*  
     defeat and capture of, by  
     Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi,  
     294, 295  
     memorials of, vi, 295  
     confused with Odenathus,  
     Julian, and Jovian, vi,  
     324 *seq.*  
     death of, in captivity, vi,  
     326  
 Valkash (Vologeses I), Parthian  
     (Ashkánian) king, i, 62, 63  
 Vandaremaini (Andarímán),  
     brother of Arjásp, v, 13  
 Varahran I (Bahrám son of  
     Urmuzd), Sásanian king,  
     vi, 307  
 Varahran II (Bahrám son of  
     Bahrám), Sásanian king,  
     vi, 310  
 Varahran III (Bahrám Bahrámi-  
     yán), Sásanian king, vi,  
     313, 368  
 Varahran IV (Bahrám son of  
     Shápúr), Sásanian king,  
     vi, 313, 368  
 Varahran V (Bahrám Gúr),  
     Sásanian king, vii, 3  
 Vardanes (Bahrám), Parthian  
     (Ashkánian) king, iii, 9  
     *seq.*, 109  
 Vardanes, wars of, with Gotarzes,  
     iii, 10, 11  
     assassination of, iii, 10, 11  
     character of, iii, 15  
 Varengana, the raven, i, 235, 236  
 Vedas, i, 129, 144, 171, 234, 337,  
     ii, 8, 11, 25  
 Vega, star, vii, 245  
 Vendidad, Nask, vii, 188  
     reference to Mazdak in, vii,  
     188  
 Venus, planet, i, 72, 100, 194,  
     276, 303, 322, 332, 339; ii,  
     115, 275, 345; iii, 143,  
     159, 254, 318, 332; v,  
     159; vi, 98, 102, 171, 190,  
     212, 224, 332; vii, 53,  
     151, 263; viii, 152, 359,  
     394, 395; ix, 26, 73  
 Verethraghna, the raven, ii, 25  
 Victory of Victories, The, ix, 69  
 Vidrafsh (Bídirafsh), v, 24, 26  
 Village-chief, 154  
 Vineyards, taxes on, vii, 215, 225  
 Virgo, constellation, iii, 24; viii,  
     359; ix, 71  
 Vishtásp (Vistaspa, Gushtásp,  
     *q.v.*), v, 24  
 Vistáspa (Vishtásp, Gushtásp,  
     *q.v.*), iv, 316; v, 11  
 Vistásp-sást, v, 11  
 Vitrified fortifications, vi, 79, 165  
 Vivanghat, i, 129  
 Vohúman. *See* Vohu Manau.  
 Vohu Manau (Vohúman, Bah-  
     man), ameshaspenta, iii,  
     271; v, 16, 17  
 Volga, river of European Russia,  
     falling into the Caspian,  
     iv, 316  
 Vologeses I (Valkash), Parthian  
     (Ashkánian) king (A.D. 51  
     -77), i, 62, 63  
 Vologeses II, Parthian (Ashká-  
     nian king), i, 19  
 Vologeses (Balásh), king of Kir-  
     mán, *temp.* Ardshír Pápa-  
     kán, vi, 205  
 Vologeses (Balásh), Sháh, vii, 170  
 Vonones I, Parthian (Ashkánian)  
     king (A.D. 8-12)

- Vouru-Kasha, sea, iv, 137  
 Vritra, demon, ii, 25  
     Indra and, vi, 203  
 Vullers-Landauer edition of the  
     Sháhnáma, i, 77; vi, 60

## W

- WAHR, region, iii, 177, 228, 235  
 Wakkás, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*,  
     176; ix, 72, 78, 82, 90  
 Wálid, Khalífa, vi, 325  
 Walnuts, taxes on, vii, 225  
 War of the Religion, v, 19, 26, 29  
     two campaigns of, v, 29  
 Warázád, king of Sipanjáb, 146,  
     ii, 341 *seq.*, 346  
 Warígh (Callinicus, Kálíniyús,  
     *q.v.*, Nicephorium, Rakka)  
     city, viii, 188, 253, 257,  
     280  
     Khusrau Parwíz takes up his  
     abode at, viii, 257  
 Warriors, the Seven, Story of the  
     Fight of, 143, ii, 25, 82,  
     107 *seq.*  
 Warstead=Bídád, iii, 245  
 Wash, city, viii, 24 and *note*  
 Water, scarcity of, i, 3  
     —courses, underground, i, 3  
     —horse, 163, vi, 373, 392  
     referred to, vi, 373  
     legend of Yazdagird and  
     the, vi, 392  
     —stealing demons, i, 7, 338  
     of Life, 160, v, 30; vi, 159,  
     160  
 Wazír (minister), piece in chess,  
     vii, 385, 423  
     position of, vii, 388, 422  
     move of, vii, 422  
 West, Dr. E. W., referred to, v,  
     11  
 West, the, Salm's portion of the  
     world, i, 189  
     gateway of, viii, 369 and  
     *note*  
 Western sea, the, 160, vi, 158  
 Whale, mistaken for an island,  
     vi, 71, 147  
 Whale, Sikandar's adventure  
     with a, vi, 71, 147  
 Wheeler, James Talboys, quoted,  
     vi, 81  
 Whip, Bahráam Gúr's, vii, 47, 54,  
     63, 64  
     object of reverence, vii, 47,  
     54, 63  
 White Castle (Mount Sipand,  
     *q.v.*), stronghold north-  
     west of Nishápúr, 144, i,  
     369; ii, 118, 131, 138  
     Malcolm's identification  
     and description of, i,  
     236; v, 30  
     besieged by Bármán, i,  
     354  
     evacuated by Gazhdaham  
     ii, 137  
     Dív, 143. *See* Dív.  
     Elephant, 141. *See* Elephant.  
     Huns (Haitálians, *q.v.*), i, 20  
 Will, of Alexander the Great, vi,  
     81  
     provisions of, vi, 81, 181  
     Kubád, son of Píruz, vii, 210  
 Wine-drinking, forbidden by  
     Bahráam Gúr, vii, 23  
     again permitted, vii, 25  
     Firdausí's love of. *See* Fir-  
     dausí.  
 Wisa, Túránian hero, uncle of  
     Afrásiyáb, 142, i, 92, 337,  
     342, 353, 361, 362; ii, 112  
     354; iii, 79, 102, 105, 121,  
     197, 202, 206; iv, 32, 39,  
     50, 54, 55, 74, 84, 95, 99,  
     103, 113, 115, 122  
     pursues Káran, i, 355  
     finds Bármán dead, i, 356  
     defeated by Káran, i, 357  
     returns to Afrásiyáb, i, 357  
     sayings of, iv, 32  
 Wísagird, city in Túrán, 151, iv,  
     19, 20, 65; vii, 157, 331.  
 Wisdom, praise of, vii, 103  
     Firdausí's, 139  
     referred to, vii, 278  
     —literature, Persian, vii, 278  
     *seq.*, viii, 3  
     Mohl on, vii, 280

- Wisdom, literature, Nöldeke on, vii, 281  
 apportionment of, viii, 202  
 Witch, 143, 156. *See* Sorceress.  
 Wizard-land, vii, 120 and *note*  
 Wolf, 154, 156, 165, vii, 121 *seq.*  
 and *note*  
 slain by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 123  
 of Fâskûn. *See* Fâskûn.  
 Women, City of, 160 *See* Harûm.  
 Wonders, 160, iv, 245  
 the Four, of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.  
 World, on the making of the, 139  
 Worm, the, 161, vi, 195, 206, 238 *seq.*  
 Story of, 161; vi, 196, 203 *seq.*, 232 *seq.*  
 Mohl, Nöldeke, and Darmesteter on, vi, 203 *seq.*  
 cult of, vi, 235  
 Ardshîr Pâpakân's stratagem against, vi, 242  
 servants of, vi, 242 *seq.*  
 Writing, art of, taught by the dîvs to Tahmûras, i, 127

## X

- XERXES, Persian king (B.C. 485-465), v, 282  
 Asfandiyâr and, v, 282  
 effigy of, falls, vi, 30

## Y

- YÁJÚJ and MÁJÚJ (Gog and Magog, *q.v.*), 160, vi, 79, 163 *seq.*, 211 *note*  
 legend of, in the Kurân, vi, 78  
 Tabarî on, vi, 78  
 described, vi, 163  
 Ya'kûb bin Laïs, Persian chieftain and founder of the Saffârî dynasty, i, 67, 68  
 Ya'kûbî, Arabic historian (died A.D. 891)

- Yalân-sîna (Mardânshâh), brother of Bahrám Chûbîna, viii, 74, 102, 122, 135, 138, 157, 163, 169, 204, 288, 291, 296 *seq.*, 303, 316, 356, 357; ix, 6  
 goes hunting with Bahrám Chûbîna, viii, 156  
 pursues and brings back archscribe viii, 159  
 speech of, viii, 165, 170  
 worsted by Khusrâu Parwîz, viii, 229  
 commands the centre, iii, 289  
 Bahrám Chûbîna makes, his mandatory, viii, 342  
 defeats the Turks, viii, 353  
 negotiates marriage between Gurdaya and Gustaham, viii, 357  
 Yama. *See* Yima.  
 Yaman (Hâmâvarân), southwestern Arabia, 140, 160, 162, i, 181 *seq.*, 266, 286; ii, 80; iv, 146; v, 260; vi, 73, 120, 121, 324, 331, 385, 386, 396, 401; vii, 262; viii, 98  
 king of = Sarv, 140, i, 178, 179, 182  
 Yaman, carnelianians of, ii, 123; iii, 289  
 Canopus of, ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382  
 onyx of, vi, 128  
 striped stuff of, vi, 175  
 monarch of, vi, 175; viii, 16  
 gives gifts to Sikandar, vi, 175  
 = Munzir, vi, 378, 387, 390  
 Bahrám Gúr goes to, vi, 378, 390  
 conquered by Persians, viii, 24 *note*  
 curtains of, viii, 148, 151  
 Yánús (Julian), brother of Cæsar, 162, vi, 324, 326

- Yánuš, leads a host against Shápúr, vi, 351  
 defeated, vi, 352
- Yasht XXII, metrical paraphrase of, vii, 318
- Yátkár-i-Zarírán, Pahlaví text, v, 13, 24, 27 and *note*; vii, 380  
 compared with Dakíkí's work, v, 24 *seq.*  
 resembles Kárnámak, vi, 195, 196
- Yazates (Izads), the, iii, 286
- Yazd, city in central Persia, vi, 368
- Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Isdigerd I), 163, 164, vi, 3; vii, 4, 10, 109, 119, 171, 185, 359  
 referred to, vi, 369; vii, 74  
 Reign of, 163, vi, 371 *seq.*  
*Note on*, vi, 371 *seq.*  
 parentage of, uncertain, vi, 371  
 lover of peace like Aknaton of Egypt, vi, 371  
 titles of, vi, 371, 372  
 Tabarí on, vi, 372, 373  
 coins of, vi, 373  
 evil administration of, vi, 374, 404  
 makes search for a governor for his son Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376 *seq.*  
 Nu'mán and Munzir visit, vi, 377  
 puts Bahrám Gúr in Munzir's charge, vi, 378  
 receives from Munzir a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting, vi, 385  
 Bahrám Gúr returns to, vi, 386  
 gives presents to, and sends a letter by, Nu'mán to Munzir, vi, 387  
 disgraces Bahrám Gúr, vi, 389  
 sends Bahrám Gúr back to Mun.í, vi, 390
- Yazdagird, consults the astrologers, vi, 390  
 death of foretold, vi, 391  
 attacked by bleeding of the nose, vi, 390  
 death of, vi, 373, 393  
 Nöldeke on, vi, 373  
 corpse of embalmed and taken to Párs, vi, 393
- Yazdagird, son of Bahrám Gúr (Isdigerd II), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 152, 156, 160, 187  
 welcomes his father on his return from Hind, vii, 137  
 appointed by Bahrám Gúr to succeed him, vii, 150  
 Reign of, 166, vii, 153 *seq.*  
*Note on*, vii, 153  
 a blank in Sháhnáma, vii, 153  
 historically important, vii, 153  
 wars of, vii, 153  
 fortifies passes in the Caucasus, vii, 153, 187  
 title of, vii, 153  
 sons of, vii, 153  
 appoints Hurmuz to succeed him, vii, 155  
 dies, vii, 155
- Yazdagird (Isdigerd III), Sháh, 176, v, 294; vi, 3; viii, 55, 73; ix, 5, 61, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122  
 Reign and Era of, 176, ix, 64  
*Note on*, ix, 64  
 taken for safety to Istakhr, ix, 64  
 age of, at accession, ix, 65  
 difficult position of, ix, 65
- Yazdagird, historical importance of reign of, ix, 65  
 flight of, from Ctesiphon, ix, 67  
 Hulwán, ix, 68  
 last attempt of, to recover his empire, ix, 68

Yazdagird, concentrates his forces at Nahāvand, ix, 68  
 defeated and a fugitive, ix, 69  
 death of, referred to, ix, 69  
 host returns to, after Kádī-sīya, ix, 85  
 hears of Rustam's death, ix, 85  
 quits Baghdád, ix, 88  
 makes for Marv, ix, 89  
   entrusted to Máhwī by Farrukhzád, ix, 95, 96  
 at Marv, ix, 97, 116  
 hears of the coming of the Turks, ix, 97  
 betrayed by Máhwī, ix, 98  
 defeated, ix, 98, 116  
 miller and, ix, 99 *seq.*  
 described, ix, 99, 101  
 Máhwī bids miller slay, ix, 107, 116  
 slain, stripped and flung into stream, ix, 108, 109 and *note*  
 corpse of, recovered, lamented over and entombed, ix, 109 *seq.*  
 Firdausī on, ix, 111  
 Yazdagird, chief scribe, *temp.*  
   Núshírwán, vii, 304, 307, 312, 333, 337, 339, 394  
   discourse of, vii, 305  
   questions Búzurjmihr, vii, 308  
 Yazdán, viii, 75  
 Yazdánbakhsh (Áyín Gashasp *q.v.*), viii, 75, 76  
 Yazdín, viii, 195, 196  
 Year, New, festival at, i, 104  
 Yima (Yama, Jamshíd), i, 7, 130, 374  
   legend of, i, 129  
 Yokel, a, 164  
   entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 43 *seq.*  
   wife of, her converse with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 45  
   presage of, vii, 46  
   rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 48

Youths, two, bid Ardshír Pápakán not to tarry in his flight from Ardawán, vi, 201, 222  
 Youths, two, entertain and counsel Ardshír Pápakán in the matter of the Worm, vi, 207, 239 *seq.*  
   help Ardshír Pápakán to slay the Worm, vi, 242, 244  
 Yudhishthira, eldest of the five Pándavas, iv, 138  
   renunciation of the world, and pilgrimage to heaven of, compared with that of Kai Khusrau, iv, 138  
 Yúnán, vi, 95 and *note*, viii, 258  
   Faith of, vi, 95

## Z

ZÁB, lesser, tributary of Tigris, viii, 189  
 Zábul, Zábulistán = Nímruz = Sistán, \* 141, 142, 144, 156; i, 248, 252, 254, 264, 282, 324, 332, 357, 361, 364, 366, 367, 371, 375, 381; ii, 21, 28, 42, 61, 83, 92, 126, 138, 141, 142, 156, 168, 227, 228, 245, 260, 338, 362, 363; iii, 14, 134, 141, 145, 153, 165, 171, 174, 175, 186, 190, 199, 200, 202, 206 *seq.*, 217, 246, 250, 269, 274, 321, 326, 342, 347, 354, 356; iv, 147, 279, 283, 296, 311; v, 85, 86, 167, 169 *seq.*, 173, 175 *seq.*, 181 *seq.*, 193, 194, 212, 215, 219, 223, 224, 235, 248, 251, 252, 255, 256, 258, 265, 266, 273, 275 *seq.*, 281, 283, 285 *seq.*; vi, 207; vii, 173, 174, 193; viii, 369; ix, 75  
 invaded by Shamásás and Khazarwán, i, 345, 358

\* Not the same apparently as those above.

\* See p. 333 *note*.

- Zábul, vintage of, ii, 110  
 occupied by the Turkmans,  
 i, 19; iii, 14, 30  
 Gushtásp goes to, v, 85  
 Moon of=Rúdába, v, 190  
 and *note*  
 called "Babblestead" by  
 Asfandiyár, v, 216  
 Bahman's sojourn in, v, 252,  
 256  
 pillaged by Bahman, v, 287  
 Bahman quits, v, 290  
 Zábuli, a native of Zábul, iii,  
 188, 201, 257, 326; v, 212  
 a, made king of Kábul, v,  
 277  
 Zád Farrukh, suggests Bahrám  
 Chúbina to Hurmuzd,  
 viii, 99  
 speech of, viii, 241  
 Zádsham, king of Túrán and  
 grandfather of Afrásiyáb, i,  
 92, 342 *seq.*, 376; iv, 149,  
 163, 166, 203  
 offspring of=Afrásiyáb, iv,  
 178  
 Zagros, mountain-range in wes-  
 tern Irán, viii, 189  
 Zakhák (Azhi Daháka), son of  
 Mardás, Arab king and  
 Sháh, 140, 141; i, 42, 90,  
 91; ii, 33, 81, 318; iii,  
 257; iv, 89, 206, 272, 274,  
 290; v, 12, 180, 203, 204,  
 284; vi, 15, 45, 172, 209,  
 240 and *note*; vii, 185,  
 199; viii, 218, 239, 241,  
 387, 391; ix, 25, 65,  
 103  
 protagonist of idolatry and  
 of the Semitic race, i, 54,  
 143, 226, 256  
 one of the Zoroastrian triad  
 of evil, i, 59 and *note*  
 referred to by Moses of Cho-  
 rene, i, 72, 144  
 Story of, 140, i, 135 *seq.*  
 tempted by Iblís, i, 136 *seq.*  
 father of, 140  
 murdered by, i, 137  
 referred to, viii, 387  
 Zakhák, becomes king of the  
 Arabs, i, 137  
 serpents, grow out of the  
 shoulders of, i, 139  
 Iblís' advice to, i, 139  
 invades Irán, i, 139  
 captures and slays Jamshíd,  
 i, 140  
 Reign of, 140, i, 141, *seq.*  
 Note on, i, 141, *seq.*  
 not destroyed, i, 143  
 feast in celebration of over-  
 throw of, i, 143  
 dream of, i, 147  
 Arnawáz' advice to, con-  
 cerning, i, 148  
 takes counsel with the archi-  
 mages, i, 149  
 warned by Zirá, i, 149  
 seeks for Farídún, i, 150  
 slays Abtin, i, 151, 153  
 Birmáya, i, 152  
 burns Farídún's palace, i,  
 152, 158  
 Káwa and, Story of, 140, i,  
 154 *seq.*  
 Káwa revolts against, i, 156  
 Farídún resolves to war  
 with, i, 157  
 marches against, i, 159  
 capital of, i, 161  
 entered by Farídún, i, 161  
 talisman of, overthrown by  
 Farídún, i, 161  
 sought for in vain by Farí-  
 dún, i, 162  
 minister of, 140, i, 164 *seq.*  
 hears from Kundrav of Farí-  
 dún's doings, i, 165  
 goes to fight with Farídún,  
 i, 166  
 enters his palace, i, 167  
 overthrown by Farídún, i,  
 168  
 Surúsh's counsel to Farídún  
 concerning, i, 168, 169  
 fettered to Mount Damá-  
 wand, i, 169  
 future final destruction of,  
 i, 173  
 saying of, ii, 171 and *note*

- Zahhák, an Aryan myth, ix, 65  
king of Babylon, ix, 65  
an Arab, ix, 65
- Zahír, Iránian hero, iv, 148  
commands the Bedouins in  
Kai Khusráu's army, iv,  
148
- Zainigau, Záinigáv, ii, 81
- Zairi-vairi (Zariadres, Zarír, *q.v.*),  
iv, 316; v, 12
- Zál (Dástán, Dástán-i-Sám, Dás-  
tán-i-Zand, Zál-i-zar), son  
of Sám and father of  
Rustam, 141, 142, 153,  
154, 156, 157; i, 145, 235,  
384, 387; ii, 4, 11 *seq.*,  
18, 19, 21, 33 *seq.*, 49, 58,  
61, 62, 69, 77, 140, 168,  
169, 180, 182, 227, 228,  
271, 286, 290, 318, 319,  
338, 362, 371; iii, 8, 17,  
18, 21, 22, 35, 121, 132,  
138, 141, 147, 190, 202,  
221, 245, 269, 274, 279,  
283, 307, 321, 322, 325,  
328, 331, 347, 351, 354,  
355; iv, 13, 147, 222, 251,  
277, 319; v, 11, 14, 15,  
58, 86, 169, 173 *seq.*, 197,  
200, 204, 210, 212, 219  
*seq.*, 231, 240 *seq.*, 246,  
255, 256, 261, 277 *seq.*,  
281, 283, 290; vi, 79;  
viii, 223; ix, 25
- various names of, i, 84, 245  
and *note*, 248 and *note*  
born with white hair, i,  
240  
cast away by Sám, i, 241  
found and brought up by  
the Símurgh, i, 242  
seen by a caravan, i,  
242  
informed of his parentage by  
the Símurgh, i, 245  
given a feather by the  
Símurgh, i, 246  
restored to Sám by the  
Símurgh, i, 247  
goes with Sám to court, i,  
249
- Zál, horoscope of, taken, i, 251  
made regent of Zábúl by  
Sám, i, 253  
progress of, in the arts, i, 255  
makes a progress through  
his realm, i, 256  
Rúdába and, story of, i, 257  
*seq.*  
referred to, iii, 285  
hears of, and falls in love  
with Mihráb's daughter,  
i, 257 *seq.*  
described, i, 260, 268  
sees Rúdába's handmaids,  
i, 263  
interview of, with Rúdába's  
handmaids, i, 266  
invited to visit Rúdába, i,  
267, 269  
goes to Rúdába, i, 270 *seq.*  
plights his troth to Rúdába,  
i, 272  
consults the archimages on  
the matter of Rúdába, i,  
273  
writes to Sám, i, 275  
go-between of, with Rúdába,  
i, 280  
sends Sám's letter to Rú-  
dába, i, 280  
goes to plead his cause with  
Sám, i, 292  
bears a letter of appeal from  
Sám to Minúchíhr, i, 295  
well received by Minú-  
chíhr, i, 306  
astrologer's presage con-  
cerning, i, 307  
questioned by the arch-  
images, i, 308  
answers the archimages, i,  
309  
displays his accomplishment  
before Minúchíhr, i, 311  
returns to Sám, i, 316  
goes with Sám to Kábúl, i,  
317  
felicitated by Sám, i, 318  
married to Rúdába, i, 318  
and Rúdába go to Sístán, i,  
319

Zál, left regent of Sístán by Sám  
 i, 319  
 summons the Símurgh to  
 succour Rúdába, i, 320  
 goes with Rustam and Mih-  
 ráb to meet Sám, i, 324  
 bids Rustam take Mount  
 Sipand, i, 329  
 hears of Rustam's success,  
 i, 332  
 bids Rustam destroy the  
 hold of Mount Sipand, i,  
 333  
 informs Sám of Rustam's  
 exploit, i, 334  
 buries Sám, i, 358  
 hears from Mihráb that  
 Shamásás and Khazar-  
 wán are invading Záb-  
 listán, i, 359  
 goes to the help of Mihráb,  
 i, 359  
 shoots arrows into the ene-  
 mies' camp, i, 359  
 slays Khazarwán, i, 360  
 wounds Kulbád, i, 361  
 puts Shamásás to flight, i,  
 361  
 hears of the death of  
 Naudar, i, 364  
 fights with Afrásiyáb, i,  
 368  
 proposes the election of a  
 new Sháh, i, 370  
 reproached by the Irán-  
 ians, i, 375  
 reply of, i, 375  
 bids Rustam prepare for  
 war, i, 376  
 gives Sám's mace to Rus-  
 tam, i, 378  
 collects horses for Rustam,  
 i, 378  
 marches against Afrásiyáb,  
 i, 381  
 urges the Iránians to choose  
 a Sháh, i, 381  
 sends Rustam to summon  
 Kai Kubád, i, 382  
 goes to do homage to Kai  
 Khusrau, iii, 17

Zál, witnesses Kai Khusrau's  
 oath to avenge Siyáwush,  
 iii, 22  
 son of=Rustam, iii, 132  
 meets Gíw, iii, 321  
 sayings of, iii, 316, 351  
 summoned by the Iránians  
 to remonstrate with Kai  
 Khusrau, iv, 278  
 sets out for Irán with Rus-  
 tam and sages, iv, 279  
 met on arrival by Gúdarz  
 and other chiefs, iv, 282  
 holds converse with the  
 Iránians, iv, 282  
 audience of, with Kai Khus-  
 rau, iv, 283 *seq.*  
 asks pardon of Kai Khus-  
 rau, iv, 290  
 holds, with other chiefs, at  
 the bidding of Kai Khus-  
 rau, an assembly on the  
 plain, iv, 291 *seq.*  
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv,  
 295  
 companions of, rewarded by  
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 297  
 returns thanks, iv, 298  
 protests against Luhrásp's  
 succession, iv, 301  
 acknowledges Luhrásp as  
 Sháh, iv, 302  
 sets out with Kai Khusrau  
 on his pilgrimage, iv,  
 306  
 turns back at the bidding of  
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 307  
 laments the loss of the pala-  
 dins and returns to Irán,  
 iv, 310  
 promises fealty to Luhrásp,  
 iv, 311  
 Rustam and, welcome Gush-  
 tásp to Sístán, v, 85  
 hears of Bahman's ap-  
 proach, v, 182  
 interview of, with Bahman,  
 v, 183  
 give Bahman a guide to  
 conduct him to Rustam,  
 v, 184

- Zál, Rúdába and, bidden by Rustam to prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190  
 Rustam recounts his interview with Asfandiyár to, v, 196  
 Rustam and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201  
 receives a message from Rustam by Zawára, v, 230  
 grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234  
 summons the Símurgh to Rustam's aid, v, 235  
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247  
 forebodes Rustam's future, v, 247  
 father of Shaghád, v, 260, 263  
 sends Shaghád to be brought up at Kábul, v, 264  
 laments for Rustam, v, 273  
 sends Farámarz against Kábul, v, 274  
 bids Rúdába to cease to mourn for Rustam, v, 278  
 receives and replies to Bahman's hostile message, v, 285  
 goes to meet Bahman, v, 286  
 palace of, sacked, v, 286  
 Bishútán intercedes for, v, 288  
 released and returns to his palace, v, 289  
 Zál-i-zar (Zál, *q.v.*), i, 84, 248 and *note*  
 Zam (now Karkhf), town on the left bank of the Oxus between Ámwi (Charjui) and Tirmid, where, there was a crossing-place, ii, 394, 395; iv, 65, 137; vii, 359  
 =Oxus, ii, 97  
 Zamyád, Yasht, i, 338  
 Zamzam, iv, 258 *note*
- Zand, comment, i, 65  
 Zandavasta, i, 116, 129, 144, 171 *seq.*, 234, 337, 338, 369; ii, 8, 25 *seq.*, 81, 118, 189, 190; iii, 8; iv, 151, 228, 253, 259, 308; v, 11 *seq.*, 30, 36, 41, 43, 51, 82, 85, 100, 173, 176, 216, 241, 294, 299, 309; vi, 17, 55, 226, 252, 343, 356; vii, 200, 207, 283, 302; viii, 96, 246, 283, 312  
 traditional origin of, i, 61  
 discussed, i, 62  
 language of, i, 63 *seq.*  
 meaning of, i, 65  
 origin of chief characters in, i, 65  
 diffusion of traditions in, i, 65  
 extant portions of, i, 70  
*note*  
 quoted, i, 99, 130, 141, 142, 172, 235, 369; viii, 218, 240  
 sent by Gushtásp to every clime, v, 77  
 burnt by the Turkmans at Balkh, v, 92  
 passage from, metrically paraphrased, vii, 318  
 Zanga, Íránian hero, 145, 151, ii, 73, 90, 228, 249, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34, 43, 45, 48, 67, 92, 115, 350; iv, 13, 15, 24, 105, 147  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*  
 accompanies Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226  
 sent on an embassy to Afrásiyáb, ii, 250 *seq.*  
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334  
 opposes Farshidward, iv, 83  
 chosen to fight Akhást, iv, 97  
 slays Akhást, iv, 106

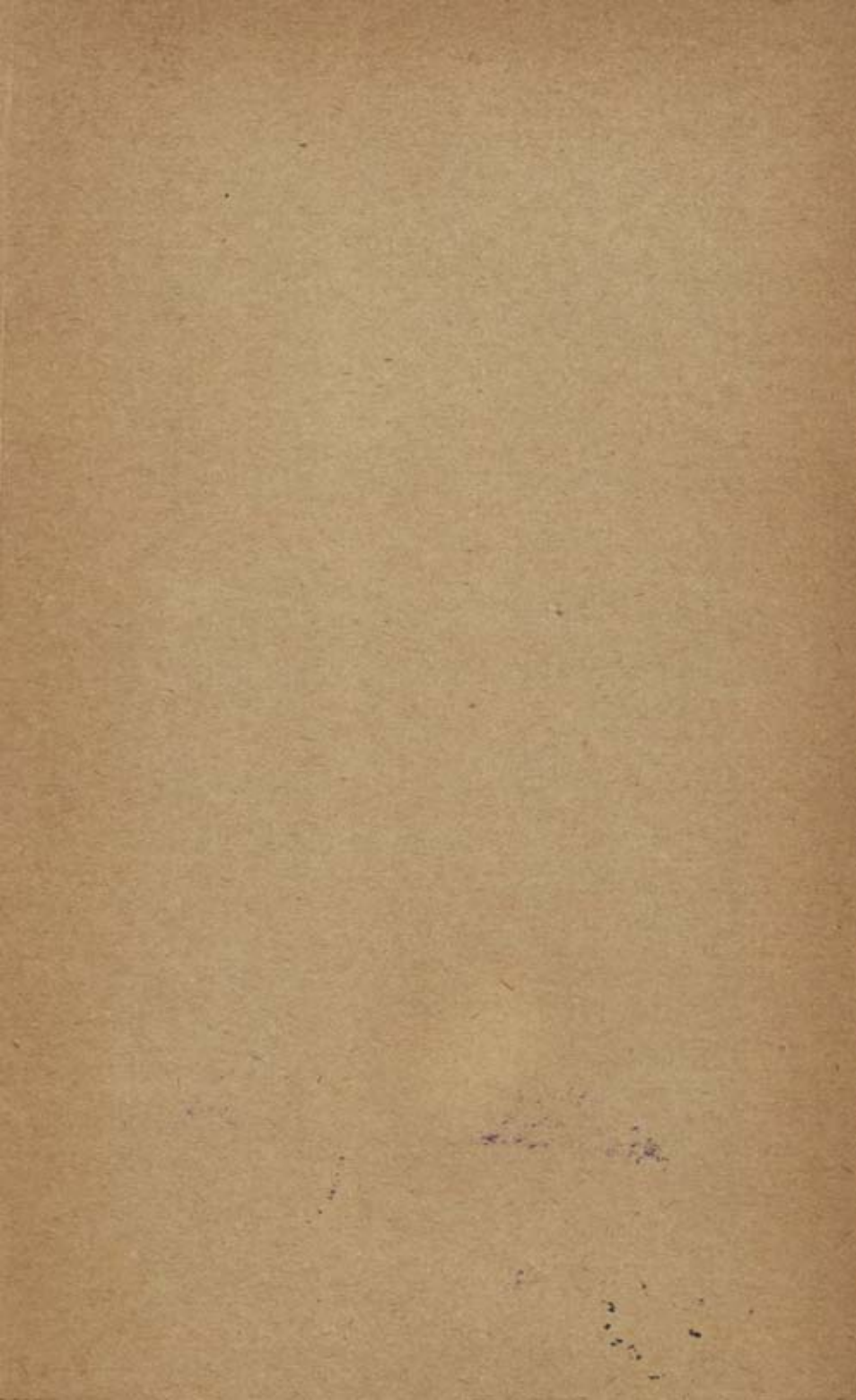
- Zanga, Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
- Zangûla or Zangula, Tûrânian hero, 151, iv, 26  
chosen to fight with Furûhil, iv, 97  
slain by Furûhil, iv, 101
- Zarang, former capital of Sistân, situated some twenty miles from the north-eastern shores of Lake Zirih, i, 4
- Zarâr, vi, 200
- Zarasp, son of Minûchihr, i, 248;  
iv, 147 (?)<sup>1</sup>  
kindred of, go to the temple of Âzargashasp, iv, 270  
go to meet Zâl and Rustam, iv, 282  
go with Zarîr to Rûm, iv, 360
- Zarâsp or Zarasp, son of Tûs, 147, iii, 24, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67, 72, 113, 114; iv, 135  
goes against Farûd, iii, 53  
referred to, iii, 55; iv, 149  
burial of, iii, 68
- Zarasp, treasurer of Kai Khusrau, iv, 269  
makes gifts to Âzargashasp, iv, 269
- Zarasp, Iranian hero, iv, 180, 301
- Zarathustra, Zarathushtra. *See* Zarduhsht.
- Zarduhsht (Zarathushtra, Zoroaster), prophet, law-giver, and evangelist of ancient Îrân, 155, i, 53, 116, 235, 236; ii, 8, 9; iv, 272; v, 9 *seq.*, 23 *seq.*, 27, 28, 42, 51, 77, 173, 206, 216, 217, 241, 255; vi, 55, 252, 328; vii, 9, 207, 264, 318; viii, 67, 213, 308
- Zandavasta revealed to, i, 61  
title of a line of priest-princes, i, 61
- Zurduhsht, account of, i, 62  
meaning of, v, 13  
legend of, v, 14 *seq.*  
converts Gushtâsp, v, 18, 33  
success of evangel of, v, 34  
plants the Cypress of Kishmar, v, 27, 34  
advises Gushtâsp not to pay tribute to Arjâsp, v, 35  
referred to, v, 36, 38, 41  
slain at Balkh, v, 92, 93  
amulet given to Asfandiyâr by, v, 130  
religion of, under the Sâsânian empire, vi, 251  
girdle of, v, 16; vi, 332 *note*.  
Fire-fane of, vii, 139  
high priest of, converts Sapînûd, vii, 139  
saying of, viii, 218, 240
- Zarduhsht, high priest, 170, viii, 81  
visits Îzid Gashasp in prison, viii, 82  
visit of, reported to Hurmuzd, viii, 83  
poisoned by Hurmuzd, viii, 83 *seq.*
- Zariadres (Zairi-vairi, Zarîr, *q.v.*), v, 26  
legend of, iv, 314 *seq.*
- Zarîr (Zariadres, Zairi-vairi), brother of Shâh Gushtâsp, 154, 155, i, 42; ii, 3; iv, 315, 316, 318, 347; v, 12, 13, 24 *seq.*, 37, 41 *seq.*, 49 *seq.*, 60 *seq.*, 73, 94, 109, 169, 181, 193, 254, 261  
sent by Luhrâsp in pursuit of Gushtâsp, iv, 320  
charger of, iv, 321  
returns with Gushtâsp, iv, 322  
consulted by Luhrâsp, iv, 323, 358  
advises Luhrâsp, iv, 358  
goes with other chiefs on a mission to Rûm, iv, 359  
reaches Halab, iv, 360

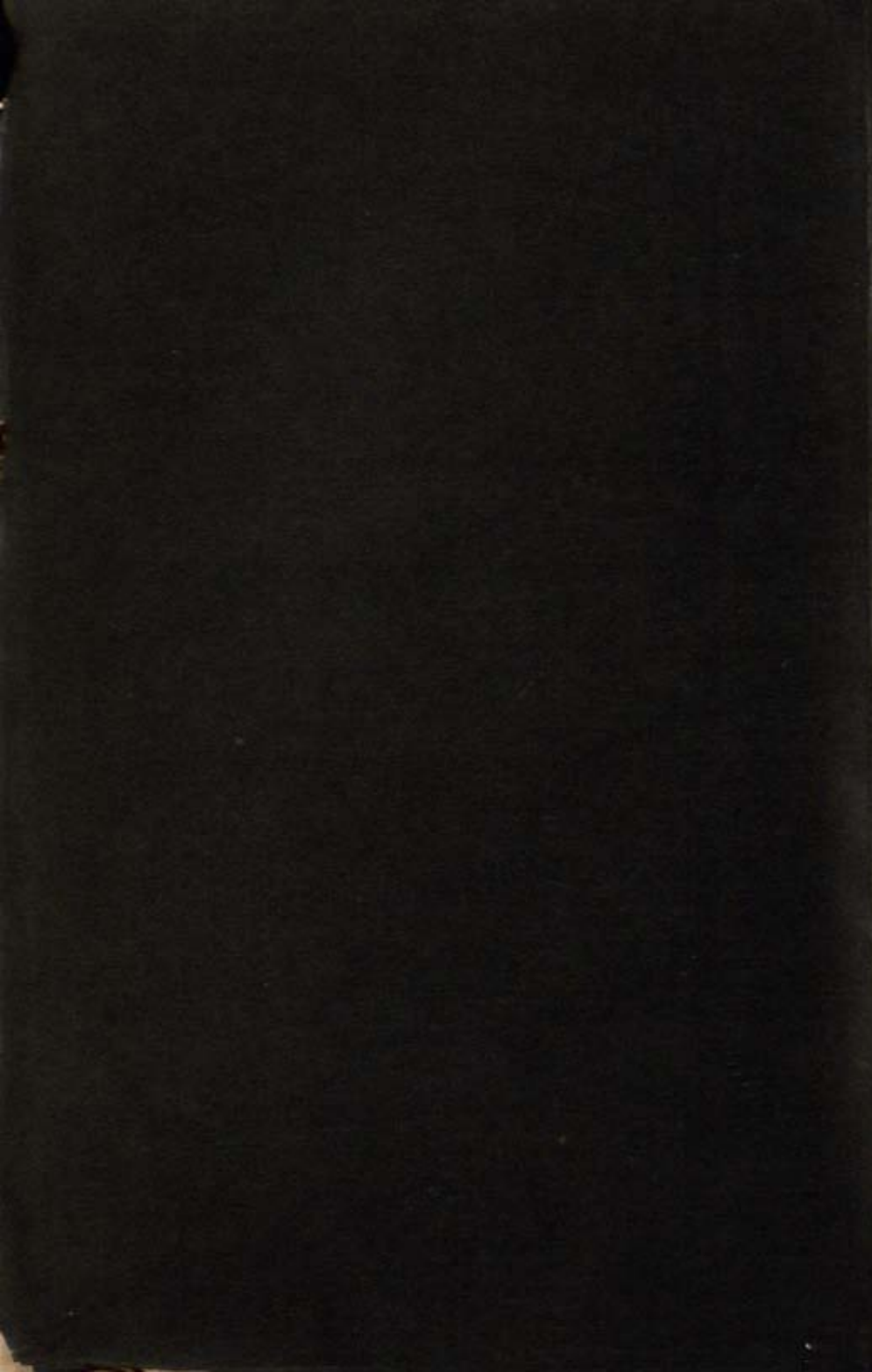
<sup>1</sup> It is not clear which Zarasp is intended,

- Zarir entrusts the host to Bahrám, iv, 360  
 goes to Caesar's court, iv, 360  
 audience with Caesar of, and recognition of Gushtásp by, iv, 360  
 gives Luhrásp's answer to Caesar, iv, 361  
 visited in his camp by Gushtásp, iv, 361  
 informs Gushtásp of Luhrásp's abdication in his favour, iv, 362  
 Love-story of, v, 26, 27  
 Death-story of, v, 26, 27  
 converted by Zarduhsht, v, 33  
 answers, in conjunction with Asfandiyár and Jámásp, Arjásp's letter, v, 42  
 death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 51  
 receives the standard and the command of the centre from Gushtásp, v, 55  
 prowess of, v, 61 *seq.*  
 slain by Bídrafsh, v, 63  
 Zarir-náma, v, 26, 27  
 Zark, town south-east of Marv, ix, 98  
 canal of, ix, 98  
 corpse of Yazdagird flung into, ix, 109  
 recovered from, ix, 109  
 ford and toll-house of, ix, 100 and *note*  
 chief of, ix, 100  
 hears from miller about Yazdagird, ix, 109  
 Zarmihr. *See* Rizmihr.  
 Zarnúsh, city in Khúzistán, vi, 35  
 Zartusht Bahrám Pazdhú, author of the Zartusht-náma, v, 18  
 Zartusht-náma, poem, v, 18  
 Zav, Sháh, 142, 143, i, 90, 91, 381; ii, 11, 36; iv, 283  
 Reign of, 142, i, 369 *seq.*  
 Note on, i, 369  
 mentioned in the Zandavásta, i, 369  
 Zav, accession of, i, 370  
 drought and famine in the time of, i, 371  
 concludes peace with the Turkmans, i, 371  
 dies, i, 372  
 Zawára, brother of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 96, 228, 347, 349; iii, 30, 202, 325, 328; iv, 24, 34; v, 173, 174, 182 *seq.*, 187, 191, 231, 260, 261  
 engaged in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 110 *seq.*  
 worsted by Alkús, ii, 115  
 rescued by Rustam, ii, 115  
 made leader of Rustam's host, ii, 142  
 left in charge of Rustam's host, ii, 161  
 goes on embassy to Húmán, ii, 176  
 safe-conducts Húmán from Írán, ii, 176, 181, 182  
 incites Rustam to avenge Siyáwush, ii, 360  
 given a command, iv, 149  
 goes with Rustam to the right wing, iv, 180  
 referred to, v, 186, 228, 261  
 Farámarz and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190  
 brings Rustam's armour, v, 218  
 put in charge of the troops, v, 222  
 goes with Rustam to the Hirmund, v, 222  
 Rustam's instructions to, 222  
 provokes the Íránians to combat, v, 225  
 slays Núsh Ázar, v, 227  
 goes in quest of Rustam, v, 230  
 takes from Rustam a message for Zál, v, 230

- Zawára, grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234  
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247  
 warns Rustam against Bahman, v, 250  
 Rustam and, with small escort, go to Kábul, v, 268  
 goes hunting with Rustam, v, 270  
 falls a victim to treachery, v, 270, 273  
 death of, v, 273  
 body of, taken from the pit by Farámarz, and buried v, 275
- Zend, language, i, 64  
 improper use of term, i, 64
- Zeus, Babylonian, vi, 22  
 oracle of, consulted, vi, 22
- Zhanda Razm, maternal uncle of Suhráb, 144, ii, 149, 151  
 accompanies Suhráb to Írán, ii, 150  
 death of, ii, 150  
 referred to, ii, 160
- Zhangwí, Turkman noble, viii, 331
- Zib-i-Khusrau (Rúmiya, q.v.), city, 167, vii, 259
- Zijának, daughter of Ardawán, q.v., 161, vi, 255  
 Story of, in Kárnámak, vi, 255  
 Tabarí, vi, 255  
 Sháhnáma, vi, 259 *seq.*
- Zínfáv, ii, 81
- Zira, father of Gurwí, 152, ii, 295, 314; iii, 120, 197, 199; iv, 97, 99, 127, 219; v, 272
- Zirak, an archimage, i, 150  
 warns Zahhák, i, 149
- Zirih, sea or lake, i, 4; ii, 80; iv, 136  
 the Lake of Sístán, i, iv; ii, 80
- Zirih, son of Sháh Pírúz, vii, 170
- Zodiac, viii, 394
- Zoroaster. *See* Zarduhsht.
- Zoroastrian, Zoroastrians, v, 17; vi, 206, 251, 328
- Zoroastrian, cosmogony, i, 5  
 view of Buddhism as idolatrous, i, 16  
 conception of destiny, i, 52  
 propaganda, i, 58 *seq.*  
 triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*  
 scriptures. *See* Zandavasta.  
 calendar, i, 88  
 adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59
- Zoroastrianism, i, 49; vi, 15, 196, 251, 252, 327, 328; vii, 188, 317  
 conceptions of, i, 5, 51, 52  
 original seat of, i, 56 *seq.*, 62  
 becomes the state religion, i, 59  
 declines after Alexander's conquest, i, 60  
 scriptures of, *See* Zandavasta.  
 under the Parthians, i, 60, 63  
 revival of, i, 63  
 based on nature-worship, i, 116  
 existed before Zoroaster, i, 116  
 under the Sásanian empire, vi, 251  
 millenia of, vi, 252
- Zú'l Aktáf, title of Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 323  
 meaning of, vi, 323
- Zú'lfakar, ii, 337 and *note*
- Zú'l-karnain (Sikandar, Alexander the Great), vi, 51  
 legend of, in Kurán, vi, 78, 84  
 barrier of, vi, 78  
 site of, vi, 79
- Zúr. *See* Gúr.
- Zúrán, Núshirwán's chamberlain, 168  
 envies Mahbúd, vii, 319  
 plots with a Jew against Mahbúd, vii, 320 *seq.*  
 makes confession to Núshirwán, vii, 324







Central Archaeological Library,

NEW DELHI.

35453

Call No. 891.551/Fir/W.W

Author—

Warner, A.G and  
Warner, E

Title—

The Shahnama of  
Firdausi Vol-9.

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.

S. B., 14B, N. DELHI.